

# **IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide 3.9.6**

Linux

Revision:2029 Generated:01/16/2020 14:39

# Contents

<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Installation and Upgrades.....</b>	<b>11</b>
Before Upgrading or Downgrading.....	11
Installing HST Server.....	14
Upgrade Follow up.....	16
Configuring the Firewall.....	17
Securing Your SSH Server.....	19
Changing and Securing the TCP Port.....	19
Configuring Transfer Server Authentication With the Host-Key Fingerprint.....	22
Testing a Locally Initiated Transfer.....	23
Updating the Product License From the Command Line.....	25
Updating the Product License From the GUI.....	25
Uninstalling.....	25
<b>Quick Start for HST Server and Client.....</b>	<b>26</b>
Set up Server.....	26
Set up Client.....	26
Configure and Test a Connection.....	27
Transfer Files.....	27
<b>Get Started with an Aspera Transfer Server.....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>Get Started as a Transfer Client.....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Comparison of Aspera File Delivery and Synchronization Tools.....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Server Set up Methods.....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Set up Users and Groups in the GUI.....</b>	<b>32</b>
Setting Up Users.....	32
Setting Up Groups.....	36
Configuration Precedence.....	37
Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server.....	38
Testing a User-Initiated Remote Transfer.....	39
<b>Configure HST Server in the GUI.....</b>	<b>40</b>
Docroot and File Permission Configuration.....	40
Authorization Configuration.....	42
Server-Side Encryption at Rest (EAR).....	46
Bandwidth Configuration.....	47

Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI).....	55
Network Configuration.....	56
File Handling Configuration.....	57
Configuring Inline File Validation in the GUI.....	63
Configuring Filters to Include and Exclude Files.....	65
Reporting Checksums.....	72
Transfer Server Configuration.....	75
<b>Set up Users and Groups from the Command Line.....</b>	<b>77</b>
Setting Up Transfer Users (Terminal).....	77
Setting Up Transfer Groups (Terminal).....	79
Configuration Precedence.....	82
Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server.....	83
Testing a User-Initiated Remote Transfer.....	84
<b>Configure the Server from the Command Line.....</b>	<b>85</b>
aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration.....	85
aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration.....	88
Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (Command Line).....	103
Global Bandwidth Settings (Command Line).....	106
Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor.....	107
aspera.conf - File System Configuration.....	108
aspera.conf - Transfer Server Configuration.....	115
aspera.conf - Filters to Include and Exclude Files.....	117
Server-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR).....	120
Reporting Checksums.....	121
Server Logging Configuration for Ascp and Ascp 4.....	125
Out-of-Transfer File Validation.....	127
Inline File Validation.....	130
Inline File Validation with URI.....	132
Inline File Validation with Lua Script.....	134
<b>File Pre- and Post-Processing (Prepost).....</b>	<b>137</b>
Setting Up Pre/Post Processing.....	137
Pre/Post Variables.....	138
Pre/Post Script Examples.....	140
<b>Email Notifications.....</b>	<b>141</b>
Setting Up Email Notifications.....	141
Email Notification Examples.....	143
<b>Transfer Files in the GUI.....</b>	<b>145</b>
Overview of the HST Server GUI.....	145
Global Bandwidth Settings.....	148
Enabling a Transfer Proxy or HTTP Proxy.....	149
Adding and Editing Connections.....	153
Exporting, Importing, and Backing Up Connections.....	160
Creating SSH Keys in the GUI.....	161
Transferring Content.....	164
Managing Transfers.....	165
Scheduling and Customizing Transfers in Advanced Mode.....	167

Configuring Transfer Notifications.....	170
Enable Email Notifications.....	170
Configure Email Templates.....	172
Using Transfer Notifications.....	176
Reporting Checksums.....	177
<b>ascp: Transferring from the Command Line with Ascp.....</b>	<b>181</b>
Ascp Command Reference.....	181
Ascp General Examples.....	196
Ascp File Manipulation Examples.....	198
Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS.....	200
Transfers with IBM Aspera On Demand and Cloud-Based HST Servers.....	200
Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage.....	203
Multi-Session Transfers.....	203
Using Standard I/O as the Source or Destination.....	205
Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files.....	208
Symbolic Link Handling.....	214
Creating SSH Keys (Command Line).....	216
Reporting Checksums.....	217
Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR).....	220
Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options.....	221
Ascp FAQs.....	225
<b>ascp4: Transferring from the Command Line with Ascp 4.....</b>	<b>227</b>
Introduction to Ascp 4.....	227
Ascp 4 Command Reference.....	227
Ascp 4 Transfers with Object Storage.....	235
Ascp 4 Examples.....	236
Built-in I/O Providers.....	236
Data Streaming Command Syntax.....	237
Ascp 4 Data Streaming Examples.....	239
Configuring macOS Server for Multicast Streams.....	240
Troubleshooting Stream Transfers.....	241
Using Ascp 4 from the GUI.....	242
<b>Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service.....</b>	<b>242</b>
Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service.....	242
Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services.....	243
Creating, Managing, and Configuring Services.....	244
Watch Folders in the GUI.....	247
Getting Started with Watch Folders in the GUI.....	247
The Watch Folders GUI.....	249
Creating Push Watch Folders in the GUI.....	250
Creating Pull Watch Folders in the GUI.....	252
Watch Folder Configuration Reference.....	254
Managing and Monitoring Watch Folders in the GUI.....	264
Managing Services in the GUI.....	267
Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI.....	268
Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI.....	270
Watch Folders in the Command Line.....	271
Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line.....	271
Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin.....	273
Creating a Pull Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin.....	278

Watch Folder Service Configuration.....	282
Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference.....	283
Managing Watch Folders with aswatchfolderadmin.....	301
Configuring Linux for Many Watch Folders.....	302
Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API.....	303
Creating a Pull Watch Folder with the API.....	307
Managing Watch Folders with the API.....	312
Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies.....	315
Updating the Docroot or Restriction of a Running Watch Folder Service.....	318
The Aspera Watch Service.....	320
Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches.....	320
Watch Service Configuration.....	322
Setting Custom Watch Scan Periods.....	323
Managing Watch Subscriptions.....	324
Transferring and Deleting Files with the Aspera Watch Service.....	325

## **Aspera Sync..... 327**

Introduction.....	327
Overview.....	327
Synchronization and Direction Modes.....	328
Aspera Sync FAQ.....	329
Aspera Sync Set Up.....	330
Configuring Aspera Sync Endpoints.....	330
Viewing Aspera Sync Transfers in the Aspera GUI.....	334
Symbolic Link Handling.....	335
The Aspera Sync Database.....	336
Running async.....	338
Composing an Async Session.....	338
async Command Reference.....	342
Examples of Async Commands and Output.....	355
Include and Exclude Filtering Rules.....	356
Filtering Examples.....	360
Bidirectional Example.....	361
Synchronizing with AWS S3 Storage.....	361
Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage.....	363
Aspera Sync with Basic Token Authorization.....	364
Using the Aspera Watch Service with Aspera Sync.....	364
Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches.....	364
Starting the Aspera Watch Service.....	366
Watch Service Configuration.....	367
Aspera Sync with Aspera Watch Service Session Examples.....	369
Aspera Sync Monitoring and Logging.....	370
asynccadmin Command-Line Options.....	370
Logging.....	372
Troubleshooting Aspera Sync.....	372
Troubleshooting General Aspera Sync Errors.....	372
Troubleshooting Continuous Aspera Sync Errors.....	374
Resolving Bidirectional Aspera Sync File Conflicts.....	375
Appendix.....	376
Hardlinks.....	376
Creating SSH Keys.....	377
rsync vs. async Uni-directional Example.....	377

## **Configuring for Other Aspera Products..... 379**

<b>Configuring for Object Storage and HDFS.....</b>	<b>380</b>
Getting Started with the Aspera Trapd Service.....	380
General Trap Configuration Reference.....	381
Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS.....	381
URL Encoding.....	383
File Restrictions for URI Paths.....	384
Configuring for Small File Uploads.....	385
Resuming Transfers to Object Storage and HDFS.....	388
Naming Constraints.....	388
Troubleshooting Trap.....	391
Trapd Log Location.....	391
Trapd Timeout.....	391
Setup and Configuration in Amazon S3.....	392
Server Setup in Amazon EC2/Amazon S3.....	392
Using Amazon S3 IAM Roles.....	394
Enabling AWS KMS Encryption for Amazon S3 Cloud Storage.....	395
Setting Amazon S3 Storage Class Options.....	397
Using Amazon S3 Versioning with Aspera.....	398
Managing S3 Content Type Settings.....	399
Enabling Cache-Control in Amazon S3.....	400
File Time Stamp Preservation with Object Storage.....	401
Parallel Transfers to Amazon S3 and Amazon EC2.....	402
Using Trap Links.....	403
Disabling the Creation of 0 Byte Folder Objects in Amazon S3 Storage on Upload.....	405
Setup and Configuration in Alibaba Cloud.....	405
Server Setup in Alibaba Cloud.....	405
Setup and Configuration in Google Cloud Storage.....	406
Server Setup in Google Cloud Storage.....	406
Transferring Data between Google Cloud Storages that Belong to Different Projects.....	410
Setup and Configuration in IBM Bluemix.....	411
Server Setup in IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) - S3.....	411
Setup and Configuration in Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS).....	412
Server Set up in Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) Storage.....	412
Configuring Kerberos for Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) Transfers.....	414
<b>Set up HST Server for Node API.....</b>	<b>415</b>
Overview: Aspera Node API.....	415
Node API Setup.....	416
Node Admin Tool.....	418
Configuring the IBM Aspera NodeD Service.....	420
Securing the Node Service Behind a Proxy.....	424
Set up Nginx.....	425
Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records.....	426
Backing up and Restoring Access Keys (Tenant Data).....	426
Backing up and Restoring a Node Database.....	427
Setting up SSL for your Nodes.....	428
Installing SSL Certificates.....	430
<b>Authentication and Authorization.....</b>	<b>433</b>
Introduction to Aspera Authentication and Authorization.....	433
Require Token Authorization: Set in the GUI.....	434
Require Token Authorization: Set from the Command Line.....	435

Transfer Token Creation (Node API).....	436
Transfer Token Generation (astokengen).....	438
Access Key Authentication.....	441
Basic Tokens.....	449
Bearer Tokens.....	450
<b>Highly-Available Redis Backend for an HST Server Cluster.....</b>	<b>451</b>
Introduction.....	451
Requirements.....	452
Setup and Configuration.....	452
Start and Test the Cluster.....	455
Redis Sentinel Operation.....	456
Logging.....	456
<b>Asconfigurator Reference.....</b>	<b>456</b>
The asconfigurator Utility.....	456
Syntax and Usage.....	456
Examples.....	458
Reading Output.....	459
User, Group and Default Configurations.....	460
Trunk (Vlink) Configurations.....	466
Central Server Configurations.....	466
HTTP Server Configurations.....	467
Database Configurations.....	469
Server Configurations.....	470
Client Configurations.....	474
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>474</b>
Using the Troubleshooter.....	474
Clients Can't Establish Connection.....	475
Error: Session Timeout During Ascp Transfers.....	476
Node API Transfers of Many Small Files Fails.....	477
Logs Overwritten Before Transfer Completes.....	477
Disabling SELinux.....	478
<b>Appendix.....</b>	<b>478</b>
Restarting Aspera Services.....	478
Docroot vs. File Restriction.....	479
Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices.....	480
Securing the Systems that Run Aspera Software.....	481
Securing the Aspera Applications.....	486
Securing Content in your Workflow.....	493
Testing and Optimizing Transfer Performance.....	495
aclean Reference.....	498
Create an SSL Certificate (Apache).....	499
Enable SSL (Apache).....	501
Log Files.....	502
Preserving IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs of Transferred Files.....	506
Connecting to IBM Aspera Shares from the GUI.....	506
HST Server Web UI (Deprecated).....	507
Configuring the Apache Server to Host the HST Server Web UI.....	507
Configuring your Web UI Settings.....	510

Customize the Appearance of the Web UI.....	512
Testing the Web UI.....	512
Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Fallback.....	515
Product Limitations.....	521

**Technical Support..... 521**

**Legal Notice..... 521**



# Introduction

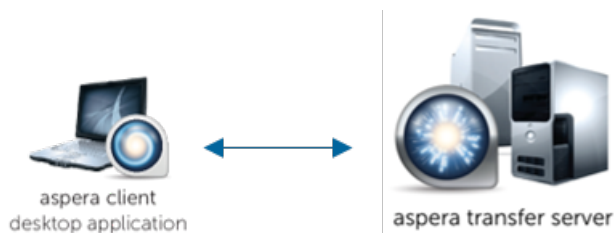
---

Thanks for choosing Aspera and welcome to the world of unbelievably fast and secure data transfer.

## The Basics

Aspera high-speed transfers begin when an Aspera client authenticates to an Aspera server and requests a transfer. If the client user has authorization, then transfer tools are launched on the client and server and the transfer proceeds.

For example, an IBM Aspera Desktop Client user connects to an IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server and initiates a transfer:



Depending on the user's transfer request, files and folders can be transferred to the server from the client (uploaded) or transferred to the client from the server (downloaded). The source and destination can be cloud storage, an NFS or CIFS mount, and IBM Spectrum Scale storage, to name a few.

## What is the Server?

The Aspera server receives transfer requests from Aspera clients, determines if the user has permission to access the server and authorization to the target area of the file system (source or destination with read or write access), and participates in transfers. The server can be:

- an on-premises installation of HST Server, IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Endpoint (which permits one client connection),
- a HST Server installed as part of IBM Aspera Faspex, or
- an HST Server deployed in object storage as an IBM Aspera On Demand instance, an IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service node, or an IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager node.

## What is the Client?

The Aspera client is the program that requests a transfer with the Aspera server. Aspera applications that can act as clients include:

- Desktop Client,
- IBM Aspera Drive,
- IBM Aspera Connect,
- IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface,
- HST Server and HST Endpoint

## What is FASP?

At the heart of your Aspera ecosystem are the FASP transfer engines Ascp and Ascp 4. Ascp maximizes data transport over any network and is particularly suited to large files. It is a powerful command-line tool and also drives transfers started in the GUI.

Ascp 4 is another command-line transfer tool that is optimized for both large files and transfers of thousands to millions of small files, handling large amounts of file metadata as part of the high-speed transfer.

Both Ascp and Ascp 4 are installed and enabled with your installation of HST Server, HST Endpoint, and Desktop Client.

## The Aspera Transfer Server

Your Aspera transfer server is a powerful, customizable hub for your high speed transfer activity. Configuration settings allow you to control which clients have access for uploading or downloading data, how much bandwidth their transfers can use, the priority of those transfers, and how data is secured during and after transfer. The transfer queue can be managed on the fly, enabling you to adjust as priorities change. You can also monitor transfers and receive email notifications when transfer sessions or individual file transfers start and stop.

## The Aspera Server GUI

The Aspera desktop GUI is primarily a client transfer tool, but it also offers a user-friendly interface for managing users and configuring your server on supported platforms (Windows, Linux, macOS). Security settings, bandwidth use policies, and file handling rules can all be set in the GUI. Configurations can be applied to all users (globally), to groups, or to individual users.

## HST Server Web Portal

Your HST Server can be made even more accessible to clients by hosting a web-based storage directory. Authorized clients can browse files by using any modern web browser, and transfer using the free, automatically-installed Connect.

## Asconfigurator: The Aspera Configuration Tool

If you are unfamiliar with the XML formatting required for your Aspera server's configuration file, or need to configure settings that are not available in the GUI, you can edit your configuration with confidence by using `asconfigurator`. These commands ensure that the XML structure is correctly maintained when you add or change settings.

## Tap into the Aspera Ecosystem

If you have a variety of data storage systems and internal and external customers who need access to the content in that storage, HST Server can be incorporated into a scalable Aspera data transfer ecosystem that meets your needs. Your Aspera server can be monitored and managed by IBM Aspera Console, and added as a node to IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, IBM Aspera on Cloud, and IBM Aspera Application for Microsoft SharePoint.

## The Aspera Client Transfer Tools

Your installation includes the following transfer tools, some of which require an additional license for activation.

### The Aspera Client GUI

The Aspera desktop GUI offers a simple, intuitive way to create connections with Aspera servers, and to start and manage your high-speed transfers. The transfer job queue shows real-time progress and allows on-the-fly reordering and bandwidth control.

### The FASP Transfer Engines: `ascp` and `ascp4`

These command line tools enable you to run transfers to any server to which you have access, and to customize the transfers (within the parameters set by the server). They are scriptable, supporting unattended data transfer and custom pre- and post-transfer file processing.

### Hot Folders: Automatic Data Transfer in the GUI

Sending or receiving files can be even easier and faster by using Hot Folders. Available only on Windows, you can set up a Hot Folder to watch for and automatically transfer any new files that are added to that folder. Automatically send files to a server as they are added to a folder on your own desktop, or receive files as they are added to a folder on the server. Transfers use `Ascp` and are easily managed from the GUI.

### Watch Folders: Automatic Content Delivery at Any Scale

Using `asperawatchd` and Watch Folders creates a powerful, efficient file system monitoring and automatic transfer tool that can comfortably handle millions of files and "growing" sources. Automatically transfer files as they are added to a source folder. With a REST API interface, you have full programmatic control for custom, automatic transfer processing.

Watch Folders offer the same transfer and bandwidth management options as `ascp`, and can be monitored and managed through Console. Watch Folders are enabled in your HST Server or HST Endpoint.

### IBM Aspera Sync: Directory Synchronization at the Speed of FASP

When everyone needs to see the same files or you need to be sure that every file is replicated, Aspera Sync provides a high-speed tool to do it. Unique among Aspera's transfer tools, Aspera Sync supports bidirectional synchronization for optimum collaboration and consistency between computers.

Aspera Sync uses efficient file system monitoring and change detection to minimize redundant data transfer and to reduce database storage requirements. Aspera Sync offers the same transfer and bandwidth management options as `ascp`, and can be monitored and managed through Console.

Aspera Sync is installed with your HST Server and HST Endpoint, but both the client and server require a Aspera Sync-enabled license.

## Installation and Upgrades

---

Before you install the current release, review the following information about system preparation for upgrades or downgrades, installation instructions, and product security configuration.

For information about system requirements, see your release notes.

### Before Upgrading or Downgrading

---

When upgrading (or downgrading) HST Server, Aspera recommends the following preparation to ensure a smooth process, minimal transfer disruption, and peace-of-mind that your original configuration is backed up in case of any problems.

#### Upgrading

- The HST Server installer automatically checks for an older version of the product on your system. If an older version is found, the installer automatically removes it before installing the new version.
- Although the installer performs your upgrade automatically, Aspera highly recommends completing the tasks below before upgrading. If you do not follow these steps, you risk installation errors or losing your former configuration settings.
- You cannot upgrade directly between different Aspera transfer products (such as from HST Endpoint or Desktop Client to HST Server). To upgrade, you need to back up the configuration, uninstall the product, and perform a fresh install of the new version of the product.
- When upgrading from Connect Server versions older than 3.2.1, the Connect Server system-level security settings are not preserved and must be reconfigured.

#### Downgrading

Older installers do not check for newer versions of the application. You must prepare your machine as described below then uninstall the newer version before continuing with your downgrade.

**Note:** Installers of versions 3.7.4 and older do not support `systemd`. When downgrading to one of these versions on an OS that uses `systemd`, you must manually start Aspera services because the installer cannot start them automatically. Run the following commands to start the services:

```
# systemctl start asperacentral
# systemctl start asperahttpd
# systemctl start asperarund
# systemctl start asperanoded
```

Newer versions of the Redis database are not compatible with older versions of the application. Your downgrade process depends on whether a backup of the older Redis DB is available, either as a separate backup file or as part of your backup of the `var` directory from the older version.

- **With a backup:** Follow the steps below to prepare your machine. Uninstall the application (for instructions, see [Uninstalling](#) on page 25). Copy the older Redis DB file into the `var` directory before installing the older (downgrade) version.

```
/opt/aspera/var/
```

- **Without a backup:** Follow the steps below to prepare your machine. Uninstall the application (for instructions, see [Uninstalling](#) on page 25) and delete the `var` and `etc` directories from your machine. Then do a fresh installation of the older version. The configuration files in the `etc` directory may be compatible with older versions, but not all configurations may be read.

```
/opt/aspera/var/
```

```
/opt/aspera/etc/
```

### Preparing for an Upgrade or Downgrade

1. Verify the current version of HST Server.

The steps that are required to prepare for an upgrade depend on your version. To view the current product and version, click **Tools > License** in the GUI or run the following command:

```
# ascp -A
```

2. Review product release notes.

Review the release notes for the versions that were released since your current version. In particular, the **Breaking Changes** section highlights changes that may require you to adjust your workflow, configuration, or usage.

3. If you were using `asperawatchd` or Watch Folders, set a docroot or restriction for the user running those services, if it is not already set.

For more information on setting docroots or restrictions for users, see [Updating the Docroot or Restriction of a Running Watch Folder Service](#) on page 318. Ensure that the pathname being watched (the `source_dir` of the Watch Folder) is in the user's docroot or restriction.

4. If you were using `asperawatchd` or Watch Folders, prepare your Watch Folders for upgrade.

Due to changes in the way watches are managed as of 3.8.0, the entire watch hierarchy is re-transferred after upgrade unless one of the following actions is taken to prepare your system:

- a. Archive files in the source directory before upgrade. This prevents `asperawatchd` from considering all files in the source as new files and re-transferring them.
- b. Update the configuration of existing Watch Folders to set "overwrite" to NEVER. For instructions, see [Managing Watch Folders with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 301 or [Managing Watch Folders with the API](#) on page 312. After upgrade, Watch Folders only transfers files that do not exist at the target. Once the first drops complete, you can reset "overwrite" to your preferred setting.

5. If your product is enabled with an entitlement rather than a license, configure a longer timeout for the Aspera License Entitlement Engine (ALEE). This prevents disruptions during upgrade installation if your connection to the ALEE server is slow.

a) Open `/opt/aspera/alee/bin/asperalee-init.sh`.

b) Locate the line in which `JVM_OPTIONS` are declared and modify the line to add the timeout options (new text in bold):

```
JVM_OPTIONS="-Xmx64M -Xms8M -Dhttp.connect_timeout=20000 -  
Dhttp.socket_timeout=60000 -Dlocback.configurationFile=...
```

This sets the connect timeout to 20 seconds and the socket timeout to 60 seconds.

c) Restart the ALEE service:

```
# /opt/aspera/alee/bin/asperalee-init.sh restart
```

6. Stop or allow to complete any FASP transfers that were initiated by the computer that you are upgrading. FASP transfers cannot proceed during your Aspera product upgrade.

- Close the application GUI.
- Stop (and resume after upgrade) or allow to complete any Ascp, Ascp 4, or Aspera Sync transfers in the command line.

7. If your node is used by IBM Aspera on Cloud, back up the entire Redis database to migrate your AoC data.

Stop asperanoded and create the backup file by running the following commands:

```
# systemctl stop asperanoded
# /opt/aspera/bin/asredis -p 31415 BGREWRITEAOF
```

The backup is stored as `appendonly.aof` in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/var/appendonly.aof
```

8. Back up configuration and settings files.

These files are found in the `etc` and `var` folders.

- `/opt/aspera/etc/` (contains server configuration, web configuration, user settings, license info)
- `/opt/aspera/var/` (contains Pre- and Post-Processing scripts, HST Serverweb UI (deprecated) settings)

9. Back up the Redis database.

The Redis database is backed up as part of backing up the `var` directory, but Aspera recommends backing it up separately as well, particularly if it is stored on a different machine.

```
# sudo /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -b /filepath/database.backup
```

10. If you used the HST Server web UI (deprecated), back up its customization files.

Back up the following folder, which you can use as a template to modify the new one after installation:

```
/opt/aspera/var/webtools/
```

11. If you modified the daemon startup scripts for Aspera Central and `asperanoded` (for example, as part of an Aspera API integration), back up the modified files. These files are overwritten during an upgrade and you will need to copy your modifications into the new files after upgrading.

12. If upgrading from version 2.1.x: Update the configuration file version number.

If you are upgrading from Connect Server version 2.1.x and have HTTP Fallback configured, avoid upgrading errors by modifying the `aspera.conf` version number. Open `aspera.conf` with a text editor run with admin privileges:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Remove the `version="2"` from the opening tag `<CONF>`:

```
<CONF version="2">
...
```

13. If upgrading from version 2.0.1 and earlier: Back up and restore web UI (deprecated) authentication information.

If the existing installation is version 2.0.1 or below, you may need to restore the HST Server authentication information after the installation. Back up this file:

```
/var/opt/aspera/webpasswd
```

After the upgrade, you can restore the file to the following directory:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/
```

## Installing HST Server

To install HST Server, log into your computer with root permissions.

**Important:** If this is a product upgrade, review all prerequisites described in [Before Upgrading or Downgrading](#) on page 11.

1. Download the HST Server installer.

Use the credentials provided to your organization by Aspera to access:

<https://downloads.asperasoft.com/en/downloads/4>

If you need help determining your firm's access credentials, contact your Aspera account manager.

2. For product upgrades, ensure you have prepared your system to upgrade to a newer version.

Although the installer performs your upgrade automatically, Aspera *highly recommends* completing the tasks described in [Before Upgrading or Downgrading](#) on page 11. If you do not follow these steps, you risk installation errors or losing your configuration settings.

3. Run the installer

Run the following commands with the admin permissions. Replace the product version with that of your package.

OS	Commands
RedHat, zLinux, CentOS	<pre>\$ rpm -Uvh /path_to_installer/aspera-hsts-version.rpm</pre> <p><b>Note:</b> If your Linux OS is a minimal clean system, ensure that all the required dependencies are installed with your Aspera application by installing the product with a yum install:</p> <pre>\$ yum --nogpgcheck install /path_to_installer/aspera-hsts-version.rpm</pre>
Debian	<pre>\$ dpkg -i /path_to_installer/aspera-entsrv-version.deb</pre>

On some CentOS 7 and Fedora systems, you may see the following message in the output of the installation process:

```
To complete the Connect Server Installation:
- Install the Data::Dumper Perl module
- Install the Digest::MD5 Perl module
```

This indicates that the Perl modules Digest::MD5 and/or Data::Dumper are absent, but they are required to complete the HST Server installation. To prevent this error, or to complete the installation, run the following commands:

```
# yum install perl-Digest-MD5
# yum install perl-Data-Dumper
```

4. Installation troubleshooting.

If the installer freezes during installation, another Aspera product might be running on your computer. To stop all FASP transfer-related applications and connections, see [Before Upgrading or Downgrading](#) on page 11.

5. Install the license or set up your entitlement, depending on your account type (you only do one).

**To Install a License:**

The license can be installed by using the GUI or from the command line.

- **GUI:** Launch the application by running the following command as root:

```
# asperascp
```

If this is a fresh install, an **Enter License** window appears. Either click **Import License File** and select the license file, or click **Paste License Text** to copy-and-paste the license file's content. The license information will appear in the window. Verify that it is correct and click **Close**.

- **Terminal:** Create the following file:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera-license
```

Copy and paste your license key string into it, then save and close the file. To verify the license information, run the following command:

```
$ ascp -A
```

To update your product license after the installation, see [Updating the Product License From the Command Line](#) on page 25.

**To Set Up an Entitlement:**

Run the following commands to start the ALEE service, restart asperanoded, and register your entitlement:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asalee-config.sh enable
# /opt/aspera/bin/alee-admin register customer_ID entitlement_ID
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

The output returns the Customer ID and License ID, what type of license is enabled, the license status, and when the license server was last reached.

6. If you plan to use Watch Folders, enable the services that allow asperarund (the service that manages Watch Folders) to automatically start after a reboot.

For Debian OS, run the following commands:

```
# systemctl enable systemd-networkd
# systemctl enable systemd-networkd-wait-online.service
```

For RedHat, zLinux, and CentOS, run the following commands:

```
# systemctl enable NetworkManager
# systemctl enable NetworkManager-wait-online.service
```

7. Edit OpenSSH authentication methods.

- a) Open your SSH Server configuration file from `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` with a text editor.
- b) To allow public key authentication, set `PubkeyAuthentication` to `yes`. To allow password authentication, set `PasswordAuthentication` to `yes`.

For example,

```
...
PubkeyAuthentication yes
PasswordAuthentication yes
...
```

- c) Save the file then reload the SSH service.
- d) Restart the SSH server to apply new settings.

*Restarting your SSH server does not affect currently connected users.*

```
# systemctl restart sshd.service
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service sshd restart
```

e) To further secure your SSH Server, see [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19.

8. Secure your server or update your existing configuration.

9. If using, set up the HST Server web UI (deprecated), or verify your web UI settings after an upgrade.

Additional steps are required to configure the web UI, see [HST Server Web UI \(Deprecated\)](#) on page 507.

## Upgrade Follow up

1. If you were using `asperawatchd` or Watch Folders in version 3.6.1 or earlier, manually migrate any services that are run by a user other than root.

The installer does not automatically migrate `asperawatchd` or `asperawatchfolderd` for users other than root, and you must manually start their services after upgrade:

a) Confirm that the user has a `docroot` set in `aspera.conf`.

To view the user's settings, run:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -u user
```

If a value is not set for `absolute` in the `docroot` option set section, set a `docroot` by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

b) Confirm that the user has permissions to write to the log directory.

To view the log directory settings, run:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

Look for the values for `rund_log_dir` and `watch_log_dir`. If they are set to `"AS_NULL"`, then the logs write to the default directory (`/var/log/messages`).

c) Start `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` for the user by running the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchfolderd --user username
```

2. If you are updating an AoC node, restore the AoC data to the Redis database.

a) Stop `asperanoded`.

```
# systemctl stop asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded stop
```

b) Flush existing data from the Redis database on the new node.

```
#/opt/aspera/bin/asredis -p 31415 FLUSHALL
```



- c) Load the backup database file into the new node database.

```
# cat /opt/aspera/bin/appendonly.aof | asredis --pipe -p 31415
```

- d) Restart asperanoded.

```
# systemctl start asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded start
```

3. If the Redis database is run on another system: Update the KV store keys to the latest format.

The local Redis database schema is automatically updated by the installer, but non-local Redis databases must be manually updated by running the following command as root:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --db-update
```

4. If you have a backup of modified daemon start up scripts for `asperacentral` and `asperanoded`, copy your modifications into the new versions of these scripts. Restart the services to activate your changes.

5. **For all upgrades:** Validate `aspera.conf`.

The `aspera.conf` file is not overwritten during an upgrade and your configurations are preserved. However, the XML formatting, parameters, and acceptable values may have changed between your old version and new version. Run the following command to check `aspera.conf` for XML form and valid configuration settings:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Configuring the Firewall

HST Server requires access through specific ports. If you cannot establish the connection, review your local corporate firewall settings and remove the port restrictions accordingly.

### Firewall Configuration for Entitlements

If your transfer server operates with an entitlement and not a license, you must ensure that the Aspera License Entitlement Engine (ALEE) can communicate with the Aspera metering and billing system. To do so:

- Allow outbound traffic on TCP port 443.
- Ensure access to the following IP addresses (that is, whitelist them):

169.48.106.192/26
169.61.54.112/29
169.60.151.232/31
169.60.129.66/31
169.60.197.0/26
169.61.233.80/29
169.46.4.68/31

169.46.4.70/31
169.48.249.64/26
169.48.226.120/31
169.48.236.50/31

## HST Server

Configure your firewall to allow the following ports:

- **Inbound TCP/22 (or other TCP port set for SSH connections):** The port for SSH connections.

**Important:** Aspera strongly recommends running the SSH server on a non-default port (allowing inbound SSH connections on TCP/33001, and disallowing inbound connections on TCP/22) to ensure that your server remains secure from SSH port scan attacks. For instructions on how to change your SSH port, see [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19.

If you have a legacy customer base that uses TCP/22 then you can allow inbound connections on both ports. See [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19 for instructions.

The firewall on the server side must allow the open TCP port to reach HST Server. No servers are listening on UDP ports. When a transfer is initiated by an Aspera client, the client opens an SSH session to the SSH server on the designated TCP port and negotiates the UDP port for the data transfer.

- **Inbound UDP/33001:** The port for FASP transfers, which use UDP/33001 by default, although the server may also choose to run FASP transfers on another port.
- **Inbound and outbound TCP/8080 and TCP 8443 (or other TCP ports set for HTTP/HTTPS fallback):** The ports for the HTTP fallback. If only HTTP or HTTPS is used, you need to open only that port. For more information on configuring HTTP fallback ports, see [Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Fallback](#) on page 515.
- **Inbound TCP/80 and TCP/443:** The ports for the HST Server web UI (deprecated), for HTTP and/or HTTPS web access. If only HTTP or HTTPS is used, you only need to open that port.
- **Local firewall:** If you have a local firewall on your server (like `iptables`), verify that it is not blocking your SSH and FASP transfer ports (such as TCP/UDP 33001). If you are using Vlinks, you will need to allow the Vlink UDP port (55001, by default) for multicast traffic. For additional information on setting up Vlinks, see [Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links \(GUI\)](#) on page 55.

## Remote Client Machines

Typically, consumer and business firewalls allow direct outbound connections from client computers on TCP and UDP, and no configuration is required for Aspera transfers. In the special case of firewalls blocking direct outbound connections, usually with proxy servers for web browsing, the following ports must be allowed:

- **Outbound TCP/33001:** Allow outbound connections from the Aspera client on the TCP port (TCP/33001 by default, when connecting to a Windows server, or on another non-default port for other server operating systems).
- **Outbound UDP/33001 (or a range, if required):** Allow outbound connections from the Aspera client on the FASP UDP port (33001, by default).
- **Local firewall:** If you have a local firewall on the client (such as `iptables`), verify that it is not blocking your SSH and FASP transfer ports (such as TCP/UDP 33001).

**Important:** Multiple concurrent clients cannot connect to a Windows Aspera server on the same UDP port. Similarly, multiple concurrent clients that are utilizing two or more user accounts cannot connect to a macOS, FreeBSD, or Isilon Aspera server on the same UDP port. If connecting to these servers, you will need to allow a range of outbound connections from the Aspera client (that have been opened incrementally on the server side, starting at UDP/33001). For example, you may need to allow outbound connections on UDP/33001 through UDP/33010 if 10 concurrent connections are allowed by the server.

## Securing Your SSH Server

Keeping your data secure is critically important. Aspera strongly recommends taking additional steps to set up and configure your SSH server to protect against common attacks.

These steps include the following:

- Changing the TCP port.
- Configuring transfer server authentication.

Aspera also recommends restricting user access to the server, as described in the user setup instructions later in this guide.

### Changing and Securing the TCP Port

SSH servers, including the OpenSSH suite included with your product, listen for incoming connections on TCP Port 22 by default. As such, Port 22 is subject to numerous unauthorized login attempts by hackers who attempt to access unsecured servers. An effective deterrent is to close Port 22 and run the service on a seemingly random port above 1024 (and up to 65535).

To standardize the port for use in Aspera transfers, Aspera recommends setting the TCP port to 33001 and closing TCP/22.

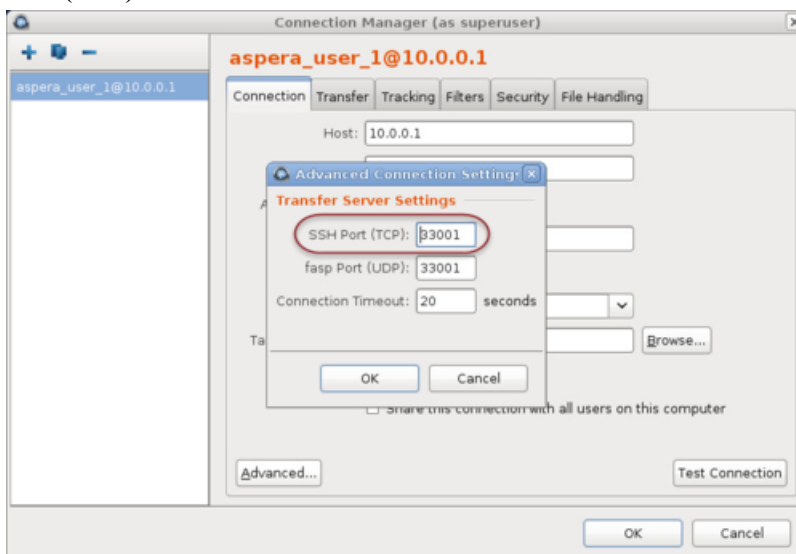
#### Prerequisites:

- Before changing the default port for SSH connections, verify with your network administrators that TCP/33001 is open.
- Before closing port TCP/22, notify users of the change.

#### Notifying Users - How to Specify TCP/33001

Aspera recognizes that disabling the default SSH connection port (TCP/22) might affect your clients. When you change the port, ensure that you advise your users on how to configure the new port number, from the GUI (if available and used) and from the command line.

- **GUI:** To change the SSH port in Desktop Client, click **Connections** and select the entry for the server whose ports are changing. On the **Connection** tab, click **Show Advanced Settings** and enter the SSH port number in the **SSH Port (TCP)** field.



- **Command line:** Clients running FASP transfers from the command line can specify the port by using the `-P 33001` option.

#### Changing to TCP/33001

The following steps require root privileges.

1. Open the SSH configuration file.

```
/etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

2. Add the TCP/33001 SSH port and close TCP/22.

Comment out the line for "Port 22" and add a line for "Port 33001":

```
#Port 22
Port 33001
```

**Note:** If you are using the HST Server web UI (deprecated), you must also update the `SshPort` value in the `<WEB...>` section of `aspera.conf`. For details, see [Configuring your Web UI Settings](#) on page 510.

Once this setting takes effect:

- Aspera clients must set the transfer port to 33001 in the GUI or specify `-P 33001` for command line transfers.
- Server administrators should use `ssh -p 33001` to access the server through SSH.

3. Disable non-admin SSH tunneling.

These instructions require that OpenSSH 4.4 or newer is installed on your system in order to use the `Match` directive. `Match` allows you to selectively override certain configuration options when specific criteria (based on user, group, hostname, or address) are met.

Open your SSH Server configuration file, `sshd_config`, with a text editor. Add the following lines to the end of the file (or modify them if they already exist):

```
AllowTcpForwarding no
Match Group root
AllowTcpForwarding yes
```

Depending on your `sshd_config` file, you might have additional instances of `AllowTCPForwarding` that are set to the default `Yes`. Review your `sshd_config` file for other instances and disable if necessary.

Disabling TCP forwarding does not improve security unless users are also denied shell access, because they can still install their own forwarders. Review your user and file permissions, and see [Setting Up Transfer Users \(Terminal\)](#) on page 77 for instructions on modifying user shell access.

4. Update authentication methods

Public key authentication can prevent brute-force SSH attacks if all password-based authentication methods are disabled. For this reason, Aspera recommends disabling password authentication in the `sshd_config` file and enabling private/public key authentication.

**Note:** Before proceeding, configure at least one non-root, non-transfer user with a public key to use to manage the server. This is because in other server-securing steps, root login is disabled and Aspera recommends that transfer users are restricted to `aspsell`, which does not allow interactive login. This user and public key is what you use to access and manage the server as an administrator.

To configure authentication methods, add or uncomment `PubkeyAuthentication yes` and comment out `PasswordAuthentication yes`.

```
PubkeyAuthentication yes
#PasswordAuthentication yes
PasswordAuthentication no
```

**Note:** If you choose to leave password authentication enabled, be sure to advise account creators to use strong passwords and set `PermitEmptyPasswords` to "no".

```
PermitEmptyPasswords no
```

## 5. Disable root login.



**CAUTION:** This step disables root access. Make sure that you have at least one user account with sudo privileges before continuing, otherwise you may not have access to administer your server.

By default, OpenSSH allows root logins. However, disabling root access helps maintain a more secure server. Aspera recommends disabling root access by commenting out `PermitRootLogin yes` in the `sshd_config` file and adding `PermitRootLogin No`.

```
#PermitRootLogin yes
PermitRootLogin no
```

Administrators can use the `su` command when root privileges are necessary.

## 6. Restart the SSH server to apply new settings.

*Restarting your SSH server does not affect currently connected users.*

```
# systemctl restart sshd.service
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service sshd restart
```

## 7. Review your logs periodically for attacks.

You can view the state of active TCP connections by running the `netstat` command:

```
# netstat -an -p tcp
```

Typical output shows multiple, different IP addresses connected to specific ports:

TCP	10.0.111.200:53402	72.21.81.109:80	CLOSE_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:53865	173.194.202.188:5228	ESTABLISHED
TCP	10.0.111.200:53876	10.0.9.16:445	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:55164	208.85.40.20:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	10.0.111.200:55335	207.200.35.240:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	10.0.111.200:55444	67.199.110.81:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	10.0.111.200:56278	104.24.11.90:443	ESTABLISHED

If your server is under attack, you might see output similar to the following, in which the same IP address attempts to connect to contiguous ports (hundreds or thousands of times) and the connection is timing out (reporting a status of `TIME_WAIT`):

TCP	10.0.111.200:53402	72.21.81.109:60974	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:53865	72.21.81.109:60975	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:53876	72.21.81.109:60976	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:55164	72.21.81.109:60977	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:55335	72.21.81.109:60978	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:55444	72.21.81.109:60979	TIME_WAIT
TCP	10.0.111.200:56278	72.21.81.109:60980	TIME_WAIT

If you see this, review your logs to determine the source and cause.

Open your `syslog`, which is located in `/var/log/auth.log` or `/var/log/secure`, depending on your system configuration.

Look for invalid users in the log, especially a series of login attempts with common user names from the same address, usually in alphabetical order. For example:

```
...
Mar 10 18:48:02 sku sshd[1496]: Failed password for invalid user alex from
1.2.3.4 port 1585 ssh2
```

```
...
Mar 14 23:25:52 sku sshd[1496]: Failed password for invalid user alice
from 1.2.3.4 port 1585 ssh2
...
```

If you identify attacks, take the following steps:

- Double-check the SSH security settings in this topic.
- Report attackers to your ISP's email address for abuse reports (often `abuse@your_isp.com`).

## Configuring Transfer Server Authentication With the Host-Key Fingerprint

To prevent server impersonation and man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks, Aspera clients can verify the server's authenticity before starting a transfer by comparing the trusted SSH host key fingerprint (obtained directly from the server admin or through an Aspera client web application) with the host key fingerprint returned when the connection is made. In order to do this, the host key fingerprint or path must be set in the server's `aspera.conf`.

1. Set the host key fingerprint or path in the transfer server's `aspera.conf` file.

**Note:** Server SSL certificate validation (HTTPS) is enforced if a fingerprint is specified in `aspera.conf` and HTTP fallback is enabled. If the transfer "falls back" to HTTP and the server has a self-signed certificate, validation fails. The client requires a properly signed certificate.

If you set the host key path, the fingerprint is automatically extracted from the key file and you do not extract it manually.

### Retrieving and setting the host key fingerprint:

- a) Retrieve the server's SHA-1 fingerprint.

```
# cat /etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub | awk '{print $2}' | base64 -d |
shasum
```

- b) Set the SSH host key fingerprint in `aspera.conf`. (Go to the next step to set the host key path instead).

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_server_data;ssh_host_key_fingerprint,fingerprint"
```

This command creates a line similar to the following example of the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf`:

```
<ssh_host_key_fingerprint>7qdOwebGGeDeN7Wv+2dP3HmWfP3
</ssh_host_key_fingerprint>
```

**Setting the host key path:** To set the SSH host key path instead of the fingerprint, from which the fingerprint will be extracted automatically, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;ssh_host_key_path,ssh_key_filepath"
```

This command creates a line similar to the following in the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf`:

```
<ssh_host_key_path>/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub
</ssh_host_key_path>
```

2. Restart the node service to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## Testing a Locally Initiated Transfer

To make sure the software is working properly, set up a connection with the Aspera demo server and test downloads and uploads.

Linux users may use the GUI or command line, and instructions for both are shown below.

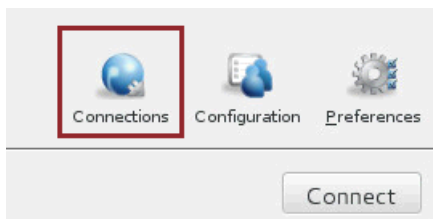
1. Launch the application.

Run the following command in a terminal window:

```
$ asperascp
```

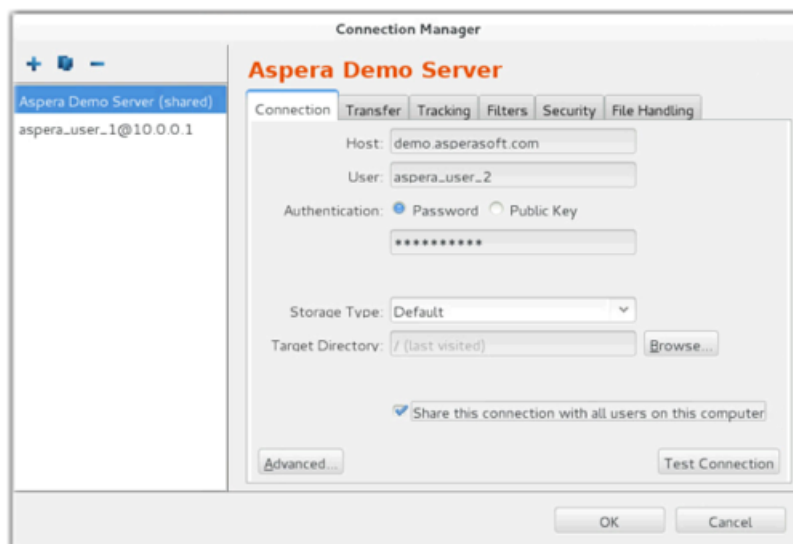
2. Add the Aspera demo server in the Connection Manager.

Click **Connections**:



In the **Connection Manager**, click **+** to add a new connection, click **OK** to create a standard connection, and enter the following information, leaving the other options with their default values or blank:

Field	Value
Host	demo.asperasoft.com
User	aspera
Authentication (Password)	demoaspera




3. Test your connection to the remote server.

Click **Test Connection** to determine whether you can reach the remote server with the settings you configured. An alert box opens and reports whether the connection is successful.


4. Connect to the demo server and download test files.

From the main window, select the demo server entry and click the **Connect** button.

On the server file browser (right panel), browse to the folder `/aspera-test-dir-large`, select the file `100MB`, and click  to download it to your local machine.

You should see the session appear in the **Transfer** pane.

5. Upload to the demo server.

Select the same file (`100MB`) on the local file browser (left panel), go to the folder `/Upload` on the demo server, and click  to upload it.

6. Download test files from the demo server.

Use the following command to download, press `y` to accept the server's key, and enter the password `demoaspera` when prompted:

```
# ascp -T aspera@demo.asperasoft.com:aspera-test-dir-large/100MB /tmp/
```

The transfer command is based on the following settings:

Item	Value
demo server address	demo.asperasoft.com
Login account	aspera
password	demoaspera
Test file	/aspera-test-dir-large/100MB
Download location	/tmp/
Transfer settings	Fair transfer policy, target rate 10M, minimum rate 1M, encryption disabled.

You should see a message similar to the following:

```
100MB          28%  28MB  2.2Gb/s  01:02 ETA
```

This message provides the following information:

Item	Description
100 MB	The name of the file that is being transferred.
28%	The percentage completed.
28 MB	The amount transferred.
2.2 Gbps	The current transfer rate.
01:02 ETA	The estimated time the transfer will complete.

7. Upload test files to the demo server.

Run the command to upload the same file (`100MB`) back to the demo server, to its `/Upload` directory. Enter the password `demoaspera` when prompted:

```
# ascp -T /tmp/100MB aspera@demo.asperasoft.com:Upload/
```



## Updating the Product License From the Command Line

---

Update your product license from the command line.

1. Open the license file with write permission.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera-license
```

2. Replace the existing license key string with the new one, and save the file.
3. To confirm that the new license information has been updated correctly, run `ascp -A` to display the current license information.

```
# ascp -A
```

4. If you are using the Node API, reload asperanoded.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --reload
```

## Updating the Product License From the GUI

---

Update your product license from the GUI.

1. Start HST Server if it is not already running.

Run `asperascp` as root to start the application:

```
# asperascp
```

2. Click **Tools > License** to open the license window.
3. Update the license file:
  - either by clicking **Import License File** and selecting the license file
  - or by using **Paste License Text** to paste the contents of the new license file
4. To confirm that the new license information has been updated correctly, run `ascp -A` to display the current license information.

```
# ascp -A
```

5. If you are using the Node API, reload asperanoded.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --reload
```

## Uninstalling

---

HST Server can be uninstalled without removing existing configuration files.

1. If you are uninstalling in order to upgrade your Aspera product, review the upgrade preparation steps in [Before Upgrading or Downgrading](#) on page 11.
2. Close or stop the following applications and services:
  - FASP transfers
  - SSH connections
  - user interface

- Uninstall HST Server by running the following command:

Platform	Command
RedHat, CentOS	# rpm -e aspera-entsrv
Debian	# dpkg -P aspera-entsrv

**Note:** This process does not remove Aspera configuration files. If you reinstall an Aspera product, these configuration files are applied to the new installation.

## Quick Start for HST Server and Client

---

This quick start provides a simple, and most basic set of instructions for setting up an HST server and an Aspera client, and for transferring files between them.



### CAUTION:

Do not use these instructions for a production server (or one that is not behind your own firewall), as they do not cover the required security features. For production systems, or ones that would otherwise be vulnerable to attack, follow the full set of instructions provided for installation and usage in this guide, and in the guide for your Aspera client application.

## Set up Server

---

To set up an HST Server, install the server software and the license or entitlement, make sure that an SSH server is running on the machine, and create system user with a writeable directory that will be used for transfers.

- Install the HST Server, and license or entitlement.

For installation instructions, see [Installing HST Server](#) on page 14. For this quick start, you may ignore everything besides the server and license or entitlement installation.

- If your host and client machines are not on the same network, configure your firewall so that the client machine's IP address is accessible.
- Make sure that an SSH server is running on the server machine.
- Select an existing system user account, or create a new one, to use for transfers.

When you create a new connection on the client, you will use the username, password, and IP address to configure and test the connection.

- In the user's home directory, create a directory to use for transfers.
- Make sure that the directory is readable, and writeable by an external users (*other*).
- Add one or more files to the directory, to use for transfers.

## Set up Client

---

To set up an Aspera client, install the client software and the license or entitlement, and create a system user with a writeable directory that will be used for transfers.

- Install one of the Aspera clients, and license or entitlement.

For example, install the Desktop Client, which will be used as an example in the rest of these instructions. A second HST Server installation can also be used, as the transfer UI is the same. Use the simplest installation method available for your system. If you need direction, see the guide for your client. (or server).



**CAUTION:**

Do not install a client on the same machine as the HST Server.

2. If your host and client machines are not on the same network, configure your firewall so that the server's machine's IP address is accessible.
3. Select an existing system user account, or create a new one, to use for transfers.
4. In the user's home directory, create a directory to use for transfers.
5. Make sure that the directory it is readable, and writeable by an external users (*other*).
6. Add one or more files to the directory, to use for transfers.
7. Test an SSH connection from the client to the server machine.

If you cannot make an SSH connection with the server machine, you will not be able to transfer files.

## Configure and Test a Connection

---

To configure transfer connection between your client and the transfer server, you use the client's **Connection Manager** to record the server's IP address, and the name and password for the user account on the server that you set up for transfers. You then initiate a simple test operation, and save the configuration.

1. On the client machine, start the client with the command `asperascp`.
2. Select **Connections**.

The **Connection Manager** dialog opens.

3. Select the + option (in the upper left).

The **New Connection** pane appears.

4. Add the server's IP address.
5. Add the user name and password of the user (on the server) that is being used for transfers.
6. Click **Test Connection**.

The client should connect with the HST Server. If it does not, check the write permissions on the transfer directories, firewall settings (if necessary), and your SSH connection.

7. Click **OK** to save your connection configuration and close the **Connection Manager** dialog.

Your new connection is now listed under **Connection Name** in the client UI.

## Transfer Files

---

To transfer files between the client and server—for both downloads and uploads—you start the connection that you have created, use a simple file browser system to select the source and target of the transfer, and then initiate the transfer by clicking on an arrow icon.

1. From the Desktop Client UI, select your connection name and click **Connect**.

A file browser for the server's file system appears where the connections list had been.

2. To download a file from the server, navigate to the file on the server that you want to transfer.

Be sure that the filename is selected.

3. In the file browser on the left, navigate to and open the directory into which you want the file to be downloaded.
4. Click the left arrow between the file browsers to start the transfer.

The status window at the bottom of the UI provides information about each transfer that you make.

5. To upload a file from the client to the server, simply perform the same operation, but in the opposite direction.

## Get Started with an Aspera Transfer Server

---

As a server, HST Server is a remote endpoint that accepts authenticated connections from Aspera client applications and that participates as a source or destination for authorized transfers. Your server can also take the role of a client and connect to other Aspera servers to initiate transfers. The following steps describe how to prepare your system as a server.

1. Review the system requirements and install HST Server.

See [Installing HST Server](#) on page 14.

2. Secure your server.

For a compilation of Aspera-recommended security best practices, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.

- a) Configure your firewall (see [Configuring the Firewall](#) on page 17).
- b) Change and secure the TCP port (see [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19).
- c) Determine if you want to use server-side encryption at rest. See [Server-Side Encryption at Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 46 for instructions on configuring this in the GUI or [Server-Side Encryption-at-Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 120 for instructions on configuring this from the command line.

You can also restrict user access to your server, which is described in a later step.

3. Set up the HST Server web UI (deprecated), if using.

See [HST Server Web UI \(Deprecated\)](#) on page 507 for instructions.

4. Add users and configure their access.

Aspera client applications authenticate to the server using operating system accounts on the server. For example, if a remote client user, "marketing\_mgr" wants to transfer with the server, add marketing\_mgr as a system user on the server and then add marketing\_mgr as an Aspera transfer user. To secure your server, restrict marketing\_mgr's access to only certain directories on the server (set a docroot), set transfer permissions, and set the default shell as aspsshell.

- a) For instructions on adding users, assigning users to aspsshell, and setting a docroot, see [Setting Up Users](#) on page 32 for instructions using the GUI or [Setting Up Transfer Users \(Terminal\)](#) on page 77.
- b) If you prefer to have your users authenticate to the server using SSH keys rather than with passwords, gather their public keys and install them on the server. For instructions, see [Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server](#) on page 38.

5. Configure transfer settings and control bandwidth usage.

Aspera FASP transfers can be configured globally, by group, or by user. You can set bandwidth caps and limit the total number of transfers. For more information on user-specific settings, see [Transfer Server Configuration](#) on page 75 or [aspera.conf - Transfer Server Configuration](#) on page 115.

You can also set "virtual" bandwidth caps that can be assigned to incoming or outgoing transfers by group or by user. For more information, see [Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links \(GUI\)](#) on page 55 or [Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links \(Command Line\)](#) on page 103.

6. Set up file validation and processing, if needed.

You can protect your server against malicious software in uploaded files by using out-of-line file validation or inline file validation. For more information, see [Out-of-Transfer File Validation](#) on page 127 and [Inline File Validation](#) on page 130.

You can configure your server to run other customized scripts when an individual file transfer starts or stops, or when a transfer session starts or stops. For more information, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

7. If your server is installed on a virtual machine in object storage, update the configuration as required.

For more information, see [Configuring for Object Storage and HDFS](#).

8. Test that a remote client can access and transfer with your server.

For instructions, see [Testing a User-Initiated Remote Transfer](#) on page 39. If you have problems, review the topics in [Troubleshooting](#) on page 474.

Once you confirm that remote clients can access your server, your basic server set up is complete.

- If you want to automatically distribute files and folders to clients when they are added to a specific folder on the server, see [Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 242.
- If you want to enable server-based clients to synchronize files with your server, with the ability to synchronize bidirectionally, see [Aspera Sync](#) on page 327.

## Get Started as a Transfer Client

---

Aspera transfer clients connect to a remote Aspera transfer server and request a transfer with that server. Your Aspera application can be used as a client to initiate transfers with Aspera servers, as described in the following steps.

1. Configure transfer preferences.

You can configure your bandwidth usage, email notification, and proxy settings to apply to all transfers. For more information, see [Global Bandwidth Settings](#) on page 148 and [Enabling a Transfer Proxy or HTTP Proxy](#) on page 149.

2. Test a locally-initiated transfer to the Aspera demonstration server to confirm your installation and firewall configuration are operational.

For instructions, see [Testing a Locally Initiated Transfer](#) on page 23. This provides a simple walk through of how to set up a connection with a server and transfer.

3. Configure your email notification preferences.

You can receive emails when transfer sessions start and finish to keep up-to-date on your transfer progress. For more information, see [Configuring Transfer Notifications](#) on page 170.

4. If you need to authenticate to the remote server with an SSH key, create an SSH key and send the public key to the server admin.

For instructions on creating an SSH key, see [Creating SSH Keys in the GUI](#) on page 161 or [Creating SSH Keys \(Command Line\)](#) on page 216.

5. To run transfers in the GUI, create and configure a connection to the server.

For instructions, see [Adding and Editing Connections](#) on page 153. If required, configure a proxy ([Enabling a Transfer Proxy or HTTP Proxy](#) on page 149). You can also configure transfer notifications ([Scheduling and Customizing Transfers in Advanced Mode](#) on page 167).

Once your connection is configured, you can initiate transfers with the server. For instructions, see [Transferring Content](#) on page 164.

6. To run transfers from the command line, review the instructions for the Aspera command line clients.

Your Aspera product comes with two command line clients: `ascp` and `A4`. They are similar but have different capabilities. For a comparison, see [Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options](#) on page 221.

- For more information about `ascp`, see [Ascp Command Reference](#) on page 181 and [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196.
- For more information about `A4`, see [Ascp 4 Command Reference](#) on page 227 and [Ascp 4 Examples](#) on page 236.

Once you confirm that you can transfer with your server, your basic set up is complete.

- If you want to automatically distribute files and folders to clients when they are added to a specific folder on the server, see [Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 242.
- If you want to synchronize files with your server, with the ability to synchronize bidirectionally, see [Aspera Sync](#) on page 327. The `async` tool requires an additional license on each to run.

For a comparison of automatic transfer tools, see [Comparison of Aspera File Delivery and Synchronization Tools](#) on page 30.

## Comparison of Aspera File Delivery and Synchronization Tools

Your Aspera product includes several transfer tools that can be used for automatic file delivery and synchronization.

- **Hot Folders:** a Windows-only, GUI-managed automatic file delivery tool.
- **Watch Folders:** an automatic file delivery tool that is easily managed by using the GUI, Console, or the Node API.
- **Aspera Sync:** a multi-directional synchronization tool for when complete file system synchronization is required.

	Hot Folders	Watch Folders	Aspera Sync
Supported platforms	Windows only	Windows macOS Linux AIX Solaris Linux on z Systems BSD Isilon	Windows macOS Linux AIX Solaris Linux on z Systems BSD
Additional license required	No	No	Yes, a Aspera Sync-enabled license is required on both endpoints
Interface	Aspera desktop GUI	Aspera desktop GUI, Node API in any command line, command line on the Aspera client, or Console web UI.	Aspera client command line, Console web UI for management only (no creation)
Client applications	Desktop Client HST Endpoint HST Server	HST Endpoint HST Server	HST Endpoint HST Server Drive
Server configuration required	No	No (only need asperawatchd on server for pull Watch Folders)	Recommended
Create in Console	No, but you can monitor transfers	Yes, you can create, monitor, and manage	No, but you can monitor Aspera Sync jobs and their associated transfer sessions
Transfer modes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client to server (push)</li> <li>• Server to client (pull)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client to server (push)</li> <li>• Server to client (pull)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Client to server (push)</li> <li>• Server to client (pull)</li> <li>• Client and server (bidirectional)</li> </ul>
File delivery or synchronization	File delivery: Files and folders added to or modified within a Hot	File delivery: Files and folders added to or modified within a watch	Synchronization: All file system changes (additions, deletions,

	<b>Hot Folders</b>	<b>Watch Folders</b>	<b>Aspera Sync</b>
	Folder on the source are automatically sent to the destination folder. Files deleted from the source are not deleted on the destination.	folder on the source are automatically sent to the destination folder. Files deleted from the source are not deleted on the destination.	and modifications) are synchronized from source to destination (push or pull) or synchronized between source and destination (bidirectional).
File system monitoring	Windows operating system notifications.	File system snapshots collected by asperawatchd.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In continuous mode: file system notifications</li> <li>• In scan (on-demand) mode: Aspera Sync scans the file system on the source side and compares it to the Aspera Sync database</li> <li>• asperawatchd</li> </ul>
Transfer schedules	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediate (as soon as a file system change in the Hot Folder is detected)</li> <li>• On a user-specified schedule</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediate (as soon as a difference between snapshots is detected)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Immediate (in continuous mode or when using Aspera Sync with asperawatchd)</li> <li>• On a user-specified schedule (Aspera Sync run as a cron job)</li> </ul>
Growing file support	No	Yes (on HST Server)	No
Database space requirements	None	At least 2 GB free per 1 million files, 3 GB free per 1 million files on Windows	At least 2 GB free per 1 million files, 3 GB free per 1 million files on Windows
Best for	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic push and pull delivery with a simple GUI interface that does not require Console</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic push and pull delivery with a simple GUI interface that does not require Console</li> <li>• Managing and monitoring push delivery through Console</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Precise synchronization between two endpoints of all file system changes (including deletions)</li> <li>• Bidirectional synchronization</li> <li>• Very large file sets - up to 100 million items across thousands of directories</li> </ul>
Limitations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows only</li> <li>• GUI must remain open</li> <li>• In pull mode, pull files even if they are in use</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfer rate of millions of small files can become limited by the speed at which database metadata can be written</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous mode available only for Windows and Linux sources</li> <li>• Transfer rate of millions of small files can become limited by the speed at which database metadata can be written</li> </ul>

	Hot Folders	Watch Folders	Aspera Sync
More information	<a href="#">IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide for Windows</a>	<a href="#">Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service</a> on page 242	<a href="#">Aspera Sync</a> on page 327

## Server Set up Methods

---

Users, groups, and transfers can be configured in several ways, all of which modify the server configuration file `aspera.conf`.

- **In the GUI**

Click **Configuration** to open the **Configuration Manager**. For descriptions of the configuration settings available in the GUI, see [Set up Users and Groups in the GUI](#) on page 32 and [Configure HST Server in the GUI](#) on page 40.

- **Running `asconfigurator` commands**

Run `asconfigurator` commands from Terminal to automatically insert parameter settings as well-formed XML into `aspera.conf`. Use of `asconfigurator` commands is described in [Set up Users and Groups from the Command Line](#) on page 77 and [Configure the Server from the Command Line](#) on page 85.

- **Manually editing `aspera.conf`**

Open `aspera.conf` in a text editor with write permission and add or edit the text in XML format. Find `aspera.conf` in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

For templates of `aspera.conf` parameter settings, see [Set up Users and Groups from the Command Line](#) on page 77 and [Configure the Server from the Command Line](#) on page 85.

## Set up Users and Groups in the GUI

---

Aspera clients connect to HST Server by authenticating as a system user who is configured in the application. The user can also belong to a group that is configured in the application. Users and groups can be set up in the HST Server GUI.

### Setting Up Users

---

The HST Server uses system accounts to authenticate connections from Aspera clients. The system users must be added and configured as Aspera transfer users before clients can browse the server file system or run FASP transfers to and from the server. When creating transfer users, you can also specify user-specific settings, such as transfer bandwidth, docroot, and file handling. User configuration is an important part of securing your server. For a complete description, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.

**Note:** This topic describes setting up transfer user accounts with the GUI. If you are setting up users in a terminal, see [Setting Up Transfer Users \(Terminal\)](#) on page 77.

**Important Configuration Notes:**

- Some Aspera features require a docroot in URI format or require a file restriction instead of a docroot. For more information, see [Docroot vs. File Restriction](#) on page 479.



- If users connect to the server by providing IBM Aspera Shares credentials or by providing Node API credentials that are associated with the transfer user, changes to a user's configuration, such as their docroot, are not applied to the user until asperanoded is restarted. For instructions, see [Restarting Aspera Services](#) on page 478.

To configure a system user account as an Aspera transfer user:

1. To allow the user to access the HST Server web UI (deprecated), configure the user for Apache authentication.

In addition to SSH authentication, HST Server uses Apache's authentication to authorize web UI access. To set up a system user (`asp1` in this example) for Apache authentication, run the `htpasswd` command below.

**Note:** On the first run of `htpasswd`, you must use the `-c` option to create the file for credential storage, `webpasswd`. Do not use the `-c` option otherwise.

```
# htpasswd [-c ]/opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd asp1
```

**Note:** If you have Apache 2.4.4, you may get authentication errors when trying to provide a password to view the site. As a workaround, run `htpasswd` with the `-b` option and enter the password on the command line as follows:

```
# htpasswd -b /opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd asp1 password
```

2. Restrict user permissions with `aspsshell`.

By default, all system users can establish a FASP connection and are only restricted by file permissions. Restrict the user's file operations by assigning them to use `aspsshell`, which permits only the following operations:

- Running Aspera uploads and downloads to or from this computer.
- Establishing connections in the application.
- Browsing, listing, creating, renaming, or deleting contents.

These instructions explain one way to change a user account or active directory user account so that it uses the `aspsshell`; there may be other ways to do so on your system.

Run the following command to change the user login shell to `aspsshell`:

```
# sudo usermod -s /bin/aspsshell username
```

Confirm that the user's shell updated by running the following command and looking for `/bin/aspsshell` at the end of the output:

```
# grep username /etc/passwd
username:x:501:501:....:/home/username:/bin/aspsshell
```

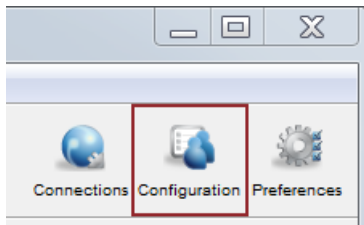
**Note: If you use OpenSSH, sssd, and Active Directory for authentication:** To make `aspsshell` the default shell for all domain users, first set up a local account for server administration because this change affects all domain users. Then open `/etc/sss/sss.conf` and change `default_shell` from `/bin/bash` to `/bin/aspsshell`.

3. Launch HST Server as `root`.

Run the following command as `root`:

```
# asperascp
```

4. Click **Configuration** to open the configuration settings window.

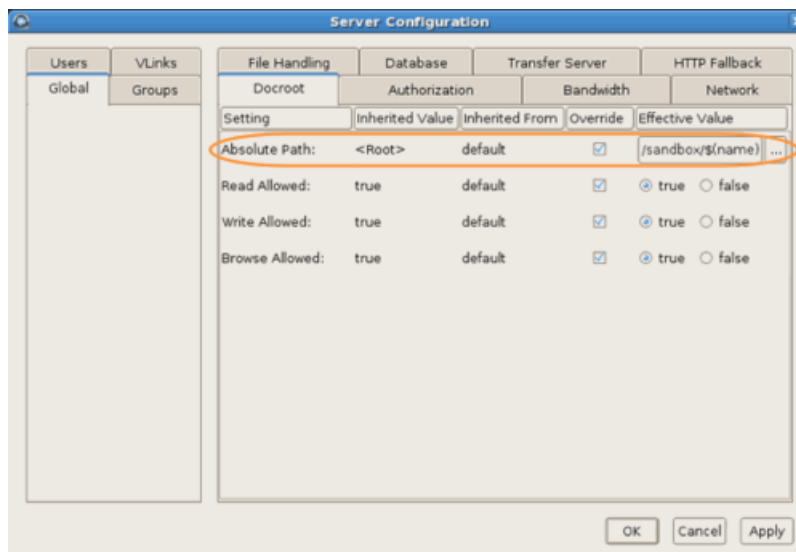


5. For server security, configure **Global** settings to restrict users' transfer and system permissions.

a) Set a global docroot (**Absolute Path**) to an empty folder or a part of the file system specific to each user.

If there is a pattern in the docroot of each user, for example, `/sandbox/username`, you can use a substitutional string. This way you assign independent docroot to each user without setting a docroot for each user individually

Substitutional String	Definition	Example
<code>\$(name)</code>	system user's name	<code>/sandbox/\$(name)</code>
<code>\$(home)</code>	system user's home directory	<code>\$(home)/Documents</code>



b) On the **Docroot** tab, set **Read Allowed**, **Write Allowed**, and **Browse Allowed** to **false**.

c) On the **Authorization** tab, deny incoming and outgoing transfers by default, then enable transfers for individual users as required (described in a later step).

d) On the **Authorization** tab, set the token encryption key to a string of at least 20 random characters.

e) If your workflow allows, on the **Authorization** tab set **Content Protection Required** to **true**.

This setting enforces client-side encryption-at-rest. For more information, see [Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 220.

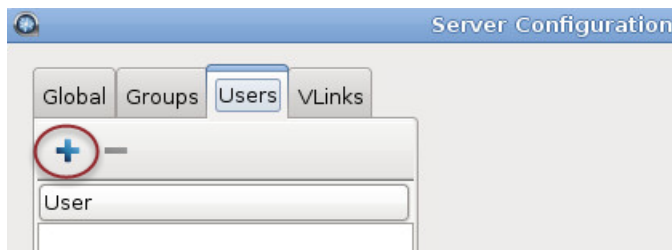
f) On the **Authorization** tab, set **Encryption Allowed** to **AES-128**.

By setting an encryption cipher, uploads to the server must use the specified encryption cipher or stronger. Setting to **any** allows encrypted and unencrypted transfers.

6. Add a system user.

a) In **Server Configuration**, go to **Users**.

b) Click **+** to add a new user.



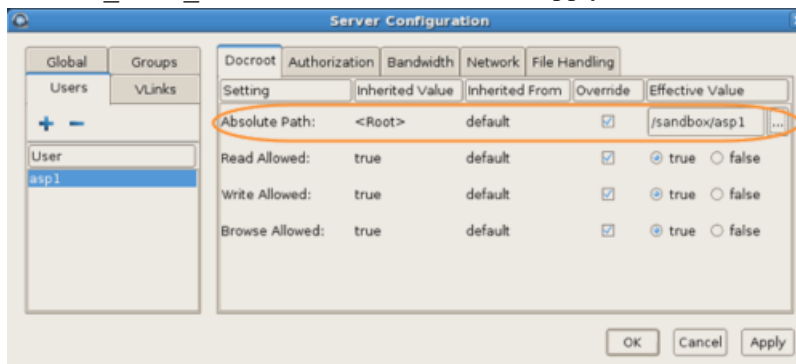
- c) Enter the username, then click **OK**.

Username cannot contain the "@" symbol, except when using the *user@domain* format. For additional information, see [Product Limitations](#).

7. Set the user's docroot and transfer permissions.

- a) Set a user-specific docroot, if the global docroot is not adequate.

In the user's **Docroot** tab (**Configuration** > **Users** > *username* > **Docroot**), select the **Override** box for **Absolute Path** and enter or select an existing path as the user's docroot -- for example, `/sandbox/aspera_user_1`. When finished, click **OK** or **Apply**.



- b) Set read, write, and browse permissions.

On the **Docroot** tab, set **Read allowed** to **true** to enable the user to download from their docroot on the server, set **Write allowed** to **true** to enable the user to upload to the server and move files within their docroot, and set **Browse allowed** to **true** to enable the user to browse files within their docroot. For maximum security, allow users the minimum permissions required for their workflow.

- c) Set transfer permissions.

On the **Authorization** tab, set **Incoming Transfers** to **allow** to allow the user to upload to the server within their docroot and set **Outgoing Transfers** to **allow** to allow the user to download from the server from their docroot.

8. If you provided an Aspera license during installation (rather than an entitlement), ensure that the transfer user has read permissions on the Aspera license file (`aspera-license`) so that they can run transfers.

The license file is found in: `/opt/aspera/etc/`

9. Configure group and user settings.

Settings are located in the **Docroot**, **Authorization**, **Bandwidth**, **Network**, **File Handling** and **Precedence** tabs. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings; for more information, see [Configuration Precedence](#) on page 37.

Category	Description
<a href="#">Docroot and File Permission Configuration</a> on page 40	The document root settings.
<a href="#">Authorization Configuration</a> on page 42	Connection permissions, token key, and encryption requirements.
<a href="#">Bandwidth Configuration</a> on page 47	Incoming and outgoing transfer bandwidth and policy settings.

Category	Description
<a href="#">Network Configuration</a> on page 56	Network IP, port, and socket buffer settings.
<a href="#">File Handling Configuration</a> on page 57	File handling settings, such as file block size, overwrite rules, and exclude pattern.

## Setting Up Groups

Transfer settings can be applied to your system's user groups. If users within a group do not have individual transfer settings, then the group's transfer settings are applied. HST Server doesn't create user groups on the operating system for you, so you must ensure that the groups exist before adding them to your Aspera product.

These instructions describe how to set up transfer/user groups within the GUI. If you are configuring transfer/user groups within a Terminal, please refer to [Setting Up Transfer Groups \(Terminal\)](#) on page 79.

1. Identify or create the user group(s) that you would like to add.

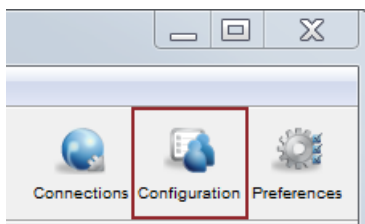
For information on creating user groups, see your operating system documentation.

2. Launch the Aspera server as `root`.

Run the following command as root:

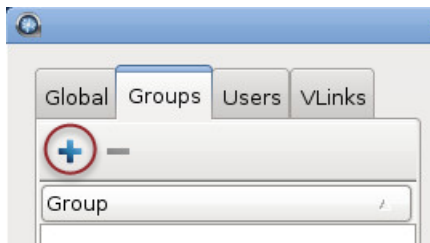
```
# asperascp
```

3. Click **Configuration** to open the configuration settings window.



4. Add the user group to your Aspera server.

In the **Server Configuration** window, click the **Groups** tab then click **+** and input the group's name.



5. Configure the group's transfer settings.

These settings are located in the **Docroot**, **Authorization**, **Bandwidth**, **Network**, **File Handling** and **Precedence** tabs.

Settings	Description
<a href="#">Docroot and File Permission Configuration</a> on page 40	The document root settings.
<a href="#">Authorization Configuration</a> on page 42	Connection permissions, token key, and encryption requirements.
<a href="#">Bandwidth Configuration</a> on page 47	Incoming and outgoing transfer bandwidth and policy settings.
<a href="#">Network Configuration</a> on page 56	Network IP, port, and socket buffer settings.

Settings	Description
<a href="#">File Handling Configuration</a> on page 57	File handling settings, such as file block size, overwrite rules, and exclude pattern.
<a href="#">Configuration Precedence</a> on page 37	When a user is a member of multiple groups, the precedence setting can be used to determine priority.

## Configuration Precedence

HST Server applies configuration settings in this order: 1) user settings, 2) group settings (and if a user belongs to more than one group, precedence can be set for each group), 3) global settings, 4) default settings. User settings have the highest priority and default the lowest.

For example, the table below shows the setting values that are applied to user `aspera_user_1` in **bold** when that user is also a member of several groups and global settings are configured. In this example, `aspera_user_1` is a member of both the **admin** and **xfer** groups. The **admin** group's precedence setting is 0, which supersedes the **xfer** group's setting of 1:

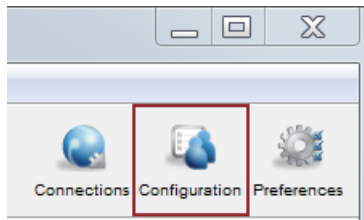
Options	"aspera_user_1" User Settings	"admin" Group Settings	"xfer" Group Settings	Global Settings	Default Settings
Target rate	<b>5M</b>	10M	15M	40M	45M
Min rate	n/a	<b>2M</b>	8M	3M	0
Policy	n/a	n/a	<b>Low</b>	Fair	Fair
Docroot	n/a	n/a	n/a	<b>/pod/\$ (name)</b>	n/a
Encryption	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	<b>any</b>

### Configuring Precedence of Groups

You can configure a group's precedence from the GUI or by editing `aspera.conf`.

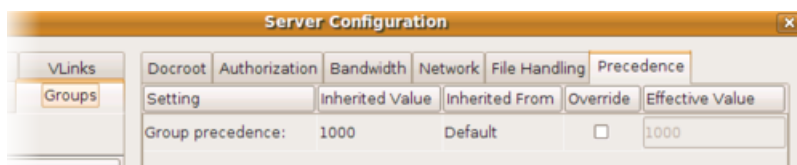
#### GUI:

To configure it from the GUI, launch the application and click **Configuration**.



In the Server Configuration dialog, select the **Groups** tab, choose a group, and select the **Precedence** tab. (The **Precedence** tab does not appear if there are no groups.) Select **Override** and enter a precedence number for the group.

**Note:** A group's precedence setting must be greater than or equal to 0, where 0 is the highest precedence level.



**Editing aspera.conf:**

You can configure a group's precedence in `aspera.conf` by running the following `asconfigurator` command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_group_data;group_name,group_name;precedence,value"
```

**Note:** A group's precedence setting must be greater than or equal to 0, where 0 is the highest precedence level.

This adds a `<group>` section to `aspera.conf` like the one below. In this example, group "admin" has higher precedence than group "xfer".

```
<groups>
  <group>
    <name>admin</name>
    <precedence>0</precedence>
    ...
  </group>
  <group>
    <name>xfer</name>
    <precedence>1</precedence>
    ...
  </group>
</groups>
```

You can also edit `aspera.conf` manually by opening it with administrative privileges:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

In the file, locate the entry for each group, add the `<precedence>` option, and assign a precedence value as shown in the example above. After editing the file, validate the XML form and option values by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server

---

Public key authentication is an alternative to password authentication, providing a more secure authentication method that allows users to avoid entering or storing a password, or sending it over the network. An Aspera client generates a key pair (a public key and a private key) on the client computer and provides the public key to the administrator of the remote Aspera transfer server. The server administrator sets up the client user's public key as described in the following steps.

For information on how to create public keys, see [Creating SSH Keys in the GUI](#) on page 161 or [Creating SSH Keys \(Command Line\)](#) on page 216.

**Important:** The HST Server web UI (deprecated) (deprecated) does not support key-based authentication. This feature is for transfers initiated in the application (including Hot Folders) or the `ascp` command.

1. Obtain the client user's public key.

The client user should send you a secure email with the public key pasted in the message body or attached as a text file.

2. Install the public key in the user account on the server.

- a) In the home directory of the account that the client will use to access the server, create a directory called `.ssh` if it doesn't already exist.
- b) Save the key file as `authorized_keys` in `.ssh`. If `authorized_keys` already exists, append the key file to it.

For example,

```
# mkdir /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
```

```
# cat /tmp/id_rsa.pub > /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

Where:

- aspera\_user\_1 is the server user account.
- /tmp/id\_rsa.pub is where you saved the public key sent by the user.
- /home/aspera\_user\_1/.ssh/authorized\_keys is the file that contains the public key.

c) Configure permissions on the key.

Make the system user (in this example, user aspera\_user\_1) the owner of key directory and key file, allow access by the aspera\_user\_1 group, and set permissions:

```
# chown -R aspera_user_1:aspera_user_1 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 600 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

## Testing a User-Initiated Remote Transfer

Once you have configured an Aspera transfer user on HST Server, test that an Aspera client can successfully connect to your HST Server and upload a file.

### Prerequisites:

- **Client:** Install an Aspera client application, such as the freely available IBM Aspera Desktop Client or IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface, on the client computer.
- **Server:** HST Server must have at least one Aspera transfer user (a system user account that is configured to authenticate Aspera transfers) configured on it.

If any of the following connection tests fail, see [Clients Can't Establish Connection](#) on page 475.

1. On the client, test that you can reach the IP address of your HST Server.

Run the ping command:

```
# ping 10.0.0.2
PING 10.0.0.2 (10.0.0.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=8.432 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=7.121 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=5.116 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=4.421 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=3.050 ms
...
```

In the example above, the address of HST Server is 10.0.0.2 and the output shows successful responses from the host.

If the output returns "Destination host unreachable," check the firewall configuration of the server.

2. On the client, try a transfer to HST Server by using ascp.

Run the following command on your client machine:

```
# ascp -P 33001 --mode=send --policy=fair -l 10000 -m
1000 source_path username@ip_address:destination
```

For example: (where aspera\_user\_1 is the example transfer user):

```
# ascp -P 33001 --mode=send --policy=fair -l 10000 -m 1000 /client-dir/
files aspera_user_1@10.0.0.2:/dir
```

This command specifies the following values for the transfer:

Item	Argument	Example Value
TCP Port Set the TCP port to start the transfer session.	<code>-P port</code>	<code>-P 33001</code>
Transfer Direction Specify if the server is the destination or source.	<code>--mode=direction</code>	<code>--mode=send</code>
Transfer Policy Specify how to share bandwidth with other network users.	<code>--policy=policy</code>	<code>--policy=fair</code>
Maximum Transfer Rate Set the maximum transfer rate, in Kbps.	<code>-l rate</code>	<code>-l 10000</code> Maximum transfer rate = 10 Mbps
Minimum Transfer Rate Set the minimum transfer rate, in Kbps.	<code>-m rate</code>	<code>-l 1000</code> Minimum transfer rate = 1 Mbps
File or Directory to Upload Set the path relative to your current directory.	<code>source</code>	<code>/client-dir/files</code>
Transfer User	<code>username</code>	<code>aspera_user_1</code>
Host Address	<code>ip_address</code>	<code>10.0.0.2</code>
Destination Folder Set the destination path relative to the transfer user's docroot.	<code>destination</code>	<code>/dir</code> In this example, the files are transferred to the "dir" folder in the docroot of aspera_user_1.

## Configure HST Server in the GUI

The following references describe the server settings that can be configured in the HST Server GUI. Not all settings are available in the GUI; some must be set by using the command line or directly editing the HST Server configuration file, `aspera.conf`.

### Docroot and File Permission Configuration

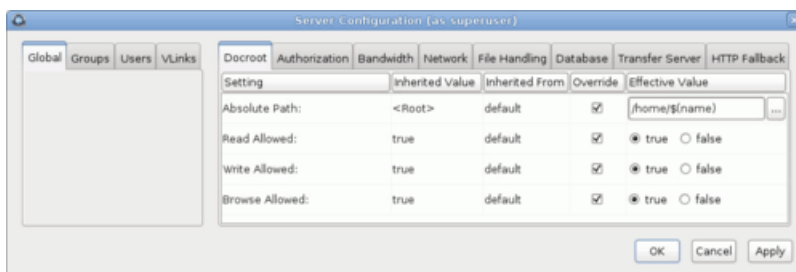
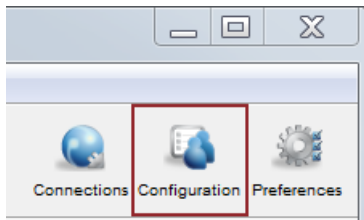
The **Docroot** configuration options include the docroot and file permissions. The absolute path, or docroot, is the area of the file system that is accessible to an Aspera transfer user. The default empty value allows access to the entire file system. You can set one global docroot and then further restrict access to the file system by group or individual user.

#### Important Configuration Notes:



- The default server configuration gives users full access to the server's file system with read, write, and browse privileges. Aspera strongly recommends setting a global docroot that is an empty folder and setting global file permissions to **false**. For a compilation of server security best practices, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.
- Some Aspera features require a docroot in URI format or require a file restriction instead of a docroot. For more information, see [Docroot vs. File Restriction](#) on page 479.

1. Open HST Server with root privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > Docroot**.



3. Edit **Global**, **Groups**, and **Users** settings on their **Docroot** tabs. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.

Aspera recommends setting restrictive **Global** settings, as described in the following table, and then granting permissions for specific **Groups** or **Users**.

### Docroot Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Absolute Path	<p>The absolute path, or docroot, is the area of the file system that is accessible to an Aspera transfer user. The default empty value allows access to the entire file system. You can set one global docroot and then further restrict access to the file system by group or individual user. Docroot paths require specific formatting depending on where the transfer server's storage is located.</p> <p><b>Format examples</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local storage absolute path: /home/aspera424/movies</li> <li>• Or using a placeholder for usernames: /home/\${name}</li> <li>• Local storage in URI format: file:///home/bear/movies</li> </ul> <p>URI format is required for server-side encryption-at-rest, but is not supported by the Aspera Watch Service.</p>	file path or URI	undefined (total access)

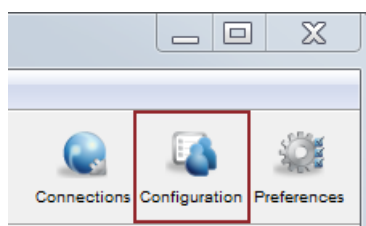
Field	Description	Values	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cloud or on-premises object storage: see <a href="#">Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS</a> on page 381.</li> </ul> <p>Aspera recommends setting a global docroot to an empty folder or a part of the file system specific to each user. If there is a pattern in the docroot of each user, for example, <code>/sandbox/username</code>, you can use a substitutional string. This allows you to assign an independent docroot to each user without setting it individually for each user. See <a href="#">Setting Up Users</a> on page 32 for information.</p> <p>You can also set multiple docroots and make them conditional based on the IP address from which the connection is made by editing <code>aspera.conf</code>. To do so, edit the absolute path setting by adding the IP address using the following syntax:</p> <pre>&lt;absolute peer_ip="ip_address"&gt;path&lt;/absolute&gt;</pre>		
Read Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to transfer files and folders from their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>
Write Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to transfer files and folders to their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>
Browse Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to browse their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>

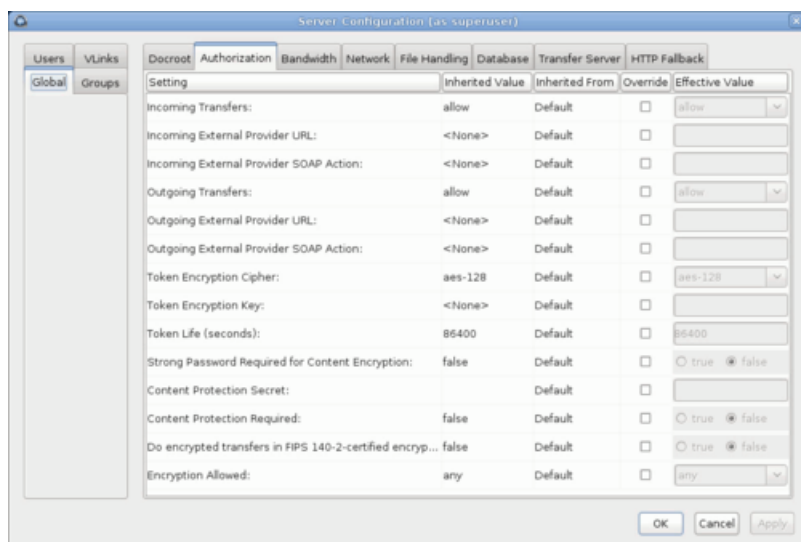
## Authorization Configuration

The **Authorization** configuration options include connection permissions, token key, and encryption requirements.

**Note:** For security, Aspera recommends denying incoming and outgoing transfers globally, then allowing transfers by individual users, as needed. For a compilation of server security best practices, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.

1. Open the application with root privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > Authorization**.





3. Edit **Global**, **Groups**, and **Users** settings on their **Authorization** tabs. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.

### Authorization Settings Reference

Setting	Description	Values	Default
Incoming Transfers	To enable users to transfer to this computer, leave the default setting of <code>allow</code> . Set to <code>deny</code> to prevent transfers to this computer. Set to <code>token</code> to allow only transfers initiated with valid tokens to this computer. Token-based transfers are typically used by web applications such as IBM Aspera Faspex and IBM Aspera Shares and require a Token Encryption Key.	<code>allow</code> , <code>deny</code> , or <code>token</code>	<code>allow</code>
Incoming External Provider URL	Set the URL of the external authorization provider for incoming transfers. The default empty setting disables external authorization. Aspera servers can be configured to check with an external authorization provider. This SOAP authorization mechanism can be useful to organizations requiring custom authorization rules. Requires a value for Incoming External Provider SOAP Action.	HTTP URL	blank
Incoming External Provider SOAP Action	The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for incoming transfers. Required if Incoming External Provider URL is set.	text string	blank
Outgoing Transfers	To enable users to transfer from this computer, leave the default setting of <code>allow</code> . Set to <code>deny</code> to prevent transfers from this computer. Set to <code>token</code> to allow only transfers initiated with valid tokens from this computer. Token-based transfers are typically used by web applications such as Faspex and require a Token Encryption Key.	<code>allow</code> , <code>deny</code> , or <code>token</code>	<code>allow</code>

Setting	Description	Values	Default
Outgoing External Provider URL	Set the URL of the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers. The default empty setting disables external authorization. HST Server can be configured to check with an external authorization provider. This SOAP authorization mechanism can be useful to organizations requiring custom authorization rules. Requires a value for Outgoing External Provider Soap Action.	HTTP URL	blank
Outgoing External Provider Soap Action	The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers. Required if Outgoing External Provider URL is set.	text string	blank
Token Encryption Cipher	Set the cipher used to generate encrypted transfer tokens.	aes-128, aes-192, or aes-256	aes-128
Token Encryption Key	Set the secret text phrase that is used to authorize those transfers configured to require token. Aspera recommends setting a token encryption key of at least 20 random characters. For more information, see <a href="#">Require Token Authorization: Set in the GUI</a> on page 434 or <a href="#">Require Token Authorization: Set from the Command Line</a> on page 435.	text string	blank
Token Life (seconds)	Set the token expiration for users of web-based transfer applications.	positive integer	86400 (24 hrs)
Strong Password Required for Content Encryption	Set to <code>true</code> to require that the password for content encryption (client-side encryption at rest) includes at least 6 characters, of which at least 1 is non-alphanumeric, at least 1 is a letter, and at least 1 is a digit.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Content Protection Secret	Enable server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR) by setting the passphrase. Files uploaded to the server are encrypted while stored there and are decrypted when they are downloaded. For more information, see <a href="#">Server-Side Encryption at Rest (EAR)</a> on page 46 or <a href="#">Server-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 120.	passphrase	(none)
Content Protection Required	Set to <code>true</code> to require that uploaded content be encrypted by the client (enforce client-side encryption-at-rest).  For more information, see <a href="#">Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 220.  <b>Important:</b> When a transfer falls back to HTTP or HTTPS, content protection is no longer supported. If HTTP fallback occurs while downloading, then—despite entering a passphrase—the file remains encrypted. If HTTP	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>

Setting	Description	Values	Default
	fallback occurs during upload, then—despite entering a passphrase—the files are not encrypted.		
Do encrypted transfers in FIPS-140-2-certified encryption mode	<p>Set to <code>true</code> for <code>ascp</code> to use a FIPS 140-2-certified encryption module. When enabled, transfer start is delayed while the FIPS module is verified.</p> <p>When you run <code>ascp</code> in FIPS mode (that is, <code>&lt;fips_enabled&gt;</code> is set to <code>true</code> in <code>aspera.conf</code>), and you use passphrase-protected SSH keys, you must use keys generated by running <code>ssh-keygen</code> in a FIPS-enabled system, or convert existing keys to a FIPS-compatible format using a command such as the following:</p> <pre>openssl pkcs8 -topk8 -v2 aes128 -in id_rsa -out new-id_rsa</pre> <p><b>Important:</b> When set to <code>true</code>, all ciphers and hash algorithms that are not FIPS compliant will abort transfers.</p>	true or false	false
Encryption Allowed	<p>Set the transfer encryption allowed by this computer. Aspera strongly recommends that you require transfer encryption. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To ensure client compatibility when requiring encryption, use a cipher with the form <code>aes-XXX</code>, which is supported by all clients and servers. Requiring GCM causes the server to reject transfers from clients that are running a version of <code>Ascp</code> 3.8.1 or older. When a client requests a shorter cipher key than is configured on the server (or in an access key that authorizes the transfer), the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server setting. For more information about how the server and client negotiate the transfer cipher, see the description of <code>-c</code> in the <a href="#">Ascp Command Reference</a> on page 181.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>any</code> - allow transfers that use any encryption cipher or none.</li> <li><code>none</code> - require unencrypted transfers (not recommended).</li> </ul>	any, none, aes-128, aes-192, aes-256, aes-128-cfb, aes-192-cfb, aes-256-cfb, aes-128-gcm, aes-192-gcm, or aes-256-gcm	any

Setting	Description	Values	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>aes-128</code>, <code>aes-192</code>, or <code>aes-256</code> - allow transfers that use an encryption cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. These settings use the CFB or GCM mode depending on the client version and cipher requested. Supports all client versions.</li> <li>• <code>aes-128-cfb</code>, <code>aes-192-cfb</code>, or <code>aes-256-cfb</code> - require that transfers use the CFB encryption mode and a cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. Supports all client versions.</li> <li>• <code>aes-128-gcm</code>, <code>aes-192-gcm</code>, or <code>aes-256-gcm</code> - require that transfers use the GCM encryption mode introduced in version 3.9.0 and a cipher that is as long or longer than the setting.</li> </ul>		

## Server-Side Encryption at Rest (EAR)

---

### Capabilities

Server-side EAR provides the following advantages:

- It protects files against attackers who might gain access to server-side storage. This is important primarily when using NAS storage or cloud storage, where the storage can be accessed directly (and not just through the computer running HST Server or HST Endpoint).
- It is especially suited for cases where the server is used as a temporary location—for example, when a client uploads a file and another one downloads it.
- Server-side EAR can be used together with client-side EAR. When used together, content is doubly encrypted. For more information, see [Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 220.
- Server-side EAR doesn't create an "envelope" as client-side EAR does. The transferred file stays the same size as the original file. The server stores the metadata necessary for server-side EAR separately in a file of the same name with the file extension `.aspera-meta`. By contrast, client-side EAR creates an envelope file containing both the encrypted contents of the file and the encryption metadata, and it also changes the name of the file by adding the file extension `.aspera-env`.
- It works with both regular transfers (FASP) and HTTP fallback transfers.

### Limitations and Considerations

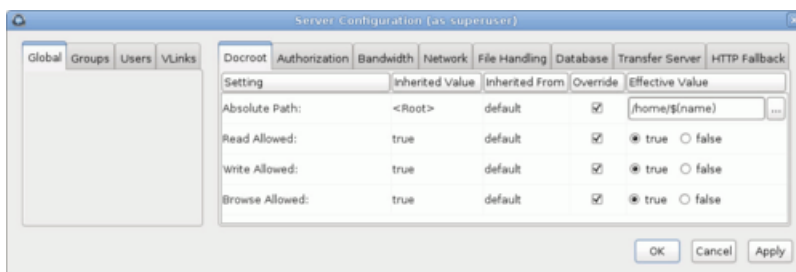
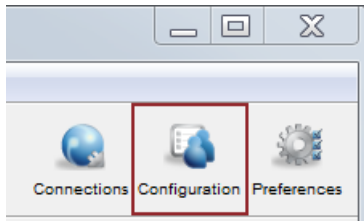
- Server-side EAR is not designed for cases where files need to move in an encrypted state between multiple computers. For that purpose, client-side EAR is more suitable: files are encrypted when they first leave the client, then stay encrypted as they move between other computers, and are decrypted when they reach the final destination and the passphrase is available.
- Server-side EAR does not work with multi-session transfers (using `ascp -C` or Node API `multi_session` set to greater than 1).
- Do not mix server-side EAR and non-EAR files in transfers, which can happen if server-side EAR is enabled after the server is in use or if multiple users have access to the same area of the file system but have different EAR configurations.

### Configuring Server-Side EAR

1. Set the docroot in URI format.

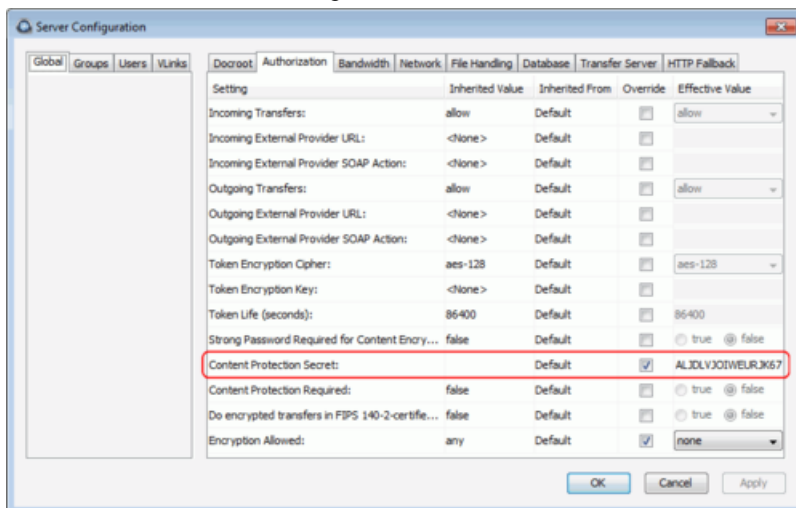
Server-side EAR requires the storage to have a docroot in URI format, such that it is prefixed with `file:///`. The third slash (/) does not serve as the root slash for an absolute path. For example, a docroot of `/home/xfer` would be set as `file:///home/xfer` and a docroot of `C:\Users\xfer` would be set as `file:///C:\Users\xfer`.

To configure the docroot options, click **Configuration** and set configurations for **Global**, **Groups**, or **Users** under their respective **Docroot** tabs. Select **Override** in the setting row to set a docroot and adjust read, write, and browse privileges. User docroot settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.



## 2. Set the password.

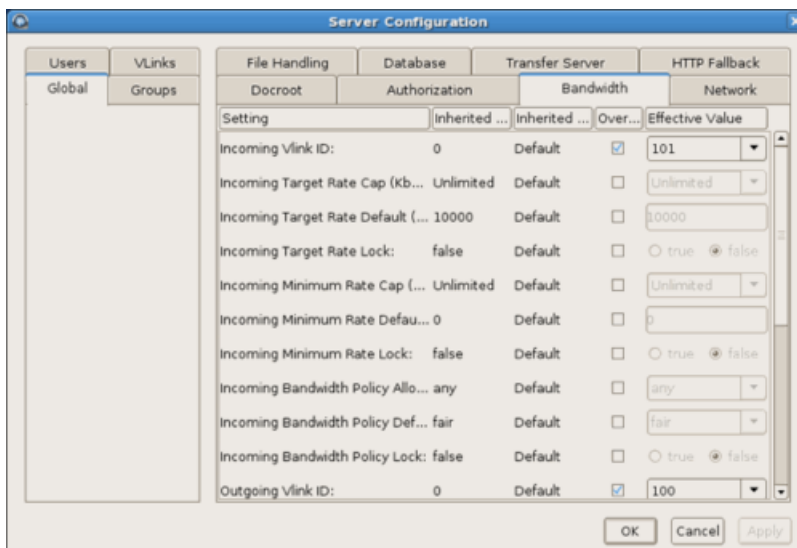
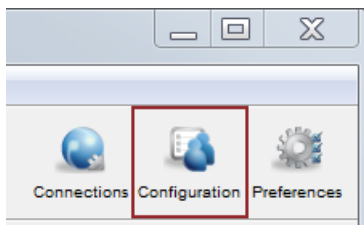
The server-side EAR password can be set for all users (global), per group, or per user. In the **Server Configuration** dialog, click the **Authorization** tab and locate the setting for **Content Protection Secret**. Select the override box and enter the password.



## Bandwidth Configuration

The **Bandwidth** configuration options include target transfer rates, transfer policies, and assigning vlinks to control aggregate bandwidth usage.

1. Open the application with root privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > Bandwidth**.



3. Edit **Global**, **Groups**, and **Users** settings on their **Bandwidth** tabs. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.

### Bandwidth Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Incoming Vlink ID	The ID of the vlink to apply to incoming transfers. Vlinks are a way to define aggregate transfer policies. For more information, see <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI)</a> on page 55 or <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (Command Line)</a> on page 103.	Vlink IDs	Undefined (Disabled)
Incoming Target Rate Cap (Kbps)	The maximum target rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. No transfer session can exceed this rate at any time. If the client requests an initial rate greater than the target rate cap, the transfer proceeds at the target rate cap. The default setting of <code>unlimited</code> applies no target rate cap.	positive integer	unlimited
Incoming Target Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Incoming Target Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify this rate in real time. This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	10000
Incoming Target Rate Lock	Lock the target rate of incoming transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code>	true or false	false



Field	Description	Values	Default
	to allow users to adjust the transfer rate of an incoming transfer up to the "Incoming Target Rate Cap".		
Incoming Minimum Rate Cap (Kbps)	<p>The highest minimum rate that an incoming transfer can request, in kilobits per second. Client minimum rate requests that exceed the minimum rate cap are ignored. The default value of <code>unlimited</code> applies no cap to the minimum rate.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting the minimum rate cap to zero. Transfers do not slow below the client's requested minimum rate unless the minimum rate is capped on the server. If the client-requested minimum rate exceeds network or storage capacity, this can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.</p>	positive integer or unlimited	unlimited
Incoming Minimum Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial minimum rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Incoming Minimum Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify the minimum rate in real time, up to the "Incoming Minimum Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	0
Incoming Minimum Rate Lock	<p>Lock the minimum rate of incoming transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code>). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the minimum transfer rate up to the "Incoming Minimum Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting a lock on minimum rate to prevent transfers from using minimum rates that can overwhelm network or storage capacity, decrease transfer performance, and cause problems on the target storage.</p>	true or false	false
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Allowed	<p>The bandwidth policies that incoming transfers can use. Aspera transfers can use high, fair, low, or fixed bandwidth policies to determine bandwidth allocation among transfers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>any</code> - The server does not deny any transfer based on policy setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting to <code>any</code> allows clients to request a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy. If the client also requests a high minimum transfer rate and that is not capped by the server, the transfer rate can exceed network or storage capacity. This can</p>	high, fair, low, or any	any

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. To avoid these problems, set the allowed policy to <code>fair</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>high</code> - Transfers that use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li>• <code>fair</code> - Transfers that use <code>fair</code> or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li>• <code>low</code> - Only transfers that use a <code>low</code> bandwidth policy are allowed. All others are rejected.</li> </ul>		
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Default	<p>The default bandwidth policy for incoming transfers. Clients can override the default policy if they specify a policy allowed by the server (see "Incoming Bandwidth Policy Allowed") and if "Incoming Bandwidth Policy Lock" is set to <code>false</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a <code>fair</code>-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li>• <code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li>• <code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to <code>fair</code> mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li>• <code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>	<code>high, fair, low, fixed</code>	<code>fair</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Lock	Lock the bandwidth policy of incoming transfer sessions to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the bandwidth policy.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Incoming Rate Control Module	<p>Set how the transmission rate should be managed relative to instantaneous network bandwidth availability. Aspera recommends that this option be changed only by advanced users.</p> <p>When the client does not specify a configuration, the server configuration is used. When the client specifies a value other than <code>delay</code> and the client is the receiver, then the client configuration overrides the server configuration.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>delay:</b> The baseline rate control module used by Aspera transfers.</li> <li>• <b>delay-odp:</b> A queue-scaling controller for overdrive protection.</li> <li>• <b>delay-adv:</b> An advanced rate controller.</li> <li>• <b>delay-laq:</b> A loss-adjusted queueing (LAQ) rate controller.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The LAQ module is an experimental rate control module that is designed to solve issues with target rate overdrive, high concurrency (when many FASP sessions run at the same time), and shallow buffers (limited packet queuing capability of a router). When LAQ is set, then it uses the FD31 RTT predictor unless a different RTT predictor is explicitly set.</p> <p>To set a rate control module for outgoing traffic, set it from the command line (<a href="#">aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration</a> on page 88).</p>	<code>delay</code> , <code>delay-odp</code> , <code>delay-adv</code> , or <code>delay-laq</code>	<code>delay</code>
Incoming Traffic RTT Predictor	The type of predictor to use to compensate for feedback delay when measuring RTT. An experimental feature that might increase transfer rate stability and throughput by predicting network congestion. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified predictor is used and if the client does not specify a predictor, then <code>none</code> is used. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107.	<code>unset</code> , <code>none</code> , <code>alpha</code> , <code>beta</code> , <code>fd31</code> , <code>bezier</code> , <code>ets</code>	<code>unset</code>
Incoming Rate Control Target Queue	The method for calculating the target queue. Static queuing is good for most internet connections, whereas dynamic queuing is	<code>unset</code> , <code>static</code> , <code>dynamic</code>	<code>unset</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	good for satellite and other radio connections. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified transfer queuing method is used and if the client does not specify a queuing method, then <code>static</code> is used.		
Outgoing Vlink ID	The ID of the vlink to apply to outgoing transfers. Vlinks are a way to define aggregate transfer policies. For more information, see <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI)</a> on page 55 or <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (Command Line)</a> on page 103.	Vlink ID	Undefined (Disabled)
Outgoing Target Rate Cap (Kbps)	The maximum target rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. No transfer session can exceed this rate at any time. If the client requests an initial rate greater than the target rate cap, the transfer proceeds at the target rate cap. The default setting of <code>unlimited</code> applies no target rate cap.	positive integer	<code>unlimited</code>
Outgoing Target Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Outgoing Target Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify this rate in real time up to the "Outgoing Target Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	10000
Outgoing Target Rate Lock	Lock the target rate of outgoing transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the transfer rate of an outgoing transfer.	true or false	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Minimum Rate Cap (Kbps)	The highest minimum rate that an outgoing transfer can request, in kilobits per second. Client minimum rate requests that exceed the minimum rate cap are ignored. The default value of <code>unlimited</code> applies no cap to the minimum rate.  <b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting the minimum rate cap to zero. Transfers do not slow below the client's requested minimum rate unless the minimum rate is capped on the server. If the client-requested minimum rate exceeds network or storage capacity, this can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.	positive integer	<code>unlimited</code>
Outgoing Minimum Rate Default	The default initial minimum rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock" is set to	positive integer	0

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<code>false</code> ), clients can modify the minimum rate in real time up to the "Outgoing Minimum Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.		
Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock	<p>Lock the minimum rate of outgoing transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code>). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the minimum transfer rate. This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting a lock on minimum rate to prevent transfers from using minimum rates that can overwhelm network or storage capacity, decrease transfer performance, and cause problems on the target storage.</p>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Allowed	<p>The bandwidth policies that outgoing transfers can use. Aspera transfers can use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, <code>low</code>, or <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policies to determine bandwidth allocation among transfers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>any</code> - The server does not deny any transfer based on policy setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting to <code>any</code> allows clients to request a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy. If the client also requests a high minimum transfer rate and that is not capped by the server, the transfer rate can exceed network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. To avoid these problems, set the allowed policy to <code>fair</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Transfers that use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Transfers that use <code>fair</code> or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Only transfers that use a <code>low</code> bandwidth policy are allowed. All others are rejected.</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , or <code>any</code>	<code>any</code>
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Default	<p>The default bandwidth policy for outgoing transfers. Clients can override the default policy if they specify a policy allowed by the server (see "Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Allowed") and if "Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Lock" is set to <code>false</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , <code>fixed</code>	<code>fair</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li>• <code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li>• <code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>		
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Lock	Lock the bandwidth policy of outgoing transfer sessions to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the bandwidth policy.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Traffic RTT Predictor	The type of predictor to use to compensate for feedback delay when measuring RTT. An experimental feature that might increase transfer rate stability and throughput by predicting network congestion. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified predictor is used and if the client does not specify a predictor, then <code>none</code> is used. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107.	<code>unset</code> , <code>none</code> , <code>alpha</code> , <code>beta</code> , <code>fd31</code> , <code>bezier</code> , <code>ets</code>	<code>unset</code>
Outgoing Rate Control Target Queue	The method for calculating the target queue. Static queuing is good for most internet connections, whereas dynamic queuing is good for satellite and other radio connections. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified transfer queuing method is used and if the client does not specify a queuing method, then <code>static</code> is used.	<code>unset</code> , <code>static</code> , <code>dynamic</code>	<code>unset</code>

## Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI)

FASP transfers attempt to transfer at the maximum transfer rate available. However, too many simultaneous transfers can overwhelm your storage or leave little bandwidth available for other network activity. To set a bandwidth cap on the total bandwidth used by incoming or outgoing transfer sessions initiated by all users, groups, or sets of specific users, set up a virtual link (Vlink).

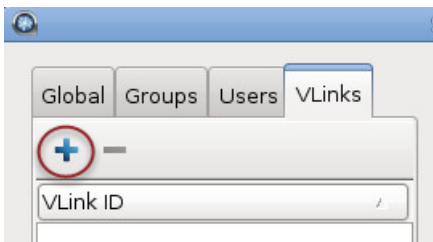
Vlinks are "virtual" bandwidth caps, in that they are not assigned to a specific transfer session, but to all sessions assigned to the same Vlink. The total bandwidth that is used by all incoming or outgoing transfer sessions initiated by users who are assigned to the same Vlink does not exceed the Vlink capacity.

For example, if you want to limit all incoming FASP transfers to 100 Mbps, you can create a Vlink with a 100 Mbps capacity and assign it globally to all incoming transfers. If a user attempts an upload at 50 Mbps but other incoming transfers are already using 75 Mbps, then the transfer rates adjust (based on transfer policy) so that the total does not exceed 100 Mbps.

For another example, if you want to limit to 10 Mbps the total bandwidth that is used by outgoing FASP transfers (downloads) that are initiated by three specific users, create a Vlink with a 10 Mbps capacity and assign it to outgoing transfers for those three users. If the three users are running download sessions that already use 10 Mbps and another download is started by one of the users, the transfer rates of all sessions adjust so that the total bandwidth use by those users remains 10 Mbps. Transfers by other users that are not assigned the Vlink are not affected, except to use available bandwidth when the Vlink capacity is not met.

1. Launch the application with administrator privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > Vlinks**.
3. Create a Vlink.

Click **+** to add a new Vlink entry; enter a number between 1 and 255 and click **OK**.



4. Configure the Vlink.

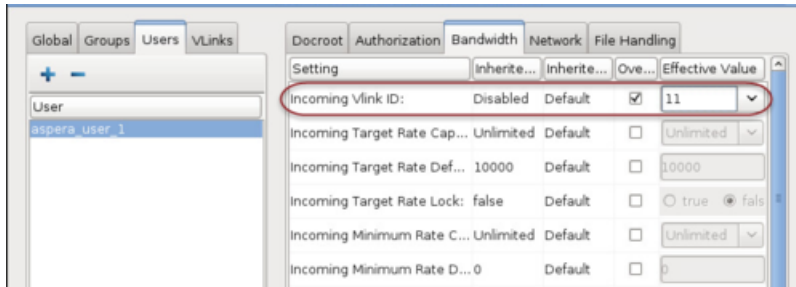
Once the Vlink is created, name it, activate it, and set the bandwidth capacity cap. See the following table for details.

Field	Description	Values	Default
Vlink Name	The Vlink name. This value has no impact on actual bandwidth capping.	text string	blank
On	Select <b>true</b> to activate the Vlink; select <b>false</b> to deactivate it.	true or false	false
Capacity (Kbps)	Set the virtual bandwidth cap in Kbps. When you apply the Vlink to a transfer (see below), the total bandwidth of all transfers assigned to this vlink is restricted to this value.	positive integer in Kbps	50000

5. Apply a Vlink to users.

Assign a Vlink to global, group, or user settings. The example below assigns a Vlink to a user's incoming transfer session.

In the **Configuration** window, click the **Users** tab and select the user to whose transfers you want to apply the Vlink. In the right panel, click the **Bandwidth** tab, select the override box in the **Incoming Vlink ID** row and select the Vlink to apply from the drop-down menu:



#### 6. Prevent users from overriding the Vlink settings.

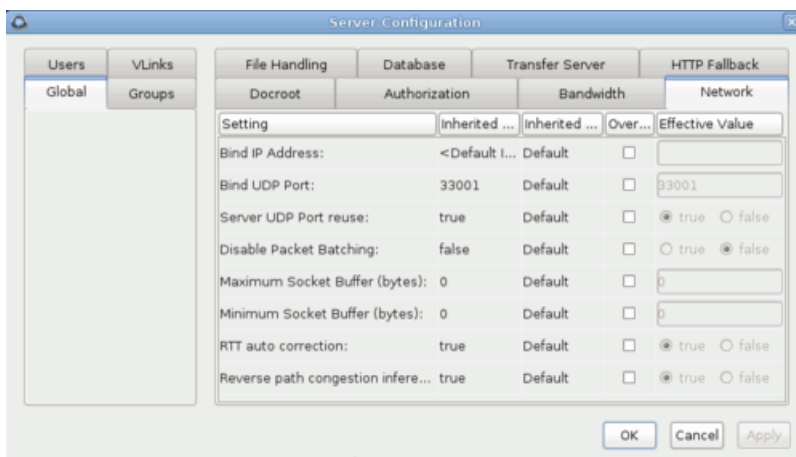
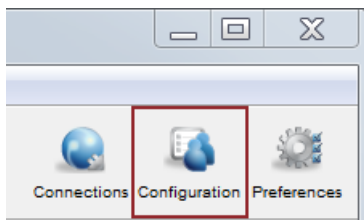
If a user requests a minimum rate that exceeds the Vlink and minimum rates are not locked, the transfer can exceed Vlink limits. To prevent this:

- Ensure that **Incoming Minimum Rate Default** or **Outgoing Minimum Rate Default** (depending on the direction of the Vlink) is set to zero (the default value).
- Select the **Override** box for **Incoming Minimum Rate Lock** or **Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock** (depending on the direction of the Vlink) and select **true**.

## Network Configuration

The **Network** configuration options include the network IP, port, and socket buffer settings.

- Open the application with root privileges.
- Click **Configuration > Network**.



- Edit **Global**, **Groups**, and **Users** settings on their **Network** tabs. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.



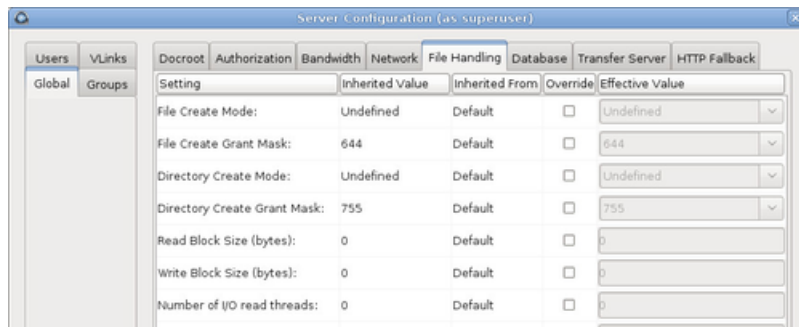
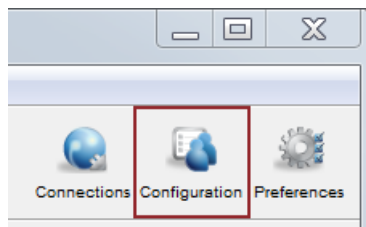
## Network Settings Reference

Option	Description	Values	Default
Bind IP Address	Specify an IP address for server-side <code>ascp</code> to bind its UDP connection. If a valid IP address is given, <code>ascp</code> sends and receives UDP packets only on the interface corresponding to that IP address.  <b>Important:</b> The bind address should only be modified (changed to an address other than 127.0.0.1) if you, as the System Administrator, understand the security ramifications of doing so, and have undertaken precautions to secure the SOAP service.	valid IPv4 address	None specified
Bind UDP Port	Prevent the client-side <code>ascp</code> process from using the specified UDP port.	integer between 1 and 65535	33001
Server UDP Port reuse	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow different processes to reuse the same UDP port at the server. Set to <code>false</code> to disable UDP port reuse.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>true</code>
Disable Packet Batching	Set to <code>true</code> to send data packets back-to-back (no sending a batch of packets). This results in smoother data traffic at a cost of higher CPU usage.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Maximum Socket Buffer (bytes)	Set the upper bound of the UDP socket buffer of an <code>ascp</code> session below the input value. The default of 0 will cause the Aspera sender to use its default internal buffer size, which may be different for different operating systems.	positive integer	0
Minimum Socket Buffer (bytes)	Set the minimum UDP socket buffer size for an <code>ascp</code> session.	positive integer	0
RTT auto correction	Set to <code>true</code> to enable auto correction of the base (minimum) RTT measurement. This feature is helpful for maintaining accurate transfer rates in hypervisor-based virtual environments.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Reverse path congestion inference	Set to <code>true</code> to prevent the transfer speed of a session from being adversely affected by congestion in the reverse (non data-sending) transfer direction. This feature is useful for boosting speed in bi-directional transfers.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>true</code>

## File Handling Configuration

The **File Handling** configuration options include file block size, overwrite rules, symbolic link handling, and filtering patterns.

1. Open the application with root privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > File Handling**.



3. Edit **Global**, **Groups**, and **Users** settings on their **File Handling** tabs. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value. User settings take precedence over group settings, which take precedence over global settings.

### File Handling Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Run File Validation at File Start	Validate files by using the specified method when starting a file transfer (before file transfer starts). For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130 .	uri, lua_script, or none	none
Run File Validation at File Stop	Validate files by using the specified method when file transfer is complete and file is closed. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	uri, lua_script, or none	none
Run File Validation at Session Start	Validate files by using the specified method when a transfer session starts. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	lua_script or none	none
Run File Validation at Session Stop	Validate files by using the specified method when a transfer session ends. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	lua_script or none	none
Run File Validation when Crossing File Threshold (Validation Threshold)	Validate files by using the specified method once the transfer session surpasses a set number of kilobytes (threshold). The threshold must be specified by editing <code>aspera.conf</code> . For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.  <b>Note:</b> For threshold validation, the file transfer might complete before the file threshold validation response comes back (because <code>ascp</code> doesn't pause file transfers during file threshold validation); therefore, a complete file transfer could happen even with validation failure.	uri, lua_script, or none	none

Field	Description	Values	Default
Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script	For Lua API validation, the path to the base64-encoded Lua script. This value or "File Path to Lua Action Script" must be defined if any of the following values are set to <code>lua_script</code> : Run at File Start, Run at File Stop, Run at Session Start, Run at Session Stop, Run when Crossing File Threshold. If both this option and File Path to Lua Action Script option are defined, this value is ignored. For more information on inline file validation, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	Base64-encoded string	blank
File Path to Lua Action Script	For Lua API validation, the path to the Lua script. This value or Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script must be defined if any of the following values are set to <code>lua_script</code> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>validation_file_start</code></li> <li><code>validation_file_stop</code></li> <li><code>validation_session_start</code></li> <li><code>validation_session_stop</code></li> <li><code>validation_threshold</code></li> </ul> If both this option and the Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script option are defined, this value is used. For more information on inline file validation, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	Filepath	blank
File Create Mode	Set the file creation mode (permissions). If specified, create files with these permissions (for example, 0755), irrespective of File Create Grant Mask and permissions of the file on the source computer. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver.	positive integer (octal)	undefined
File Create Grant Mask	Set the mode for newly created files if File Create Mode is not specified. If specified, file modes will be set to their original modes plus the Grant Mask values. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver and when File Create Mode is not specified.	positive integer (octal)	644
Directory Create Mode	Set the directory creation mode (permissions). If specified, create directories with these permissions irrespective of Directory Create Grant Mask and permissions of the directory on the source computer. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver.	positive integer (octal)	undefined
Directory Create Grant Mask	Set the mode for newly created directories if Directory Create Mode is not specified. If specified, directory modes will be set to their original modes plus the Grant Mask values. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver and when Directory Create Mode is not specified.	positive integer (octal)	755

Field	Description	Values	Default
Read Block Size (bytes)	Set the maximum number of bytes that can be stored within a block as the block is being transferred from the source disk drive to the receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its default internal buffer size, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender (which only takes effect if the <i>sender</i> is a server).	positive integer, where 500MB or 524,288,000 bytes is the maximum block size.	0
Write Block Size (bytes)	Set the maximum bytes within a block that an <code>ascp</code> receiver can write to disk. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its default internal buffer size, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver (which only takes effect if the <i>receiver</i> is a server).	positive integer, where 500MB or 524,288,000 bytes is the maximum block size.	0
Number of I/O read threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender uses to read file contents from the source disk drive. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a sender. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender.	positive integer	0
Number of I/O Write Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera receiver uses to write the file contents to the destination disk drive. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Number of Dir Scanning Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender uses to scan directory contents. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a sender. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its internal default. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender.	positive integer	0
Number of Metadata Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera receiver uses to create directories or 0 byte files. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Number of Worker Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender and receiver use to delete files. This is a performance-tuning parameter.	positive integer	0
Sparse File Checking	Set to <code>true</code> to enable sparse file checking, which tells the Aspera receiver to avoid writing zero blocks and save disk space. The default of <code>false</code> to tell the Aspera receiver to write all the blocks. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
Behavior on Attr Error	Set behavior for when operations attempt to set or change file attributes (such as POSIX ownership, ACLs, or modification time) and fail. Setting to <code>yes</code> returns an error and causes the operation to fail. Setting to <code>no</code> logs the error and the operation continues	<code>no</code> or <code>yes</code>	<code>yes</code>
Compression Method for File Transfer	Set the compression method to apply to transfers. It applies to both the client and server.	<code>lz4</code> , <code>qlz</code> , <code>zlib</code> , or <code>none</code>	<code>lz4</code>
Use File Cache	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to enable per-file memory caching at the data receiver. File level memory caching improves data write speed on Windows platforms in particular, but uses more memory. This is a performance tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.  Aspera suggests using a file cache on systems that are transferring data at speeds close to the performance of their storage device, and disable it for system with very high concurrency (because memory utilization will grow with the number of concurrent transfers).	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>true</code>
Max File Cache Buffer (bytes)	Set the maximum size allocated for per-file memory cache (see Use File Cache) in bytes. The default of zero will cause the Aspera receiver to use its internal buffer size, which may be different for different operating systems. This is a performance tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Resume Suffix	Set the file name extension for temporary metadata files used for resuming incomplete transfers. Each data file in progress will have a corresponding metadata file with the same name plus the resume suffix specified by the receiver. Metadata files in the source of a directory transfer are skipped if they end with the sender's resume suffix.	text string	<code>.aspx</code>
Symbolic Link Actions	Set how the server handles symbolic links. For more information about the actions and the interaction between the server configuration and the client request, see <a href="#">Symbolic Link Handling</a> on page 214. Combinations of values are logically ORed before use. For example, use <code>none</code> alone to mean skip, and shut out other options; when both <code>follow</code> and <code>follow_wide</code> are set, the latter is recognized.  To set a combination of actions globally or for individual users, you must edit the configuration file <code>aspera.conf</code> using the appropriate command:  <pre># asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;symbolic_links,value" # asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;symbolic_links,value"</pre>	<code>none</code> , <code>create</code> , <code>follow</code> , <code>follow_wide</code> , or any combination of the above delimited by commas	<code>follow,create</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
Preserve Attributes	Set the file creation policy. Set to <code>none</code> to not preserve the timestamps of source files. Set to <code>times</code> to preserve the timestamp of the source files at destination.  <b>Note:</b> For Limelight storage, only the preservation of modification time is supported.	<code>none</code> or <code>times</code>	blank (use the client setting)
Overwrite	Set to <code>allow</code> to allow Aspera clients to overwrite existing files on the server, as long as file permissions allow that action.  If set to <code>deny</code> , clients who upload files to the server cannot overwrite existing files, regardless of file permissions.	<code>allow</code> or <code>deny</code>	<code>allow</code>
File Manifest	Set to <code>text</code> to generate a text file "receipt" of all files within each transfer session. Set to <code>disable</code> to not create a File Manifest. The file manifest is a file containing a list of everything that was transferred in a given transfer session. The filename of the File Manifest itself is automatically generated based on the transfer session's unique ID. The location where each manifest is written is specified by the File Manifest Path value. If no File Manifest Path is specified, the file will be generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.	<code>text</code> , <code>disable</code> , or <code>none</code>	<code>none</code>
File Manifest Path	Specify the location to store manifest files. Can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home.  <b>Note:</b> File manifests can only be stored locally. Thus, if you are using S3, or other non-local storage, you must specify a <i>local</i> manifest path.	text string	blank
File Manifest Suffix	Specify the suffix of the manifest file during file transfer.	text string	<code>.aspera-inprogress</code>
Pre-Calculate Job Size	Set to <code>yes</code> to enable calculating job size before transferring. Set to <code>no</code> to disable calculating job size before transferring. Set to <code>any</code> to follow client configurations.	<code>yes</code> , <code>no</code> , or <code>any</code>	<code>any</code>
Convert Restricted Windows Characters	To enable the replacement of reserved Windows characters in file and directory names with a non-reserved character, set to the single byte, non-restricted character that will be used for the replacement. Only applies to files written to the local Windows file system; to enable on the peer it must be set on the peer's system.	single-byte, non-restricted character	blank
File Filter Pattern List	Exclude or include files and directories with the specified pattern in the transfer. Add multiple entries for more inclusion/exclusion patterns. To specify an inclusion, start the pattern with '+' (+ and a whitespace). To specify an exclusion, start the pattern	text entries	blank

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>with '-' (- and a whitespace). Two symbols can be used in the setting of patterns:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A "*" (asterisk) represents zero to many characters in a string. For example, *.tmp matches .tmp and abcde.tmp.</li> <li>• A "?" (question mark) represents a single character. For example, t?p matches tmp but not temp.</li> </ul> <p>For details on specifying rules, see <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208.</p> <p>This option applies only when the server is acting as a client. Servers cannot exclude files or directories uploaded or downloaded by remote clients.</p>		
Partial File Name Suffix	<p>Set the filename extension on the destination computer while the file is being transferred. Once the file has been completely transferred, this filename extension is removed.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This option only takes effect when it is set on the receiver side.</p>	text string	blank
File Checksum Method	<p>Set the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files. The content of transfers can be verified by comparing the checksum value at the destination with the value read at the source. For more information, see <a href="#">Reporting Checksums</a> on page 72.</p>	any, md5, sha1, sha256, sha384, or sha512	any
Async Log Directory	<p>Set an alternative location for the IBM Aspera Sync log files. If empty, log files go to the default location, or the location specified by the client with -R.</p>	filepath	blank
Async Log Level	<p>Set the amount of detail in the Aspera Sync server activity log.</p>	disable, log, dbg1, or dbg2	log
Async Snapdb Directory	<p>Set an alternative location for the Aspera Sync snapshot database files.</p>	filepath	blank

## Configuring Inline File Validation in the GUI

If an executable file containing malicious code is uploaded to the server, the malicious code can subsequently be executed by an external product that integrates with an Aspera product. Inline file validation is a feature that enables file content to be validated while the file is in transit, as well as when the transfer is complete. The validation check is made with a Lua script or with a REST call to an external URL. The mode of validation used (URL or Lua) and the timing of the check are set in the Aspera server GUI `oraspera.conf`.

When inline file validation is enabled, the transfer is not reported as complete until the validation completes. An alternative to inline file validation, out-of-transfer file validation, completes the transfer and then validates the file, and can be substantially faster. For more information, see [Out-of-Transfer File Validation](#) on page 127.

**Note:** Inline file validation is not applied to transfers that fall back to HTTP. If all transfers require validation, use out-of-transfer validation.

1. For Lua script validation, prepare your Lua script and specify the path to it.

For information about preparing a Lua script, see [Inline File Validation with Lua Script](#) on page 134.

Go to **Configuration > File Handling** for a specific user and set either **Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script** or **File Path to Lua Action Script**, depending on if your script is base64 encoded:

2. For URI validation, configure the REST service and set the URL.

**Note:** The code examples provided here are for an admin using a Java servlet deployed on an Apache web server, but this process is generalizable to other programming languages and other servers.

- a) Open `web.xml` and edit the `<servlet>` and `<servlet_mapping>` sections to provide the necessary information for validation.

The `<servlet-name>` (URL handler) value is also configured in `aspera.conf` (in the next step) and any custom code (such as file filtering, see [Inline File Validation with URI](#) on page 132).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<web-app xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee http://
xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-app_3_1.xsd"
  version="3.1">

  <servlet>
    <servlet-name>SimpleValidator</servlet-name>
    <servlet-class>aspera.validation.SimpleValidator</servlet-class>
  </servlet>

  <servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>SimpleValidator</servlet-name>
    <url-pattern>/SimpleValidator/validation/files</url-pattern>
  </servlet-mapping>
</web-app>
```

- b) Set the URL in `aspera.conf`.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_uri,url"
```

Where `url` is the server's IP address and port, and the servlet name (URL handler) found in `web.xml`. This adds the path to the `<transfer>` section of `aspera.conf`. For example:

```
<transfer>
<validation_uri>http://127.0.0.1:8080/SimpleValidator</validation_uri>
</transfer>
```

3. Schedule the validation.

Go to **Configuration > File handling** and select **uri** or **lua\_script** to schedule that type of validation at the following events:

- **Run File Validation at File Start**
- **Run File Validation at File Stop**
- **Run File Validation at Session Start** (URL validation is not supported)
- **Run File Validation at Session Stop** (URL validation is not supported)
- **Run File Validation When Crossing File Threshold**

You can set a Lua script validation to run at one event and a URI validation to run at another, but you can define only one Lua script or URL. The default setting for all events is **none**.

4. If you schedule validation at a file size threshold, set the threshold.



This setting cannot be done in the GUI; run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_threshold_kb,size"
```

#### 5. Configure multi-threaded validation.

By default, inline validation is set to use 5 threads.

If the number of validation threads is not set to 1, then multiple threads may perform different types of validations for different (or the same) files at the same time. In such a situation, the response of a `validation_file_stop` at the end of a file download might come before the response of a `validation_threshold` for the same file.

To set the number of validation threads, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_threads,number"
```

For more information about the configuration parameters, see [File Handling Configuration](#) on page 57 (defining values in the UI) or [aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration](#) on page 88 (defining values in `aspera.conf`)

For more information on the output of your inline validation, see [Inline File Validation with URI](#) on page 132 or [Inline File Validation with Lua Script](#) on page 134.

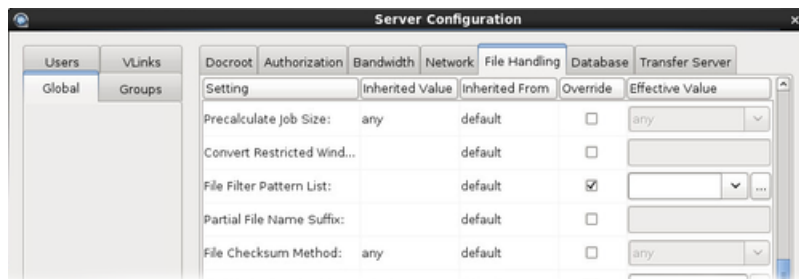
## Configuring Filters to Include and Exclude Files

Filters refine the list of source files (or directories) to transfer by indicating which to skip or include based on name matching. When no filtering rules are specified by the client, Ascp transfers all source files in the transfer list; servers cannot filter client uploads or downloads.

Filters can be specified on the `ascp` command line and in `aspera.conf`. Ascp applies filtering rules that are set in `aspera.conf` *before* it applies rules on the command line.

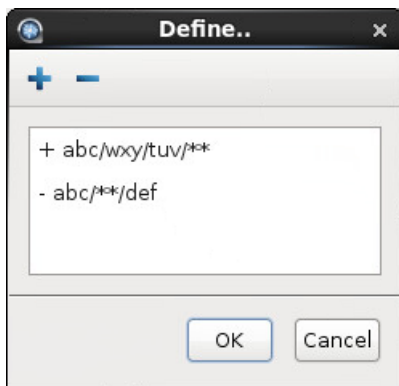
### Set Filtering Rules in the GUI

#### 1. Click **Configuration > File Handling**.



#### 2. Scroll down to **File Filter Pattern List**.

#### 3. Select **Override** then click to open the filter **Define** dialog. If rules were added earlier, either through the GUI or through `aspera.conf`, they will appear in the window.



4. Click the **+** button to add a new filtering rule, or click the **-** button to delete a rule that you've selected.

### Rule Syntax

A rule consists of a "+" or "-" sign (indicating whether to include or exclude), followed by a space character, followed by a pattern. A pattern can be a file or directory name, or a set of names expressed with UNIX *glob* patterns.

**Note:** Do not confuse the GUI line-add and line-delete buttons in the GUI: **+** and **-**, with the include/exclude characters "+" or "-" that are part of rule syntax. The purpose of each is different and they are unrelated.

### Basic usage

- Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order from top to bottom.
- Filtering is a process of exclusion, and include rules override exclude rules that follow them. Include rules cannot add back files that are excluded by a preceding exclude rule.
- Include rules must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all unmatched files, add two final rules: "- \*" and "- .\*".
- Filtering operates only on the set of files and directories in the transfer list. An include rule cannot add files or directories that are not already part of the transfer list.

Example	Transfer Result
- <i>rule</i>	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule</i> .
+ <i>rule</i>	Transfer all files and directories because none are excluded. To transfer only the files and directories with names that match <i>rule</i> use: <pre>+ <i>rule</i> - * - .*</pre>
+ <i>rule1</i> - <i>rule2</i>	Transfer all files and directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> , as well as all other files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule2</i> .
- <i>rule1</i> + <i>rule2</i>	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule1</i> . All files and directories not already excluded by <i>rule1</i> are included because no additional exclude rule follows <code>-N 'rule2'</code> . Additional filters can be set for transfers in the GUI ( <a href="#">Adding and Editing Connections</a> on page 153) or on the command line ( <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208). To transfer only the files and directories with names that do not match <i>rule1</i> but do match <i>rule2</i> use: <pre>- <i>rule1</i> + <i>rule2</i></pre>

Example	Transfer Result
	<pre>- *</pre> <pre>- .*</pre>

## Filtering Rule Application

### Filtering order

Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order they appear in the list.

1. The first file (or directory) in the transfer list is compared to the pattern of the first rule.
2. If the file matches the pattern, Ascp includes it or excludes it and the file is immune to any following rules.
 

**Note:** When a directory is excluded, directories and files in it are also excluded and are not compared to any following rules.
3. If the file does not match, it is compared to the next rule and repeats the process for each rule until a match is found or until all rules have been tried.
4. If the file never matches any exclude rules, it is included in the transfer.
5. The next file or directory in the transfer list is then compared to the filtering rules until all eligible files are evaluated.

### Example

Consider the following set of rules:

```
+ file2
- file[0-9]
```

If the source contains `file1`, `file2`, and `fileA`, the filtering rules are applied as follows:

1. `file1` is compared with the first rule (`+ file2`) and does not match so filtering continues.
2. `file1` is compared with the second rule (`- file[0-9]`) and matches, so it is excluded from the transfer.
3. `file2` is compared with the first rule and matches, so it is included in the transfer and filtering stops for `file2`.
4. `fileA` is compared with the first rule and does not match so filtering continues.
5. `fileA` is compared with the second rule and does not match. Because no rules exclude it, `fileA` is included in the transfer.

## Rule Patterns

Rule patterns (globs) use standard globbing syntax that includes wildcards and special characters, as well as several Aspera extensions to the standard.

- **Character case:** Case always matters, even if the file system does not enforce such a distinction. For example, on Windows FAT or NTFS file systems and macOS HPFS+, a file system search for "DEBUG" returns files "Debug" and "debug". In contrast, Ascp filter rules use exact comparison, such that "debug" does not match "Debug". To match both, use "[Dd]debug".
- **Partial matches:** With globs, unlike standard regular expressions, the entire filename or directory name must match the pattern. For example, the pattern `abc*f` matches `abcdef` but not `abcdefg`.

### Standard Globbing: Wildcards and Special Characters

/	The only recognized path separator.
\	Quotes any character literally, including itself. \ is exclusively a quoting operator, not a path separator.
*	Matches zero or more characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
?	Matches any single character, except "/" or the . in "/. ".

[ ... ]	Matches exactly one of a set of characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
[ ^... ]	When ^ is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ !... ]	When ! is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ x-x ]	Matches exactly one of a range of characters.
[ :xxxxx: ]	For details about this type of wildcard, see any POSIX-standard guide to globbing.

### Globbering Extensions: Wildcards and Special Characters

no / or * at end of pattern	Matches files only.
/ at end of pattern	Matches directories only. With -N, no files under matched directories or their subdirectories are included in the transfer. All subdirectories are still included, although their files will not be included. However, with -E, excluding a directory also excludes all files and subdirectories under it.
* or /** at end of pattern	Matches both directories and files.
/**	Like * but also matches "/" and the . in "/. ".
/ at start of pattern	Must match the entire string from the root of the transfer set. (Note: The leading / does not refer to the system root or the docroot.)

### Standard Globbing Examples

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/	abc/def/xyz	abc/def/xyz	abc/def
\	abc\?	abc?	abc\? abc/D abcD
*	abc*f	abcdef abc.f	abc/f abcdefg
?	abc??	abcde abc.z	abcdef abc/d abc/.
[ ... ]	[abc]def	abcdef cdef	abcdef ade
[ ^... ]	[^abc]def	zdef .def 2def	bdef /def /.def
[ !... ]	[!abc]def	zdef .def 2def	cdef /def /.def
[ :xxxxx: ]	[[:lower:]]def	cdef ydef	Adef 2def .def

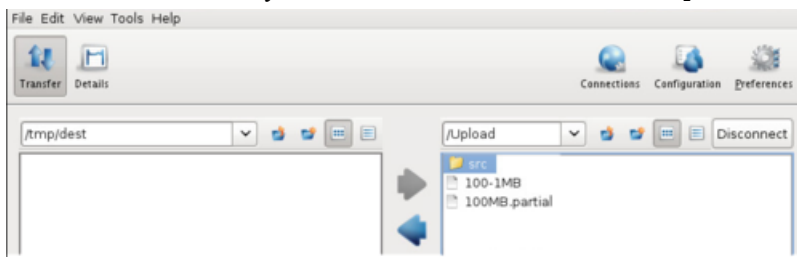
### Globbering Extension Examples

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/**	a/**/f	a/f a/.z/f a/d/e/f	a/d/f/ za/d/f
* at end of rule	abc*	abc/ abcfile	
/** at end of rule	abc/**	abc/.file abc/d/e/	abc/
/ at end of rule	abc/*/	abc/dir	abc/file
no / at end of rule	abc	abc (file)	abc/
/ at start of rule	/abc/def	/abc/def	xyz/abc/def

## Testing Your Filtering Rules

If you plan to use filtering rules, it's best to test them first. An easy way to try filtering rules, or to learn how they work, is to set up source and destination directories and use `demo.asperasoft.com` as the Aspera server:

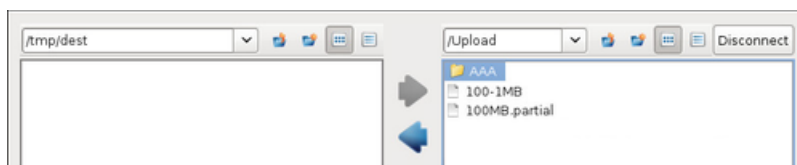
1. On your computer, create a small set of directories and files that generally matches a file set you typically transfer. Since filenames are all that matter, the size of the files can be small.
2. Place the file set in an accessible location, for example `/tmp/src`.
3. Upload the file set to the Aspera demo server as user "aspera". Specify the demo-server target directory `Upload`. When you are prompted for the password, enter "demoaspera". For more information about setting up a connection to `demo.asperasoft.com`, see [Testing a Locally Initiated Transfer](#) on page 23.
4. Create a destination directory on your computer, for example `/tmp/dest`.
5. You can now download your files from the demo server to `/tmp/dest` and test your filtering rules. For example:



6. Compare the list of files transferred to the list of your original files.

## Example Filter Rules

The example rules below are based on downloading a directory `AAA` from `demo.asperasoft.com` to `/tmp/dest` on your computer:



The examples below use the following file set:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

Key for interpreting results:

```
< xxx/yyy = Excluded
xxx/yyy = Included
zzz/ = directory name
zzz = filename
```

(1) Transfer everything except files and directories starting with ".":

```
+ *
- AAA/**
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
```

(2) Exclude directories and files whose names start with `wxy`

```
- wxy*
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

(3) Include directories and files that start with "wxy" if they fall directly under AAA:

```
+ wxy*
- AAA/**
```

Results:

```
AAA/wxy/
AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

(4) Include directories and files at any level that start with `wxy`, but do not include dot-files, dot-directories, or any files under the `wxy` directories (unless they start with `wxy`). However, subdirectories under `wxy` will be included:

```
+ */wxy*
- AAA/**
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
```

```

AAA/wxy/xyz/
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/def      *
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/wxy/xyzfile

```

\* Even though wxy is included, def is excluded because it's a file.

(5) Include wxy directories and files at any level, even those starting with ".":

```

+ */wxy*
- */wxy/**
- AAA/**

```

Results:

```

AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyz/
AAA/wxy/xyzfile
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def

```

(6) Exclude directories and files starting with wxy, but only those found at a specific location in the tree:

```

+ /AAA/abc/wxy*

```

Results:

```

AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyz/
AAA/wxy/xyzfile
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def

```

(7) Include the wxy directory at a specific location, and include all its subdirectories and files, including those starting with ".":

```

+ AAA/abc/wxy/**
- AAA/**

```

Results:

```

AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def

```

```
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/wxy/xyz/
< AAA/wxy/xyzfile
```

## Reporting Checksums

File checksums are useful for trouble-shooting file corruption, allowing you to determine at what point in the transfer file corruption occurred. Aspera servers can report source file checksums that are calculated on-the-fly during transfer and then sent from the source to the destination.

To support checksum reporting, the transfer must meet both of the following requirements:

- Both the server and client computers must be running HST Server (formerly Enterprise Server and Connect Server) or HST Endpoint (formerly Point-to-Point Client) version 3.4.2 or higher.
- The transfer must be encrypted. Encryption is enabled by default.

The user on the destination can calculate a checksum for the received file and compare it (manually or programmatically) to the checksum reported by the sender. The checksum reported by the source can be retrieved in the destination logs, a manifest file, in IBM Aspera Console, or as an environment variable. Instructions for comparing checksums follow the instructions for enabling checksum reporting.

Checksum reporting is disabled by default. Enable and configure checksum reporting on the server by using the following methods:

- Edit `aspera.conf` with `asconfigurator`.
- Set options in the client GUI.
- Set `ascp` command-line options (per-transfer configuration).

Command-line options override the settings in `aspera.conf` and the GUI.

**Important:** When checksum reporting is enabled, transfers of very large files (>TB) take a long time to resume because the entire file must be reread.

### Overview of Checksum Configuration Options

<b>asconfigurator Option</b> <b>GUI Setting</b> <b>ascp Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>file_checksum</code> File checksum method <code>--file-checksum=type</code>	<p>Enable checksum reporting and specify the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files.</p> <p><code>any</code> - Allow the checksum format to be whichever format the client requests. (Default in <code>aspera.conf</code> and the GUI)</p> <p><code>md5</code> - Calculate and report an MD5 checksum.</p> <p><code>sha1</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-1 checksum.</p> <p><code>sha256</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-256 checksum.</p> <p><code>sha384</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-384 checksum.</p> <p><code>sha512</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-512 checksum.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The default value for the <code>ascp</code> option is <code>none</code>, in which case the reported checksum is the one configured on the server, if any.</p>
<code>file_manifest</code> File Manifest <code>--file_manifest=output</code>	<p>The file manifest is a file that contains a list of content that was transferred in a transfer session. The file name of the file manifest is automatically generated from the transfer session ID.</p> <p>When set to <code>none</code>, no file manifest is created. (Default)</p>



asconfigurator Option GUI Setting ascp Option	Description
	When set to <code>text</code> , a text file is generated that lists all files in each transfer session.
<code>file_manifest_path</code> File Manifest Path <code>--file_manifest_path=path</code>	The location where manifest files are written. The location can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home directory. If no path is specified (default), the file is generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.  <b>Note:</b> File manifests can be stored only locally. Thus, if you are using S3 or other non-local storage, you must specify a local manifest path.

### Enabling checksum reporting by editing `aspera.conf`

To enable checksum reporting, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_checksum,checksum"
```

To enable and configure the file manifest where checksum report data is stored, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest,text"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest_path,filepath"
```

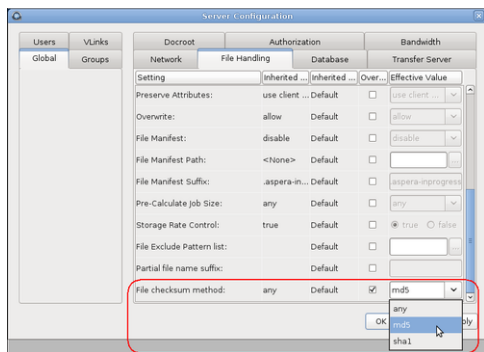
These commands create lines in `aspera.conf` as shown in the following example, where checksum type is `md5`, file manifest is enabled, and the path is `/tmp`.

```
<file_system>
...
<file_checksum>md5</file_checksum>
<file_manifest>text</file_manifest>
<file_manifest_path>/tmp</file_manifest_path>
...
</file_system>
```

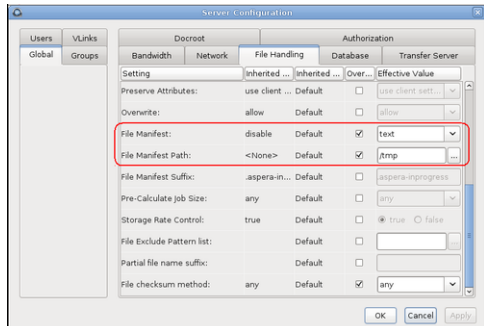
### Enabling checksum reporting from the GUI

Click **Configuration** to open the **Server Configuration** window. Select the **Global**, **Groups**, or **Users** tab, depending on whether you want to enable checksum reporting for all users, or for a particular group or user.

Under the **File Handling** tab, locate the setting for **File checksum method**. Check the override box and for the effective value, select any, `md5`, `sha1`, `sha256`, `sha384`, or `sha512`.



To enable the file manifest, select the override check box for **File Manifest** and set the effective value to **text**. To set the path, select the override check box for **File Manifest Path** and set the effective value to the folder in which you want the manifest files saved.



In the examples above, the manifest is generated when files are transferred and saved as a text file called `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the directory `/tmp`.

### Enabling checksum reporting in an ascp session

To enable checksum reporting on a per-transfer-session basis, run `ascp` with the `--file-checksum=hash` option, where `hash` is `sha1`, `md5`, `sha-512`, `sha-384`, `sha-256`, or `none` (the default).

Enable the manifest with `--file-manifest=output` where `output` is either `text` or `none`. Set the path to the manifest file with `--file-manifest-path=path`.

For example:

```
# ascp --file-checksum=md5 --file-manifest=text --file-manifest-path=/
tmp file aspera_user_1@189.0.202.39:/destination_path
```

### Setting up a Pre/Post-processing Script

An alternative to enabling and configuring the file manifest to collect checksum reporting is to set up a pre/post-processing script to report the values.

The checksum of a transferred file is stored in the pre/post environment variable `FILE_CSUM`, which can be used in pre/post scripts to output file checksums. For example, the following script outputs the checksum to the file `/tmp/cksum.log`:

```
#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
    if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
        echo "The file is: $FILE" >> /tmp/cksum.log
        echo "The file checksum is: $FILE_CSUM" >> /tmp/cksum.log
        chmod 777 $FILE
    fi
fi
```

For information on pre- and post-processing scripts and environment variables, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

### Comparing Checksums

If you open a file that you downloaded with Aspera and find that it is corrupted, you can determine when the corruption occurred by comparing the checksum that is reported by Aspera to the checksums of the files on the destination and on the source.

1. Retrieve the checksum that was calculated by Aspera as the file was transferred.

- If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path as part of an `ascp` transfer or pre/post processing script, the checksums are in that file in the specified location.
  - If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path in the GUI or `aspera.conf`, the checksums are in a file that is named `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the specified location.
2. Calculate the checksum of the corrupted file. This example uses the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

```
# md5sum filepath
```

3. Compare the checksum reported by Aspera with the checksum that you calculated for the corrupted file.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred as the file was written to the destination. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted. If it is corrupted, compare the checksums again. If they do not match, investigate the write process or attempt another download. If they match, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, then corruption might have occurred as the file was read from the source. Continue to the next step.
4. Calculate the checksums for the file on the source. These examples use the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

Windows:

```
> CertUtil -hashfile filepath MD5
```

Mac OS X:

```
$ md5 filepath
```

Linux and Linux on z Systems:

```
# md5sum filepath
```

AIX:

```
# csum -h MD5 filepath
```

Solaris:

```
# digest -a md5 -v filepath
```

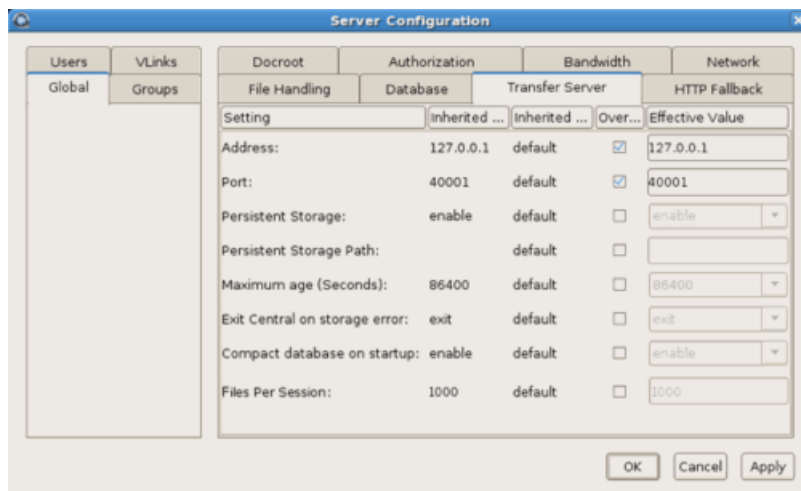
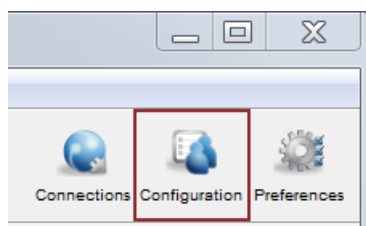
5. Compare the checksum of the file on the source with the one reported by Aspera.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred when the file was read from the source. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted on the destination. If it is corrupted, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, confirm that the source file is not corrupted. If the source file is corrupted, replace it with an uncorrupted one, if possible, and then download the file again.

## Transfer Server Configuration

---

HST Server uses `asperacentral` to handle transfer requests from Aspera clients. You can configure server properties and behavior in the **Transfer Server** options, including specifying the address, enabling persistent storage, and controlling how to handle empty files.

1. Open HST Server with root privileges.
2. Click **Configuration > Global > Transfer Server**.



3. Edit settings on the **Transfer Server** tab. Select **Override** in the option's row to set an effective value.

### Transfer Server Settings Reference

Setting	Description	Values	Default
Address	The network interface address on which the transfer server listens. The default value of 127.0.0.1 enables the transfer server to accept transfer requests from the local computer. If you set the address to 0.0.0.0, the transfer server can accept requests on all network interfaces. Alternatively, a specific network interface address may be specified.	Valid IPv4 address	127.0.0.1
Port	The port on which the transfer server accepts transfer requests.	Positive integer 1 - 65535	40001
Persistent Storage	Enable to retain data that is stored in the database between reboots of asperacentral.	Enable or Disable	Enable
Persistent Storage Path	The location in which to store data between reboots of asperacentral. If the path is a directory, then a file is created with the default name <code>central-store.db</code> . Otherwise, the file is named as specified in the path.	Valid system path	If the application is installed in the default location, then the path is the following:  <code>/opt/aspera/var/</code>
Maximum Age (seconds)	Maximum allowable age (in seconds) of data to be retained in the database.	Positive integer	86400
Exit Central on Storage Error	The behavior of the asperacentral server if a database write error occurs.	Ignore or Exit	Ignore

Setting	Description	Values	Default
Compact Database on Startup	Enable or disable compacting (vacuuming) the database when the transfer server starts.	Enable or Disable	Enable
Files Per Session	The maximum number of files that can be retained for persistent storage.	Positive integer	1000
Ignore Empty Files	Set to <b>true</b> to block the logging of zero-byte files.	true or false	true
Ignore No-transfer Files	Set to <b>true</b> to block the logging of files that were not transferred because they exist at the destination.	true or false	true
Post-Transfer Validation Timeout	How many seconds to wait for a post-transfer validator to update the status of a file before the file is released from the validator and its status is changed back to "to_be_validated". This allows a file to be validated by a different validator if the first validator stops working.  For more information, see <a href="#">Out-of-Transfer File Validation</a> on page 127.	Positive integer	300

## Set up Users and Groups from the Command Line

---

Aspera clients connect to HST Server by authenticating as a system user who is configured in the application. The user can also belong to a group that is configured in the application. Users and groups can be set up by running `asconfigurator` commands or directly editing the configuration file, `aspera.conf`.

### Setting Up Transfer Users (Terminal)

---

The HST Server uses system accounts to authenticate connections from Aspera clients. The system users must be added and configured as Aspera transfer users before clients can browse the server file system or run FASP transfers to and from the server. When creating transfer users, you can also specify user-specific settings, such as transfer bandwidth, docroot, and file handling. User configuration is an important part of securing your server. For a complete description, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.

#### Important Configuration Notes:

- Some Aspera features require a docroot in URI format or require a file restriction instead of a docroot. For more information, see [Docroot vs. File Restriction](#) on page 479.
- If users connect to the server by providing IBM Aspera Shares credentials or by providing Node API credentials that are associated with the transfer user, changes to a user's configuration, such as their docroot, are not applied to the user until `asperanoded` is restarted. For instructions, see [Restarting Aspera Services](#) on page 478.

To configure a system user account as an Aspera transfer user:

1. To allow the user to access the HST Server web UI (deprecated), configure the user for Apache authentication.

In addition to SSH authentication, HST Server uses Apache's authentication to authorize web UI access. To set up a system user (`asp1` in this example) for Apache authentication, run the `htpasswd` command below.

**Note:** On the first run of `htpasswd`, you must use the `-c` option to create the file for credential storage, `webpasswd`. Do not use the `-c` option otherwise.

```
# htpasswd [-c ]/opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd asp1
```

**Note:** If you have Apache 2.4.4, you may get authentication errors when trying to provide a password to view the site. As a workaround, run `htpasswd` with the `-b` option and enter the password on the command line as follows:

```
# htpasswd -b /opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd aspl password
```

## 2. Create default (global) transfer settings.

To set default values to prohibit transfers in and out, set the encryption key, and set the default docroot for all users, run the following commands (if not already set):

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_in_value,deny"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_out_value,deny"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;token_encryption_key,token_key"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;absolute,docroot"
```

For server security, Aspera recommends the following settings:

- Deny transfers by default, then enable transfers for individual users as required (described in a later step).
- Set the token encryption key to a string of at least 20 random characters.
- Set a default docroot to an empty folder or a part of the file system specific to each user.

If there is a pattern in the docroot of each user, for example, `/sandbox/username`, you can use a substitutional string. This way you assign independent docroot to each user without setting a docroot for each user individually

Substitutional String	Definition	Example
<code>\$(name)</code>	system user's name	<code>/sandbox/\$(name)</code>
<code>\$(home)</code>	system user's home directory	<code>\$(home)/Documents</code>

## 3. For server security, Aspera recommends restricting users' read, write, and browse permissions.

Users are given read, write, and browse permissions to their docroot by default. For increased security, change the global default to deny these permissions:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;read_allowed,false;write_allowed,false;dir_allowed,false"
```

Run the following commands to enable permissions per user, as required:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;read_allowed,true"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;write_allowed,true"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;dir_allowed,true"
```

## 4. If you provided an Aspera license during installation (rather than an entitlement), ensure that the transfer user has read permissions on the Aspera license file (`aspera-license`) so that they can run transfers.

The license file is found in: `/opt/aspera/etc/`

## 5. Restrict user permissions with `aspsshell`.

By default, all system users can establish a FASP connection and are only restricted by file permissions. Restrict the user's file operations by assigning them to use `aspsshell`, which permits only the following operations:

- Running Aspera uploads and downloads to or from this computer.
- Establishing connections in the application.
- Browsing, listing, creating, renaming, or deleting contents.

These instructions explain one way to change a user account or active directory user account so that it uses the `aspsshell`; there may be other ways to do so on your system.

Run the following command to change the user login shell to `aspsshell`:

```
# sudo usermod -s /bin/aspsshell username
```

Confirm that the user's shell updated by running the following command and looking for `/bin/aspshell` at the end of the output:

```
# grep username /etc/passwd
username:x:501:501:...:/home/username:/bin/aspshell
```

**Note: If you use OpenSSH, sssd, and Active Directory for authentication:** To make `aspshell` the default shell for all domain users, first set up a local account for server administration because this change affects all domain users. Then open `/etc/sss/sss.conf` and change `default_shell` from `/bin/bash` to `/bin/aspshell`.

## 6. Configure user-specific transfer settings.

Besides the default (global) transfer settings, you can create user-specific and group-specific transfer settings. The user-specific settings have the highest priority, overriding both group and global settings. For more information, see [Configuration Precedence](#) on page 37.

To set user-specific values to authorize transfers in and out, docroot, and target rate, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;authorization_transfer_in_value,allow"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;authorization_transfer_out_value,allow"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;transfer_in_bandwidth_flow_target_rate_default,rate"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;transfer_out_bandwidth_flow_target_rate_default,rate"
```

For more information about other user settings, see [aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration](#) on page 85, [aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration](#) on page 88, and [aspera.conf - File System Configuration](#) on page 108.

## 7. Verify the configuration.

If you modify `aspera.conf` by editing the text, use the following command to verify the XML form and values:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## 8. Restart asperanoded and asperacentral to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

Run the following command in a Terminal window to restart `asperacentral`:

```
# systemctl restart asperacentral
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperacentral restart
```

## Setting Up Transfer Groups (Terminal)

Transfer settings can be applied to your system's user groups. If users within a group do not have individual transfer settings, then the group's transfer settings are applied. HST Server doesn't create user groups on the operating system for you, so you must ensure that the groups exist before adding them to your Aspera product.

1. Determine the user groups to add to your HST Server.

Ensure that you have an existing user group on your operating system, or create a new user group. Please refer to your operating system's documentation for information on creating user groups. HST Server reads group information from the following file:

```
/etc/group
```

## 2. Add the user group to your Aspera transfer product

When a transfer group is specified, it overwrites global settings and applies group configuration to corresponding users. To add group-specific transfer settings, you can use `asconfigurator` commands with the following syntax:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_group_data;group_name,groupname;parameter,value"
```

For more information on available settings, see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460 and the references in the table below.

Category	Description
<a href="#">Configuration Precedence</a> on page 37	When a user is a member of multiple groups, the precedence setting can be used to determine priority.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration</a> on page 85	Connection permissions, token key, and encryption requirements.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration</a> on page 88	Incoming and outgoing transfer bandwidth and policy settings.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - File System Configuration</a> on page 108	Droot, file and directory creation, access permissions, block sizes, and so on.

You can also manually edit `aspera.conf` with a text editor.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Add the following section to `aspera.conf`:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<CONF version="2">
  <aaa>
    <realms>
      <realm>
        <users>
          ... <!-- user-specific settings -->
        </users>
        <groups>
          <group> <!-- Each group tag contains a group's profile. -->
            <name>aspgroup</name> <!-- The group name. -->
            <precedence>0</precedence> <!-- Group precedence. -->
            <authorization>...</authorization> <!-- Authorization settings. -->
            <transfer>...</transfer> <!-- Transfer settings. -->
            <file_system>...</file_system> <!-- File System settings. -->
          </group>
          <group>
            ... <!-- Another group's settings-->
          </group>
        </groups>
      </realm>
    </realms>
  </aaa>
  ...
</CONF>
```

## 3. Configure the group's transfer settings.



Settings	Description
<a href="#">Configuration Precedence</a> on page 37	When a user is a member of multiple groups, the precedence setting can be used to determine priority.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration</a> on page 85	Connection permissions, token key, and encryption requirements.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration</a> on page 88	Incoming and outgoing transfer bandwidth and policy settings.
<a href="#">aspera.conf - File System Configuration</a> on page 108	Docrout, file and directory creation, access permissions, block sizes, and so on.

You can also manually edit `aspera.conf` with a text editor.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Add the following section to `aspera.conf`:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<CONF version="2">
  <aaa>
    <realms>
      <realm>
        <users>
          ... <!-- user-specific settings -->
        </users>
        <groups>
          <group> <!-- Each group tag contains a group's profile. -->
            <name>aspgroup</name> <!-- The group name. -->
            <precedence>0</precedence> <!-- Group precedence. -->
            <authorization>...</authorization> <!-- Authorization settings. -->
            <transfer>...</transfer> <!-- Transfer settings. -->
            <file_system>...</file_system> <!-- File System settings. -->
          </group>
          <group>
            ... <!-- Another group's settings-->
          </group>
        </groups>
      </realm>
    </realms>
  </aaa>
  ...
</CONF>
```

#### 4. Verify your configuration.

When you have finished updating the group's settings in `aspera.conf`, use the following command to verify it (in this example, verify the group `asp-group`'s settings):

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -g asp-group
```

#### 5. Restart `asperanoded` and `asperacentral` to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

Run the following command in a Terminal window to restart `asperacentral`:

```
# systemctl restart asperacentral
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperacentral restart
```

## Configuration Precedence

HST Server applies configuration settings in this order: 1) user settings, 2) group settings (and if a user belongs to more than one group, precedence can be set for each group), 3) global settings, 4) default settings. User settings have the highest priority and default the lowest.

For example, the table below shows the setting values that are applied to user `aspera_user_1` in **bold** when that user is also a member of several groups and global settings are configured. In this example, `aspera_user_1` is a member of both the **admin** and **xfer** groups. The **admin** group's precedence setting is 0, which supersedes the **xfer** group's setting of 1:

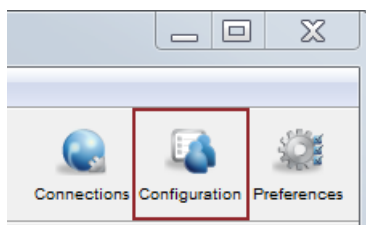
Options	"aspera_user_1" User Settings	"admin" Group Settings	"xfer" Group Settings	Global Settings	Default Settings
Target rate	<b>5M</b>	10M	15M	40M	45M
Min rate	n/a	<b>2M</b>	8M	3M	0
Policy	n/a	n/a	<b>Low</b>	Fair	Fair
Docroot	n/a	n/a	n/a	<b>/pod/ \$(name)</b>	n/a
Encryption	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	<b>any</b>

### Configuring Precedence of Groups

You can configure a group's precedence from the GUI or by editing `aspera.conf`.

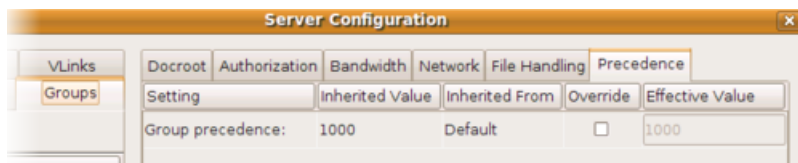
#### GUI:

To configure it from the GUI, launch the application and click **Configuration**.



In the Server Configuration dialog, select the **Groups** tab, choose a group, and select the **Precedence** tab. (The **Precedence** tab does not appear if there are no groups.) Select **Override** and enter a precedence number for the group.

**Note:** A group's precedence setting must be greater than or equal to 0, where 0 is the highest precedence level.



#### Editing `aspera.conf`:

You can configure a group's precedence in `aspera.conf` by running the following `asconfigurator` command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_group_data;group_name,group_name;precedence,value"
```

**Note:** A group's precedence setting must be greater than or equal to 0, where 0 is the highest precedence level.

This adds a `<group>` section to `aspera.conf` like the one below. In this example, group "admin" has higher precedence than group "xfer".

```
<groups>
  <group>
    <name>admin</name>
    <precedence>0</precedence>
    ...
  </group>
  <group>
    <name>xfer</name>
    <precedence>1</precedence>
    ...
  </group>
</groups>
```

You can also edit `aspera.conf` manually by opening it with administrative privileges:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

In the file, locate the entry for each group, add the `<precedence>` option, and assign a precedence value as shown in the example above. After editing the file, validate the XML form and option values by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server

Public key authentication is an alternative to password authentication, providing a more secure authentication method that allows users to avoid entering or storing a password, or sending it over the network. An Aspera client generates a key pair (a public key and a private key) on the client computer and provides the public key to the administrator of the remote Aspera transfer server. The server administrator sets up the client user's public key as described in the following steps.

For information on how to create public keys, see [Creating SSH Keys in the GUI](#) on page 161 or [Creating SSH Keys \(Command Line\)](#) on page 216.

**Important:** The HST Server web UI (deprecated) (deprecated) does not support key-based authentication. This feature is for transfers initiated in the application (including Hot Folders) or the `ascp` command.

### 1. Obtain the client user's public key.

The client user should send you a secure email with the public key pasted in the message body or attached as a text file.

### 2. Install the public key in the user account on the server.

- a) In the home directory of the account that the client will use to access the server, create a directory called `.ssh` if it doesn't already exist.
- b) Save the key file as `authorized_keys` in `.ssh`. If `authorized_keys` already exists, append the key file to it.

For example,

```
# mkdir /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# cat /tmp/id_rsa.pub > /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

Where:

- `aspera_user_1` is the server user account.
- `/tmp/id_rsa.pub` is where you saved the public key sent by the user.
- `/home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys` is the file that contains the public key.

c) Configure permissions on the key.

Make the system user (in this example, user `aspera_user_1`) the owner of key directory and key file, allow access by the `aspera_user_1` group, and set permissions:

```
# chown -R aspera_user_1:aspera_user_1 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 600 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

## Testing a User-Initiated Remote Transfer

Once you have configured an Aspera transfer user on HST Server, test that an Aspera client can successfully connect to your HST Server and upload a file.

### Prerequisites:

- **Client:** Install an Aspera client application, such as the freely available IBM Aspera Desktop Client or IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface, on the client computer.
- **Server:** HST Server must have at least one Aspera transfer user (a system user account that is configured to authenticate Aspera transfers) configured on it.

If any of the following connection tests fail, see [Clients Can't Establish Connection](#) on page 475.

1. On the client, test that you can reach the IP address of your HST Server.

Run the `ping` command:

```
# ping 10.0.0.2
PING 10.0.0.2 (10.0.0.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=8.432 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=7.121 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=5.116 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=4.421 ms
64 bytes from 10.0.0.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=3.050 ms
...
```

In the example above, the address of HST Server is `10.0.0.2` and the output shows successful responses from the host.

If the output returns "Destination host unreachable," check the firewall configuration of the server.

2. On the client, try a transfer to HST Server by using `ascp`.

Run the following command on your client machine:

```
# ascp -P 33001 --mode=send --policy=fair -l 10000 -m
1000 source_path username@ip_address:destination
```

For example: (where `aspera_user_1` is the example transfer user):

```
# ascp -P 33001 --mode=send --policy=fair -l 10000 -m 1000 /client-dir/
files aspera_user_1@10.0.0.2:/dir
```

This command specifies the following values for the transfer:

Item	Argument	Example Value
TCP Port Set the TCP port to start the transfer session.	<code>-P port</code>	<code>-P 33001</code>
Transfer Direction Specify if the server is the destination or source.	<code>--mode=direction</code>	<code>--mode=send</code>
Transfer Policy Specify how to share bandwidth with other network users.	<code>--policy=policy</code>	<code>--policy=fair</code>
Maximum Transfer Rate Set the maximum transfer rate, in Kbps.	<code>-l rate</code>	<code>-l 10000</code> Maximum transfer rate = 10 Mbps
Minimum Transfer Rate Set the minimum transfer rate, in Kbps.	<code>-m rate</code>	<code>-l 1000</code> Minimum transfer rate = 1 Mbps
File or Directory to Upload Set the path relative to your current directory.	<code>source</code>	<code>/client-dir/files</code>
Transfer User	<code>username</code>	<code>aspera_user_1</code>
Host Address	<code>ip_address</code>	<code>10.0.0.2</code>
Destination Folder Set the destination path relative to the transfer user's docroot.	<code>destination</code>	<code>/dir</code> In this example, the files are transferred to the "dir" folder in the docroot of aspera_user_1.

## Configure the Server from the Command Line

---

The following references describe the server settings that can be configured for HST Server by using the command line or directly editing the HST Server configuration file, `aspera.conf`.

### aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration

---

The settings in the `<authorization>` section of `aspera.conf` include transfer permissions and token configuration. Tokens are used by Aspera web applications to authorize transfers between Aspera clients and servers.

**Note:** For security, Aspera recommends denying incoming and outgoing transfers globally, then allowing transfers by individual users, as needed. For a compilation of server security best practices, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.

**Configuration methods:** These instructions describe how to manually modify `aspera.conf`. You can also add and edit these parameters using `asconfigurator` commands. For more information on using `asconfigurator`,

see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460 and run the following command to retrieve a complete default `aspera.conf` that includes the `asconfigurator` syntax for each setting:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

1. Open `aspera.conf` from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

2. Add or locate the `<authorization>` section, as in the following example:

```
<authorization>
  <transfer>
    <in>
      <value>allow</value>          <!-- Incoming Transfer -->
      <external_provider>
        <url>...</url>          <!-- Incoming External Provider URL -->
        <soap>...</soap> <!-- Incoming External Provider SOAP Action -->
      </external_provider>
    </in>
    <out>
      <value>allow</value>          <!-- Outgoing Transfer -->
      <external_provider>
        <url>...</url>          <!-- Outgoing External Provider URL -->
        <soap>...</soap> <!-- Outgoing External Provider SOAP Action -->
      </external_provider>
    </out>
  </transfer>
  <token>
    <encryption_type>aes-128</encryption_type> <!-- Token Encryption Cipher -->
    <encryption_key> </encryption_key>          <!-- Token Encryption Key -->
    <filename_hash> </filename_hash>          <!-- Token Filename Hash -->
    <life_seconds>86400</life_seconds>        <!-- Token Life (seconds) -->
  </token>
</authorization>
```

3. Edit settings as needed.

#### Authorization Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Incoming Transfers	To enable users to transfer to this computer, leave the default setting of <code>allow</code> . Set to <code>deny</code> to prevent transfers to this computer. Set to <code>token</code> to allow only transfers initiated with valid tokens to this computer. Token-based transfers are typically used by web applications such as IBM Aspera Faspex and IBM Aspera Shares and require a Token Encryption Key.	<code>allow</code> , <code>deny</code> , or <code>token</code>	<code>allow</code>
Incoming External Provider URL	Set the URL of the external authorization provider for incoming transfers. The default empty setting disables external authorization. Aspera servers can be configured to check with an external authorization provider. This SOAP authorization mechanism can be useful to organizations requiring custom authorization rules. Requires a value for Incoming External Provider SOAP Action.	HTTP URL	blank
Incoming External Provider SOAP Action	The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for incoming transfers. Required if Incoming External Provider URL is set.	text string	blank

Field	Description	Values	Default
Outgoing Transfers	To enable users to transfer from this computer, leave the default setting of <code>allow</code> . Set to <code>deny</code> to prevent transfers from this computer. Set to <code>token</code> to allow only transfers initiated with valid tokens from this computer. Token-based transfers are typically used by web applications such as Faspex and require a Token Encryption Key.	<code>allow</code> , <code>deny</code> , or <code>token</code>	<code>allow</code>
Outgoing External Provider URL	Set the URL of the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers. The default empty setting disables external authorization. HST Server can be configured to check with an external authorization provider. This SOAP authorization mechanism can be useful to organizations requiring custom authorization rules. Requires a value for Outgoing External Provider Soap Action.	HTTP URL	blank
Outgoing External Provider Soap Action	The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers. Required if Outgoing External Provider URL is set.	text string	blank
Token Encryption Cipher	Set the cipher used to generate encrypted transfer tokens.	<code>aes-128</code> , <code>aes-192</code> , or <code>aes-256</code>	<code>aes-128</code>
Token Encryption Key	Set the secret text phrase that is used to authorize those transfers configured to require token. Aspera recommends setting a token encryption key of at least 20 random characters. For more information, see <a href="#">Require Token Authorization: Set in the GUI</a> on page 434 or <a href="#">Require Token Authorization: Set from the Command Line</a> on page 435.	text string	blank
Token Filename Hash	Set the algorithm with which filenames inside transfer tokens should be hashed. Use MD5 for backward compatibility.	<code>sha1</code> , <code>md5</code> , or <code>sha-256</code>	<code>sha-256</code>
Token Life (seconds)	Set the token expiration for users of web-based transfer applications.	positive integer	86400 (24 hrs)

4. Save and validate `aspera.conf`.

Run the following command to confirm that the XML is correctly formatted and the parameter settings are valid:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration

The settings in the `<transfer>` section of `aspera.conf` include: bandwidth control, transfer protocol options, content encryption requirements, encryption-at-rest, and inline validation.

**Configuration methods:** These instructions describe how to manually modify `aspera.conf`. You can also add and edit these parameters using `asconfigurator` commands. For more information on using `asconfigurator`, see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460 and run the following command to retrieve a complete default `aspera.conf` that includes the `asconfigurator` syntax for each setting:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

1. Open `aspera.conf` from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

2. Add or locate the `<transfer/>` section, as in the following example:

```
<transfer>
  <in>
    <bandwidth>
      <aggregate>
        <trunk_id>Disabled</trunk_id>      <!-- Incoming VLink ID -->
      </aggregate>
      <flow>
        <target_rate>
          <cap></cap>                        <!-- Incoming Target Rate Cap -->
          <default>10000</default>         <!-- Incoming Target Rate Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Incoming Target Rate Lock -->
        </target_rate>
        <min_rate>
          <cap></cap>                        <!-- Incoming Minimum Rate Cap -->
          <default>0</default>              <!-- Incoming Minimum Rate Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Incoming Minimum Rate Lock -->
        </min_rate>
        <policy>
          <allowed>any</allowed>            <!-- Incoming Policy Allowed -->
          <default>fair</default>          <!-- Incoming Policy Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Incoming Policy Lock -->
        </policy>
        <priority>
          <cap></cap>                        <!-- Incoming Priority Allowed -->
          <default>normal</default>        <!-- Incoming Priority Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Incoming Priority Lock -->
        </priority>
        <network_rc>
          <module>delay</module>           <!-- Incoming Rate Control Module -->
          <tcp_friendly>>false</tcp_friendly> <!-- Incoming TCP Friendly Mode -->
          <predictor>unset</predictor>     <!-- Incoming Traffic RTT Predictor -->
          <target_queue>unset</target_queue> <!-- Incoming Rate Control Target Queue -->
        </network_rc>
      </flow>
    </bandwidth>
  </in>
  <out>
    <bandwidth>
      <aggregate>
        <trunk_id>Disabled</trunk_id>      <!-- Outgoing VLink ID -->
      </aggregate>
      <flow>
        <target_rate>
          <cap>Unlimited</cap>               <!-- Outgoing Target Rate Cap -->
          <default>10000</default>         <!-- Outgoing Target Rate Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Outgoing Target Rate Lock -->
        </target_rate>
        <min_rate>
          <cap>Unlimited</cap>               <!-- Outgoing Minimum Rate Cap -->
          <default>0</default>              <!-- Outgoing Minimum Rate Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock -->
        </min_rate>
        <policy>
          <allowed>any</allowed>            <!-- Outgoing Policy Allowed -->
          <default>fair</default>          <!-- Outgoing Policy Default -->
          <lock>>false</lock>                <!-- Outgoing Policy Lock -->
        </policy>
      </flow>
    </bandwidth>
  </out>
</transfer>
```



```

    </policy>
    <priority>
      <cap>high</cap>          <!-- Outgoing Priority Allowed -->
      <default>normal</default> <!-- Outgoing Priority Default -->
      <lock>>false</lock>      <!-- Outgoing Priority Lock -->
    </priority>
    <network_rc>
      <module>delay</module>    <!-- Outgoing Rate Control Module -->
      <tcp_friendly>>false</tcp_friendly> <!-- Outgoing TCP Friendly Mode -->
      <predictor>unset</predictor> <!-- Outgoing Traffic RTT Predictor -->
      <target_queue>unset</target_queue> <!-- Outgoing Rate Control Target Queue -->
    </network_rc>
  </flow>
</bandwidth>
</out>
<encryption>
  <allowed_cipher>any</allowed_cipher> <!-- Encryption Allowed -->
  <fips_mode>>false</fips_mode> <!-- Transfer in FIPS-140-2-certified encryption
mode -->
  <content_protection_required>>false
</content_protection_required>
                                     <!-- Content Protection Required -->
  <content_protection_secret></content_protection_secret>
                                     <!-- Content Protection Secret -->
  <content_protection_strong_pass_required>>false
</content_protection_strong_pass_required>
                                     <!-- Strong Password Required for Content
Protection -->
</encryption>
<protocol_options>
  <bind_ip_address></bind_ip_address> <!-- Bind IP Address -->
  <bind_udp_port>33001</bind_udp_port> <!-- Bind UDP Port -->
  <disable_batching>>false</disable_batching> <!-- Disable Packet Batching -->
  <batch_size>0</batch_size> <!-- Batch Size -->
  <datagram_size>0</datagram_size> <!-- Datagram Size -->
  <max_sock_buffer>0</max_sock_buffer> <!-- Maximum Socket Buffer (bytes)-->
  <min_sock_buffer>0</min_sock_buffer> <!-- Minimum Socket Buffer (bytes)-->
  <rtt_autocorrect>>true</rtt_autocorrect> <!-- RTT auto correction -->
  <rtt_reverse_infer>>true</rtt_reverse_infer> <!-- Reverse path congestion inference -->
  <chunk_size>0</chunk_size> <!-- Chunk Size -->
</protocol_options>
<validation_file_start>none</validation_file_start>
                                     <!-- Validation File Start -->
<validation_file_stop>none</validation_file_stop>
                                     <!-- Validation File Stop -->
<validation_session_start>none</validation_session_start>
                                     <!-- Validation Session Start -->
<validation_session_stop>none</validation_session_stop>
                                     <!-- Validation Session Stop -->
<validation_threshold>none</validation_threshold>
                                     <!-- Validation Threshold -->
<validation_uri>AS_NULL</validation_uri>
                                     <!-- Validation URI -->
<validation_threshold_kb>0</validation_threshold_kb>
                                     <!-- Validation Threshold KB -->
<validation_threads>5</validation_threads> <!-- Validation Threads -->
<validation_lua_script_base64></validation_lua_script_base64>
                                     <!-- Validation Lua Script Base64 -->
<validation_lua_script_path></validation_lua_script_path>
                                     <!-- Validation Lua Script Path -->
</transfer>

```

3. Edit settings as needed.

### Transfer Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Incoming Vlink ID	The ID of the vlink to apply to incoming transfers. Vlinks are a way to define aggregate transfer policies. For more information, see <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI)</a> on page 55 or <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage</a>	Vlink IDs	Undefined (Disabled)

Field	Description	Values	Default
	with <a href="#">Virtual Links (Command Line)</a> on page 103.		
Incoming Target Rate Cap (Kbps)	The maximum target rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. No transfer session can exceed this rate at any time. If the client requests an initial rate greater than the target rate cap, the transfer proceeds at the target rate cap. The default setting of <code>unlimited</code> applies no target rate cap.	positive integer	unlimited
Incoming Target Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Incoming Target Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify this rate in real time. This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	10000
Incoming Target Rate Lock	Lock the target rate of incoming transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the transfer rate of an incoming transfer up to the "Incoming Target Rate Cap".	true or false	false
Incoming Minimum Rate Cap (Kbps)	The highest minimum rate that an incoming transfer can request, in kilobits per second. Client minimum rate requests that exceed the minimum rate cap are ignored. The default value of <code>unlimited</code> applies no cap to the minimum rate.  <b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting the minimum rate cap to zero. Transfers do not slow below the client's requested minimum rate unless the minimum rate is capped on the server. If the client-requested minimum rate exceeds network or storage capacity, this can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.	positive integer or unlimited	unlimited
Incoming Minimum Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial minimum rate for incoming transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Incoming Minimum Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify the minimum rate in real time, up to the "Incoming Minimum Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	0
Incoming Minimum Rate Lock	Lock the minimum rate of incoming transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the minimum transfer rate up to the "Incoming Minimum Rate Cap". This setting is	true or false	false

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting a lock on minimum rate to prevent transfers from using minimum rates that can overwhelm network or storage capacity, decrease transfer performance, and cause problems on the target storage.</p>		
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Allowed	<p>The bandwidth policies that incoming transfers can use. Aspera transfers can use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, <code>low</code>, or <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policies to determine bandwidth allocation among transfers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>any</code> - The server does not deny any transfer based on policy setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting to <code>any</code> allows clients to request a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy. If the client also requests a high minimum transfer rate and that is not capped by the server, the transfer rate can exceed network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. To avoid these problems, set the allowed policy to <code>fair</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Transfers that use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Transfers that use <code>fair</code> or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Only transfers that use a <code>low</code> bandwidth policy are allowed. All others are rejected.</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , or <code>any</code>	<code>any</code>
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Default	<p>The default bandwidth policy for incoming transfers. Clients can override the default policy if they specify a policy allowed by the server (see "Incoming Bandwidth Policy Allowed") and if "Incoming Bandwidth Policy Lock" is set to <code>false</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a <code>fair</code>-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , <code>fixed</code>	<code>fair</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li><code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>		
Incoming Bandwidth Policy Lock	Lock the bandwidth policy of incoming transfer sessions to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the bandwidth policy.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Incoming Priority Allowed	The highest priority the client can request. Use the value 0 to unset this option; 1 to allow high priority, 2 to enforce normal priority.	0, 1, or 2	1
Incoming Priority Default	The initial priority setting. Use the value 0 to unset this option, 1 to allow high priority; 2 to enforce normal priority	0, 1, or 2	2
Incoming Priority Lock	To disallow your clients change the priority, set the value to <code>true</code>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Incoming Rate Control Module	<p>Set how the transmission rate should be managed relative to instantaneous network bandwidth availability. Aspera recommends that this option be changed only by advanced users.</p> <p>When the client does not specify a configuration, the server configuration is used. When the client specifies a value other than <code>delay</code> and the client is the receiver, then the client configuration overrides the server configuration.</p> <p>Values:</p>	<code>delay</code> , <code>delay-odp</code> , <code>delay-adv</code> , or <code>delay-laq</code>	<code>delay</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>delay:</b> The baseline rate control module used by Aspera transfers.</li> <li>• <b>delay-odp:</b> A queue-scaling controller for overdrive protection.</li> <li>• <b>delay-adv:</b> An advanced rate controller.</li> <li>• <b>delay-laq:</b> A loss-adjusted queueing (LAQ) rate controller.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The LAQ module is an experimental rate control module that is designed to solve issues with target rate overdrive, high concurrency (when many FASP sessions run at the same time), and shallow buffers (limited packet queuing capability of a router). When LAQ is set, then it uses the FD31 RTT predictor unless a different RTT predictor is explicitly set.</p> <p>To set a rate control module for outgoing traffic, set it from the command line (<a href="#">aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration</a> on page 88).</p>		
TCP Friendly (for <i>incoming</i> rate control)	This setting is meant for advanced users to turn TCP-friendly mode on or off (which is only applied at the local "receiver" side when the transfer policy is set to <code>fair</code> ). It should only be used with special instructions for debugging. When enabled (" <code>true</code> "), incoming FASP transfers are allowed to maintain relative fair bandwidth share with a TCP flow under congestion.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Incoming Traffic RTT Predictor	The type of predictor to use to compensate for feedback delay when measuring RTT. An experimental feature that might increase transfer rate stability and throughput by predicting network congestion. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified predictor is used and if the client does not specify a predictor, then <code>none</code> is used. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107.	<code>unset</code> , <code>none</code> , <code>alphabet</code> , <code>fd31</code> , <code>bezier</code> , <code>ets</code>	<code>unset</code>
Incoming Rate Control Target Queue	The method for calculating the target queue. Static queuing is good for most internet connections, whereas dynamic queuing is good for satellite and other radio connections. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified transfer queuing method is used and if the	<code>unset</code> , <code>static</code> , <code>dynamic</code>	<code>unset</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	client does not specify a queuing method, then <code>static</code> is used.		
Outgoing Vlink ID	The ID of the vlink to apply to outgoing transfers. Vlinks are a way to define aggregate transfer policies. For more information, see <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (GUI)</a> on page 55 or <a href="#">Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (Command Line)</a> on page 103.	Vlink ID	Undefined (Disabled)
Outgoing Target Rate Cap (Kbps)	The maximum target rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. No transfer session can exceed this rate at any time. If the client requests an initial rate greater than the target rate cap, the transfer proceeds at the target rate cap. The default setting of <code>unlimited</code> applies no target rate cap.	positive integer	<code>unlimited</code>
Outgoing Target Rate Default (Kbps)	The default initial rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Outgoing Target Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify this rate in real time up to the "Outgoing Target Rate Cap". This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.	positive integer	10000
Outgoing Target Rate Lock	Lock the target rate of outgoing transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the transfer rate of an outgoing transfer.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Minimum Rate Cap (Kbps)	The highest minimum rate that an outgoing transfer can request, in kilobits per second. Client minimum rate requests that exceed the minimum rate cap are ignored. The default value of <code>unlimited</code> applies no cap to the minimum rate.  <b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting the minimum rate cap to zero. Transfers do not slow below the client's requested minimum rate unless the minimum rate is capped on the server. If the client-requested minimum rate exceeds network or storage capacity, this can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.	positive integer	<code>unlimited</code>
Outgoing Minimum Rate Default	The default initial minimum rate for outgoing transfers, in kilobits per second. If allowed ("Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock" is set to <code>false</code> ), clients can modify the minimum rate in real time up to the "Outgoing Minimum Rate Cap". This	positive integer	0

Field	Description	Values	Default
	setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.		
Outgoing Minimum Rate Lock	<p>Lock the minimum rate of outgoing transfers to the default value (set to <code>true</code>). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the minimum transfer rate. This setting is not relevant to transfers with a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Aspera strongly recommends setting a lock on minimum rate to prevent transfers from using minimum rates that can overwhelm network or storage capacity, decrease transfer performance, and cause problems on the target storage.</p>	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Allowed	<p>The bandwidth policies that outgoing transfers can use. Aspera transfers can use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, <code>low</code>, or <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policies to determine bandwidth allocation among transfers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>any</code> - The server does not deny any transfer based on policy setting.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Setting to <code>any</code> allows clients to request a <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy. If the client also requests a high minimum transfer rate and that is not capped by the server, the transfer rate can exceed network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. To avoid these problems, set the allowed policy to <code>fair</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Transfers that use <code>high</code>, <code>fair</code>, or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Transfers that use <code>fair</code> or <code>low</code> bandwidth policies are allowed. Transfers that request <code>fixed</code> bandwidth policy are rejected.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Only transfers that use a <code>low</code> bandwidth policy are allowed. All others are rejected.</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , or <code>any</code>	<code>any</code>
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Default	<p>The default bandwidth policy for outgoing transfers. Clients can override the default policy if they specify a policy allowed by the server (see "Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Allowed") and if "Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Lock" is set to <code>false</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to</li> </ul>	<code>high</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , <code>fixed</code>	<code>fair</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li>• <code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to <code>fair</code> mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li>• <code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>		
Outgoing Bandwidth Policy Lock	Lock the bandwidth policy of outgoing transfer sessions to the default value (set to <code>true</code> ). Set to <code>false</code> to allow users to adjust the bandwidth policy.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Priority Allowed	The highest priority your client can request. Use the value 0 to unset this option; 1 to allow high priority, 2 to enforce normal priority.	0, 1, or 2	1
Outgoing Priority Default	The initial priority setting. Use the value 0 to unset this option, 1 to allow high priority; 2 to enforce normal priority.	0, 1, or 2	2
Outgoing Priority Lock	To prevent your clients from changing the priority, set the value to <code>true</code> .	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Rate Control Module	<p>Set how the transmission rate should be managed relative to instantaneous network bandwidth availability. Aspera recommends that this option be changed only by advanced users.</p> <p>When the client does not specify a configuration, the server configuration is</p>	<code>delay</code> , <code>delay-odp</code> , <code>delay-adv</code> , or <code>delay-laq</code>	<code>delay</code>



Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>used. When the client specifies a value other than <code>delay</code> and the client is the receiver, then the client configuration overrides the server configuration.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>delay:</b> The baseline rate control module used by Aspera transfers.</li> <li>• <b>delay-odp:</b> A queue-scaling controller for overdrive protection.</li> <li>• <b>delay-adv:</b> An advanced rate controller.</li> <li>• <b>delay-laq:</b> A loss-adjusted queuing (LAQ) rate controller.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The LAQ module is an experimental rate control module that is designed to solve issues with target rate overdrive, high concurrency (when many FASP sessions run at the same time), and shallow buffers (limited packet queuing capability of a router). When LAQ is set, then it uses the FD31 RTT predictor unless a different RTT predictor is explicitly set.</p>		
TCP Friendly (for <i>outgoing</i> rate control)	This setting is meant for advanced users to turn TCP-friendly mode on or off (which is only applied at the local "receiver" side when the transfer policy is set to <code>fair</code> ). It should only be used with special instructions for debugging. When enabled (" <code>true</code> "), outgoing FASP transfers are allowed to maintain relative fair bandwidth share with a TCP flow under congestion.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Outgoing Traffic RTT Predictor	The type of predictor to use to compensate for feedback delay when measuring RTT. An experimental feature that might increase transfer rate stability and throughput by predicting network congestion. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified predictor is used and if the client does not specify a predictor, then <code>none</code> is used. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107.	<code>unset</code> , <code>none</code> , <code>alpha</code> , <code>beta</code> , <code>fd31</code> , <code>bezier</code> , <code>ets</code>	<code>unset</code>
Outgoing Rate Control Target Queue	The method for calculating the target queue. Static queuing is good for most internet connections, whereas dynamic queuing is good for satellite and other radio connections. For more information, see <a href="#">Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor</a> on page 107. When set to <code>unset</code> , the client-specified	<code>unset</code> , <code>static</code> , <code>dynamic</code>	<code>unset</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	transfer queuing method is used and if the client does not specify a queuing method, then <code>static</code> is used.		
Content Protection Required	Set to <code>true</code> to require that uploaded content be encrypted by the client (enforce client-side encryption-at-rest).  For more information, see <a href="#">Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 220.  <b>Important:</b> When a transfer falls back to HTTP or HTTPS, content protection is no longer supported. If HTTP fallback occurs while downloading, then—despite entering a passphrase—the file remains encrypted. If HTTP fallback occurs during upload, then—despite entering a passphrase—the files are not encrypted.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Strong Password Required for Content Encryption	Set to <code>true</code> to require that the password for content encryption (client-side encryption at rest) includes at least 6 characters, of which at least 1 is non-alphanumeric, at least 1 is a letter, and at least 1 is a digit.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Content Protection Secret	Enable server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR) by setting the passphrase. Files uploaded to the server are encrypted while stored there and are decrypted when they are downloaded. For more information, see <a href="#">Server-Side Encryption at Rest (EAR)</a> on page 46 or <a href="#">Server-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 120.	passphrase	(none)
Encryption Allowed	Set the transfer encryption allowed by this computer. Aspera strongly recommends that you require transfer encryption. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.  <b>Note:</b> To ensure client compatibility when requiring encryption, use a cipher with the form <code>aes-XXX</code> , which is supported by all clients and servers. Requiring GCM causes the server to reject transfers from clients that are running a version of Ascp 3.8.1 or older. When a client requests a shorter cipher key than is configured on the server (or in an access key that authorizes	<code>any</code> , <code>none</code> , <code>aes-128</code> , <code>aes-192</code> , <code>aes-256</code> , <code>aes-128-cfb</code> , <code>aes-192-cfb</code> , <code>aes-256-cfb</code> , <code>aes-128-gcm</code> , <code>aes-192-gcm</code> , or <code>aes-256-gcm</code>	<code>any</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>the transfer), the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server setting. For more information about how the server and client negotiate the transfer cipher, see the description of <code>-c</code> in the <a href="#">Ascp Command Reference</a> on page 181.</p> <p>Values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>any</code> - allow transfers that use any encryption cipher or none.</li> <li>• <code>none</code> - require unencrypted transfers (not recommended).</li> <li>• <code>aes-128</code>, <code>aes-192</code>, or <code>aes-256</code> - allow transfers that use an encryption cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. These settings use the CFB or GCM mode depending on the client version and cipher requested. Supports all client versions.</li> <li>• <code>aes-128-cfb</code>, <code>aes-192-cfb</code>, or <code>aes-256-cfb</code> - require that transfers use the CFB encryption mode and a cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. Supports all client versions.</li> <li>• <code>aes-128-gcm</code>, <code>aes-192-gcm</code>, or <code>aes-256-gcm</code> - require that transfers use the GCM encryption mode introduced in version 3.9.0 and a cipher that is as long or longer than the setting.</li> </ul>		
Do encrypted transfers in FIPS-140-2-certified encryption mode	<p>Set to <code>true</code> for <code>ascp</code> to use a FIPS 140-2-certified encryption module. When enabled, transfer start is delayed while the FIPS module is verified.</p> <p>When you run <code>ascp</code> in FIPS mode (that is, <code>&lt;fips_enabled&gt;</code> is set to <code>true</code> in <code>aspera.conf</code>), and you use passphrase-protected SSH keys, you must use keys generated by running <code>ssh-keygen</code> in a FIPS-enabled system, or convert existing keys to a FIPS-compatible format using a command such as the following:</p> <pre style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;">openssl pkcs8 -topk8 -v2 aes128 -in id_rsa -out new-id_rsa</pre> <p><b>Important:</b> When set to <code>true</code>, all ciphers and hash algorithms that are not FIPS compliant will abort transfers.</p>	true or false	false
Bind IP Address	Specify an IP address for server-side <code>ascp</code> to bind its UDP connection. If a	valid IPv4 address	None specified

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>valid IP address is given, <code>ascp</code> sends and receives UDP packets only on the interface corresponding to that IP address.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> The bind address should only be modified (changed to an address other than 127.0.0.1) if you, as the System Administrator, understand the security ramifications of doing so, and have undertaken precautions to secure the SOAP service.</p>		
Bind UDP Port	Prevent the client-side <code>ascp</code> process from using the specified UDP port.	integer between 1 and 65535	33001
Disable Packet Batching	Set to <code>true</code> to send data packets back-to-back (no sending a batch of packets). This results in smoother data traffic at a cost of higher CPU usage.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Batch Size	When set to "0" (default), the system uses a pre-computed batch size. Set this to "1" for high concurrency servers (senders) in order to reduce CPU utilization in aggregate.	Integer	0
Datagram Size	Sets the datagram size on the server side. If size is set with both <code>-z</code> (client side) and <code>&lt;datagram_size&gt;</code> (server side), the <code>&lt;datagram_size&gt;</code> setting is used. In cases where the client-side is pre-3.3, datagram size is determined by the <code>-z</code> setting, regardless of the server-side setting for <code>&lt;datagram_size&gt;</code> . In such cases, if there is no <code>-z</code> setting, datagram size is based on the discovered MTU and the server logs the message "LOG Peer client doesn't support alternative datagram size".	Integer	1492
Maximum Socket Buffer (bytes)	Set the upper bound of the UDP socket buffer of an <code>ascp</code> session below the input value. The default of 0 will cause the Aspera sender to use its default internal buffer size, which may be different for different operating systems.	positive integer	0
Minimum Socket Buffer (bytes)	Set the minimum UDP socket buffer size for an <code>ascp</code> session.	positive integer	0
RTT auto correction	Set to <code>true</code> to enable auto correction of the base (minimum) RTT measurement. This feature is helpful for maintaining accurate transfer rates in hypervisor-based virtual environments.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Reverse path congestion inference	Set to <code>true</code> to prevent the transfer speed of a session from being adversely affected by congestion in the reverse (non data-	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>true</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	sending) transfer direction. This feature is useful for boosting speed in bi-directional transfers.		
Chunk Size	For multi-session transfers with object storage, the chunk size must be equal to or greater than the object storage part size. For more information, see <a href="#">Multi-Session Transfers</a> on page 203 and <a href="#">Parallel Transfers to Amazon S3 and Amazon EC2</a> on page 402.	positive integer	0
Run File Validation at File Start	Validate files by using the specified method when starting a file transfer (before file transfer starts). For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130 .	uri, lua_script, or none	none
Run File Validation at File Stop	Validate files by using the specified method when file transfer is complete and file is closed. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	uri, lua_script, or none	none
Run File Validation at Session Start	Validate files by using the specified method when a transfer session starts. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	lua_script or none	none
Run File Validation at Session Stop	Validate files by using the specified method when a transfer session ends. For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	lua_script or none	none
Run File Validation when Crossing File Threshold (Validation Threshold)	Validate files by using the specified method once the transfer session surpasses a set number of kilobytes (threshold). The threshold must be specified by editing <code>aspera.conf</code> . For more information, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.  <b>Note:</b> For threshold validation, the file transfer might complete before the file threshold validation response comes back (because <code>ascp</code> doesn't pause file transfers during file threshold validation); therefore, a complete file transfer could happen even with validation failure.	uri, lua_script, or none	none
Validation Threshold KB	Validate files once the download size exceeds the threshold value. Since threshold validation can only be triggered periodically (every second in the worst case), the file must be large enough to trigger this validation.  The Validation Threshold option must also be specified ( <code>uri</code> or <code>lua</code> ) if this option is to be recognized by the system.	Positive integer	0

Field	Description	Values	Default
	If Validation Threshold is also enabled, and this value is not specified (or set to 0), the <code>ascp</code> session will exit with an error.		
Validation Threads	<p>Enable multiple validations to occur in parallel validator threads.</p> <p>If the number of validation threads is not set to 1, then multiple threads may perform different types of validations for different (or the same) files at the same time. In such a situation, the response of a <code>validation_file_stop</code> at the end of a file download might come before the response of a <code>validation_threshold</code> for the same file.</p>	Positive integer	5
Validation URI	<p>Use the specified external URL for validation calls. When this parameter is defined, at least two validations, <code>validation_file_start</code> and <code>validation_file_stop</code> will happen for every file.</p> <p>The entry should define a URL, port, and URL handler for validation. For example, <code>http://127.0.0.1:8080/SimpleValidator</code></p> <p>This value must be defined if any of the following values are set to <code>uri</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>validation_file_start</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_file_stop</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_session_start</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_session_stop</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_threshold</code></li> </ul>	URL	none
Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script	For Lua API validation, the path to the base64-encoded Lua script. This value or "File Path to Lua Action Script" must be defined if any of the following values are set to <code>lua_script</code> : Run at File Start, Run at File Stop, Run at Session Start, Run at Session Stop, Run when Crossing File Threshold. If both this option and File Path to Lua Action Script option are defined, this value is ignored. For more information on inline file validation, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.	Base64-encoded string	blank
File Path to Lua Action Script	For Lua API validation, the path to the Lua script.	Filepath	blank

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>This value or Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script must be defined if any of the following values are set to <code>lua_script</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>validation_file_start</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_file_stop</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_session_start</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_session_stop</code></li> <li>• <code>validation_threshold</code></li> </ul> <p>If both this option and the Base64-Encoded Lua Action Script option are defined, this value is used. For more information on inline file validation, see <a href="#">Inline File Validation</a> on page 130.</p>		

#### 4. Save and validate `aspera.conf`.

Run the following command to confirm that the XML is correctly formatted and the parameter settings are valid:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links (Command Line)

FASP transfers attempt to transfer at the maximum transfer rate available. However, too many simultaneous transfers can overwhelm your storage or leave little bandwidth available for other network activity. To set a bandwidth cap on the total bandwidth used by incoming or outgoing transfer sessions initiated by all users, groups, or sets of specific users, set up a virtual link (Vlink).

Vlinks are "virtual" bandwidth caps, in that they are not assigned to a specific transfer session, but to all sessions assigned to the same Vlink. The total bandwidth that is used by all incoming or outgoing transfer sessions initiated by users who are assigned to the same Vlink does not exceed the Vlink capacity.

For example, if you want to limit all incoming FASP transfers to 100 Mbps, you can create a Vlink with a 100 Mbps capacity and assign it globally to all incoming transfers. If a user attempts an upload at 50 Mbps but other incoming transfers are already using 75 Mbps, then the transfer rates adjust (based on transfer policy) so that the total does not exceed 100 Mbps.

For another example, if you want to limit to 10 Mbps the total bandwidth that is used by outgoing FASP transfers (downloads) that are initiated by three specific users, create a Vlink with a 10 Mbps capacity and assign it to outgoing transfers for those three users. If the three users are running download sessions that already use 10 Mbps and another download is started by one of the users, the transfer rates of all sessions adjust so that the total bandwidth use by those users remains 10 Mbps. Transfers by other users that are not assigned the Vlink are not affected, except to use available bandwidth when the Vlink capacity is not met.

#### 1. Create a Vlink.

To create a Vlink, run the following command as administrator:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_trunk_data;id,vlink_id;trunk_capacity,bandwidth;trunk_on,true"
```

You can also specify a multicast port and time-to-live, among other settings. To see a complete list of parameters with their corresponding `asconfigurator` commands, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

The following table describes several parameters that are frequently used:

Tag	Description	Values	Default
Vlink ID	The Vlink ID. Sessions assigned with the same trunk ID share the same bandwidth cap.	positive integer between 1 and 255.	N/A
Vlink Name	The Vlink name. This value has no impact on actual bandwidth capping.	text string	blank
Capacity	This value reflects the virtual bandwidth cap in Kbps. When applying this Vlink to a transfer (e.g. Default outgoing), the transfer's bandwidth will be restricted by this value.	positive integer in Kbps	50000
On	Set to <b>true</b> to activate this Vlink; set to <b>false</b> to deactivate it.	true/false	false
Multicast Port	This sets the UDP port through which virtual link sends and receives multicast communication messages. Sessions sharing the same virtual bandwidth cap needs to have the same port number. To avoid port conflicts, it is recommended to use the default UDP port 55001. Do NOT set the port number to the same one used by FASP data transfer (33001).  <b>Important:</b> If you have a local firewall on your server (for example, Windows firewall, Linux iptables, or Mac ipfw), you will need to allow the Vlink UDP port (55001, by default) for multicast traffic.	positive integer between 1 and 65535	55001
Multicast TTL	This sets the Time-to-Live (TTL) field in the IP header for Vlink multicast packets.	positive integer between 1 and 255	blank

For example, to create a Vlink with an ID of 108, named "50Mbps cap", with a capacity of 50 Mbps (50000 kbps), run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_trunk_data;id,108;trunk_name,50Mbps
cap;trunk_capacity,50000;trunk_on,true"
```

This creates the following text in `aspera.conf`:

```
<CONF version="2">
...
<trunks>
  <trunk>
    <id>108</id>                                <!-- Vlink ID -->
    <name>50Mbps cap</name>                       <!-- Vlink Name -->
    <capacity>
      <schedule format="ranges">50000</schedule> <!-- Capacity -->
    </capacity>
    <on>true</on>                                  <!-- On -->
  </trunk>
</trunks>
</CONF>
```



The capacity of the Vlink is set within a `<schedule>` tag because the capacity can be scheduled as one value during a specified time period, and a default value at all other times. For more information on this configuration, see the knowledge base article *Specifying a time varying schedule for a Vlink* at <https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/specifying-time-varying-schedule-vlink>.

To edit `aspera.conf` manually, rather than running `asconfigurator` commands, open the file with write permissions from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Validate the `aspera.conf` file using the `asuserdata` utility:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## 2. Apply the Vlink.

Assign a Vlink to global, group, or user settings for transfers in or out. Use the following syntax, updating the direction (in or out) depending on your needs:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_in_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,id"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_group_data;group_name,groupname;transfer_out_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,id"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;transfer_out_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,id"
```

For example, to set Vlink 108 as the default for transfers out and set Vlink 109 to the user `aspera_user_1` for transfers out, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_out_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,108"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,aspera_user_1;transfer_out_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,109"
```

These commands add the following lines to `aspera.conf`:

```
<CONF version="2">
...
<default>
  <transfer>
    <out>
      <bandwidth><aggregate>
        <trunk_id>108</trunk_id> <!-- Vlink #108 for the default
outgoing sessions. -->
      </aggregate></bandwidth>
    </out>
    <in>
      ...
    </in>
  </transfer>
</default>
<aaa><realms><realm>
  <users>
    <user>
      <name>aspera_user_1</name>
      <transfer>
        <out>
          <bandwidth><aggregate>
            <trunk_id>109</trunk_id> <!-- Vlink #109 to the user
aspera_user_1's outgoing sessions. -->
          </aggregate></bandwidth>
        </out>
```

```

        <in>
            ...
        </in>
    </transfer>
</user>
</users>
</realm></realms></aaa>
</CONF>

```

### 3. Prevent users from overriding the Vlink settings.

If a user requests a high minimum rate and minimum rates are not locked, the transfer can exceed Vlink limits. To prevent this:

- a) Set the default incoming or outgoing minimum rate to zero (zero is the default) by running the appropriate command:

```

# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_in_bandwidth_flow_min_rate_default,0"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_out_bandwidth_flow_min_rate_default,0"

```

- b) Lock the minimum default transfer rate for select users or globally. The following commands lock minimum incoming and outgoing transfer rates for all users:

```

# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_in_bandwidth_flow_min_rate_lock,true"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_out_bandwidth_flow_min_rate_lock,true"

```

## Global Bandwidth Settings (Command Line)

Global bandwidth usage by incoming and outgoing transfers can be configured from the command line by creating Vlink(s) that is applied to all users.

In the following example, Vlink 108 is used to limit the upload bandwidth (outgoing transfers) to 88 Mbps (88000 Kbps) and Vlink 109 is used to limit the download bandwidth (incoming transfers) to 99 Mbps (99000 Kbps).

```

# asconfigurator -x
"set_trunk_data;id,108;trunk_capacity,88000;trunk_on,true"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_trunk_data;id,109;trunk_capacity,99000;trunk_on,true"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_in_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,108"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_out_bandwidth_aggregate_trunk_id,109"

```

The commands create the following lines in `aspera.conf`.

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<CONF version="2">
    ...
    <trunks>
        <trunk>
            <!-- Create a Vlink with 88000 Kbps bandwidth cap. -->
            <id>108</id> <!-- ID: 108 -->
            <capacity>
                <schedule format="ranges">88000</schedule>
            </capacity>
            <on>true</on>
        </trunk>
        <trunk>
            <!-- Create a Vlink with 99000 Kbps bandwidth cap. -->
            <id>109</id> <!-- ID: 109 -->

```

```

    <capacity>
      <schedule format="ranges">99000</schedule>
    </capacity>
    <on>true</on>
  </trunk>
</trunks>

<default>  <!-- Global settings.-->
  <transfer>
    <out>  <!-- Use Vlink ID: 108 for global outgoing bandwidth. -->
      <bandwidth><aggregate><trunk_id>108</trunk_id></aggregate></
bandwidth>
    </out>
    <in>   <!-- Use Vlink ID: 109 for global incoming bandwidth. -->
      <bandwidth><aggregate><trunk_id>109</trunk_id></aggregate></
bandwidth>
    </in>
  </transfer>
</default>
</CONF>

```

The capacity of the Vlink is set within a `<schedule>` tag because the capacity can be scheduled as one value during a specified time period, and a default value at all other times. For more information on this configuration, see the knowledge base article *Specifying a time varying schedule for a Vlink* at <https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/specifying-time-varying-schedule-vlink>.

To edit `aspera.conf` manually, rather than running `asconfigurator` commands, open the file with write permissions from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Validate the `aspera.conf` file using the `asuserdata` utility:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Increasing Transfer Performance by Using an RTT Predictor

FASP transfers use delay-based congestion control to dynamically adjust the transfer rate in response to network congestion, as measured by round-trip time (RTT). As a result, FASP transfer stability is sensitive to feedback delay; increases in feedback delay decrease FASP transfer stability and throughput. Transfer performance can be improved by using two experimental configuration options, an RTT predictor and dynamic target queuing.

### RTT Predictor

An RTT predictor predicts future feedback delay to decrease transfer rate oscillation and maximize data transfer under high network congestion conditions. Four RTT predictors are available:

- **alphabeta:** A linear prediction that is based on a local trend.
- **fd31:** A linear prediction that is based on a 3-points-backwards difference method.
- **bezier:** A quadratic Bezier extrapolation.
- **ets:** An error-trend-seasonality model.

Based on internal testing, `fd31` is considered the most effective and robust, but other RTT predictors might perform better depending on your specific network conditions.

To set a predictor for incoming (`transfer_in`) or outgoing (`transfer_out`) transfers, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_{in|
out}_bandwidth_flow_network_rc_predictor,{alphabeta|bezier|ets|fd31}"
```

You can also set the value to `none` to force no predictor, or `unset` to use the client-specified predictor. If the client does not specify a predictor and the server is set to `unset`, then no predictor is used.

The `fd31` and `bezier` predictors do not have a bounded asymptotic limit, which can destabilize the RTT prediction under conditions of high congestion and large buffer size for the transfer link. The prediction range can be restricted by setting `<predictor_limit_range>` in `aspera.conf` or **Incoming Rate Control Predictor Limit Range** and **Outgoing Rate Control Predictor Limit Range** in the GUI.

## Dynamic Target Queuing

Target queuing affects the stability of data transfer to the target. By default, Aspera FASP transfers use static target queuing, in which the target queue is set as a piecewise function of the target rate. On noisy networks, such as satellite and other radio communication, the congestion signal can be distorted at the physical or data link layer, and this noise can overwhelm the congestion signal. Static target queuing has only a limited ability to adjust to this noise, decreasing transfer performance.

Dynamic target queuing is an experimental method to improve transfer speed and stability over noisy networks. When dynamic target queuing is enabled, the rate control module estimates the noise level and adjusts the target queue accordingly.

To enable dynamic target queuing for incoming (`transfer_in`) or outgoing (`transfer_out`) transfers, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_{in|out}_bandwidth_flow_network_rc_target_queue,dynamic"
```

Command line options override server settings. If no predictor is specified on the client command line, in the client's `aspera.conf`, or in the server's `aspera.conf`, then no predictor is used for the transfer.

## aspera.conf - File System Configuration

The settings in the `<file_system>` section of `aspera.conf` include the docroot, file permissions, file handling, filters, and checksum reporting. The absolute path, or docroot, is the area of the file system that is accessible to an Aspera transfer user. The default empty value allows access to the entire file system. You can set one global docroot and then further restrict access to the file system by group or individual user.

### Important Configuration Notes:

- The default server configuration gives users full access to the server's file system with read, write, and browse privileges. Aspera strongly recommends setting a global docroot that is an empty folder and setting global file permissions to **false**. For a compilation of server security best practices, see [Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices](#) on page 480.
- Some Aspera features require a docroot in URI format or require a file restriction instead of a docroot. For more information, see [Docroot vs. File Restriction](#) on page 479.

**Configuration methods:** These instructions describe how to manually modify `aspera.conf`. You can also add and edit these parameters using `asconfigurator` commands. For more information on using `asconfigurator`, see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460 and run the following command to retrieve a complete default `aspera.conf` that includes the `asconfigurator` syntax for each setting:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

1. Open `aspera.conf` from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

2. Add or locate the `<file_system />` section, as in the following example.

```
<file_system>
  <access>
    <paths>
```

```

<path>
  <absolute_peer_ip="ip_address"/>/path/${name}</absolute>
  <!-- Absolute Path (conditional) -->
  <absolute>/path/${name}</absolute>
  <!-- Absolute Path -->
  <restrictions>
    <restriction></restriction>
    <!-- File Restriction 1 -->
    <restriction></restriction>
    <!-- File Restriction 2 -->
  </restrictions>
  <read_allowed>true</read_allowed>
  <!-- Read Allowed -->
  <write_allowed>true</write_allowed>
  <!-- Write Allowed -->
  <dir_allowed>true</dir_allowed>
  <!-- Browse Allowed -->
</path>
</paths>
</access>
<read_block_size>0</read_block_size>
<!-- Read Block Size -->
<write_block_size>0</write_block_size>
<!-- Write Block Size -->
<read_threads>0</read_threads>
<!-- Number of I/O Read Threads -->
<write_threads>0</write_threads>
<!-- Number of I/O Write Threads -->
<scan_threads>0</scan_threads>
<!-- Number of Dir Scanning Threads -->
-->
<meta_threads>0</meta_threads>
<!-- Number of Metadata Threads -->
<worker_threads>0</worker_threads>
<sparse_file>>false</sparse_file>
<!-- Sparse File Checking -->
<fail_on_attr_error>yes</fail_on_attr_error>
<!-- Behavior on Attr Error -->
<compression_method>lz4</compression_method>
<!-- Compression Method for File
Transfer -->
<use_file_cache>true</use_file_cache>
<!-- Use File Cache -->
<max_file_cache_buffer>0</max_file_cache_buffer>
<!-- Max File Cache Buffer-->
<resume_suffix>.aspx</resume_suffix>
<!-- Resume Suffix -->
<symbolic_links>follow,create</symbolic_links>
<!-- Symbolic Link Actions -->
<preserve_attributes> </preserve_attributes>
<!-- Preserve Attributes -->
<overwrite>allow</overwrite>
<!-- Overwrite -->
<file_manifest>disable</file_manifest>
<!-- File Manifest -->
<file_manifest_path>path</file_manifest_path>
<!-- File Manifest Path -->
<file_manifest_inprogress_suffix>.aspera-inprogress</file_manifest_inprogress_suffix>
<!-- File Manifest Suffix -->
<pre_calculate_job_size>any</pre_calculate_job_size><!-- Pre-Calculate Job Size -->
<replace_illegal_chars></replace_illegal_chars>
<!-- Convert Restricted Windows
Characters -->
<storage_rc>
  <adaptive>true</adaptive>
  <!-- Storage Rate Control -->
</storage_rc>
<filters>
  <!-- File Filter Pattern List -->
  <filter>rule1</filter>
  <filter>rule2</filter>
</filters>
<file_create_mode> </file_create_mode>
<!-- File Create Mode -->
<file_create_grant_mask>644</file_create_grant_mask><!-- File Create Grant Mask -->
<directory_create_mode> </directory_create_mode>
<!-- Directory Create Mode -->
<directory_create_grant_mask>755</directory_create_grant_mask>
<!-- Directory Create Grant Mask -->
<partial_file_suffix>.partial</partial_file_suffix>
<!-- Partial File Suffix -->
<file_checksum>any</file_checksum>
<!-- File Checksum Method -->
</file_system>

```

### 3. Edit settings as needed.

#### File System Settings Reference

Field	Description	Values	Default
Absolute Path	<p>The absolute path, or docroot, is the area of the file system that is accessible to an Aspera transfer user. The default empty value allows access to the entire file system. You can set one global docroot and then further restrict access to the file system by group or individual user. Docroot paths require specific formatting depending on where the transfer server's storage is located.</p> <p><b>Format examples</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local storage absolute path: /home/aspera424/movies</li> </ul>	file path or URI	undefined (total access)

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<p>Or using a placeholder for usernames: /home/ \$(name)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local storage in URI format: file:///home/bear/movies</li> </ul> <p>URI format is required for server-side encryption-at-rest, but is not supported by the Aspera Watch Service.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cloud or on-premises object storage: see <a href="#">Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS</a> on page 381.</li> </ul> <p>Aspera recommends setting a global docroot to an empty folder or a part of the file system specific to each user. If there is a pattern in the docroot of each user, for example, /sandbox/username, you can use a substitutional string. This allows you to assign an independent docroot to each user without setting it individually for each user. See <a href="#">Setting Up Users</a> on page 32 for information.</p> <p>You can also set multiple docroots and make them conditional based on the IP address from which the connection is made by editing aspera.conf. To do so, edit the absolute path setting by adding the IP address using the following syntax:</p> <pre>&lt;absolute peer_ip="ip_address"&gt;path&lt;/absolute&gt;</pre>		
File Restriction	<p><b>Note:</b> A configuration (global, group, or user) can have a docroot or a file restriction; configurations with both are not supported.</p> <p>A set of file system filters that use "*" as a wildcard and "!" to indicate "exclude". Paths are in URI format; special characters in a URI must be URL-encoded.</p> <p>Access to a file is rejected unless the file matches the restrictions, which are processed in the following order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a restriction starts with "!", the user is not allowed to access any files that match the rest of the restriction.</li> <li>If a restriction does not start with "!", the user can access any file that matches the filter.</li> <li>If one or more restrictions do not start with "!", the user can access any file that matches any one of the no-"!" restrictions.</li> </ul> <p><b>Format examples:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For a specific folder: file:///docs/*</li> <li>For the drive root:</li> </ul>	URI	undefined (total access)

Field	Description	Values	Default
	<pre>file:///c*</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For ICOS-S3 storage: <pre>s3://my_vault/*</pre> </li> <li>To exclude access to key files: <pre>!*.*key</pre> </li> </ul>		
Read Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to transfer files and folders from their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>
Write Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to transfer files and folders to their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>
Browse Allowed	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to allow users to browse their docroot.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code></li> <li><code>false</code></li> </ul>	<code>true</code>
Read Block Size (bytes)	Set the maximum number of bytes that can be stored within a block as the block is being transferred from the source disk drive to the receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its default internal buffer size, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender (which only takes effect if the <i>sender</i> is a server).	positive integer, where 500MB or 524,288,000 bytes is the maximum block size.	0
Write Block Size (bytes)	Set the maximum bytes within a block that an <code>ascp</code> receiver can write to disk. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its default internal buffer size, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver (which only takes effect if the <i>receiver</i> is a server).	positive integer, where 500MB or 524,288,000 bytes is the maximum block size.	0
Number of I/O read threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender uses to read file contents from the source disk drive. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a sender. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender.	positive integer	0
Number of I/O Write Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera receiver uses to write the file contents to the destination disk drive. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Number of Dir Scanning Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender uses to scan directory contents. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a sender. The default of zero causes the Aspera sender to use its internal default.	positive integer	0

Field	Description	Values	Default
	This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera sender.		
Number of Metadata Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera receiver uses to create directories or 0 byte files. It takes effect on both client and server, when acting as a receiver. The default of zero causes the Aspera receiver to use its internal default, which may vary by operating system. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Number of Worker Threads	Set the number of threads the Aspera sender and receiver use to delete files. This is a performance-tuning parameter.	positive integer	0
Sparse File Checking	Set to <code>true</code> to enable sparse file checking, which tells the Aspera receiver to avoid writing zero blocks and save disk space. The default of <code>false</code> to tell the Aspera receiver to write all the blocks. This is a performance-tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>false</code>
Behavior on Attr Error	Set behavior for when operations attempt to set or change file attributes (such as POSIX ownership, ACLs, or modification time) and fail. Setting to <code>yes</code> returns an error and causes the operation to fail. Setting to <code>no</code> logs the error and the operation continues	<code>no</code> or <code>yes</code>	<code>yes</code>
Compression Method for File Transfer	Set the compression method to apply to transfers. It applies to both the client and server.	<code>lz4</code> , <code>qlz</code> , <code>zlib</code> , or <code>none</code>	<code>lz4</code>
Use File Cache	Set to <code>true</code> (default) to enable per-file memory caching at the data receiver. File level memory caching improves data write speed on Windows platforms in particular, but uses more memory. This is a performance tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.  Aspera suggests using a file cache on systems that are transferring data at speeds close to the performance of their storage device, and disable it for system with very high concurrency (because memory utilization will grow with the number of concurrent transfers).	<code>true</code> or <code>false</code>	<code>true</code>
Max File Cache Buffer (bytes)	Set the maximum size allocated for per-file memory cache (see Use File Cache) in bytes. The default of zero will cause the Aspera receiver to use its internal buffer size, which may be different for different operating systems. This is a performance tuning parameter for an Aspera receiver.	positive integer	0
Resume Suffix	Set the file name extension for temporary metadata files used for resuming incomplete transfers. Each data file in progress will have a corresponding metadata file with the same name plus the resume suffix specified by the receiver. Metadata files in the source of a directory transfer are skipped if they end with the sender's resume suffix.	text string	<code>.aspx</code>



Field	Description	Values	Default
Symbolic Link Actions	<p>Set how the server handles symbolic links. For more information about the actions and the interaction between the server configuration and the client request, see <a href="#">Symbolic Link Handling</a> on page 214. Combinations of values are logically ORed before use. For example, use <code>none</code> alone to mean skip, and shut out other options; when both <code>follow</code> and <code>follow_wide</code> are set, the latter is recognized.</p> <p>To set a combination of actions globally or for individual users, you must edit the configuration file <code>aspera.conf</code> using the appropriate command:</p> <pre># asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;symbolic_links,value" # asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;symbolic_links,value"</pre>	<code>none</code> , <code>create</code> , <code>follow</code> , <code>follow_wide</code> , or any combination of the above delimited by commas	<code>follow,create</code>
Preserve Attributes	<p>Set the file creation policy. Set to <code>none</code> to not preserve the timestamps of source files. Set to <code>times</code> to preserve the timestamp of the source files at destination.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> For Limelight storage, only the preservation of modification time is supported.</p>	<code>none</code> or <code>times</code>	blank (use the client setting)
Overwrite	<p>Set to <code>allow</code> to allow Aspera clients to overwrite existing files on the server, as long as file permissions allow that action.</p> <p>If set to <code>deny</code>, clients who upload files to the server cannot overwrite existing files, regardless of file permissions.</p>	<code>allow</code> or <code>deny</code>	<code>allow</code>
File Manifest	<p>Set to <code>text</code> to generate a text file "receipt" of all files within each transfer session. Set to <code>disable</code> to not create a File Manifest. The file manifest is a file containing a list of everything that was transferred in a given transfer session. The filename of the File Manifest itself is automatically generated based on the transfer session's unique ID. The location where each manifest is written is specified by the File Manifest Path value. If no File Manifest Path is specified, the file will be generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.</p>	<code>text</code> , <code>disable</code> , or <code>none</code>	<code>none</code>
File Manifest Path	<p>Specify the location to store manifest files. Can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> File manifests can only be stored locally. Thus, if you are using S3, or other non-local storage, you must specify a <i>local</i> manifest path.</p>	text string	blank
File Manifest Suffix	<p>Specify the suffix of the manifest file during file transfer.</p>	text string	<code>.aspera-inprogress</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
Pre-Calculate Job Size	Set to <code>yes</code> to enable calculating job size before transferring. Set to <code>no</code> to disable calculating job size before transferring. Set to <code>any</code> to follow client configurations.	<code>yes</code> , <code>no</code> , or <code>any</code>	<code>any</code>
Convert Restricted Windows Characters	To enable the replacement of reserved Windows characters in file and directory names with a non-reserved character, set to the single byte, non-restricted character that will be used for the replacement. Only applies to files written to the local Windows file system; to enable on the peer it must be set on the peer's system.	single-byte, non-restricted character	blank
File Create Mode	Set the file creation mode (permissions). If specified, create files with these permissions (for example, <code>0755</code> ), irrespective of File Create Grant Mask and permissions of the file on the source computer. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver.	positive integer (octal)	undefined
File Create Grant Mask	Set the mode for newly created files if File Create Mode is not specified. If specified, file modes will be set to their original modes plus the Grant Mask values. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver and when File Create Mode is not specified.	positive integer (octal)	644
Directory Create Mode	Set the directory creation mode (permissions). If specified, create directories with these permissions irrespective of Directory Create Grant Mask and permissions of the directory on the source computer. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver.	positive integer (octal)	undefined
Directory Create Grant Mask	Set the mode for newly created directories if Directory Create Mode is not specified. If specified, directory modes will be set to their original modes plus the Grant Mask values. Only takes effect when the server is a non-Windows receiver and when Directory Create Mode is not specified.	positive integer (octal)	755
File Filter Pattern List	Exclude or include files and directories with the specified pattern in the transfer. Add multiple entries for more inclusion/exclusion patterns. To specify an inclusion, start the pattern with '+' (+ and a whitespace). To specify an exclusion, start the pattern with '-' (- and a whitespace). Two symbols can be used in the setting of patterns: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A "*" (asterisk) represents zero to many characters in a string. For example, <code>*.tmp</code> matches <code>.tmp</code> and <code>abcde.tmp</code>.</li> <li>A "?" (question mark) represents a single character. For example, <code>t?p</code> matches <code>tmp</code> but not <code>temp</code>.</li> </ul> For details on specifying rules, see <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208.	text entries	blank

Field	Description	Values	Default
	This option applies only when the server is acting as a client. Servers cannot exclude files or directories uploaded or downloaded by remote clients.		
Partial File Name Suffix	Set the filename extension on the destination computer while the file is being transferred. Once the file has been completely transferred, this filename extension is removed.  <b>Note:</b> This option only takes effect when it is set on the receiver side.	text string	blank
File Checksum Method	Set the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files. The content of transfers can be verified by comparing the checksum value at the destination with the value read at the source. For more information, see <a href="#">Reporting Checksums</a> on page 72.	any, md5, sha1, sha256, sha384, or sha512	any

#### 4. Save and validate `aspera.conf`.

Run the following command to confirm that the XML is correctly formatted and the parameter settings are valid:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## aspera.conf - Transfer Server Configuration

The settings in the `<central_server>` section of `aspera.conf` include the network and port that asperacentral uses to process transfer requests and how to manage the asperacentral database.

**Configuration methods:** These instructions describe how to manually modify `aspera.conf`. You can also add and edit these parameters using `asconfigurator` commands. For more information on using `asconfigurator`, see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460 and run the following command to retrieve a complete default `aspera.conf` that includes the `asconfigurator` syntax for each setting:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata --+
```

#### 1. Open `aspera.conf` from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

#### 2. Add or locate the `<central_server/>` section, as shown in the following example:

```
<central_server>
  <address>127.0.0.1</address>                                <!--
Address -->
  <port>40001</port>                                       <!-- Port
-->
  <persistent_store>enable</persistent_store>              <!--
Persistent Storage -->
  <files_per_session>1000</files_per_session>               <!-- Files
Per Session -->
  <persistent_store_path></persistent_store_path>           <!--
Persistent Storage Path -->
  <persistent_store_max_age>86400</persistent_store_max_age> <!--
Maximum Age -->
  <persistent_store_on_error>ignore</persistent_store_on_error> <!-- Exit
Central on Storage Error -->
  <compact_on_startup>enable</compact_on_startup>           <!--
Compact Database on Startup -->
```

```

<ignore_empty_files>true</ignore_empty_files>          <!--
Ignore Empty Files -->
<ignore_no_transfer_files>true</ignore_no_transfer_files>  <!--
Ignore No-transfer Files -->
<validation_timeout>300</validation_timeout>            <!-- Post-
Transfer Validation Timeout -->
</central_server>

```

### 3. Edit settings as needed.

#### Central Server Settings Reference

Setting	Description	Values	Default
Address	The network interface address on which the transfer server listens. The default value of 127.0.0.1 enables the transfer server to accept transfer requests from the local computer. If you set the address to 0.0.0.0, the transfer server can accept requests on all network interfaces. Alternatively, a specific network interface address may be specified.	Valid IPv4 address	127.0.0.1
Port	The port on which the transfer server accepts transfer requests.	Positive integer 1 - 65535	40001
Persistent Storage	Enable to retain data that is stored in the database between reboots of asperacentral.	Enable or Disable	Enable
Files Per Session	The maximum number of files that can be retained for persistent storage.	Positive integer	1000
Persistent Storage Path	The location in which to store data between reboots of asperacentral. If the path is a directory, then a file is created with the default name <code>central-store.db</code> . Otherwise, the file is named as specified in the path.	Valid system path	If the application is installed in the default location, then the path is the following:  <code>/opt/aspera/var/</code>
Maximum Age (seconds)	Maximum allowable age (in seconds) of data to be retained in the database.	Positive integer	86400
Exit Central on Storage Error	The behavior of the asperacentral server if a database write error occurs.	Ignore or Exit	Ignore
Compact Database on Startup	Enable or disable compacting (vacuuming) the database when the transfer server starts.	Enable or Disable	Enable
Ignore Empty Files	Set to <b>true</b> to block the logging of zero-byte files.	true or false	true
Ignore No-transfer Files	Set to <b>true</b> to block the logging of files that were not transferred because they exist at the destination.	true or false	true
Post-Transfer Validation Timeout	How many seconds to wait for a post-transfer validator to update the status of a file before the file is released from the validator and its status is changed back to "to_be_validated". This allows a file to be validated by a different validator if the first validator stops working.	Positive integer	300

Setting	Description	Values	Default
	For more information, see <a href="#">Out-of-Transfer File Validation</a> on page 127.		

#### 4. Save and validate `aspera.conf`.

Run the following command to confirm that the XML is correctly formatted and the parameter settings are valid:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## aspera.conf - Filters to Include and Exclude Files

Filters refine the list of source files (or directories) to transfer by indicating which to skip or include based on name matching. When no filtering rules are specified by the client, Ascp transfers all source files in the transfer list; servers cannot filter client uploads or downloads.

Filters can be specified on the `ascp` command line and in `aspera.conf`. Ascp applies filtering rules that are set in `aspera.conf` *before* it applies rules on the command line.

The `ascp -N` and `-E` options let you specify filter rules individually for each transfer, while filter options configured in `aspera.conf` allow you to have the same rules applied to all transfers.

Filter rules that `ascp` finds in `aspera.conf` are always applied before any command-line rules. This allows you to specify individual command-line rules to augment a core set specified in `aspera.conf`.

### Rule Syntax

A rule consists of a "+" or "-" sign (indicating whether to include or exclude), followed by a space character, followed by a pattern. A pattern can be a file or directory name, or a set of names expressed with UNIX *glob* patterns.

### Basic usage

- Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order that they are listed in `aspera.conf`.
- Filtering is a process of exclusion, and include rules override exclude rules that follow them. Include rules cannot add back files that are excluded by a preceding exclude rule.
- Include rules must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all unmatched files, add two final rules: `"- *`" and `"- .*"`.
- Filtering operates only on the set of files and directories in the transfer list. An include rule cannot add files or directories that are not already part of the transfer list.

Example	Transfer Result
<code>- rule</code>	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule</i> .
<code>+ rule</code>	Transfer all files and directories because none are excluded.
<code>+ rule1</code> <code>- rule2</code>	Transfer all files and directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> , as well as all other files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule2</i> .
<code>- rule1</code> <code>+ rule2</code>	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule1</i> . All files and directories not already excluded by <i>rule1</i> are included because no additional exclude rule follows <code>-N 'rule2'</code> . Additional filters can be set for transfers in the GUI ( <a href="#">Adding and Editing Connections</a> on page 153) or on the command line ( <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208).

### Filtering Rule Application

#### Filtering order

Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order they appear in the list.

1. The first file (or directory) in the transfer list is compared to the pattern of the first rule.
2. If the file matches the pattern, Ascp includes it or excludes it and the file is immune to any following rules.
 

**Note:** When a directory is excluded, directories and files in it are also excluded and are not compared to any following rules.
3. If the file does not match, it is compared to the next rule and repeats the process for each rule until a match is found or until all rules have been tried.
4. If the file never matches any exclude rules, it is included in the transfer.
5. The next file or directory in the transfer list is then compared to the filtering rules until all eligible files are evaluated.

## Rule Patterns

Rule patterns (globs) use standard globbing syntax that includes wildcards and special characters, as well as several Aspera extensions to the standard.

- **Character case:** Case always matters, even if the file system does not enforce such a distinction. For example, on Windows FAT or NTFS file systems and macOS HPFS+, a file system search for "DEBUG" returns files "Debug" and "debug". In contrast, Ascp filter rules use exact comparison, such that "debug" does not match "Debug". To match both, use "[Dd]ebug".
- **Partial matches:** With globs, unlike standard regular expressions, the entire filename or directory name must match the pattern. For example, the pattern `abc*f` matches `abcdef` but not `abcdefg`.

For details on using wildcards and special characters to build rule patterns, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

## Set Rules

Filter rules can be set in `aspera.conf` in the following ways:

- from the GUI ([Configuring Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 65)
- by modifying `aspera.conf` with the `asconfigurator` tool
- by modifying `aspera.conf` directly with a text editor

In order to run `asconfigurator` successfully, you must meet the following requirements:

1. have write access to `aspera.conf`
2. not be restricted to `aspsshell`, which does not allow running `asconfigurator`

The set commands for user, group, and global filter settings use the following syntax:

```
asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;file_filters,|rule1|rule2...|ruleN"
asconfigurator -x
"set_group_data;group_name,groupname;file_filters,|rule1|rule2...|ruleN"
asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_filters,|rule1|rule2...|ruleN"
```

Where:

- Each rule argument, including the first, must begin with a "|" character, which serves as the separator between multiple rules.
- To clear rules, run `asconfigurator` by specifying `"file_filters,"` without rule arguments. Note that the comma in `"file_filters,"` is still required. See the example below.
- Running `asconfigurator` replaces the specified settings; it does not add to them.

To edit `aspera.conf`, open it from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

See the following examples for the correct syntax.

## Examples

- Set global include and exclude filters:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_filters,+ file.txt|- *.txt"
```

Results in aspera.conf:

```
<default>
  <file_system>
    <filters>
      <filter>+ file.txt</filter>
    <filter>- *.txt</filter>
  </filters>
</file_system>
</default>
```

- Sets filters for user asp1:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,asp1;file_filters,+ abc/wxy/tuv/**|- abc/**/def"
```

Results in aspera.conf:

```
<aaa>
  <realms>
    <realm>
      <users>
        <user>
          <name>asp1</name>
          <file_system>
            <filters>
              <filter>+ abc/wxy/tuv/**</filter>
              <filter>- abc/**/def</filter>
            </filters>
          </file_system>
        </user>
      </users>
    </realm>
  </realms>
</aaa>
```

- Clears all filters for the group asgroup:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_group_data;group_name,asgroup;file_filters,"
```

Results in aspera.conf:

```
<groups>
  <group>
    <name>asgroup</name>
    <file_system>
      <filters />
    </file_system>
  </group>
</groups>
```

## Server-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)

---

When files are uploaded from an Aspera client to HST Server, server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR) saves files on disk in an encrypted state. When downloaded from HST Server, server-side EAR first decrypts files automatically, and then the transferred files are written to the client's disk in an unencrypted state.

### Capabilities

Server-side EAR provides the following advantages:

- It protects files against attackers who might gain access to server-side storage. This is important primarily when using NAS storage or cloud storage, where the storage can be accessed directly (and not just through the computer running HST Server or HST Endpoint).
- It is especially suited for cases where the server is used as a temporary location—for example, when a client uploads a file and another one downloads it.
- Server-side EAR can be used together with client-side EAR. When used together, content is doubly encrypted. For more information, see [Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 220.
- Server-side EAR doesn't create an "envelope" as client-side EAR does. The transferred file stays the same size as the original file. The server stores the metadata necessary for server-side EAR separately in a file of the same name with the file extension `.aspera-meta`. By contrast, client-side EAR creates a envelope file containing both the encrypted contents of the file and the encryption metadata, and it also changes the name of the file by adding the file extension `.aspera-env`.
- It works with both regular transfers (FASP) and HTTP fallback transfers.

### Requirements

If the following requirements are not met, then the server can have both encrypted and unencrypted content. This can cause file corruption on the server or unintended overwriting of downloaded files on the client.

- Server-side EAR must be configured when the server is first set up.
- When multiple users have access to the same area of the file system, they must use the same EAR configuration.

### Limitations and Considerations

- Server-side EAR is not designed for cases where files need to move in an encrypted state between multiple computers. For that purpose, client-side EAR is more suitable: files are encrypted when they first leave the client, then stay encrypted as they move between other computers, and are decrypted when they reach the final destination and the passphrase is available.
- Server-side EAR does not work with multi-session transfers (using `ascp -C` or Node API `multi_session` set to greater than 1).
- Do not mix server-side EAR and non-EAR files in transfers, which can happen if server-side EAR is enabled after the server is in use or if multiple users have access to the same area of the file system but have different EAR configurations.

### Configuring Server-Side EAR

1. Set the docroot in URI format.

Server-side EAR requires the storage to have a docroot in URI format, such that it is prefixed with `file:///`. The third slash (/) does not serve as the root slash for an absolute path. For example, a docroot of `/home/xfer` would be set as `file:///home/xfer` and a docroot of `C%3A\Users\xfer` would be set as `file:///C%3A\Users\xfer`.

To set the docroot for a user, group, or default from the command line, run the appropriate `asconfigurator` command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,file:///filepath"
```



```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_group_data;group_name,group_name;absolute,file:///filepath"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;absolute,file:///filepath"
```

## 2. Set the password.

The server-side EAR password can be set for all users (global), per group, or per user. Set the password by using `asconfigurator` or manually editing `aspera.conf`:

To set the EAR password for a user, group, or default, run the appropriate command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;transfer_encryption_content_protection_secret,password"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_group_data;group_name,group_name;transfer_encryption_content_protection_secret,password"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_encryption_content_protection_secret,password"
```

## Reporting Checksums

File checksums are useful for trouble-shooting file corruption, allowing you to determine at what point in the transfer file corruption occurred. Aspera servers can report source file checksums that are calculated on-the-fly during transfer and then sent from the source to the destination.

To support checksum reporting, the transfer must meet both of the following requirements:

- Both the server and client computers must be running HST Server (formerly Enterprise Server and Connect Server) or HST Endpoint (formerly Point-to-Point Client) version 3.4.2 or higher.
- The transfer must be encrypted. Encryption is enabled by default.

The user on the destination can calculate a checksum for the received file and compare it (manually or programmatically) to the checksum reported by the sender. The checksum reported by the source can be retrieved in the destination logs, a manifest file, in IBM Aspera Console, or as an environment variable. Instructions for comparing checksums follow the instructions for enabling checksum reporting.

Checksum reporting is disabled by default. Enable and configure checksum reporting on the server by using the following methods:

- Edit `aspera.conf` with `asconfigurator`.
- Set options in the client GUI.
- Set `ascp` command-line options (per-transfer configuration).

Command-line options override the settings in `aspera.conf` and the GUI.

**Important:** When checksum reporting is enabled, transfers of very large files (>TB) take a long time to resume because the entire file must be reread.

### Overview of Checksum Configuration Options

<b>asconfigurator Option</b> <b>GUI Setting</b> <b>ascp Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
file_checksum File checksum method --file-checksum=type	Enable checksum reporting and specify the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files.  any - Allow the checksum format to be whichever format the client requests. (Default in <code>aspera.conf</code> and the GUI) md5 - Calculate and report an MD5 checksum. sha1 - Calculate and report a SHA-1 checksum.

asconfigurator Option GUI Setting ascp Option	Description
	sha256 - Calculate and report a SHA-256 checksum. sha384 - Calculate and report a SHA-384 checksum. sha512 - Calculate and report a SHA-512 checksum.  <b>Note:</b> The default value for the <code>ascp</code> option is <code>none</code> , in which case the reported checksum is the one configured on the server, if any.
<code>file_manifest</code> File Manifest <code>--file_manifest=output</code>	The file manifest is a file that contains a list of content that was transferred in a transfer session. The file name of the file manifest is automatically generated from the transfer session ID.  When set to <code>none</code> , no file manifest is created. (Default)  When set to <code>text</code> , a text file is generated that lists all files in each transfer session.
<code>file_manifest_path</code> File Manifest Path <code>--file_manifest_path=path</code>	The location where manifest files are written. The location can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home directory. If no path is specified (default), the file is generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.  <b>Note:</b> File manifests can be stored only locally. Thus, if you are using S3 or other non-local storage, you must specify a local manifest path.

### Enabling checksum reporting by editing `aspera.conf`

To enable checksum reporting, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_checksum,checksum"
```

To enable and configure the file manifest where checksum report data is stored, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest,text"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest_path,filepath"
```

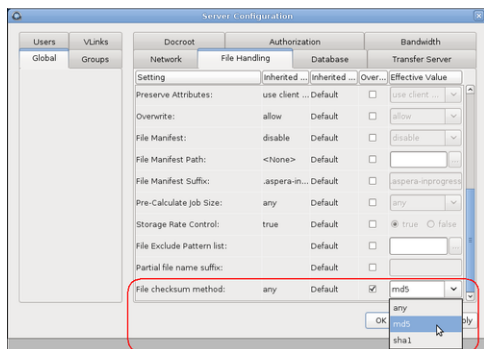
These commands create lines in `aspera.conf` as shown in the following example, where checksum type is `md5`, file manifest is enabled, and the path is `/tmp`.

```
<file_system>
...
  <file_checksum>md5</file_checksum>
  <file_manifest>text</file_manifest>
  <file_manifest_path>/tmp</file_manifest_path>
...
</file_system>
```

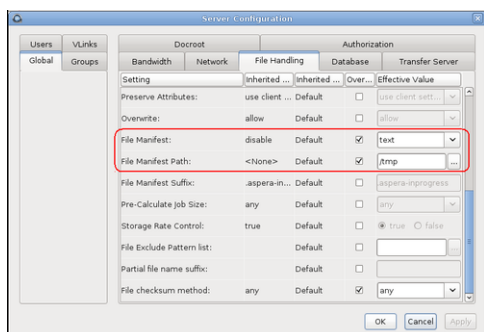
### Enabling checksum reporting from the GUI

Click **Configuration** to open the **Server Configuration** window. Select the **Global**, **Groups**, or **Users** tab, depending on whether you want to enable checksum reporting for all users, or for a particular group or user.

Under the **File Handling** tab, locate the setting for **File checksum method**. Check the override box and for the effective value, select any, md5, sha1, sha256, sha384, or sha512.



To enable the file manifest, select the override check box for **File Manifest** and set the effective value to **text**. To set the path, select the override check box for **File Manifest Path** and set the effective value to the folder in which you want the manifest files saved.



In the examples above, the manifest is generated when files are transferred and saved as a text file called `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the directory `/tmp`.

### Enabling checksum reporting in an ascp session

To enable checksum reporting on a per-transfer-session basis, run `ascp` with the `--file-checksum=hash` option, where `hash` is `sha1`, `md5`, `sha-512`, `sha-384`, `sha-256`, or `none` (the default).

Enable the manifest with `--file-manifest=output` where `output` is either `text` or `none`. Set the path to the manifest file with `--file-manifest-path=path`.

For example:

```
# ascp --file-checksum=md5 --file-manifest=text --file-manifest-path=/
tmp file aspera_user_1@189.0.202.39:/destination_path
```

### Setting up a Pre/Post-processing Script

An alternative to enabling and configuring the file manifest to collect checksum reporting is to set up a pre/post-processing script to report the values.

The checksum of a transferred file is stored in the pre/post environment variable `FILE_CSUM`, which can be used in pre/post scripts to output file checksums. For example, the following script outputs the checksum to the file `/tmp/cksum.log`:

```
#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
  if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
    echo "The file is: $FILE" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    echo "The file checksum is: $FILE_CSUM" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    chmod 777 $FILE
  fi
fi
```

```
fi
```

For information on pre- and post-processing scripts and environment variables, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

## Comparing Checksums

If you open a file that you downloaded with Aspera and find that it is corrupted, you can determine when the corruption occurred by comparing the checksum that is reported by Aspera to the checksums of the files on the destination and on the source.

1. Retrieve the checksum that was calculated by Aspera as the file was transferred.
  - If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path as part of an `ascp` transfer or pre/post processing script, the checksums are in that file in the specified location.
  - If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path in the GUI or `aspera.conf`, the checksums are in a file that is named `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the specified location.
2. Calculate the checksum of the corrupted file. This example uses the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

```
# md5sum filepath
```

3. Compare the checksum reported by Aspera with the checksum that you calculated for the corrupted file.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred as the file was written to the destination. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted. If it is corrupted, compare the checksums again. If they do not match, investigate the write process or attempt another download. If they match, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, then corruption might have occurred as the file was read from the source. Continue to the next step.
4. Calculate the checksums for the file on the source. These examples use the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

Windows:

```
> CertUtil -hashfile filepath MD5
```

Mac OS X:

```
$ md5 filepath
```

Linux and Linux on z Systems:

```
# md5sum filepath
```

AIX:

```
# csum -h MD5 filepath
```

Solaris:

```
# digest -a md5 -v filepath
```

5. Compare the checksum of the file on the source with the one reported by Aspera.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred when the file was read from the source. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted on the destination. If it is corrupted, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, confirm that the source file is not corrupted. If the source file is corrupted, replace it with an uncorrupted one, if possible, and then download the file again.

## Server Logging Configuration for Ascp and Ascp 4

Server transfer logs are stored in the default location (see [Log Files](#) on page 502), rotated once they are 10 MB, and log at "log" level. For `ascp` transfers, you can configure a different default log directory, log size, and logging intensity on the server, and apply these settings globally or to specific users. For Ascp 4 transfers, you can configure a default log size (Ascp 4 does not support user-specific logging settings). These settings do not affect IBM Aspera Sync logging, which is configured in a different section (see [Configuring Aspera Sync Endpoints](#) on page 330).

If the client specifies a log directory on the server (using `-R remote_log_dir`) or the location and size of the local log directory (using `-L local_log_dir[:size]`), then these take precedence over the server settings.

### Default vs User-specific Settings

You can set the default logging configuration or assign users to different logging classes, which are sets of logging configurations.

**Note:** Default settings override user-specific settings. To enable user-specific settings, do not set default settings. User settings do not apply to Ascp 4 transfers.

### Configuration Methods

Logging settings are configured by running `asconfigurator` commands (recommended) or by manually editing `aspera.conf`. To edit `aspera.conf`, open it with admin privileges from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

1. To set default logging values, run the following commands, as required:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_logging_data;directory,logging_directory"
# asconfigurator -x "set_logging_data;log_size,size_mb"
# asconfigurator -x "set_logging_data;level,log_level"
```

Object	Description
directory	The full path to the logging directory. Applies only to <code>ascp</code> transfers.
log_size	The size of the log file, in MB, at which it is rotated (the oldest information is overwritten by the newest information). Default: 10 MB. Applies to <code>ascp</code> and <code>ascp4</code> transfers.
level	The logging level. Valid values are <code>log</code> (default), <code>dbg1</code> , or <code>dbg2</code> . Applies only to <code>ascp</code> transfers.

These commands modify the `<logging>` sub-section of the `<default>` section of `aspera.conf` (or you can manually edit the file):

```
...
<default>
  <file_system>...</file_system>
  <logging>
    <directory>logging_directory</directory>
    <log_size>size_mb</log_size>
    <level>log_level</level>
  </logging>
</default>
...
```

2. To set user logging values, create logging classes (each with a specific logging configuration) and then assign users to classes.

a) Create a logging class:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_log_setting_data;classes,class_name;directory,logging_directory;log_size,size
```

Object	Description
classes	The name of the class. This is the value that you use to assign users to this "class" of logging settings.
directory	The full path to the logging directory. Applies only to ascp transfers.
log_size	The size of the log file, in MB, at which it is rotated (the oldest information is overwritten by the newest information). Default: 10 MB. Applies to ascp and ascp4 transfers.
level	The logging level. Valid values are log (default), dbg1, or dbg2. Applies only to ascp transfers.

b) Assign a user to the logging class:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;logging_class,class_name"
```

For example, the following commands create two logging classes, admin and home. The home logging class uses the substitution string \$(home) to log to the user's home directory, ensuring that the transfer users have access to the log files for their transfers. They assign user root to the admin logging configuration, and users user1 and user2 to the home logging configuration.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_log_setting_data;classes,admin;directory,/root/
logs;log_size,3;level,dbg"
# asconfigurator -x "set_log_setting_data;classes,home;directory,$(home) /
logs;log_size,20";level,dbg"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,root;logging_class,admin"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,user1;logging_class,home"
```

This created the following in aspera.conf:

```
...
<logging>
  <log_setting>
    <classes>admin</classes>
    <directory>/root/logs</directory>
    <log_size>3</log_size>
    <level>dbg</level>
  </log_setting>
  <log_setting>
    <classes>home</classes>
    <directory>$(home) /logs</directory>
    <log_size>20</log_size>
    <level>log</level>
  </log_setting>
</logging>
<aaa><realms><realm>
  <users>
    <user>
      <name>root</name>
      <logging_class>admin</logging_class>
      <file_system>...</file_system>
```

```

    </user>
  <user>
    <name>user1</name>
    <logging_class>home</logging_class>
    <file_system>...</file_system>
  </user>
  <user>
    <name>user2</name>
    <logging_class>home</logging_class>
    <file_system>...</file_system>
  </user>
</users></realm></realms>
</aaa>
...

```

3. If you manually edited `aspera.conf`, save your changes.
4. If you manually edited `aspera.conf`, validate the XML form of `aspera.conf`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Out-of-Transfer File Validation

---

Out-of-transfer file validation is run as soon as the client uploads a to HST Server. The transfer is reported as complete and then the validation is run. The validation script uses the Aspera Reliable Query API to retrieve the list of files to validate and update the file status during validation. The transfer user who is transferring files to the server must be associated with Node API user credentials in order to use the API. These instructions describe how to associate a transfer user with Node API user credentials, create a validation script, and configure the server to use out-of-transfer file validation on files that it receives from specific transfer users, groups, or globally.

This approach has several benefits over inline file validation:

- More efficient use of system resources because the `ascp` sessions can close before validation is completed.
- Out-of-transfer file validation is applied to transfers that use HTTP(S) fallback transport.
- Files are explicitly reported as "validating" to IBM Aspera Faspex through `asperacentral`. Files that are validated inline are reported as "transferring".

1. Associate the transfer user with a Node API username and password, if not already configured.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x transfer_user
```

To view existing Node API users and the transfer users associated with them, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
```

2. Create your validation script.

**Note:** The validation service must be executed on a system that has access to the storage.

The validation script should follow these steps:

- a) Identify the files that need to be validated by using the Reliable Query REST API:

```
curl -X POST -u node_user:password -d '{ "file_transfer_filter":
{ "max_result": 20}, "validation": { "validator_id":
"validator_id" } }' https://server_name:9092/services/rest/transfers/
v1/files
```

Where the `validator_id` is a unique ID to prevent simultaneous validation of the same file by different validators. The value for `max_result` sets a "batch size" for how many files are collected for validation by each POST request, and cannot exceed 1000.

The POST request retrieves the files that are "to\_be\_validated", updates their state to "validating" and the owner to the validator ID, and returns the file list, with information similar to the following:

```
{
  "file_transfer_info_result": {
    "file_transfer_info" : [
      { "session_uuid": "9a2678c3-64db-4bc1-abd4-605ad7702230",
        "path" : "/tmp/src/dir", "local_id": 1,
        "file_id": "47203042-bb57-487f-95df-ad614d0a3720",
        "status": "validating",
        "new_file": true, "error_code": 0,
        "size": 10000000,
        "start_offset": 0,
        "bytes_written": 10000000,
        "bytes_contiguous": 0, "bytes_lost": 0,
        "elapsed": 0, "bytes_processed": 0,
        "start_date": "2017-11-29T16:21:24Z",
        "checksum_type": "None"
      }
    ],
    "iteration_token": "000000000000000003",
    "remaining_result_count": 1,
    "result_count": 1
  }
}
```

- b) Validate the files and update the "bytes\_processed".

By updating the "bytes\_processed", the GUI can display a progress bar:

```
curl -X PUT -u node_user:password -d '{ "validator_id": "validator_id",
  "files": [{ "session_uuid": "session_uuid", "file_id": "file_id",
    "status": "validating", "bytes_processed": bytes } ] }'
https://server_name:9092/services/rest/transfers/v1/files
```

**Note:** If a validator does not update the file status within the validation timeout, the file status is reset to "to\_be\_validated" and the file is released from the validator so that the file can be validated by a different validator. The default timeout is 5 minutes. To edit the validation timeout, go to **Configuration > Transfer Server** in the GUI and override the value for **Post-Transfer Validation Timeout**, or run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_central_server_data;validation_timeout,seconds"
```

- c) Update the status of each file as validation completes or fails:

If a file passes validation, update its status to "completed":

```
curl -X PUT -u node_user:password -d '{ "validator_id": "validator_id",
  "files": [{ "session_uuid": "session_uuid", "file_id": "file_id",
    "status": "completed" } ] }' https://server_name:9092/services/rest/
transfers/v1/files
```

If the file fails validation, update its status to "error" and provide an error code (as a number) and error description (as a string):

```
curl -X PUT -u node_user:password -d '{ "validator_id": "validator_id",
  "files": [{ "session_uuid": "session_uuid", "file_id": "file_id",
    "status": "error", "error_code": error_number, "error_description":
    "error_string" } ] }' https://server_name:9092/services/rest/transfers/
v1/files
```



For example, the body of a PUT request could contain the following information for three files:

```
{
  "validator_id": "my identifier",
  "files": [
    {
      "session_uuid": "1425c741-32bb-492d-b5e1-724c8bdb1fbf",
      "file_id": "11111111-11422dfb-5b8ed464-239783b8-09c78597",
      "status": "validating",
      "bytes_processed": 3
    },
    {
      "session_uuid": "1425c741-32bb-492d-b5e1-724c8bdb1fbf",
      "file_id": "22222222-11422dfb-5b8ed464-239783b8-09c78597",
      "status": "completed"
    },
    {
      "session_uuid": "1425c741-32bb-492d-b5e1-724c8bdb1fbf",
      "file_id": "33333333-11422dfb-5b8ed464-239783b8-09c78597",
      "status": "error",
      "error_code": 2,
      "error_description": "File not found"
    }
  ]
}
```

If all files validate and update successfully, HTTP 204 is returned. If one or more files have failed validation, HTTP 200 is returned. For each failed file, an entry is added to the result. If another HTTP code is returned, then a more general error, such as invalid JSON, has occurred.

**3. Confirm that persistent storage is enabled (the default setting).**

In the GUI, go to **Configuration > Transfer Server** and confirm that **Persistent Storage** is set to **enable**.

From the command line, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -c
```

In the output, locate the value for "persistent\_store". If it is not set to "enable", run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_central_server_data;persistent_store,enable"
```

**4. Ensure that empty files and files that exist at the destination (and are skipped by the transfer session) are not ignored.**

In the GUI, go to **Configuration > Transfer Server** and confirm that **Ignore No-transfer Files** is set to **false**.

From the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_central_server_data;ignore_no_transfer_files,false"
```

If `ignore_no_transfer_files` is set to true, the workflow might fail when the transfer attempts to create empty files on the destination and they are not validated.

**5. Schedule the validation.**

The validation can be scheduled for one or more users (files that are transferred to the server by those users are validated), for one or more groups (files that are transferred to the server by users in the groups are validated), or globally (all files that are transferred to the server for all users are validated).

In the GUI, go to **Configuration > File Handling** for a user, group, or global, and set **Run File Validation at File Stop** to **post\_transfer**.

From the command line, run the command corresponding to the scope of your configuration:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_file_stop,post_transfer"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_group_data;group_name,groupname;validation_file_stop,post_transfer"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;validation_file_stop,post_transfer"
```

## Inline File Validation

If an executable file containing malicious code is uploaded to the server, the malicious code can subsequently be executed by an external product that integrates with an Aspera product. Inline file validation is a feature that enables file content to be validated while the file is in transit, as well as when the transfer is complete. The validation check is made with a Lua script or with a REST call to an external URL. The mode of validation used (URL or Lua) and the timing of the check are set in the Aspera server GUI `oraspera.conf`.

When inline file validation is enabled, the transfer is not reported as complete until the validation completes. An alternative to inline file validation, out-of-transfer file validation, completes the transfer and then validates the file, and can be substantially faster. For more information, see [Out-of-Transfer File Validation](#) on page 127.

**Note:** Inline file validation is not applied to transfers that fall back to HTTP. If all transfers require validation, use out-of-transfer validation.

1. For Lua script validation, prepare your Lua script and specify the path to it.

For information about preparing a Lua script, see [Inline File Validation with Lua Script](#) on page 134.

To specify the path to the script in `aspera.conf`, run one of the following commands, depending on if your script is base64 encoded:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_lua_script_base64,path"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_lua_script_path,path"
```

2. For URI validation, configure the REST service and set the URL.

**Note:** The code examples provided here are for an admin using a Java servlet deployed on an Apache web server, but this process is generalizable to other programming languages and other servers.

- a) Open `web.xml` and edit the `<servlet>` and `<servlet_mapping>` sections to provide the necessary information for validation.

The `<servlet-name>` (URL handler) value is also configured in `aspera.conf` (in the next step) and any custom code (such as file filtering, see [Inline File Validation with URI](#) on page 132).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<web-app xmlns="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee http://
xmlns.jcp.org/xml/ns/javaee/web-app_3_1.xsd"
  version="3.1">

  <servlet>
    <servlet-name>SimpleValidator</servlet-name>
    <servlet-class>aspera.validation.SimpleValidator</servlet-class>
  </servlet>

  <servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>SimpleValidator</servlet-name>
    <url-pattern>/SimpleValidator/validation/files</url-pattern>
  </servlet-mapping>
```

```
</web-app>
```

b) Set the URL in `aspera.conf`.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_uri,url"
```

Where `url` is the server's IP address and port, and the servlet name (URL handler) found in `web.xml`. This adds the path to the `<transfer>` section of `aspera.conf`. For example:

```
<transfer>
<validation_uri>http://127.0.0.1:8080/SimpleValidator</validation_uri>
</transfer>
```

### 3. Schedule the validation.

You can schedule validation to occur at the following events:

- run at file start
- run at file stop
- run at session start (URL validation is not supported)
- run at session stop (URL validation is not supported)
- run when crossing file threshold

You can set a Lua script validation to run at one event and a URI validation to run at another, but you can define only one Lua script or URL. The default setting for all events is `none`.

To set them from the command line, run the applicable command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_file_start,{lua_script|uri}"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_file_stop,{lua_script|uri}"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_session_start,lua_script"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_session_stop,lua_script"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_threshold,{lua_script|uri}"
```

4. If you schedule validation at a file size threshold, set the threshold.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_threshold_kb,size"
```

5. Configure multi-threaded validation.

By default, inline validation is set to use 5 threads.

If the number of validation threads is not set to 1, then multiple threads may perform different types of validations for different (or the same) files at the same time. In such a situation, the response of a `validation_file_stop` at the end of a file download might come before the response of a `validation_threshold` for the same file.

To set the number of validation threads, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;validation_threads,number"
```

For more information about the configuration parameters, see [File Handling Configuration](#) on page 57 (defining values in the UI) or [aspera.conf - Transfer Configuration](#) on page 88 (defining values in `aspera.conf`)

For more information on the output of your inline validation, see [Inline File Validation with URI](#) on page 132 or [Inline File Validation with Lua Script](#) on page 134.

## Inline File Validation with URI

Inline file validation with URI can be customized to filter which files are validated.

### Validation Requests and Returned Responses

During the inline validation process, `ascp` automatically generates a JSON-based request. The call is made with the URL defined in `aspera.conf`. For example:

```
POST URL/validation/files HTTP/1.1
Content-type: application/json
```

The system then generates a JSON accepted or error response (OK or Bad Request). If a file validation fails, it terminates the session with an error message from the URI.

- **Sample JSON accepted response:** The `"file_encryption"` field is only returned if server-side EAR is present.

```
HTTP 200 OK
{
  "id" : "1111-2222-333",
  "file_encryption" : {
    "passphrase" : "supersecret"
  }
  "aspera_response_object_name" : {
    "startstop" : "start"
    "xfer_id" : "AAAA-BBBB",
    "file_csum" : "a1000abf882",
    "file_csum_type" : "sha2-256"
  }
}
```

- **Sample JSON error response:**

```
HTTP 400 Bad Request
{
  "error" : {
    "code" : "1022",
    "message" : "The file fails validation"
  }
}
```

### Custom Code for Including and Excluding Files

Administrators can include or exclude files by enabling whitelisting, blacklisting, or another method of their own design. You can do this by creating custom code in the programming language of your choice, using a web server that runs a REST service. (HST Server users have the option to use the web server associated with that installation).

The following is an example of custom code that creates a file blacklist, using a Java servlet deployed on an Apache web server. Note that this code uses the servlet name `SimpleValidator`, which was defined in `web.xml` above.

```
package aspera.validation;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.JsonObject;

import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.annotation.WebServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
```

```

import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import java.io.BufferedReader;
import java.io.IOException;

@WebServlet(name = "SimpleValidator")
public class SimpleValidator extends HttpServlet {
    protected void doPost(HttpServletRequest request, HttpServletResponse
response) throws ServletException, IOException {
        StringBuilder fileRequestJSON = new StringBuilder();
        BufferedReader reader = request.getReader();
        String line = "";
        Gson gson = new Gson();

        System.out.println("Got Validation request...");
        while (line != null) {
            line = reader.readLine();
            if (!(line == null)) {
                fileRequestJSON.append(line).append("\n");
            }
        }

        ValidationInput validationInput =
gson.fromJson(fileRequestJSON.toString(), ValidationInput.class);

        System.out.println("FileData JSON: " + fileRequestJSON.toString());

        if (validationInput.file != null &&
validationInput.file.endsWith(".sh")
|| validationInput.file.endsWith(".exe")) {

            JsonObject innerObject = new JsonObject();
            innerObject.addProperty("message", "Cannot transfer executable
file!!");
            innerObject.addProperty("code", 1);

            JsonObject jsonObject = new JsonObject();
            jsonObject.add("error", innerObject);

            response.getOutputStream().println(jsonObject.toString());

            response.setStatus(HttpServletResponse.SC_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR);
        }
        else {

            JsonObject jsonObject = new JsonObject();
            jsonObject.addProperty("success", true);
            jsonObject.addProperty("data", "File is ok to transfer");
            jsonObject.addProperty("code", 1);
            response.getOutputStream().println(jsonObject.toString());

            response.setStatus(HttpServletResponse.SC_OK);
        }
        return;
    }
}

```

## Inline File Validation with Lua Script

To use a Lua script for inline file validation, the administrator creates a base-64 encoded Lua action script and sets the path to that script in the GUI or in the `<transfer>` section of `aspera.conf`. During the inline validation, `ascp` automatically generates a request; the parameters for the Lua call are passed to a Lua script defined in `aspera.conf`.

The parameters for Lua calls are passed to Lua scripts by using the array `'env_table'`. The following is an example request body:

```
env_table["startstop"] = "running"
env_table["xfer_id"] = "AAAA-BBBB"
env_table["session_id"] = "1111-2222"
env_table["host"] = "10.0.258.12"
env_table["client_ip"] = "10.0.125.04"
env_table["user"] = "admin"
env_table["userid"] = 24
env_table["direction"] = "send"
env_table["target_rate_kbps"] = 0
env_table["min_rate_kbps"] = 0
env_table["rate_policy"] = "fair"
env_table["cipher"] = "aes-128"
env_table["cookie"] = "xyz"
env_table["manifest_file"] = "/data/manifests/aspera-transfer-1234.txt"
env_table["file"] = "/data/home/luke/test.mpg"
env_table["size"] = 1000000
env_table["start_byte"] = 0
env_table["bytes_written"] = 0
env_table["tags"] = "tags"
env_table["file_name_encoding"] = "utf8"
env_table["file_csum"] = "a1000abf882"
env_table["file_csum_type"] = "sha2-256"
```

### Lua Request Body Parameters and Values

Field	Description	Values
"startstop"	Sets the type of validation	start, stop, or running
"xfer_id"	Value used to identify a transfer session	String
"session_id"	Value used to identify a validation session	String
"host"	Server hostname or IP address	Hostname or IP address
"client_ip"	Client IP address	IP address
"user"	SSH account login name	String
"user_id"	Value used to identify the user	String
"direction"	Direction of transfer (send or receive)	send or recv
"target_rate_kbps"	Target rate (in kbps) for file transfer with <code>ascp</code>	Integer
"min_rate_kbps"	Minimum rate (in kbps) for file transfer with <code>ascp</code>	Integer

Field	Description	Values
"rate_policy"	Defines the <code>ascp</code> rate policy. This value is taken from the default configuration in the GUI or <code>aspera.conf</code> , if not defined here.	fixed, fair, high, or low
"cipher"	The encryption cipher for file data.	String; AES128, ANY, or NONE
"cookie"	The cookie sent to the client system	String
"manifest_file"	Path to manifest file, which contains a list of transferred files. The command for this in <code>ascp</code> is <code>--file-manifest-path=file_path</code>	Filepath
"file"	Path to file being validated	Filepath
"size"	Allowable file size	Integer (up to 64-bit)
"start_byte"		Integer
"bytes_written"		Integer
"tags"	The JSON request passes the supplied tag values to <code>ascp</code> , which in turn passes the tags to the validator.	
"file_name_encoding"		String
"file_csum"	File checksum	String
"file_csum_type"	File checksum type	md5, sha1, or any

The values that are returned from Lua can be used to indicate validation success, validation failure, the script error, or to change the file destination:

Status	Lua return value
Validation success	No value or <code>LRET_OK</code>
Change file destination	<code>LRET_REDIRECT_DST</code> followed by a new destination path for the file. This option is only available at file transfer start, returning it at any other state results in an error.
Validation failure	<code>LRET_INVALID</code> , optionally followed by a failure description string
Script error	<code>LRET_ERROR</code> followed by an error number or error description string

## Lua File Interfaces

Three Lua file interfaces allow Lua scripts to reference files: `lua_stat`, `lua_file_delete`, and `lua_rename`.

- `lua_stat("file_path")`

Used to gather metadata for the single file specified by `file_path`, where `file_path` is relative to the docroot, if defined. Metadata output include the following:

```
stat_data["exists"] = "true" | "false"
```

```

stat_data["size"] = file_size
stat_data["blocks"] = file_blocks
stat_data["blocksize"] = block_size
stat_data["type"] = "Invalid" | "S_IFDIR" | "S_IFREG" | "S_IFCHR"
| "S_IFBLK" | "S_IFIFO" | "S_IFSOCK" |
| "S_IFLNK" | "Block stream" | "Custom" | "Unknown"
stat_data["mode format"] = "Windows format" | "Linux format"
stat_data["mode"] = filemode (format based on mode format above)
stat_data["uid"] = uid
stat_data["gid"] = gid
stat_data["ctime"] = ctime
stat_data["mtime"] = mtime
stat_data["atime"] = atime

```

- `lua_file_delete("file_path")`

Deletes the single file specified by *file\_path*, where *file\_path* is relative to the docroot, if defined.

- `lua_rename("old_file_path", "new_file_path")`

Renames the file specified by *old\_file\_path* with the new name specified by *new\_file\_path*, both of which are relative to the docroot, if defined.

## Lua Logging Interface

You can output simple text strings (format strings are not supported) to the Aspera logs using the `ascp` log interfaces. For example, to log when the Lua script started, enter the following line in a Lua script:

```
lua_log("Lua script started")
```

This produces the following log entry:

```
xxxxxx LOG lua: Lua script started
```

The following `ascp` logging functions are supported:

- `as_log`
- `as_err`
- `as_dbg1`
- `as_dbg2`
- `as_dbg3`
- `as_dbg4`

To use the `ascp` log functions in your Lua script, replace `as` with `lua`.

## Miscellaneous Lua Interfaces

- `lua_override_ear_secret("secret")`

Override the server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR) secret that is set in `aspera.conf` with the specified secret.



## File Pre- and Post-Processing (Prepost)

---

HST Server can run file processing scripts that run before or after a transfer session or file transfer.

### Setting Up Pre/Post Processing

---

HST Server can be configured to run scripts that are triggered by session start, session stop, file start, and file stop.

Your Aspera server can automatically execute a *shell* script from a pre-defined location:

```
/opt/aspera/var/
```

The script is executed as a result of four transfer events:

- Session start
- Session end
- Start of each individual file transfer in the session
- End of each individual file transfer in the session

The `aspera-prepost` script can also execute additional shell scripts, Perl scripts, native executables, and Java programs.

**Environment Variables:** Aspera has several environment variables for `aspera-prepost` that you can use in your own custom scripts. These environment variables are described in detail in [Pre/Post Variables](#) on page 138. Depending on usage, pre- and post-processing may consume a large amount of system resources. Be sure to evaluate your system performance and apply this feature appropriately.



**CAUTION:** When creating pre- and post-processing scripts, unsafe scripts can compromise a server. As with CGI scripts, you should take precautions in testing a pre/post script before placing it into use (such as taint checking and ensuring proper quotes). You should also be aware of user permissions; pre/post scripts run as the user who authenticates the transfer. To prevent a pre/post script from performing an action with elevated or special user permissions, the script needs to check the `$USER` variable.

To set up pre/post processing for your Aspera transfer product:

1. Set up the shell script file.

Locate the following file:

```
/opt/aspera/var/aspera-prepost.disable
```

This file runs the Perl script `aspera-notif.pl`, which is an email notification script that sends emails (according to user-defined filters) to one or more recipients. Filters and lists are defined in the Aspera configuration file `aspera.conf`, which is located in `/opt/aspera/etc`.

Copy the contents of `aspera-prepost.disable` into a new file, and name it as follows:

```
/opt/aspera/var/aspera-prepost
```

Ensure that execute privileges are enabled (at least `r-xr-xr-x`).

2. Create your scripts.

The pre/post processing script, `aspera-prepost`, can contain the pre/post processing steps, as well as execute other programs. Often, `aspera-prepost` checks for certain conditions (based on environment variables), and then calls a specific external executable based on those conditions.

`aspera-prepost` is executed as a result of the start and end of a transfer session, as well as the start and end of the transfer of an individual file in the session. Use the variables `TYPE` and `STARTSTOP` to specify a particular state. For the complete list of all variables, see [Pre/Post Variables](#) on page 138.

### 3. Include custom scripts in `aspera-prepost`.

Custom scripts can be written directly into the script file `aspera-prepost`. For example, to add the custom script `script1.pl` to your pre/post script, insert the following line (into `aspera-prepost`):

```
...
perl script1.pl
...
```

## Pre/Post Variables

HST Server supports an extensive set of variables that can be used in prepost scripts.

The following tables list all pre/post variables for setting up pre- and post-processing. Some can be applied only to sessions, some only to files, and some to both sessions and files.

### Pre/post variable considerations:

- Pre/post variables are case-sensitive.
- Pre/post variables that can be arbitrarily long (values marked with \* below) are truncated by prepost scripts.

### For Sessions and Files

Variable	Description	Values	Example
COOKIE	The user-defined cookie string.	string*	<code>"\$COOKIE" == cookie-string</code>
DIRECTION	The transfer direction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• send</li> <li>• recv</li> </ul>	<code>"\$DIRECTION" == send</code>
ERRCODE	The error code.	string	<code>"\$ERRCODE" == 1</code>
ERRSTR	The error string.	string	<code>"\$ERRSTR" == FASP error</code>
MANIFESTFILE	The full path to the manifest file.	string*	<code>"\$MANIFESTFILE" == /log</code>
PEER	The peer name or IP address.	string or valid IPv4 address	<code>"\$PEER" == 10.0.0.1</code>
SECURE	Transfer encryption.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• yes</li> <li>• no</li> </ul>	<code>"\$SECURE" == no</code>
SESSIONID	The session id.	string	<code>"\$SESSIONID" == 1</code>
STARTSTOP	The status start or stop.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start</li> <li>• Stop</li> </ul>	<code>"\$STARTSTOP" == Start</code>
STATE	The transfer state.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• started</li> <li>• success</li> <li>• failed</li> </ul>	<code>"\$STATE" == success</code>
TYPE	The event type.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Session</li> <li>• File</li> </ul>	<code>"\$TYPE" == Session</code>

Variable	Description	Values	Example
USER	The user name	string	"\$USER" == <i>aspera_user_1</i>
USERID	The user ID	string	"\$USERID" == <i>501</i>
USERSTR	The user string, such as additional variables.	string*	"\$USERSTR" == <i>-q</i>

### For Sessions

Variable	Description	Values	Example
FILE1	The first file.	string*	"\$FILE1" == <i>first-file</i>
FILE2	The second file.	string*	"\$FILE2" == <i>second-file</i>
FILECOUNT	The number of files.	positive integer	"\$FILECOUNT" >= <i>5</i>
FILELAST	The last file.	string*	"\$FILELAST" == <i>last-file</i>
LICENSE	The license account and serial number.	string	"\$LICENSE" == <i>license-string</i>
MINRATE	The initial minimum rate, in Kbps.	positive integer	"\$MINRATE" == <i>50</i>
PEERLICENSE	The peer's license account and serial number.	string	"\$PEERLICENSE" == <i>license-string</i>
RATEMODE	The transfer policy.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• adapt</li> <li>• fixed</li> </ul>	"\$RATEMODE" == <i>adapt</i>
SOURCE	The full path of the source file.	string*	"\$SOURCE" == <i>/tmp</i>
TARGET	The full path of the target directory.	string*	"\$TARGET" == <i>.</i>
TARGETRATE	The initial target rate, in Kbps.	positive integer	"\$TARGETRATE" == <i>100</i>
TOTALBYTES	The total bytes transferred.	positive integer	"\$TOTALBYTES" >= <i>100000000</i>
TOTALSIZE	The total size of files being transferred in bytes.	positive integer	"\$TOTALSIZE" >= <i>500000000</i>

### For Files

Variable	Description	Values	Example
DELAY	The measured network delay, in ms.	positive integer	"\$DELAY" <= <i>1</i>
FILE	The file name.	string*	"\$FILE" == <i>file-name</i>
FILE_CSUM	Destination checksum of the most recently transferred file.	string	"\$FILE_CSUM" == <i>checksum</i>
LOSS	The network loss in percentage.	double-digit fixed point value	"\$LOSS" >= <i>5.00</i>

Variable	Description	Values	Example
OVERHEAD	The total number of duplicate packets.	positive integer	"\$OVERHEAD" >= 1
RATE	The transfer rate in Kbps.	double-digit fixed point value	"\$RATE" >= 10.00
REXREQS	The total number of retransmission requests.	positive integer	"\$REXREQS" >= 3
SIZE	The file size in bytes.	positive integer	"\$SIZE" >= 5000000
STARTBYTE	The start byte if resumed.	positive integer	"\$STARTBYTE" >= 100000

## Pre/Post Script Examples

The following pre-processing and post-processing script examples demonstrate how Aspera prepost environment variables are used to achieve different types of processing.

These examples use `bash` syntax. To run these examples on your own system, do the following:

- Save the example to `/opt/aspera/var/myscript.sh`.
- Ensure that the script file is executable -- for example:

```
$ chmod +x /opt/aspera/var/myscript.sh
```

- Add the line `/opt/aspera/var/myscript.sh` to `/opt/aspera/var/aspera-prepost` to call `myscript.sh`.
- Be sure there is no exit condition in `aspera-prepost` before you call your script.

### 1. Shell - Change file and directory permissions.

In the shell script, change file and directory permissions after receiving, and log into the file `/tmp/p.log`:

```
#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
  if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
    echo "The file is: $FILE" >> /tmp/p.log
    chmod 777 $FILE
  fi
fi
```

### 2. Shell - Forward files to another computer.

In the shell script, transfer received files to a third computer 10.10.10.10, and remove the local copy.

**Important:** For this example to work properly, the server's host key must be cached.

```
The server's host key is not cached. You have no guarantee
that the server is the computer you think it is.
The server's rsa2 key fingerprint is:
ssh-rsa 2048 a9:bf:35:e7:71:26:d7:7b:2e:b3:b9:c3:54:81:47:da
If you trust this host, enter "y" to add the key to
PuTTY's cache and carry on connecting.
If you want to carry on connecting just once, without
adding the key to the cache, enter "n".
If you do not trust this host, press Return to abandon the
connection.
Store key in cache? (y/n) █
```

```
#!/bin/bash
TARGET=aspera@10.10.10.10:/tmp
```

```

RATE=10m
export ASPERA_SCP_PASS=aspera
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
    if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
        if [ $STATE == success ]; then
            if [ $DIRECTION == recv ]; then
                logger -plocal2.info "Move file $FILE to $TARGET"
                ascp -T -o RemoveAfterTransfer=yes -l $RATE $FILE $TARGET
            fi
        fi
    fi
fi

```

### 3. Shell - Create a log of successfully transferred files.

In the shell script, store successfully transferred files as a list into the file `/tmp/aspera.transfer.log`:

```

#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
    if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
        if [ $SIZE -gt 0 ]; then
            if [ `expr $SIZE - $STARTBYTE` -gt 0 ]; then
                echo `date` >> /tmp/aspera.transfer.log
                echo "$STATE $FILE $SIZE bits transferred" >> /tmp/
aspera.transfer.log
            fi
        fi
    fi
fi

```

## Email Notifications

---

Email notifications are a special type of prepost processing that can be configured on HST Server .

### Setting Up Email Notifications

---

The email notification feature is a built-in pre- and post-processing application that generates customized emails based on transfer events. To enable email notifications, HST Server must be configured for pre/post-processing and have network access to an open SMTP relay server.

#### Prerequisites:

- HST Server configured for pre- and post-processing. For instructions, see [Setting Up Pre/Post Processing](#) on page 137.
- An open SMTP server that you can reach on your network and that does not use any external authentication or SSL.

#### Setting up Email Notifications:

1. Prepare the email notification configuration template.

Open the `aspera.conf` file:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

Locate or create the section `<EMAILNOTIF>...</EMAILNOTIF>`:

```

<CONF version="2">
...

```

```

<EMAILNOTIF>
  <MAILLISTS
    mylist = "asperausers@example.com, admin@example.com"
    myadminlist = "admin@example.com"
  />

  <FILTER
    MAILLISTS = "mylist"
    TARGETDIR = "/content/users"
  />

  <MAILCONF
    DEBUG = "0"
    FROM = "asperaserver@example.com"
    MAILSERVER = "mail.example.com"
    SUBJECT = "Transfer %{SOURCE} %{TARGET} - %{STATE}"
    BODYTEXT =
      "Aspera transfer: %{STATE}%{NEWLINE}%{TOTALBYTES} bytes in
      %{FILECOUNT} files: %{FILE1}, %{FILE2}, ...%{FILELAST}."
  />
</EMAILNOTIF>
</CONF>

```

2. Set up the basic notification function in <MAILCONF/>

<MAILCONF/> defines the general email configuration, including the sender, the mail server, and the body text. In the SUBJECT and BODYTEXT options, the pre- and post-processing variables can be used with the format `%{variable}`, such as `%{STATE}` for the variable STATE. For the complete list of the variables, see [Pre/Post Variables](#) on page 138.

MAILCONF Field	Description	Values	Example
FROM	The email address to send notifications from. (Required)	a valid email address	FROM="admin@example.com"
MAILSERVER	The outgoing mail server (SMTP). (Required)	A valid URL	MAILSERVER="mail.example.com"
SUBJECT	General subject of the email.	text string	SUBJECT="Transfer:%{STATE}"
BODYTEXT	General body of the email.	text string	BODYTEXT="Transfer has %{STATE}."
DEBUG	Print debugging info and write to the logs.	"0" = off, "1" = on	DEBUG="0"

3. Create mailing lists in <MAILLISTS />.

<MAILLISTS /> defines sets of mailing lists. For example, to create the following mailing list:

Item	Value
Mailing list name	list1
Emails to include	janedoe@companymail.com, johndoe@companymail.com

Specify the mailing list in the following form:

```

<MAILLISTS
  list1 = "janedoe@companymail.com, johndoe@companymail.com"
/>

```

4. Set up mailing filters in <FILTER />.

<FILTER /> defines email notification conditional filters. When the conditions are met, a customized email is sent to the indicated mailing list. Multiple filters are allowed.

The values in the filter are matched as substrings, for example, `USER = root` means the value would match strings like `root`, `treeroot`, and `root1`. The pre- and post-processing variables can be used with the format `%{variable}`, such as `%{STATE}` for the variable `STATE`. For the complete list of the variables, see [Pre/Post Variables](#) on page 138.

<b>FILTER Field</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Values</b>	<b>Example</b>
MAILLISTS	<b>Required</b> The email lists to send to. Separate lists with comma (.).	text string	MAILLISTS="mylist"
USER	Login name of the user who transferred the files.	text string	USER="aspera_user_1"
SRCIP	Source IP of the files.	a valid IPv4 address	SRCIP="10.0.1.1"
DESTIP	Destination IP of the files.	a valid IPv4 address	DESTIP="10.0.1.5"
SOURCE	The top-level directories and files that were transferred.	text string	SOURCE="/folder1"
TARGETDIR	The directory that the files were sent to.	text string	TARGETDIR="/folder2"
SUBJECTPREFIX	The email subject, preceded by the SUBJECT in <MAILCONF />.	text string	SUBJECTPREFIX="Sub"
BODYPREFIX	The email body, preceded by the BODYTEXT in <MAILCONF />.	text string	BODYPREFIX="Txt"
TOTALBYTESOVER	Send email when total bytes transferred is over this number. This only applies to emails sent at the end of a transfer.	positive integer	TOTALBYTESOVER="9000"
SENDONSESSION	Send email for the entire session.	yes / no	SENDONSESSION="yes"
SENDONSTART	Send email when transfer is started. This setting is dependent on SENDONSESSION="yes".	yes / no	SENDONSTART="yes"
SENDONSTOP	Send email when transfer is stopped. This setting is dependent on SENDONSESSION="yes".	yes / no	SENDONSTOP="yes"
SENDONFILE	Send email for each file within a session.	yes / no	SENDONFILE="yes"

## Email Notification Examples

Use the following examples to craft your own email notifications.

1. Notify a specified mailing list when a transfer session is completed.

```
<EMAILNOTIF>
  <MAILLISTS
    list1 ="janedoe@companyemail.com, johndoe@companyemail.com"
  />
```

```

<MAILCONF
  FROM="Aspera Notifier <admin@companyemail.com>"
  MAILSERVER="smtp.companyemail.com"
  BODYTEXT="%{NEWLINE}Powered by Aspera Inc."
/>

<FILTER
  MAILLISTS="list1"
  SENDONSESSION="yes"
  SUBJECTPREFIX="Aspera Transfer - %{USER} "
  BODYPREFIX="Status: %{STATE}%{NEWLINE} File Count: %{FILECOUNT}"
/>
</EMAILNOTIF>

```

2. Notify the specified mail list when a session is initiated and completed.

```

<EMAILNOTIF>
  <MAILLISTS
    list1 ="janedoe@companyemail.com, johndoe@companyemail.com"
  />
  <MAILCONF
    FROM="Aspera Notifier <admin@companyemail.com>"
    MAILSERVER="smtp.companyemail.com"
    SUBJECT=" by %{USER}"
    BODYTEXT="%{NEWLINE}Powered by Aspera Inc."
  />

  <FILTER
    MAILLISTS="list1"
    SENDONSTART="yes"
    SENDONSTOP="no"
    SUBJECTPREFIX="Transfer Started"
    BODYPREFIX="Source: %{PEER}%{NEWLINE} Target: %{TARGET}"
  />

  <FILTER
    MAILLISTS="list1"
    SENDONSTART="no"
    SENDONSTOP="yes"
    SUBJECTPREFIX="Transfer Completed"
    BODYPREFIX="
      Status: %{STATE}%{NEWLINE}
      File Count: %{FILECOUNT}%{NEWLINE}
      Source: %{PEER}%{NEWLINE}
      Target: %{TARGET}%{NEWLINE}
      Bytes Transferred: %{TOTALBYTES} Bytes%{NEWLINE}
    "
  />
</EMAILNOTIF>

```

3. Send different notifications for regular transfers and for IBM Aspera Sync transfers.

In the example below, when Aspera Sync triggers a transfer (assuming only Aspera Sync uses the folder /sync-folder), an email message is sent to "mediaGroup". When a regular transfer occurs (files are sent to /upload), a different notification is sent to "mediaLead" and "adminGroup".

```

<EMAILNOTIF>
  <MAILLISTS
    mediaGroup ="johndoe@companyemail.com, janedoe@companyemail.com"
    mediaLead ="janedoe@companyemail.com"
    adminGroup ="admin@companyemail.com, root@companyemail.com"
  />

```



```

<MAILCONF
  FROM="Aspera Notifier <admin@companyemail.com>"
  MAILSERVER="smtp.companyemail.com"
  BODYTEXT="%{NEWLINE}Powered by Aspera Inc."
/>

<FILTER
  MAILLISTS="mediaGroup"
  SENDONSESSION="yes"
  DESTIP="192.168.1.10"
  TARGETDIR="/sync-folder"
  SUBJECTPREFIX="Aspera Sync #1 - From %{PEER}"
  BODYPREFIX="Status: %{STATE}%{NEWLINE} File Count: %{FILECOUNT}"
/>

<FILTER
  MAILLISTS="mediaLead, adminGroup"
  SENDONSESSION="yes"
  TARGETDIR="/upload"
  SUBJECTPREFIX="Transfer - %{USER}"
  BODYPREFIX="
    Status: %{STATE}%{NEWLINE}
    Source: %{PEER}%{NEWLINE}
    File Count: %{FILECOUNT}%{NEWLINE}
    Bytes Transferred: %{TOTALBYTES} Bytes%{NEWLINE}
  "
/>
</EMAILNOTIF>

```

## Transfer Files in the GUI

---

Use the HST Server GUI to create connections to Aspera servers, configure transfer settings, set up transfer notifications, and start, stop, pause, and schedule transfers.

### Overview of the HST Server GUI

---

The HST Server GUI is an intuitive tool for starting and managing transfers. Learn how to launch the GUI and how to navigate its features.

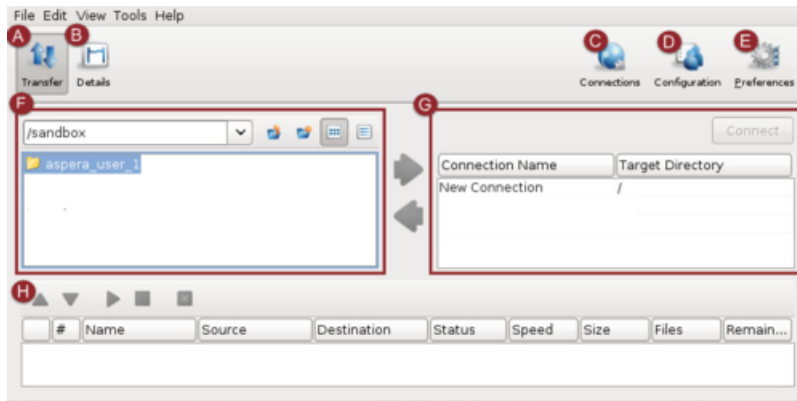
#### Launching the Application

To launch the desktop application, run the following command. To perform administrator tasks (such as server configuration, license updates, or configure email notification templates), run it with root permissions.

```
# asperascp
```

#### The Application GUI

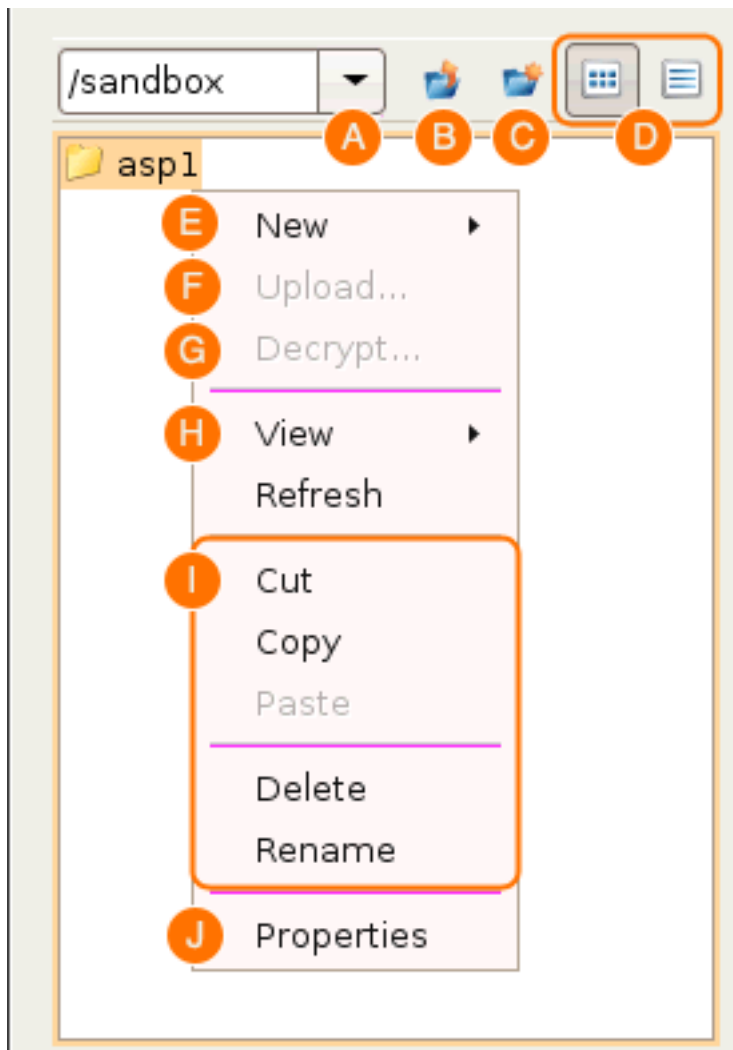
**Note:** The **Configuration** button shown in the screenshots below is only enabled when the application is run as an **Administrator**.



Item	Description
A	Click <b>Transfer</b> to enter the transfer viewing mode. This is the default view when you launch the application, which shows the local and remote file browsers. For more information, see <a href="#">Transferring Content</a> on page 164.
B	Select a transfer from the bottom pane and click <b>Details</b> to enter the transfer details viewing mode. This view shows the details of the selected transfer session, as well as the transfer control options. For more information, see <a href="#">Managing Transfers</a> on page 165.
C	Click <b>Connections</b> to open the <b>Connection Manager</b> window in which you can manage the remote endpoints. For more information, see <a href="#">Adding and Editing Connections</a> on page 153.
D	Click <b>Configuration</b> to open the <b>Server Configuration</b> window in which you can configure the FASP transfer settings. For more information, see <a href="#">Configure HST Server in the GUI</a> on page 40.
E	Click <b>Preferences</b> to set the local computer's default transfer settings, such as the FASP global bandwidth and the number of simultaneous transfers in the queue, and the SMTP server's information for transfer notifications.
F	Browse the local file system to view files to transfer.
G	When not connected, a list of the saved connections is displayed. When connected (by clicking on a Connection Name and clicking <b>Connect</b> ), browse the remote file system.
H	Display previous, ongoing, and queued transfers. Manage the priority. <b>Note:</b> The file name is not shown in the <b>Name</b> or <b>Source</b> fields in the <b>Transfer</b> pane if the client is using version older than 3.7.0.

### The File Browser

All options in the File Browser, including the file browser's contextual menu (Mouse right-click):

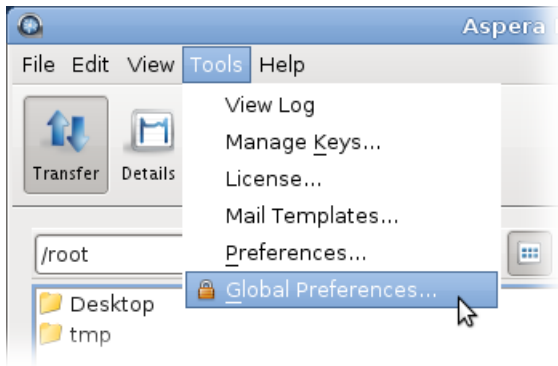


Item	Description
A	Path indicator/selector.
B	Go to the parent directory.
C	Create a new folder.
D	Choose between the list views and the detail view.
E	Create a new folder.
F	View the advanced upload or download window.
G	Decrypt the selected file if it is encrypted with the content protection.
H	Choose between the detail or the list views. Refresh the folder.
I	Options to manipulation the selected files.
J	Show the selected files' properties.

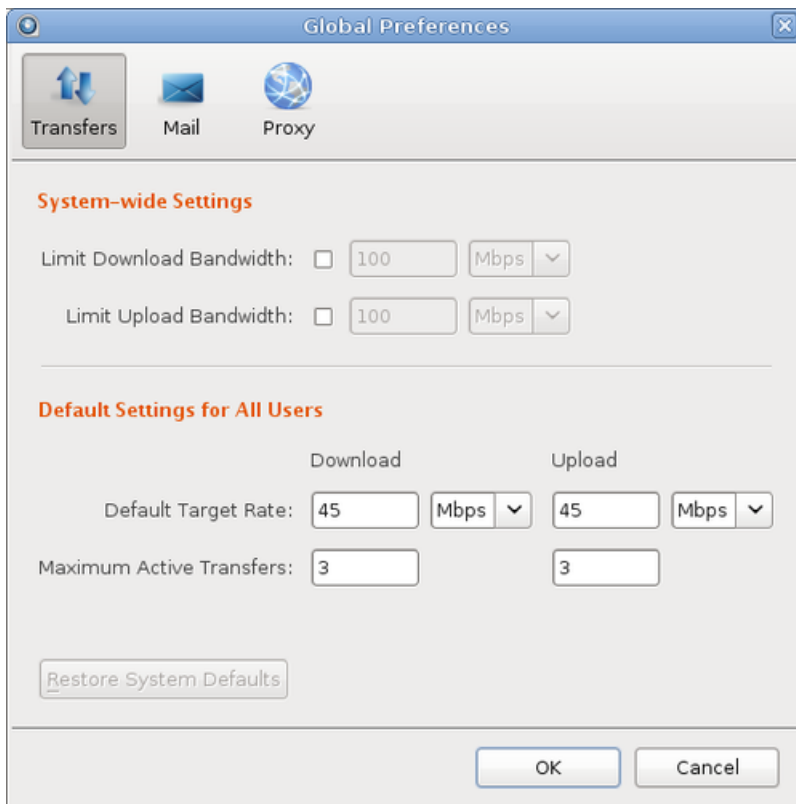
## Global Bandwidth Settings

Aspera FASP transport has no theoretical throughput limit. In addition to network capacity, transfer rates can be limited by user-configured rate settings and the resources of the local and remote machines. You can configure bandwidth usage limits and the number of concurrent FASP transfers that are allowed by HST Server.

1. Launch the application with administrator privileges and click **Tools > Global Preferences**.



2. Click **Transfers**.



3. To limit total bandwidth usage by FASP uploads and downloads, edit **System-Wide Settings**. System-wide settings set the aggregated bandwidth cap for all FASP transfers on this computer.

To override the default bandwidth limits, under **System-Wide Settings** select the boxes next to **Limit Download Bandwidth** and **Limit Upload Bandwidth** and enter new values in the fields. The global settings for download and upload bandwidth limits cannot be reset by non-admin users. However, users can view the global limit from the **Preferences > Transfers** dialog.

**Note:** When global bandwidth limits are set, the application creates virtual links (Vlink) and applies them to the default transfer settings. For more information about Vlinks, see [Controlling Bandwidth Usage with Virtual Links \(GUI\)](#) on page 55.

For more advanced bandwidth settings, see [Bandwidth Configuration](#) on page 47.

4. To set default target rates for all users, edit **Default Target Rate**.  
Non-admin users can adjust their personal default target rates above or below the global default value.
5. To limit the number of active transfers, edit **Maximum Active Transfers**.  
Non-admin users can adjust their personal maximum active transfers above or below the global default value.
6. Click **OK** to activate your changes.

## Enabling a Transfer Proxy or HTTP Proxy

---

If, for network security reasons, you are behind a transfer proxy server, you can enable the proxy for Aspera file transfers. If you have admin privileges, you can enable transfer proxies for all users by setting global preferences. If you are a non-admin user, you can override global transfer-proxy settings for your own account, including enabling or disabling the feature. By default, proxy is disabled.

Open the proxy configuration dialog by clicking **Preferences > Proxy**.

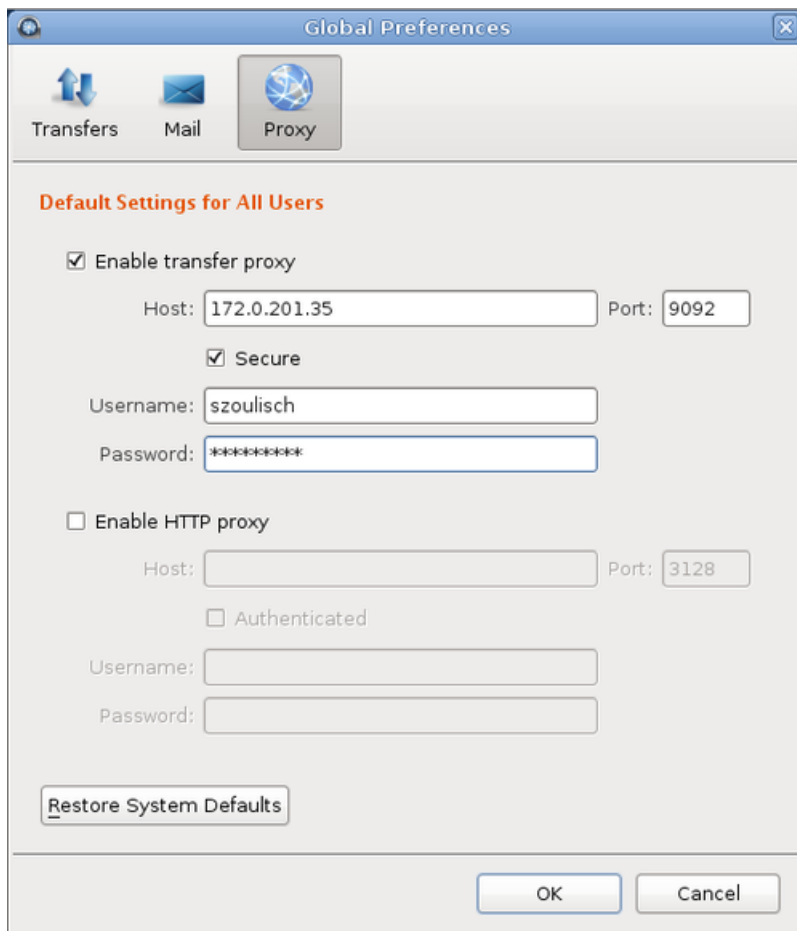
Clicking **Preferences** opens the user-account proxy settings. If you have permission, you can click **Global Preferences** to access those settings.

### Configuring Global Transfer and HTTP Proxy Settings

You must have admin privileges to set global preferences.

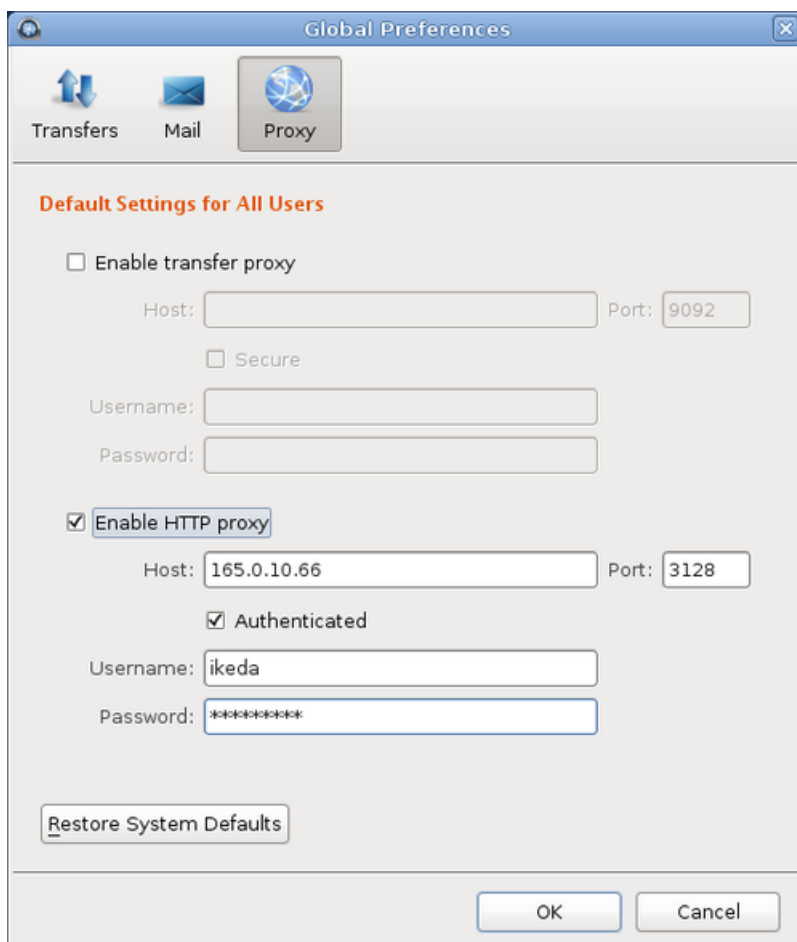
To enable a transfer proxy:

1. Go to **Global Preferences > Proxy**.
2. Select **Enable transfer proxy**.
3. Enter the proxy server's hostname or IP address and port number.
4. Select **Secure** if your proxy server allows secure connections.
5. Enter your username and password to authenticate with your proxy server.



To enable HTTP proxy:

1. Go to **Global Preferences > Proxy**.
2. Select **Enable HTTP proxy**.
3. Enter the HTTP proxy's hostname or IP address and port number.
4. If your HTTP proxy requires authentication, select **Authenticated** and enter the username and password for your HTTP proxy.



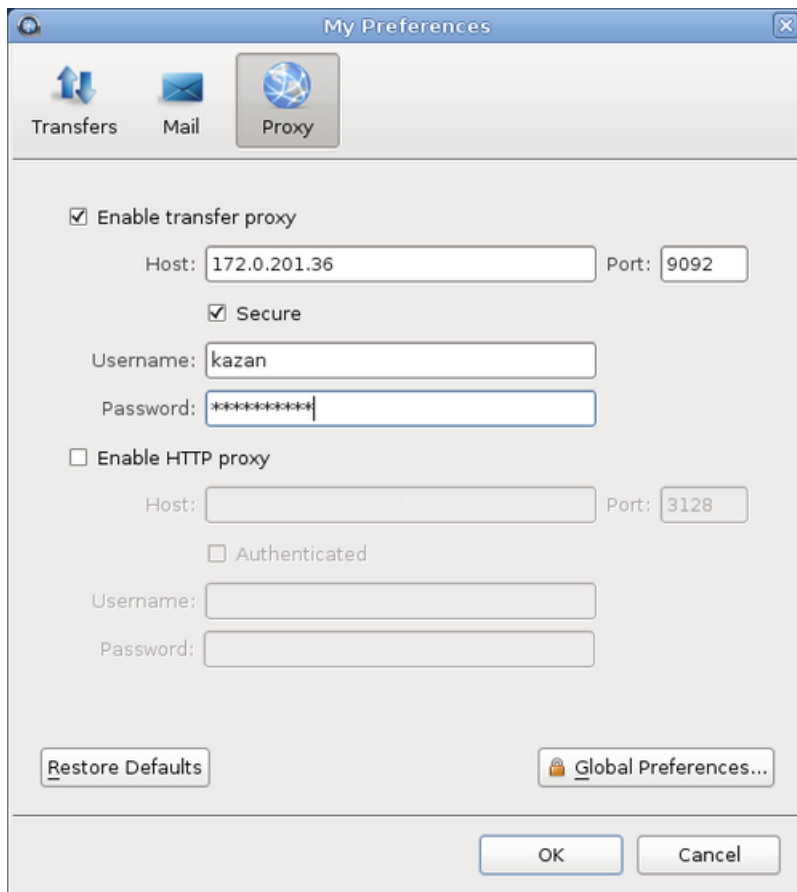
To clear all settings, click **Restore System Defaults**.

### User Proxy Settings

To override the global settings, edit the proxy settings for your account. Click **Preferences > Proxy**. The values are those that you inherited from the global proxy settings.

To configure user transfer proxy settings:

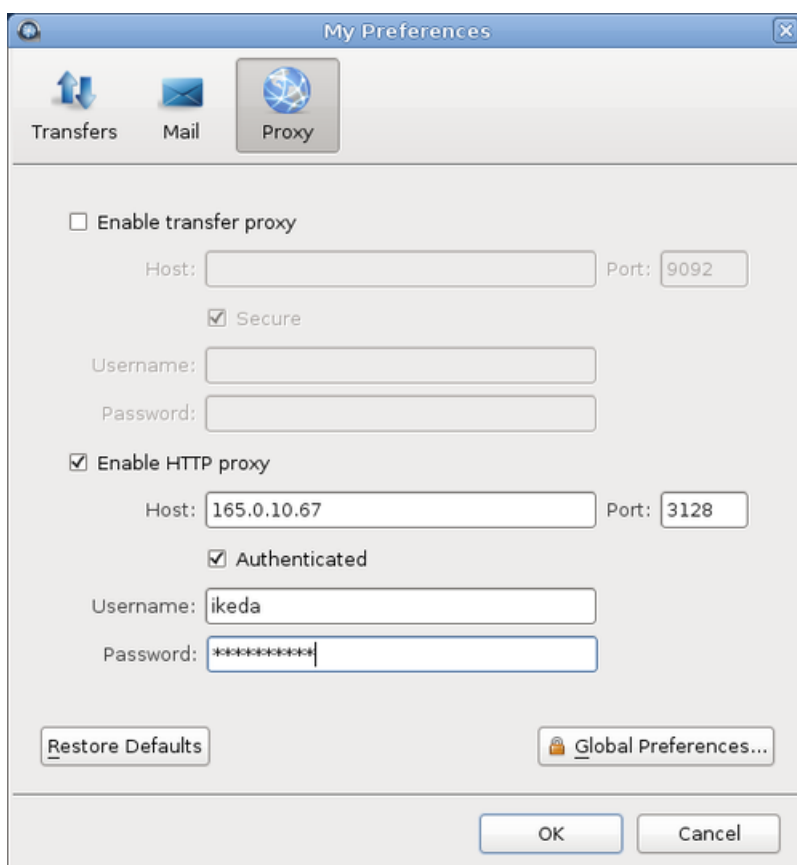
1. Select or clear **Enable transfer proxy** to enable or disable transfer proxy.
2. Enter the proxy server's hostname or IP address and port number.
3. Select **Secure** if your proxy server allows secure connections.
4. Enter your username and password to authenticate with your proxy server.



To configure user HTTP proxy settings:

1. Select or clear **Enable HTTP proxy**.
2. Enter the HTTP proxy's hostname or IP address and port number.
3. If your HTTP proxy requires authentication, select **Authenticated** and enter the username and password for your HTTP proxy.





To revert all user settings to the global values, click **Restore Defaults**.

## Adding and Editing Connections

To transfer with HST Server, HST Endpoint, IBM Aspera Shares, IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service (AoCts), or an IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager node, add it as a connection in the **Connection Manager**. The following instructions describe how to create and configure a connection and edit or delete connections.

To connect with cloud storage, you must meet the following prerequisites:

- You have permissions to access the cloud storage and the necessary authentication information.
- To transfer files with an S3 storage device using an S3 direct connection, the user must have a restriction rather than a docroot set on the server.

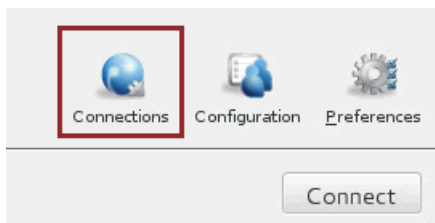
Once you create connections, you can export and import connection lists. For instructions, see [Exporting, Importing, and Backing Up Connections](#) on page 160.

To create a new connection:

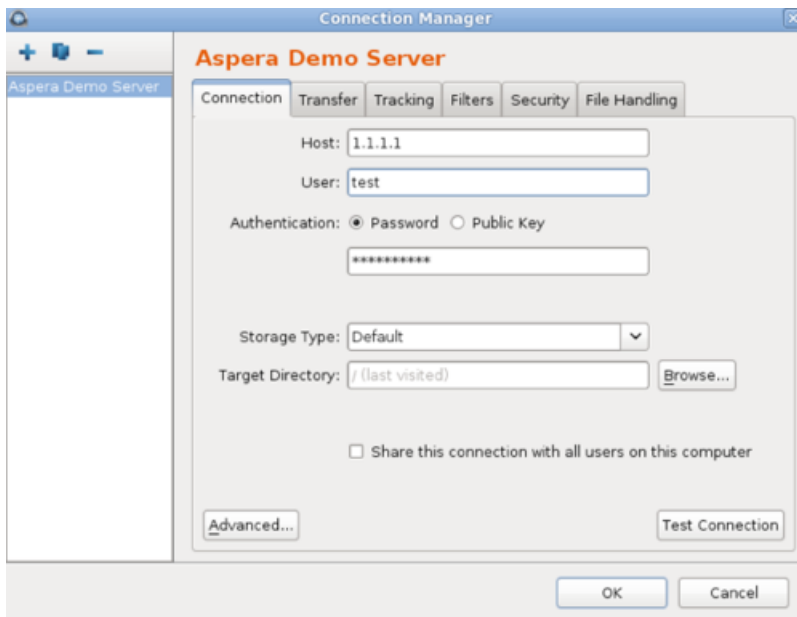
1. Start the application.

```
# asperascp
```

2. To open the **Connection Manager**, click **Connections**.



3. Click **+** to create a new connection.

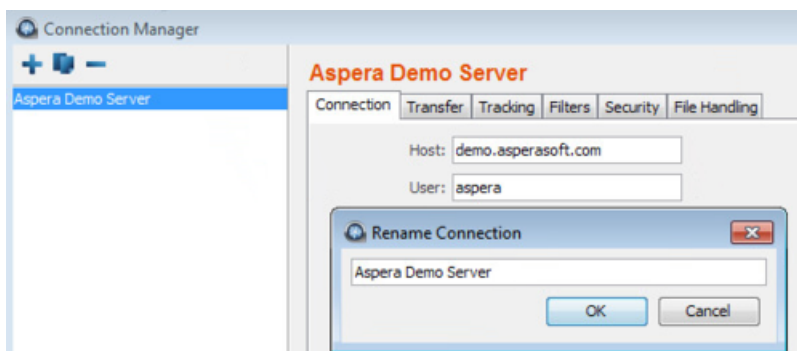


Click **+** to duplicate a selected connection (to copy all information into a new profile) and **-** to delete a connection profile.

4. Configure the connection name, if desired.

By default, connections are named *username@host*.

To name or rename a connection, click the connection name and enter the new name in the pop-up. Click **OK** to save your changes.



5. Configure the required settings for the connection.

On the **Connection** tab, enter the following information. In most cases, only **Host**, **User**, and **Authentication** are required.

Connection Option	Description
Host	The server's address, such as 192.168.1.10 or companyname.com. For Shares, Node API, or AoCts connections, enter the URL and port for asperanoded, such as <code>https://ats-aws-us-west-2.aspera.io:443</code> .
User	The transfer user's username, the Shares user, Node API credentials, or an access key ID.
Authentication	<p>The authentication method. Select <b>Password</b> to authenticate with the transfer user's password, the Shares user's password, the Node API user password, or an access key secret (such as for AoCts or ATC Manager).</p> <p>Select <b>Public Key</b> to authenticate with the transfer user's public SSH key. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating SSH Keys in the GUI</a> on page 161 and .</p>
Storage Type	<p>The default option is local storage. Use this option to connect to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>on-premises servers</li> <li>AoCts</li> <li>cloud-based servers when the transfer user has the storage credentials configured in their docroot on the server</li> </ul> <p>When the server is in the cloud but the storage credentials are not configured in the transfer user's docroot, use the drop-down menu to select the object storage type and enter credentials.</p> <p>Supported object storages include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Akamai NetStorage</b></li> <li><b>Amazon S3:</b> Requires your Access Id, Secret Access Key, and bucket path. The local machine must be reasonably time-synchronized in order to communicate with the Amazon servers. You can also select the <b>Advanced</b> button to modify the following settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Host:</b> Amazon S3 hostname (default: <code>s3.amazonaws.com</code>).</li> <li><b>Port:</b> Default is port 443.</li> <li><b>HTTPS connection for file browsing:</b> Enable for secure browsing.</li> <li><b>Server-side file encryption:</b> Enable for AES256 encryption.</li> <li><b>Reduced redundancy storage class:</b> Assign objects to a to the "reduced redundancy" storage class (durability of 99.99%).</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Google Storage:</b> Requires your Project Number and bucket path.</li> <li><b>Limelight:</b> Requires your Account, Username, and Password.</li> <li><b>Windows Azure:</b> Requires your Storage Account and Access Key.</li> </ul> <p>Azure storage is set to use the Azure block blob REST API by default. To specify the REST API for page blobs, enter your account credentials then click <b>Advanced</b>. Select <b>PAGE</b> from the drop-down menu next to <b>Api</b> and click <b>OK</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Windows Azure SAS:</b> Requires your Shared URL.</li> <li><b>Azure Files:</b> Requires your File service endpoint and password.</li> </ul>

6. Configure other connection settings, if needed.

On the **Connection** tab, configure non-default connection settings by editing any of the following settings:

Connection Option	Description
Target Directory (or Bucket Path for most object storage)	The default directory when connecting to this computer. When left blank, browsing the remote host brings up either the user's docroot or the last-visited folder. When a path is set, the connection opens to the exact directory.

Connection Option	Description
Share this connection	Available only when running the application as Administrator. Select to share this connection with other users on your computer. When a connection is authenticated through public key, the SSH keys used by this connection should be shared as well. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating SSH Keys in the GUI</a> on page 161.
Advanced Settings > SSH Port (TCP)	The TCP port for SSH connections. Default: 33001. If the application cannot connect on 33001, it automatically attempts a connection on port 22. If the connection on 22 succeeds, the setting is updated to 22.
Advanced Settings > FASP Port (UDP)	The UDP port for FASP transfers. Default: 33001.
Advanced Settings > Connection Timeout	Time out the connection attempt after the specified time.
Test Connection	Click to test the connection to the remote server with the settings you configured.

7. Configure the connection's transfer settings, if needed.

On the **Transfer** tab, configure non-default transfer settings by editing any of the following settings:

Transfer Option	Description
Transfer Name	Select from the following options: <b>Automatically generate</b> allows the user interface to generate the transfer name; <b>Automatically generate and add prefix</b> uses auto-generated name with a customizable prefix; <b>Specify</b> uses the user-specified name.
Policy	Select the FASP transfer policy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>high</b> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <b>high</b> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><b>fair</b> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <b>fair</b> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><b>low</b> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li><b>fixed</b> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <b>fixed</b> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <b>fixed</b> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>
Speed	Select <b>Override default transfer rate settings</b> to specify the transfer rate. The target rate is constrained by the global bandwidth settings; for more information, see <a href="#">Global Bandwidth Settings</a> on page 148.
Retry	Select to automatically retry the transfer after a recoverable failure for a set amount of time, in seconds, minutes or hours. You may set the initial and maximum retry intervals by clicking the <b>More Options</b> button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Initial interval:</b> The first retry waits for the initial interval. Input in seconds, minutes or hours.</li> <li><b>Maximum interval:</b> After the initial interval, the next interval doubles until the maximum interval is met, and then stops retrying after the retry time is reached. Input in seconds, minutes or hours.</li> </ul>

Transfer Option	Description
	<p>For example, if the retry is set for 180 seconds, the initial interval is 10 seconds, and the maximum interval is 60 seconds, then the transfer will retry at 10, 30, 70, 130, and 180 seconds after the first try, such that the interval progression is 10, 20, 40, 60, 60, and 50 seconds. The last interval is not the maximum because the retry period ends with a final retry.</p> <p>As another example, if the retry is set for 600 seconds, the initial interval is 30 seconds, and the maximum interval is 120 seconds, then the transfer will retry at 30, 90, 210, 330, 450, 570, and 600 seconds after the first try, such that the interval progression is 30, 60, 120, 120, 120, 120, and 30 seconds. Again, the last interval is not the maximum because the retry period ends with a final retry.</p>
Show Advanced Settings	<p>Click <b>Show Advanced Settings</b> to edit the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Specify FASP datagram size (MTU):</b> By default, the detected path MTU is used. Select to specify a value between 296 and 10000 bytes.</li> <li>• <b>Disable calculation of source files size before transferring:</b> Select to turn off job size calculation on the client side, if allowed by the server.</li> </ul>

8. Configure tracking and email notifications, if needed.

On the **Tracking Tab**, configure non-default transfer settings by editing any of the following settings:

Tracking Option	Description
Generate delivery confirmation receipt	Select to create a delivery receipt file in the specified location.
Send email notifications	Send email notifications based on specified events (start, complete, and error). See <a href="#">Using Transfer Notifications</a> on page 176 for more information.

9. Configure filters to automatically exclude certain files from transfers with this connection, if needed.

On the **Filters** tab, click **Add** and enter the pattern to exclude files or directories with the specified pattern in the transfer. The exclude pattern is compared with the whole path, not just the file name or directory name. Two special symbols can be used in the setting of patterns:

Filter Symbol	Name	Description
*	Asterisk	Represents zero to many characters in a string, for example * .tmp matches .tmp and abcde .tmp.
?	Question mark	Represents one character, for example t?p matches tmp but not temp.

For more information on filter rule syntax, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

10. Configure security settings, if needed.

On the **Security** tab, configure non-default transfer settings by editing any of the following settings:

Security Option	Description
Encryption	<p>Select the encryption cipher. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.</p> <p><b>Cipher rules</b></p> <p>The encryption cipher that you are allowed to use depends on the server configuration and the version of the client and server:</p>

Security Option	Description				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you request a cipher key that is shorter than the cipher key that is configured on the server, the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server configuration. For example, when the server setting is AES-192 and you request AES-128, the server enforces AES-192.</li> <li>When the server requires GCM, you must use GCM (requires version 3.9.0 or newer) or the transfer fails.</li> <li>When you request GCM and the server is older than 3.8.1 or explicitly requires CFB, the transfer fails.</li> <li>When the server setting is "any", you can use any encryption cipher. The only exception is when the server is 3.8.1 or older and does not support GCM mode; in this case, you cannot request GCM mode encryption.</li> <li>When the server setting is "none", you must use "none". Transfer requests that specify an encryption cipher are refused by the server.</li> </ul>				
	<b>Cipher Values</b>				
	<b>Value</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Support</b>		
	AES-128 AES-192 AES-256	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.		
	AES-128-CFB AES-192-CFB AES-256-CFB	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.		
	AES-128-GCM AES-192-GCM AES-256-GCM	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.		
	NONE	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.		
	<b>Client-Server Cipher Negotiation</b>				
	The following table shows which encryption mode is used depending on the server and client versions and settings:				
		<b>Server, v3.9.0+</b> AES-XXX-GCM	<b>Server, v3.9.0+</b> AES-XXX-CFB	<b>Server, v3.9.0+</b> AES-XXX	<b>Server, v3.8.1 or older</b> AES-XXX
	<b>Client, v3.9.0+</b> AES-XXX-GCM	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer
	<b>Client, v3.9.0+</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB

Security Option	Description				
		Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX- GCM	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX- CFB	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX
	AES-XXX- CFB				
	Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB
	Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB
Content Protection	<p>Select <b>Encrypt uploaded files with a password</b> to encrypt the uploaded files with the specified password (client-side encryption at rest). The protected file has the extension <code>.aspera-env</code> appended to the file name. Anyone downloading the file must have the password to decrypt it.</p> <p>Select <b>Decrypt password-protected files downloaded</b> to prompt for the decryption password when downloading encrypted files.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When a transfer falls back to HTTP or HTTPS, content protection is no longer supported. If HTTP fallback occurs while uploading, then the files are NOT encrypted. If HTTP fallback occurs while downloading, then the files remain encrypted.</p> <p>For more information about client-side encryption at rest, see <a href="#">Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 220.</p>				

#### 11. Configure file handling, if needed.

On the **File Handling** tab, configure non-default transfer settings by editing any of the following settings:

File Handling Option	Description
Resume	<p>Select <b>Resume incomplete files</b> to enable the resume feature. Select the file comparison method from the <b>When checking files for differences</b> drop-down menu:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Compare file attributes</b> - Compares the sizes of the existing and original file. If they are the same, then the transfer resumes, otherwise the original file is transferred again.</li> <li>• <b>Compare sparse file checksums</b> - Performs a sparse checksum on the existing file and resumes the transfer if the file matches the original, otherwise the original file is transferred again. (Default)</li> <li>• <b>Compare full file checksums</b> - Performs a full checksum on the existing file and resumes the transfer if the file matches the original, otherwise the original file is transferred again.</li> </ul> <p>Under <b>When a complete file already exists at the destination</b>, select an overwrite rule when the same file exists at the destination. By default, files on the destination are overwritten if different from the source.</p>
File Attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Preserve Access Time</b> to set the access time of the destination file to the same value as that of the source file.</li> <li>• Select <b>Preserve Modification Time</b> to set the modification time of the destination file to the same value as that of the source file.</li> </ul>

File Handling Option	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Preserve Source Access Time</b> to keep the access time of the source file the same as its value before the transfer.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Access, modification, and source access times cannot be preserved for node and Shares connections that are using cloud storage.</p>
Source Handling	<p>Select <b>Automatically delete source files after transfer</b> to delete the files that transferred successfully from the source.</p> <p>Select <b>Automatically move uploaded source files to a directory after transfer</b> and specify the location on the source machine to which they should be moved. Only a path to an existing location on the client can be specified.</p> <p>Select <b>Delete empty source subdirectories</b> to remove empty subdirectories from the source once the files that they contain transfer successfully. This option is usually used to clean up the Hot Folder when source files are moved or deleted after transfer.</p>

12. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Changes are not saved until you click **OK**. Selecting **Cancel** will discard any unsaved changes made in the Connection Manager, including the addition and removal of connections.

13. Connect to the remote host.

Double-click the connection name, or select it and click **Connect**.



### Editing and Deleting Connections

Click **Connections** and select the connection you want to edit or delete. Edit the settings or click **-** to delete the connection. Deleting connections cannot be undone. When in doubt, export the connections as a backup before deleting a connection.

## Exporting, Importing, and Backing Up Connections

Connections, and optionally their passwords, can be exported and imported as a text file, and the text file can be password protected. The same procedures can be used for backing up and restoring connections.

The CLI alternative to the GUI method described below is simply to copy and restore the user's `ui.conf` file, which contains the connection data.

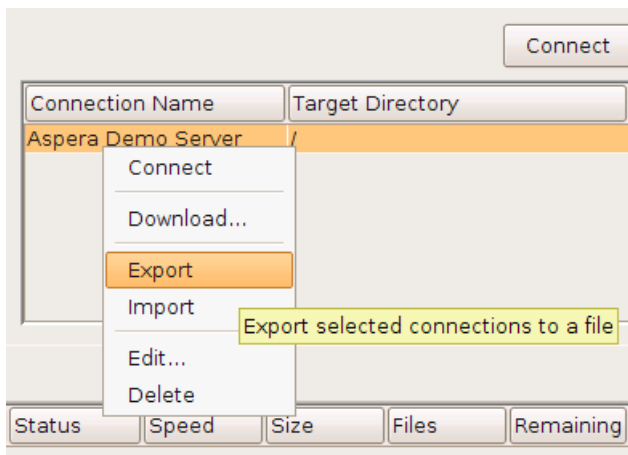
### Usage notes:

- If you are exporting a connection that uses SSH key authentication, back up the keys manually and import separately. For instructions, see [Creating SSH Keys in the GUI](#) on page 161.
- A shared connection that is exported or imported by a non-administrator is imported as a regular connection (not as a shared connection).
- Email templates are not exported with the connection.

### Export Connections

1. Right-click the remote server panel and click **Export**.





2. Enter the following information:

- **Destination:** Enter or browse to the location on your computer where to save the file.
- **Options:** The passwords associated with your connections can be exported. Select if you do not want to export passwords, export passwords without obscuring the passwords (**Export passwords in clear**), or export encrypted passwords (**Encrypt passwords**).
- **Password:** Required if **Encrypt passwords** is selected. When the connections are imported, use the password to decrypt the connection passwords.

3. Click **OK** to export your connection information to the file.

### Import Connections

1. Right-click the remote server panel and select **Import**.

2. Enter the following information:

- **Source file:** The file with the exported connections.
- **Options:** Select the appropriate option, depending on how the connections were exported.
- **Password:** If you select the **Passwords are encrypted** option, enter the password that was set when the connections were exported.

3. Click **OK** to import the connection information.

4. Before deleting the source file, confirm that the import process was successful by testing your connections.

## Creating SSH Keys in the GUI

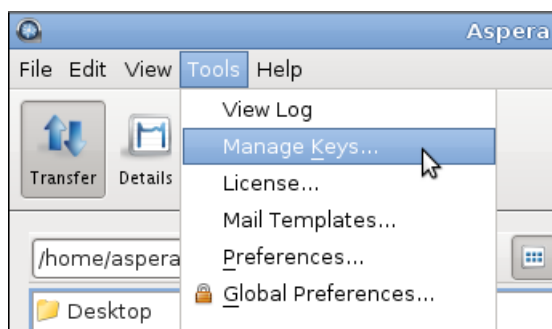
Public key authentication (SSH Key) is a more secure alternative to password authentication that allows users to avoid entering or storing a password, or sending it over the network. The client creates an SSH key pair (a public key and a private key) and then sends the public key to the server's administrator. Once the admin configures the server with the client's public key, the client can authenticate connections to the server with their private key.

You can use the application GUI to generate key pairs and to import existing key pairs. You can also generate key pairs using the command line; for instructions, see [Creating SSH Keys \(Command Line\)](#) on page 216.

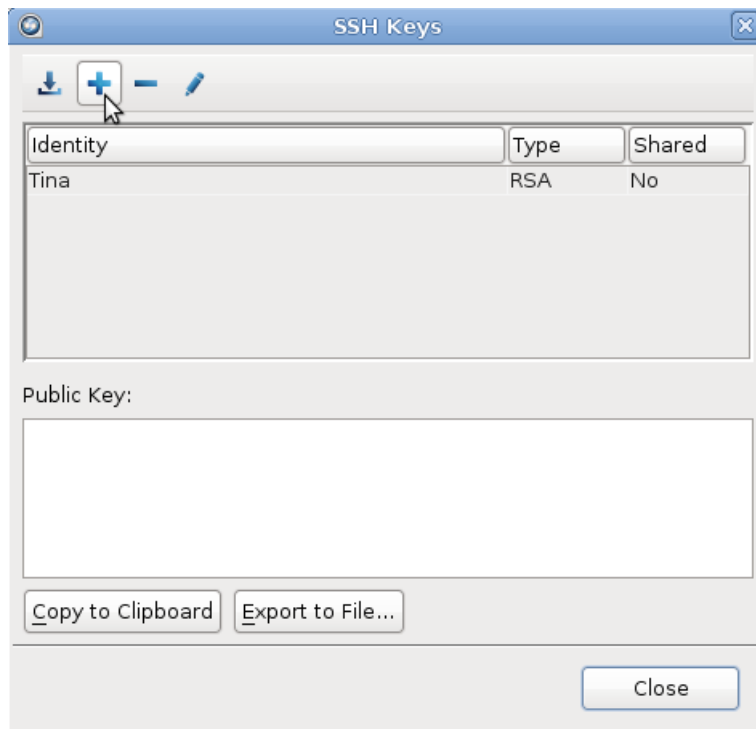
1. Launch the application.

```
# asperascp
```

2. In the menu bar, click **Tools > Manage Keys**.



3. In the SSH Keys dialog, click **+** to create a new key pair.



The SSH Keys dialog is also available from the **Connection** tab in the Connection Manager. When you select **Public Key** for authentication, the **Manage Keys** button appears; clicking it opens the SSH Keys dialog.

4. In the **New SSH Key Pair** window, enter the requested information.

Field	Description
Identity	Name your key pair, such as with your user name.
Passphrase	(Optional) Set a passphrase on your SSH key, which will be prompted for whenever it needs to use the key. If you don't want the user to be prompted for passphrase when logging in, leave this field blank.
Type	Select RSA (default) or ECDSA key.
Access	When sharing a connection with public key authentication, or a connection that is has a Hot Folder (on Windows machines), this option must be checked.



5. Click **OK** to create the key.

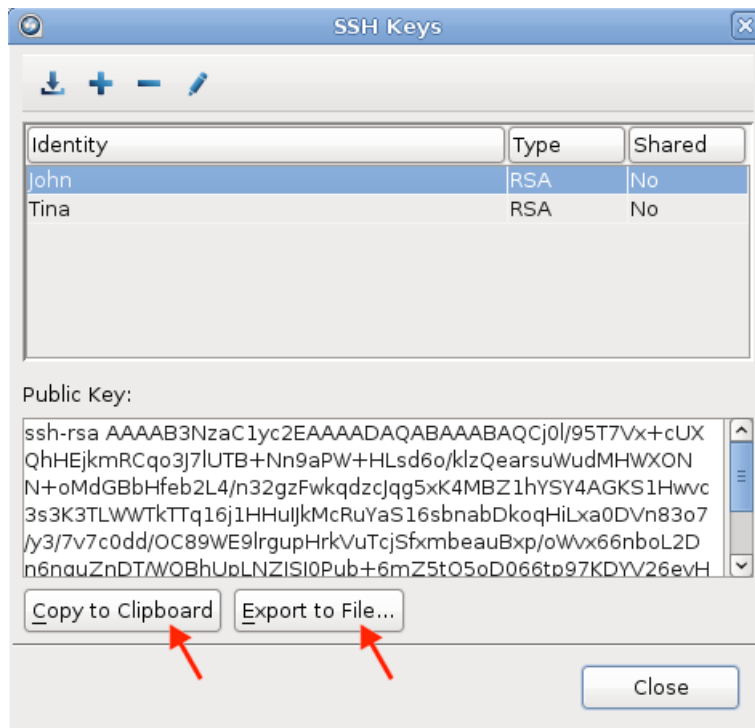
The public key is displayed in the window and you can copy it to a clipboard or export it to a file that is easy to locate. The key is automatically saved as a file named `id_key_type.pub` in the following location (in the example below, the public key filename is `id_rsa.pub`):

```
/home/username/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
```

6. Distribute the public key.

Provide the public key file to your server administrator so that it can be set up for your server connection.

To copy or export the public key, select the key in the **SSH Keys** window, click **Copy Public Key to Clipboard**, and paste the string into an email to send to the server administrator, or click **Export to File** and save the public key as a file.

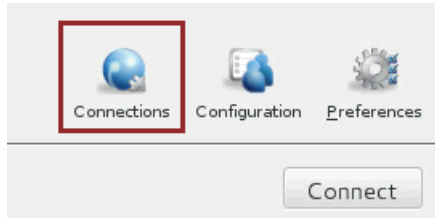


For information on how to install the public key on the server, see [Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server](#) on page 38; however, the server may be installed on a different operating system from the client.

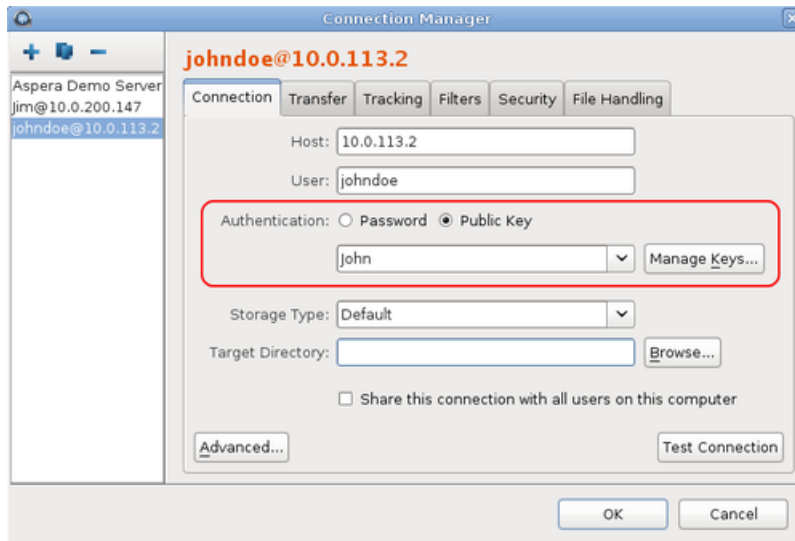
7. Set up connections using public key authentication.


**Note:** Your public key must be configured on the server before you can connect with it.

- a) Click **Connections** to open the Connection Manager.





- b) Select the connection for which you want to set up the key.  
 c) In the **Connection** tab, select the **Public Key** Authentication option and select the key from the drop-down menu.



**Note:** When you are sharing a connection with public key authentication (**Share this connection with all users on this computer** is selected), the SSH key should be shared as well. You can edit an existing key by opening the **SSH Keys** window. In the SSH Keys dialog, select a key and click the  button to open the **Edit SSH Key Pair** dialog. Select **Allow shared connections to use this key**. Shared keys are moved to the `Aspera/etc` directory.

### Importing keys:

To import keys created outside the GUI, go to **Tools > Manage Keys** to open the **SSH Keys** dialog. Click the  button in the upper-left corner of the dialog to open a file browser. You can import the key pair by selecting either the private key or the public key; this will copy both keys into the user's `.ssh` directory. You cannot import a key pair if a key pair with the same identity already exists in the `.ssh` directory.

Imported key pairs can be shared with other users. In the SSH Keys dialog, select a key and click the  button to open the **Edit SSH Key Pair** dialog. Select **Access** to allow shared connections to use this key. Shared keys are moved to the `Aspera/etc` directory.

## Transferring Content

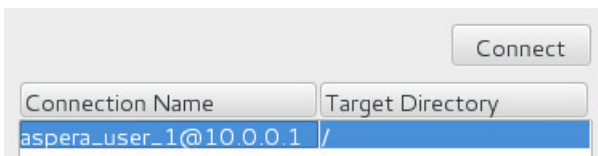
The GUI provides an easy, intuitive way to transfer content between the local computer and a remote host.

**Note:** Do not use the following characters in file or folder names:

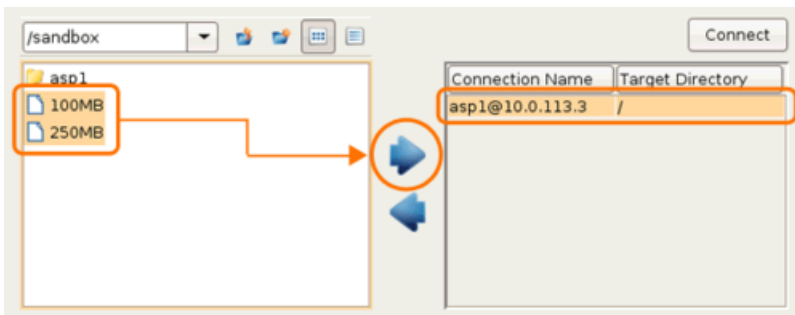
/ \ " : ' ? > < & \* |

They can produce unpredictable transfer behavior.

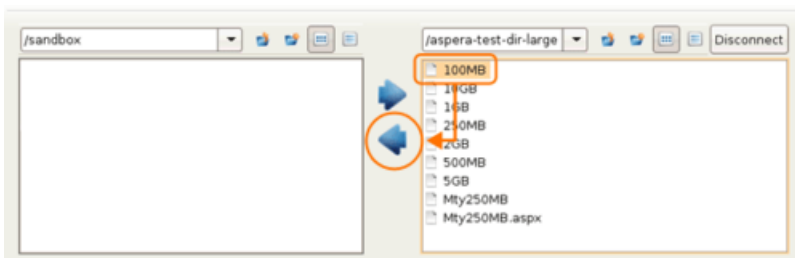
1. If you have not already created a connection, create one.  
For instructions, see [Adding and Editing Connections](#) on page 153.
2. Select the remote server under **Connection Name**.



3. For uploads, if the target directory is correct, then you can select the content to upload from the local file tree and either drag-and-drop the content into the connection pane, or click the upload arrow. If you want to browse the remote file system or download content from it, go on to the next step.



4. Connect to the remote server by either double-clicking the connection name, or select it and click **Connect**.
5. Select the content to transfer (from the local or remote file system) and do any of the following:
  - click the upload or download arrow
  - drag and drop the files between the windows
  - copy and paste the files between the windows






6. Once a transfer is started, you can manage the transfer rate, transfer policy, and priority. For information, see [Managing Transfers](#) on page 165.

## Managing Transfers

The HST Server GUI enables you to start, stop, and reorder transfers, as well as adjust transfer rates and policies and configure transfer preferences.

### The Transfers Panel: Start, Stop, and Reorder Transfers

Once the transfer starts, a progress bar appears in the **Transfers** panel. You can manage transfer behavior with the following actions:

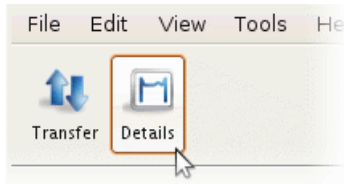
- Click  to start the selected transfer.
- Click  to stop the selected transfer.
- Click  to delete the selected transfer.

If you have multiple ongoing transfers, use the ▲ and ▼ to change the selected transfer's priority. The # field indicates the transfer's order in the queue.

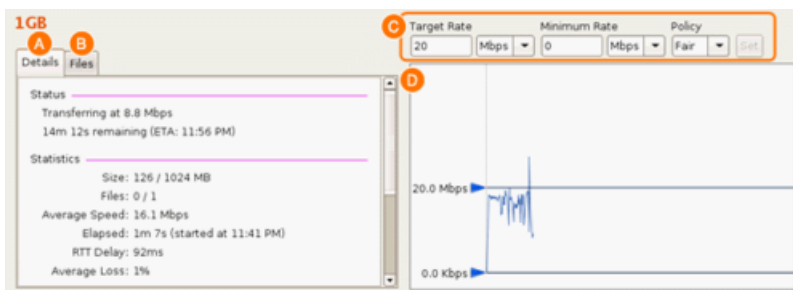
**Note:** The file name is not shown in the **Name** or **Source** fields in the **Transfer** pane if the client is using version older than 3.7.0.

### The Details View: Adjust Transfer Rates and Policies of Active Transfers

The **Details** button provides additional oversight and control (if you have permission) over transfers. Select a transfer session from the **Transfers** panel and click **Details** to view details and adjust settings.



The **Details** display shows the following information:



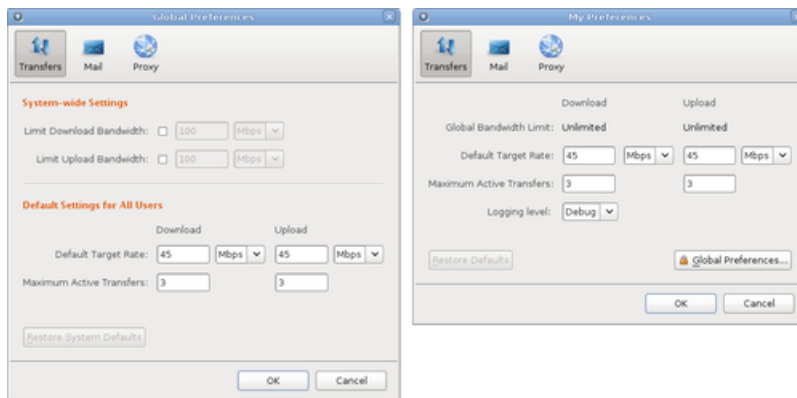
Item	Name	Description
A	Details (tab)	Transfer details, including status (rate and ETA) and statistics (session size, files transferred vs. total files to be transferred, average speed, time elapsed, RTT delay and average loss in percent).
B	Files (tab)	All files being transferred in this session, along with each files' size and transfer progress.
C	Transfer controls	<p>Set the FASP transfer policy and transfer rate, if allowed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li><code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>

Item	Name	Description
		<b>Important:</b> If <code>--policy</code> is not set, <code>ascp</code> uses the server-side policy setting ( <code>fair</code> by default).
D	Transfer Monitor	The transfer graph. Use the sliders on the vertical axis to adjust the transfer rate up or down (if allowed).

## Configuring Transfer Preferences

If you have administrator privileges, you can set the target transfer rate for all users from the **Global Preferences** dialog. As an individual user, you can override the global settings from **My Preferences**.

To update these settings, go to **Tools > Global Preferences** or **Tools > Preferences**. You can also open **My Preferences** from the **Preferences** button in the upper-right corner of the application's main window; from there you can also reach the **Global Preferences** dialog by clicking **Global Preferences**.



The following options are available under the **Transfers** tab:

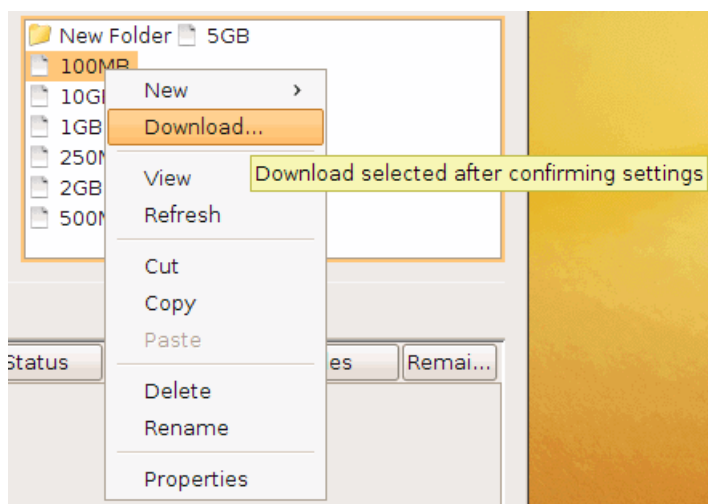
Item	Description
Global Bandwidth Limits	The aggregated bandwidth cap for all FASP transfers on this computer. For more advanced bandwidth settings, see <a href="#">Bandwidth Configuration</a> on page 47. (Set by administrators only.)
Default Target Rate	The initial download and upload rates for all transfers.
Maximum Active Transfers	The maximum number of concurrent upload transfers and download transfers.

For information about **Email** settings, see [Configuring Transfer Notifications](#) on page 170.

## Scheduling and Customizing Transfers in Advanced Mode

You can start a transfer in advanced mode to set per-session transfer options such as filters, security, which override the default transfer settings. You can also schedule the transfer as a one-time transfer or recurring.

1. In the HST Server GUI, right-click a file or folder to open the context menu and select **Upload** (in the client panel) or **Download** (in the server panel).



2. Configure the transfer settings, as needed.

The advanced transfer configuration options except **Scheduling** are identical to those in the **Connection Manager**. For information on these tabs, see [Adding and Editing Connections](#) on page 153. The **Scheduling** tab is described in the next step.

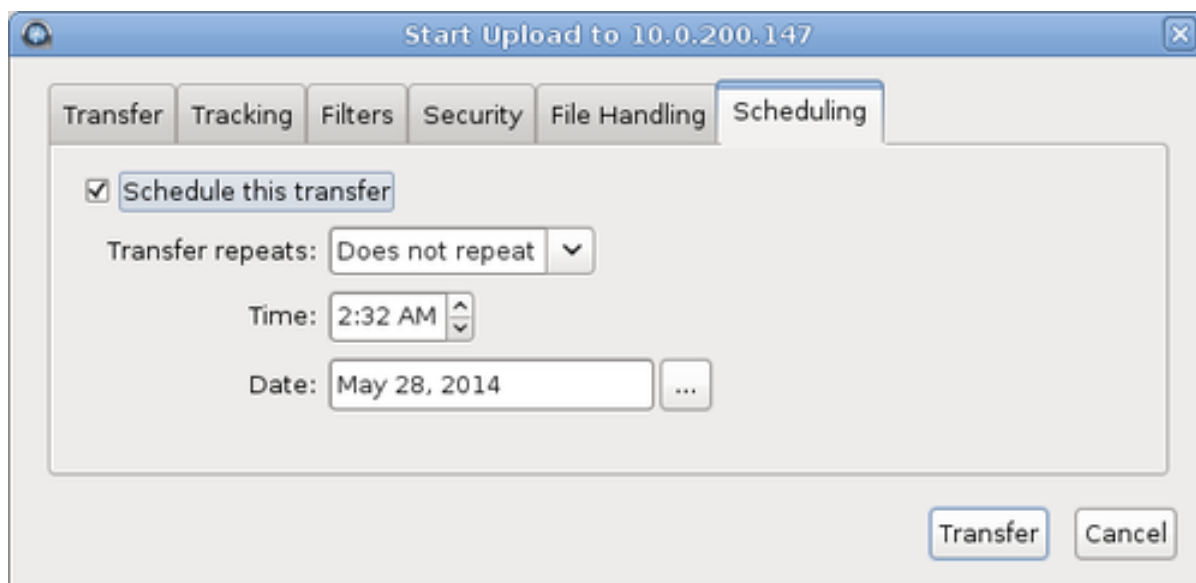
Tab	Description
Transfer	The transfer session-related options, such as the transfer speed and retry rules.
Tracking	Options for tracking the transfer session, including the confirmation receipt and the email notifications.
Filters	Create filters to skip or include files that match certain patterns.
Security	Enable the transfer encryption and the content protection.
File Handling	Set up resume rule, preserve transferred file attributes, and remove or move source files.
Scheduling	Schedule the transfer.

3. Schedule the transfer.

**Note:** When scheduling transfers, ensure that the HST Server GUI stays open and running. Scheduled transfers do not run when the application is closed.

To enable transfer scheduling, select **Schedule this transfer**.





The following scheduling options are available in the **Transfer repeats** drop-down menu:

#### Does not repeat

Set the time and date for a single transfer.

#### Daily

Set the time for a daily transfer. For **End repeat**, select **Never** to continue daily transfers indefinitely, or **On** and set an end date and time.

#### Monday-Friday

Set the time for a daily transfer only on weekdays. For **End repeat**, select **Never** to continue daily transfers indefinitely, or **On** and set an end date and time.

#### Weekly

Select the time and days of the week for a repeating transfer. For **End repeat**, select **Never** to continue weekly transfers indefinitely, or **On** and set an end date and time.

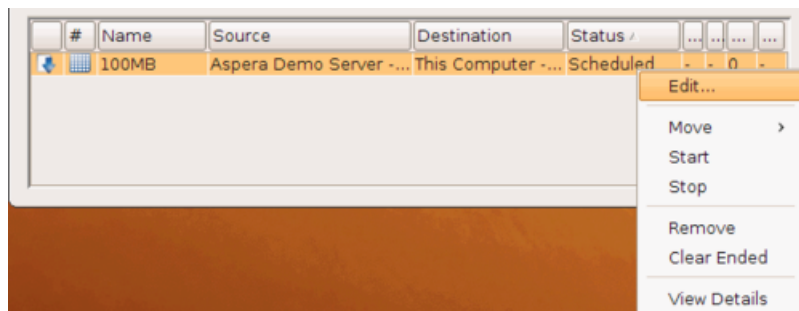
#### Periodically

Set the frequency to repeat the transfer, in minutes.

4. Click **Transfer** to submit the scheduled transfer.

The transfer is then listed under the Transfers tab, along with an icon (📅) under the # column.

5. To modify the transfer, right-click the row and click **Edit**



## Configuring Transfer Notifications

---

Transfer notification emails are triggered by three transfer session events: start, completion, and error. Transfer notification emails can be enabled and configured globally and by each user. The emails are generated from mail templates that can be customized.

**Note:** The GUI must remain open for transfer notification emails to send. Closing the GUI stops email notifications.

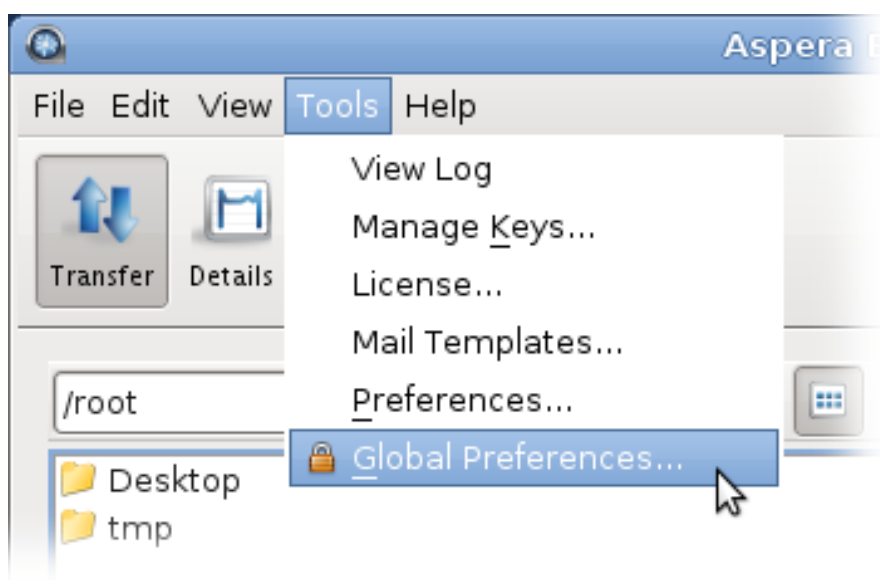
### Enable Email Notifications

1. Run HST Server with `root` permissions.

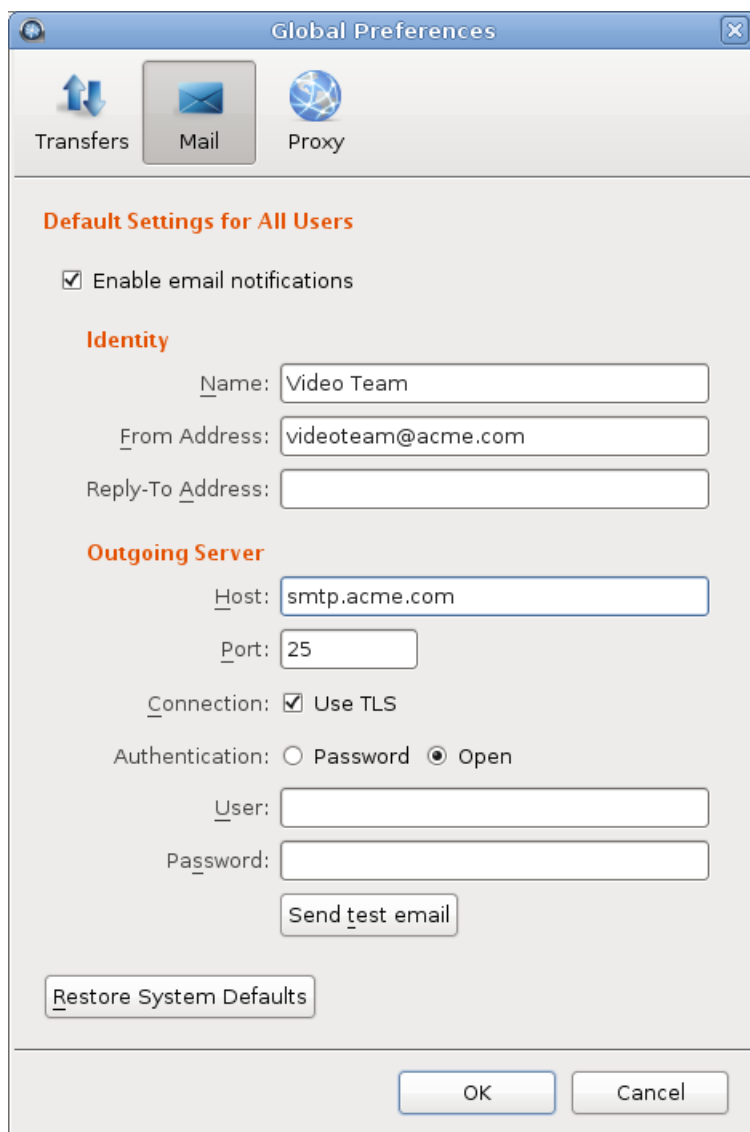
```
# asperascp
```

2. To configure global email notification settings:

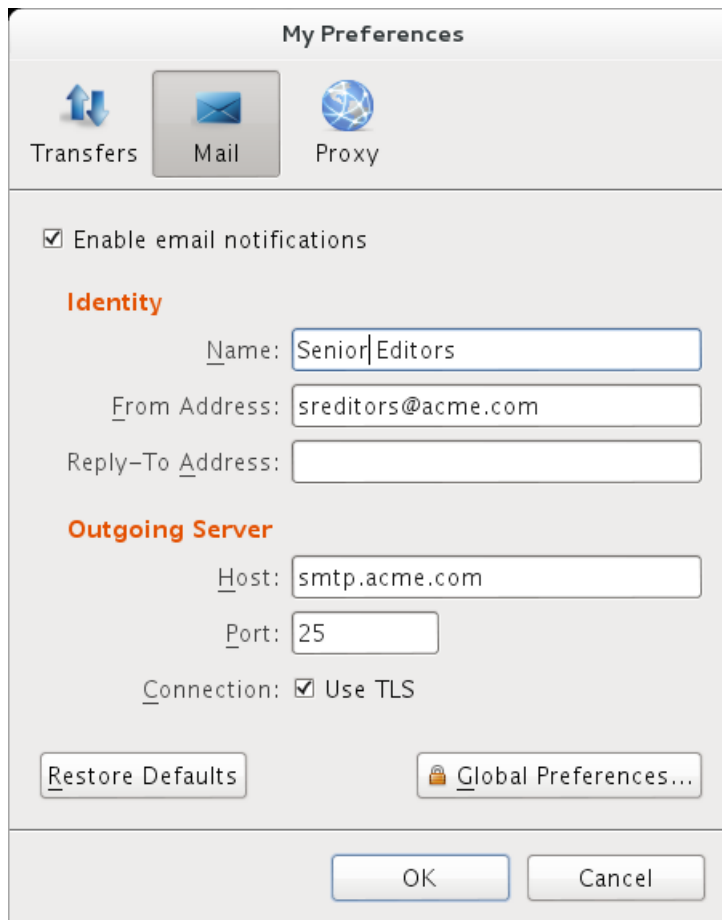
- a) Click **Tools > Global Preferences**.



- b) Click **Mail**.



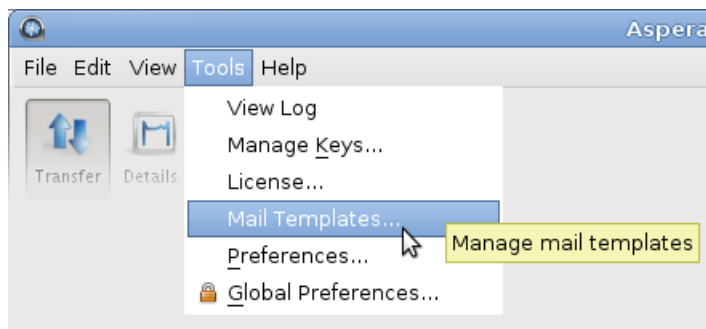
- c) To turn on email notifications for all users, select **Enable email notifications**.  
 Enter the email address from which the notifications are sent in the **From Address** field and enter the outgoing email server host name in the **Host** field. The other values are optional.
- d) To test your settings, click **Send test email**, which sends a test message to the **From Address**.
3. Set your personal mail preferences.  
 Personal mail preferences override global settings.
- Click **Preferences**.
  - Click **Mail** and edit the inherited global default values.




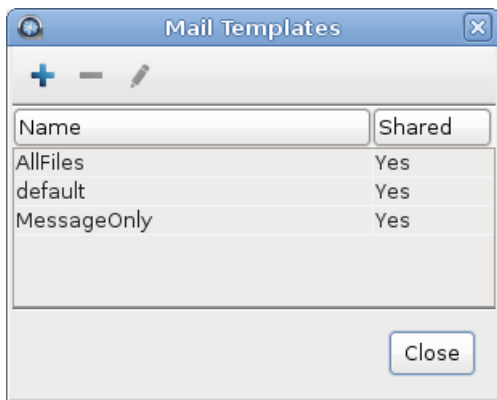
To restore your settings to global values, click **Restore Defaults**.

## Configure Email Templates

1. Open the **Mail Templates** window by clicking **Tools > Mail Templates**.



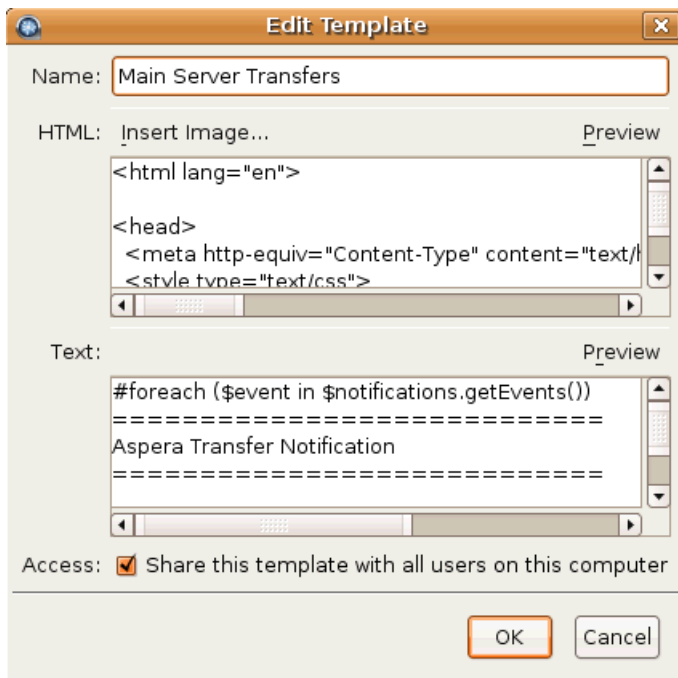
2. To create a new template, click **+**, or to edit an existing template, select the template and click 



- For new templates, name the template and select its base template. Select an existing template from the **Based On** menu. Click **OK**.
- Edit the template text.

The **Edit Template** window has four fields:

Field	Description
Name	The template name.
HTML	The HTML mail body. Click <b>Insert Image</b> to insert an image into the template. The image is copied to the template directory. Preview the template by clicking <b>Preview</b> .
Text	The plain text mail body. Preview the template by clicking <b>Preview</b> .
Access	Select <b>Share this template with all users on this computer</b> to allow other system users to access this template.



The mail template supports MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) multipart messages. You can edit both the HTML and plain text versions of the mail body. The templates are rendered by Apache Velocity (for more information, see the Apache Velocity User Guide at <http://velocity.apache.org/>). Templates use two predefined variables:

- `$formatter` - Contains some utility methods
- `$notifications` - Holds the transfer notifications

To iterate over notifications, use a `foreach` loop. A `foreach` loop generates content for each iteration of the loop. In the following example, a local `$event` variable is declared for use within the `foreach` loop:

```
#foreach ($event in $notifications.getEvents())
...
#end
```

To generate content only under specific conditions, use a conditional statement. To construct a conditional statement, use `#if`, `#else`, and `#end`, with the following syntax:

```
#if
...
#else
...
#end
```

All conditional statements are categorized in four parts: the conditional (what must occur to trigger the action), session information (what action is triggered), time, and statistics.

### Conditional

Use conditional tests in an `if` statement. For example:

```
#if ($event.isFailed())
...
#end
```

Statement	Description
<code>\$event.isStarted()</code>	If the transfer session is started.
<code>\$event.isCompleted()</code>	If the transfer session is completed.
<code>\$event.isEnded()</code>	If the transfer session is ended.
<code>\$event.isFailed()</code>	If the transfer session is failed.

### Session Information

Statement	Description
<code>\$event.getSourceHost()</code>	The source host name (or host address if the host name is not discoverable).
<code>\$event.getSourceHostAddress()</code>	The source host address.
<code>\$event.getSourcePaths()</code>	The source file path.
<code>\$event.getDestinationHost()</code>	The destination host name (or host address if the host name is not discoverable).
<code>\$event.getDestinationHostAddress()</code>	The destination host address.
<code>\$event.getDestinationPath()</code>	The destination file path.
<code>\$event.getInitiatingHost()</code>	The session-initiating host name (or host address if the host name is not discoverable).
<code>\$event.getInitiatingHostAddress()</code>	The session-initiating host address.

Statement	Description
<code>\$event.getId()</code>	The session ID.
<code>\$event.getName()</code>	The session name.
<code>\$event.getType().getDescription()</code>	The session state. Three outputs: "STARTED", "FAILED", and "COMPLETED".
<code>\$event.getUser()</code>	The transfer login.
<code>\$event.GetFiles()</code>	<p>The files that are being transferred. Use this statement in a <code>foreach</code> loop: (Any text after <code>##</code> is a comment)</p> <pre>#foreach (\$file in \$event.GetFiles()) ## \$file is a new variable visible in this ## foreach loop. ## \$file holds the complete file path and ## file name. ## \$formatter.decodePath() is used to ## ensure a correct string decoding. \$formatter.decodePath(\$file) #end</pre> <p>Use the counter <code>\$velocityCount</code> in an <code>if</code> statement to limit the output file count. For example, to list only the first ten files:</p> <pre>#foreach (\$file in \$event.GetFiles()) #if (\$velocityCount &gt; 10) #break #end \$file #end</pre>
<code>\$event.getMessage()</code>	The message that is entered in the email <b>Message</b> field.
<code>\$event.getError()</code>	The error message.

## Time

Statement	Description
<code>\$formatter.date(var, "lang", "format")</code>	<p>Formatting the date and time output. Enter three values in the parenthesis:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>var</code> is either <code>\$event.getStartTime()</code> or <code>\$event.getEndTime()</code></li> <li><code>lang</code> is an abbreviated language name; for example, <code>en</code> for English.</li> <li><code>format</code> is the display format. Use these symbols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>yyyy</code> The year; for example, 2010.</li> <li><code>MM</code> Month of the year; for example, 03.</li> <li><code>dd</code> Day of the month; for example, 26.</li> <li><code>HH</code> Hour of the day; for example, 16.</li> <li><code>mm</code> Minute.</li> <li><code>ss</code> Second.</li> <li><code>z</code> Time zone.</li> <li><code>EEE</code> The abbreviated weekday name; for example, <code>Fri</code>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Statement	Description
	For example, <pre>"EEE, YYYY-MM-dd HH:mm:ss z"</pre> shows Fri, 2010-03-26 16:19:01 PST.
<code>\$event.getStartTIme ()</code>	The session start time.
<code>\$event.getEndTIme ()</code>	The session end time.

### Statistics


Statement	Description
<code>\$event.getSourceFileCount ()</code>	The number of source files.
<code>\$event.getCompletedFileCount ()</code>	The number of files that successfully transferred.
<code>\$event.getFailedFileCount ()</code>	The number of files that failed to transfer.
<code>\$event.getAverageRatePercentage ()</code>	The average transfer rate in bps. Enclose this statement with <code>\$formatter.formatRate ()</code> to simplify the output.
<code>\$event.getAverageLossPercentage ()</code>	The average packet loss percentage.
<code>\$event.getSourceSizeB ()</code>	The source file size. Enclose this statement with <code>\$formatter.toBestUnit ()</code> to simplify the output.
<code>\$event.getTransferredB ()</code>	The transferred file size. Enclose this statement with <code>\$formatter.toBestUnit ()</code> to simplify the output.
<code>\$event.getWrittenB ()</code>	The destination file size. Enclose this statement with <code>\$formatter.toBestUnit ()</code> to simplify the output.

5. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Apply the notifications to a specific connection host or a transfer session. You can also customize the subject line of the notification emails. For details, see [Using Transfer Notifications](#) on page 176.

## Using Transfer Notifications

Transfer notifications can be emailed to a set list of recipients upon transfer start, complete, and error. The email templates can be fully customized. These instructions describe how to configure email notifications for all transfers to and from a specific connection. If you want to send email notifications for only certain transfers, you can set email notifications on a per-transfer basis; for instructions, see [Scheduling and Customizing Transfers in Advanced Mode](#) on page 167.

1. Preview existing mail templates and create new ones, if needed.
  - a) Click **Tools > Mail Templates** to open the **Mail Template** window.
  - b) Select an existing template and click .
  - c) In the **Edit Template** window, click **Preview** to view the template's output example.

For instructions on how to create a new template or edit an existing one, see [Configuring Transfer Notifications](#) on page 170.



## 2. Enable email notifications for connections.

- a) Click **Connections** on the main page of the application, select the connection that you want to configure with email notifications, and go to the **Tracking** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Connection Manager' window with the 'Tracking' tab selected. The window title is 'user@'. The tabs are 'Connection', 'Transfer', 'Tracking', 'Filters', 'Security', and 'File Handling'. The 'Tracking' tab contains the following settings:

- Generate delivery confirmation receipt
- Send email notifications
  - When:  Start  Complete  Error
  - Subject:
  - To:
  - Template:
  - Message:

At the bottom of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- b) Select **Send email notifications**, and configure the following settings:

Item	Description
When	Check the events for which to send notifications.
Subject	Customize the subject line, which can use the same template fields as described in <a href="#">Configuring Transfer Notifications</a> on page 170.
To	Enter the recipients, comma separated.
Template	Select a mail template.
Message	Optionally enter a message to include in the notifications.

- c) Click **OK** to save your changes.

## Reporting Checksums

File checksums are useful for trouble-shooting file corruption, allowing you to determine at what point in the transfer file corruption occurred. Aspera servers can report source file checksums that are calculated on-the-fly during transfer and then sent from the source to the destination.

To support checksum reporting, the transfer must meet both of the following requirements:

- Both the server and client computers must be running HST Server (formerly Enterprise Server and Connect Server) or HST Endpoint (formerly Point-to-Point Client) version 3.4.2 or higher.
- The transfer must be encrypted. Encryption is enabled by default.

The user on the destination can calculate a checksum for the received file and compare it (manually or programmatically) to the checksum reported by the sender. The checksum reported by the source can be retrieved in the destination logs, a manifest file, in IBM Aspera Console, or as an environment variable. Instructions for comparing checksums follow the instructions for enabling checksum reporting.

Checksum reporting is disabled by default. Enable and configure checksum reporting on the server by using the following methods:

- Edit `aspera.conf` with `asconfigurator`.
- Set options in the client GUI.
- Set `ascp` command-line options (per-transfer configuration).

Command-line options override the settings in `aspera.conf` and the GUI.

**Important:** When checksum reporting is enabled, transfers of very large files (>TB) take a long time to resume because the entire file must be reread.

## Overview of Checksum Configuration Options

<b>asconfigurator Option</b> <b>GUI Setting</b> <b>ascp Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>file_checksum</code> File checksum method <code>--file-checksum=type</code>	Enable checksum reporting and specify the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files.  <code>any</code> - Allow the checksum format to be whichever format the client requests. (Default in <code>aspera.conf</code> and the GUI) <code>md5</code> - Calculate and report an MD5 checksum. <code>sha1</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-1 checksum. <code>sha256</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-256 checksum. <code>sha384</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-384 checksum. <code>sha512</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-512 checksum.  <b>Note:</b> The default value for the <code>ascp</code> option is <code>none</code> , in which case the reported checksum is the one configured on the server, if any.
<code>file_manifest</code> File Manifest <code>--file_manifest=output</code>	The file manifest is a file that contains a list of content that was transferred in a transfer session. The file name of the file manifest is automatically generated from the transfer session ID.  When set to <code>none</code> , no file manifest is created. (Default) When set to <code>text</code> , a text file is generated that lists all files in each transfer session.
<code>file_manifest_path</code> File Manifest Path <code>--file_manifest_path=path</code>	The location where manifest files are written. The location can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home directory. If no path is specified (default), the file is generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.  <b>Note:</b> File manifests can be stored only locally. Thus, if you are using S3 or other non-local storage, you must specify a local manifest path.

### Enabling checksum reporting by editing `aspera.conf`

To enable checksum reporting, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_checksum,checksum"
```

To enable and configure the file manifest where checksum report data is stored, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest,text"
```

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest_path,filepath"
```

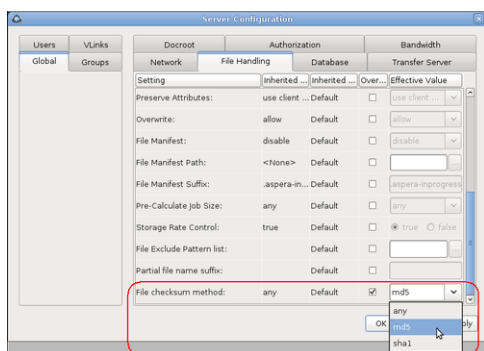
These commands create lines in `aspera.conf` as shown in the following example, where checksum type is md5, file manifest is enabled, and the path is `/tmp`.

```
<file_system>
...
<file_checksum>md5</file_checksum>
<file_manifest>text</file_manifest>
<file_manifest_path>/tmp</file_manifest_path>
...
</file_system>
```

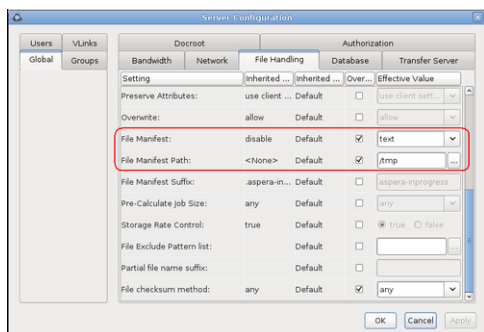
## Enabling checksum reporting from the GUI

Click **Configuration** to open the **Server Configuration** window. Select the **Global**, **Groups**, or **Users** tab, depending on whether you want to enable checksum reporting for all users, or for a particular group or user.

Under the **File Handling** tab, locate the setting for **File checksum method**. Check the override box and for the effective value, select any, md5, sha1, sha256, sha384, or sha512.



To enable the file manifest, select the override check box for **File Manifest** and set the effective value to **text**. To set the path, select the override check box for **File Manifest Path** and set the effective value to the folder in which you want the manifest files saved.



In the examples above, the manifest is generated when files are transferred and saved as a text file called `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the directory `/tmp`.

## Enabling checksum reporting in an ascp session

To enable checksum reporting on a per-transfer-session basis, run `ascp` with the `--file-checksum=hash` option, where `hash` is `sha1`, `md5`, `sha-512`, `sha-384`, `sha-256`, or `none` (the default).

Enable the manifest with `--file-manifest=output` where `output` is either `text` or `none`. Set the path to the manifest file with `--file-manifest-path=path`.

For example:

```
# ascp --file-checksum=md5 --file-manifest=text --file-manifest-path=/
tmp file aspera_user_1@189.0.202.39:/destination_path
```

### Setting up a Pre/Post-processing Script

An alternative to enabling and configuring the file manifest to collect checksum reporting is to set up a pre/post-processing script to report the values.

The checksum of a transferred file is stored in the pre/post environment variable `FILE_CSUM`, which can be used in pre/post scripts to output file checksums. For example, the following script outputs the checksum to the file `/tmp/cksum.log`:

```
#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
  if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
    echo "The file is: $FILE" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    echo "The file checksum is: $FILE_CSUM" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    chmod 777 $FILE
  fi
fi
```

For information on pre- and post-processing scripts and environment variables, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

### Comparing Checksums

If you open a file that you downloaded with Aspera and find that it is corrupted, you can determine when the corruption occurred by comparing the checksum that is reported by Aspera to the checksums of the files on the destination and on the source.

1. Retrieve the checksum that was calculated by Aspera as the file was transferred.
  - If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path as part of an `ascp` transfer or pre/post processing script, the checksums are in that file in the specified location.
  - If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path in the GUI or `aspera.conf`, the checksums are in a file that is named `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the specified location.
2. Calculate the checksum of the corrupted file. This example uses the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

```
# md5sum filepath
```

3. Compare the checksum reported by Aspera with the checksum that you calculated for the corrupted file.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred as the file was written to the destination. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted. If it is corrupted, compare the checksums again. If they do not match, investigate the write process or attempt another download. If they match, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, then corruption might have occurred as the file was read from the source. Continue to the next step.
4. Calculate the checksums for the file on the source. These examples use the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

Windows:

```
> CertUtil -hashfile filepath MD5
```

Mac OS X:

```
$ md5 filepath
```

Linux and Linux on z Systems:

```
# md5sum filepath
```

AIX:

```
# csum -h MD5 filepath
```

Solaris:

```
# digest -a md5 -v filepath
```

5. Compare the checksum of the file on the source with the one reported by Aspera.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred when the file was read from the source. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted on the destination. If it is corrupted, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, confirm that the source file is not corrupted. If the source file is corrupted, replace it with an uncorrupted one, if possible, and then download the file again.

## ascp: Transferring from the Command Line with Ascp

---

Ascp is a scriptable FASP transfer binary that enables you to transfer to and from Aspera transfer servers to which you have authentication credentials. Transfer settings are customizable and can include file manipulation on the source or destination, filtering of the source content, and client-side encryption-at-rest.

### Ascp Command Reference

---

The `ascp` executable is a command-line FASP transfer program. This reference describes `ascp` syntax, command options, and supported environment variables.

For examples of `ascp` commands, see the following topics:

- [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196
- [Ascp File Manipulation Examples](#) on page 198
- [Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 200

Another command-line FASP transfer program, Ascp 4 (`ascp4`), is optimized for transfers of many small files. It has many of the same capabilities as `ascp`, as well as its own features. For more information, see [Introduction to Ascp 4](#) on page 227 and [Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options](#) on page 221.

#### Ascp Syntax

```
ascp options [[username@]src_host:]source1 [ source2 ... ]
[[username@]dest_host:]dest_path
```

#### *username*

The username of the Aspera transfer user can be specified as part of the source or destination, whichever is the remote server. It can also be specified with the `--user` option. If you do not specify a username for the transfer, the local username is authenticated by default.

**Note:** If you are authenticating on a Windows computer as a domain user, the transfer server strips the domain from the username. For example, Administrator is authenticated rather than DOMAIN\Administrator. For this reason, you must specify the domain explicitly.

***src\_host***

The name or IP address of the computer where the files or directories to be transferred reside.

***source***

The file or directory to be transferred. Separate multiple arguments with spaces.

***dest\_host***

The name or IP address of the computer where the source files or directories are to be transferred.

***dest\_path***

The destination directory where the source files or directories are to be transferred.

- If the source is a single file, the destination can be a filename. However, if there are multiple source arguments, the destination must be a directory.
- To transfer to the transfer user's docroot, specify "." as the destination.
- If the destination is a symbolic link, then the file or directory is written to the target of the symbolic link.

### Specifying Files, Directories, and Paths

- Specify paths on the remote computer relative to the transfer user's docroot. If the user has a restriction instead of a docroot, specify the full path, which must be allowed by the restriction.
- Avoid the following characters in file and directory names: / \ " : ' ? > < & \* |
- Specify paths with forward-slashes, regardless of the operating system.
- If directory or file arguments contain special characters, specify arguments with single-quotes (') to avoid interpretation by the shell.

**URI paths:** URI paths are supported, but with the following restrictions:

- If the source paths are URIs, they must all be in the same cloud storage account. No docroot (download), local docroot (upload), or source prefix can be specified.
- If a destination path is a URI, no docroot (upload) or local docroot (download) can be specified.
- The special schemes `stdio://` and `stdio-tar://` are supported on the client side only. They cannot be used for specifying an upload destination or download source.
- If required, specify the URI passphrase as part of the URI or set it as an environment variable (`ASPERA_SRC_PASS` or `ASPERA_DST_PASS`, depending on the transfer direction).

**UNC paths:** If the server is Windows and the path on the server is a UNC path (a path that points to a shared directory or file on Windows), it can be specified in an `ascp` command using one of the following conventions:

- As an UNC path that uses backslashes (\): If the client side is a Windows computer, the UNC path can be used with no alteration. For example, `\\192.168.0.10\temp`. If the client is not a Windows computer, every backslash in the UNC path must be replaced with two backslashes. For example, `\\\\192.168.0.10\\temp`.
- As an UNC path that uses forward slashes (/): Replace each backslash in the UNC path with a forward slash. For example, if the UNC path is `\\192.168.0.10\temp`, change it to `//192.168.0.10/temp`. This format can be used with any client-side operating system.

**Testing paths:** To test `ascp` transfers, use a `faux://` argument in place of the source or target path to send random data without writing it to disk at the destination. For more information, see [Testing and Optimizing Transfer Performance](#) on page 495. For examples, see [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196.

### Required File Access and Permissions

- Sources (for downloads) or destinations (for uploads) on the server must be in the transfer user's docroot or match one of the transfer user's file restrictions, otherwise the transfer stops and returns an error.

- The transfer user must have sufficient permissions to the sources or destinations, for example write access for the destination directory, otherwise the transfer stops and returns a permissions error.
- The transfer user must have authorization to do the transfer (upload or download), otherwise the transfer stops and returns a "management authorization refused" error.
- Files that are open for write by another process on a Windows source or destination cannot be transferred and return a "sharing violation" error. On Unix-like operating systems, files that are open for write by another process are transferred without reporting an error, but may produce unexpected results depending on what data in the file is changed and when relative to the transfer.

## Environment Variables

The following environment variables can be used with the `ascp` command. The total size for environment variables depends on your operating system and transfer session. Aspera recommends that each environment variable value should not exceed 4096 characters.

### **ASPERA\_DST\_PASS=***password*

The password to authenticate a URI destination.

### **ASPERA\_LOCAL\_TOKEN=***token*

A token that authenticates the user to the client (in place of SSH authentication).

**Note:** If the local token is a basic or bearer token, the access key settings for cipher and preserve\_time are not respected and the server settings are used. To set the cipher and timestamp preservation options as a client, set them in the command line.

### **ASPERA\_PROXY\_PASS=***proxy\_server\_password*

The password for an Aspera Proxy server.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_COOKIE=***cookie*

A cookie string that you want associated with transfers.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_DOCROOT=***docroot*

The transfer user docroot. Equivalent to using `--apply-local-docroot` when a docroot is set in `aspera.conf`.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_FILEPASS=***password*

The passphrase to be used to encrypt or decrypt files. For use with `--file-encrypt`.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_KEY="-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY..."**

The transfer user private key. Use instead of the `-i` option.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_PASS=***password*

The password for the transfer user.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_TOKEN=***token*

The transfer user authorization token. Overridden by `-w`.

### **ASPERA\_SRC\_PASS=***password*

The password to authenticate to a URI source.

## Ascp Options

**-6**

Enable IPv6 address support. When specifying an IPv6 numeric host for `src_host` or `dest_host`, write it in brackets. For example, `username@[2001:0:4137:9e50:201b:63d3:ba92:da]:/path` or `--host=[fe80::21b:21ff:fe1c:5072%eth1]`.

**-@** *range\_start:range\_end*

Transfer only part of a file: *range\_start* is the first byte to send, and *range\_end* is the last. If either position is unspecified, the file's first and last bytes (respectively) are assumed. This option only works for downloads of a single file and does not support transfer resume.

**-A, --version**

Display version and license information.

**--apply-local-docroot**

Apply the local docroot that is set in `aspera.conf` for the transfer user. Use to avoid entering object storage access credentials in the command line. This option is equivalent to setting the environment variable `ASPERA_SCP_DOCROOT`.

**-C nodeid:nodcount**

Enable multi-session transfers (also known as parallel transfers) on a multi-node/multi-core system. A node ID (*nodeid*) and count (*nodcount*) are required for each session. *nodeid* and *nodcount* can be 1-128, but *nodeid* must be less than or equal to *nodcount*, such as 1:2, 2:2. Each session must use a different UDP port specified with the `-O` option. Large files can be split across sessions, see `--multi-session-threshold`. For more information, see [Multi-Session Transfers](#) on page 203.

**-c cipher**

Encrypt in-transit file data using the specified cipher. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.

**Cipher rules**

The encryption cipher that you are allowed to use depends on the server configuration and the version of the client and server:

- When you request a cipher key that is shorter than the cipher key that is configured on the server, the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server configuration. For example, when the server setting is AES-192 and you request AES-128, the server enforces AES-192.
- When the server requires GCM, you must use GCM (requires version 3.9.0 or newer) or the transfer fails.
- When you request GCM and the server is older than 3.8.1 or explicitly requires CFB, the transfer fails.
- When the server setting is "any", you can use any encryption cipher. The only exception is when the server is 3.8.1 or older and does not support GCM mode; in this case, you cannot request GCM mode encryption.
- When the server setting is "none", you must use "none". Transfer requests that specify an encryption cipher are refused by the server.

**Cipher Values**

Value	Description	Support
aes128 aes192 aes256	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.
aes128cfb aes192cfb aes256cfb	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.
aes128gcm aes192gcm	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.



Value	Description	Support
aes256gcm		
none	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.

### Client-Server Cipher Negotiation

The following table shows which encryption mode is used depending on the server and client versions and settings:

	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB
Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB

#### **--check-sshfingerprint**

Compare *fingerprint* to the server SSH host key fingerprint that is set with `<ssh_host_key_fingerprint>` in `aspera.conf`. Aspera fingerprint convention is to use a hex string without the colons; for example, `f74e5de9ed0d62feaf0616ed1e851133c42a0082`. For more information on SSH host key fingerprints, see [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19.

**Note:** If HTTP fallback is enabled and the transfer "falls back" to HTTP, this option enforces server SSL certificate validation (HTTPS). Validation fails if the server has a self-signed certificate; a properly signed certificate is required.

#### **-D | -DD | -DDD**

Log at the specified debug level. With each `D`, an additional level of debugging information is written to the log.

#### **-d**

Create the destination directory if it does not already exist. This option is automatically applied to uploads to object storage.

#### **--delete-before-transfer**

Before transfer, delete any files that exist at the destination but not also at the source. The source and destination arguments must be directories that have matching names. Do not use with multiple sources, keepalive, URI storage, or HTTP fallback. The `asdelete` tool provides the same capability.

#### **--dest64**

Indicate that the destination path or URI is base64 encoded.

**-E 'pattern'**

Exclude files or directories from the transfer based on matching the specified pattern to file names and paths (to exclude files by modification time, use `--exclude-newer-than` or `--exclude-older-than`). Use the `-N` option (include) to specify exceptions to `-E` rules. Rules are applied in the order in which they are encountered, from left to right. The following symbols can be used in the pattern:

- `*` (asterisk) represents zero or more characters in a string, for example `*.tmp` matches `.tmp` and `abcde.tmp`.
- `?` (question mark) represents a single character, for example `t?p` matches `tmp` but not `temp`.

For details and examples, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

**Note:** When filtering rules are found in `aspera.conf`, they are applied *before* rules given on the command line (`-E` and `-N`).

**-e prepost\_script**

Run the specified pre-post script as an alternate to the default `aspera-prepost` script. Specify the full path to the pre-post script. Use pre-post scripts to run custom commands such as shell scripts, Perl scripts, Windows batch files, and executable binaries that can invoke a variety of environment variables. For instructions, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

**--exclude-newer-than=mtime, --exclude-older-than=mtime**

Exclude files (but not directories) from the transfer, based on when the file was last modified. Positive *mtime* values are used to express time, in seconds, since the original system time (usually 1970-01-01 00:00:00). Negative *mtime* values (prefixed with "-") are used to express the number of seconds prior to the current time.

**-f config\_file**

Read Aspera configuration settings from *config\_file* rather than `aspera.conf` (the default).

**--file-checksum=hash**

Enable checksum reporting for transferred files, where *hash* is the type of checksum to calculate: `sha1`, `md5`, `sha-512`, `sha-384`, `sha-256`, or `none` (the default). When the value is `none`, the checksum that is configured on the server, if any, is used. For more information about checksum reporting, see [Reporting Checksums](#) on page 72.

**Important:** When checksum reporting is enabled, transfers of very large files (>TB) take a long time to resume because the entire file must be reread.

**--file-crypt={encrypt|decrypt}**

Encrypt files (when sending) or decrypt files (when receiving) for client-side encryption-at-rest (EAR). Encrypted files have the file extension `.aspera-env`. This option requires the encryption/decryption passphrase to be set with the environment variable `ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS`. If a client-side encrypted file is downloaded with an incorrect password, the download is successful, but the file remains encrypted and still has the file extension `.aspera-env`. For more information, see [Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest \(EAR\)](#) on page 220.

**--file-list=file**

Transfer all source files and directories listed in *file*. Each source item is specified on a separate line. UTF-8 file format is supported. Only the files and directories are transferred. Path information is not preserved at the destination. To read a file list from standard input, use "-" in place of *file*.

For example, if `list.txt` contains the following list of sources:

```
/tmp/code/compute.php
doc_dir
images/iris.png
images/rose.png
```

and the following command is run:

```
# ascp --file-list=list.txt --mode=send --user=username --
host=ip_addr .
```

then the destination, in this case the transfer user's docroot, will contain the following:

```
compute.php
doc_dir (and its contents)
iris.png
rose.png
```

Restrictions:

- The command line cannot use the *user@host:source* syntax. Instead, specify this information with the options `--mode`, `--host`, and `--user`.
- Paths specified in the file list cannot use the *user@host:source* syntax.
- Because multiple sources are being transferred, the destination must be a directory.
- Only one `--file-list` or `--file-pair-list` option is allowed per `ascp` session. If multiple lists are specified, only the last one is used.
- Only files and directories specified in the file list are transferred; any sources specified on the command line are ignored.
- If the source paths are URIs, the size of the file list cannot exceed 24 KB.

To create a file list that also specifies destination paths, use `--file-pair-list`.

**`--file-manifest={none|text}`**

Generate a list of all transferred files when set to `text`. Requires `--file-manifest-path` to specify the location of the list. (Default: `none`)

**`--file-manifest-path=directory`**

Save the file manifest to the specified location when using `--file-manifest=text`. File manifests must be stored locally. For cloud or other non-local storage, specify a *local* manifest path.

**`--file-manifest-inprogress-suffix=suffix`**

Apply the specified suffix to the file manifest's temporary file. For use with `--file-manifest=text`. (Default suffix: `.aspera-inprogress`)

**`--file-pair-list=file`**

Transfer files and directories listed in *file* to their corresponding destinations. Each source is specified on a separate line, with its destination on the line following it.

Specify destinations relative to the transfer user's docroot. Even if a destination is specified as an absolute path, the path at the destination is still relative to the docroot. Destination paths specified in the list are created automatically if they do not already exist.

For example, if the file `pairlist.txt` contains the following list of sources and destinations:

```
Dir1
Dir2
my_images/iris.png
project_images/iris.png
/tmp/code/compute.php
/tmp/code/compute.php
/tmp/tests/testfile
testfile2
```

and the following command is run:

```
# ascp --file-pair-list=pairlist.txt --mode=send --user=username
  --host=ip_addr .
```

then the destination, in this case the transfer user's docroot, now contains the following:

```
Dir2 (and its contents)
project_images/iris.png
tmp/code/compute.php
testfile2
```

Restrictions:

- The command line cannot use the `user@host:source` syntax. Instead, specify this information with the options `--mode`, `--host`, and `--user`.
- The `user@host:source` syntax cannot be used with paths specified in the file list.
- Because multiple sources are being transferred, the destination specified on the command line must be a directory.
- Only one `--file-pair-list` or `--file-list` option is allowed per `ascp` session. If multiple lists are specified, only the last one is used.
- Only files from the file pair list are transferred; any additional source files specified on the command line are ignored.
- If the source paths are URIs, the file list cannot exceed 24 KB.

For additional examples, see [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196.

#### **-G** *write\_size*

If the transfer destination is a server, use the specified write-block size, which is the maximum number of bytes that the receiver can write to disk at a time. Default: 256 KB, Range: up to 500 MB. This option accepts suffixes "M" or "m" for *mega* and "K" or "k" for *kilo*, such that a *write\_size* of 1M is one MB.

This is a performance-tuning option that overrides the `write_block_size` set in the client's `aspera.conf`. However, the `-G` setting is overridden by the `write_block_size` set in the server's `aspera.conf`. The receiving server never uses the `write_block_size` set in the client's `aspera.conf`.

#### **-g** *read\_size*

If the transfer source is a server, use the specified read-block size, which is the maximum number of bytes that the sender reads from the source disk at a time. Default: 256 KB, Range: up to 500 MB. This option accepts suffixes "M" or "m" for *mega* and "K" or "k" for *kilo*, such that a *read\_size* of 1M is one MB.

This is a performance-tuning option that overrides the `read_block_size` set in the client's `aspera.conf`. However, the `-g` setting is overridden by the `read_block_size` set in the server's `aspera.conf`. When set to the default value, the read size is the default internal buffer size of the server, which might vary by operating system. The sending server never uses the `read_block_size` set in the client's `aspera.conf`.

#### **-h, --help**

Display the help text.

#### **--host=hostname**

Transfer to the specified host name or address. Requires `--mode`. This option can be used instead of specifying the host with the `hostname:file` syntax.

#### **-i** *private\_key\_file*

Authenticate the transfer using public key authentication with the specified SSH private key file. The argument can be just the filename if the private key is located in `user_home_dir/.ssh/`,

because `ascp` automatically searches for key files there. Multiple private key files can be specified by repeating the `-i` option. The keys are tried in order and the process ends when a key passes authentication or when all keys have been tried without success, at which point authentication fails.

**-K *probe\_rate***

Measure bottleneck bandwidth at the specified probing rate (Kbps). (Default: 100Kbps)

**-k {0|1|2|3}**

Enable the resuming of partially transferred files at the specified resume level. (Default: 0)

Specify this option for the first transfer or it will not work for subsequent transfers. Resume levels:

- k 0 – Always re-transfer the entire file.
- k 1 – Compare file attributes and resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.
- k 2 – Compare file attributes and the sparse file checksums; resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.
- k 3 – Compare file attributes and the full file checksums; resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.

If a complete file exists at the destination (no `.aspx`), the source and destination file sizes are compared. If a partial file and a valid `.aspx` file exist at the destination, the source file size and the file size recorded in the `.aspx` file are compared.

**Note:** If the destination is a URI path, then the only valid options are `-k 0` and `-k 1` and no `.aspx` file is created.

**-L *local\_log\_dir[:size]***

Log to the specified directory on the client computer rather than the default directory. Optionally, set the size of the log file (Default: 10 MB). See also `-R` for setting the log directory on the server.

**-l *max\_rate***

Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. (Default: 10000 Kbps) This option accepts suffixes "G" or "g" for *giga*, "M" or "m" for *mega*, "K" or "k" for *kilo*, and "P", "p", or "%" for percentage. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the setting in the server's `aspera.conf` is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server `aspera.conf`, the rate does not exceed the cap.

**-m *min\_rate***

Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate. (Default: 0) If this option is not set by the client, then the server's `aspera.conf` setting is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server `aspera.conf`, then the rate does not exceed the cap.

**--mode={send|recv}**

Transfer in the specified direction: `send` or `recv` (receive). Requires `--host`.

**--move-after-transfer=*archivedir***

Move source files and copy source directories to *archivedir* after they are successfully transferred. Because directories are copied, the original source tree remains in place. The transfer user must have write permissions to the *archivedir*. The *archivedir* is created if it does not already exist. If the archive directory cannot be created, the transfer proceeds and the source files remain in their original location.

To preserve portions of the file path above the transferred file or directory, use this option with `--src-base`. For an example, see [Ascp File Manipulation Examples](#) on page 198.

To remove empty source directories (except those specified as the source to transfer), use this option with `--remove-empty-directories`.

Restrictions:

- *archivedir* must be on the same file system as the source. If the specified archive is on a separate file system, it is created (if it does not exist), but an error is generated and files are not moved to it.
- For cloud storage, *archivedir* must be in the same cloud storage account as the source and must not already contain files with the same name (the existing files cannot be overwritten and the archiving fails).
- If the source is on a remote system (ascp is run in receive mode), *archivedir* is subject to the same docroot restrictions as the remote user.
- `--remove-after-transfer` and `--move-after-transfer` are mutually exclusive. Using both in the same session generates an error.
- Empty directories are not saved to *archivedir*.
- When used with `--remove-empty-directories` and `--src-base`, scanning for empty directories starts at the specified source base and proceeds down any subdirectories. If no source base is specified and a file path (as opposed to a directory path) is specified, then only the immediate parent directory is removed (if empty) after the source files have been moved.

#### `--multi-session-threshold=threshold`

Split files across multiple ascp sessions if their size is greater than or equal to *threshold*. Use with `-C`, which enables multi-session transfers.

Files whose sizes are less than *threshold* are not split. If *threshold* is set to 0 (the default), no files are split.

If `--multi-session-threshold` is not used, the threshold value is taken from the setting for `<multi_session_threshold_default>` in the `aspera.conf` file on the client. If not found in `aspera.conf` on the client, the setting is taken from `aspera.conf` on the server. The command-line setting overrides any `aspera.conf` settings, including when the command-line setting is 0 (zero).

Multi-session uploads to cloud storage are supported for S3 only and require additional configuration. For more information, see [Multi-Session Transfers](#) on page 203.

#### `-N 'pattern'`

Include files or directories in the transfer based on matching the specified pattern to file names and paths. Rules are applied in the order in which they are encountered, from left to right, such that `-N` rules protect files from `-E` rules that follow them.

**Note:** An include rule **must** be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use `-N '/* */' -E '/* */'` at the end of your filter arguments.

The following symbols can be used in the pattern:

- `*` (asterisk) represents zero or more characters in a string, for example `*.tmp` matches `.tmp` and `abcde.tmp`.
- `?` (question mark) represents any single character, for example `t?p` matches `tmp` but not `temp`.

For details on specifying patterns and rules, including examples, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

**Note:** Filtering rules can also be specified in `aspera.conf`. Rules found in `aspera.conf` are applied *before* any `-E` and `-N` rules specified on the command line.

#### `-O fasp_port`

Use the specified UDP port for FASP transfers. (Default: 33001)

#### `--overwrite={never|always|diff|diff+older|older}`

Overwrite destination files with source files of the same name. Default: `diff`. This option takes the following values:

- `never` - Never overwrite the file. However, if the parent folder is not empty, its access, modify, and change times may still be updated.
- `always` - Always overwrite the file.
- `diff` - Overwrite the file if different from the source. If a complete file at the destination is the same as a file on the source, it is not overwritten. Partial files are overwritten or resumed depending on the resume policy.
- `diff+older` - Overwrite the file if older and also different than the source. For example, if the destination file is the same as the source, but with a different timestamp, it will not be overwritten. Plus, if the destination file is different than the source, but newer, it will not be overwritten.
- `older` - Overwrite the file if its timestamp is older than the source timestamp.

**Interaction with resume policy (-k):** If the overwrite method is `diff` or `diff+older`, difference is determined by the resume policy (`-k {0|1|2|3}`). If `-k 0` or no `-k` is specified, the source and destination files are always considered different and the destination file is always overwritten. If `-k 1`, the source and destination files are compared based on file attributes (currently file size). If `-k 2`, the source and destination files are compared based on sparse checksums. If `-k 3`, the source and destination files are compared based on full checksums.

### **-P** *ssh-port*

Use the specified TCP port to initiate the FASP session. (Default: 22)

### **-p**

Preserve file timestamps for access and modification time. Equivalent to setting `--preserve-modification-time` and `--preserve-access-time` (and `--preserve-creation-time` on Windows). Timestamp support in object storage varies by provider; consult your object storage documentation to determine which settings are supported.

On Windows, modification time may be affected when the system automatically adjusts for Daylight Savings Time (DST). For details, see the Microsoft KB article, <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/129574>.

On Isilon IQ OneFS systems, access time (`atime`) is disabled by default. In this case, `atime` is the same as `mtime`. To enable the preservation of `atime`, run the following command:

```
# sysctl efs.bam.atime_enabled=1
```

### **--partial-file-suffix=suffix**

Enable the use of partial files for files that are in transit, and set the suffix to add to names of partial files. (The suffix does not include a " . ", as for a file extension, unless explicitly specified as part of the suffix.) This option only takes effect when set on the receiver side. When the transfer is complete, the suffix is removed. (Default: suffix is null; use of partial files is disabled.)

### **--policy={high|fair|low|fixed}**

Set the FASP transfer policy.

- `high` - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a `fair`-policy transfer. The `high` policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.
- `fair` - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The `fair` policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.
- `low` - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to `fair` mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.
- `fixed` - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.

Aspera discourages using the *fixed* policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The *fixed* policy requires a maximum (target) rate.

If `--policy` is not set, `ascp` uses the server-side policy setting (*fair* by default). If the server does not allow the selected policy, the transfer fails.

### **--precalculate-job-size**

Calculate the total size before starting the transfer. The server-side `pre_calculate_job_size` setting in `aspera.conf` overrides this option.

### **--preserve-access-time**

Preserve the source-file access timestamps at the destination. Because source access times are updated by the transfer operation, the timestamp preserved is the one just *prior* to the transfer. (To prevent access times at the source from being updated by the transfer operation, use the `--preserve-source-access-time` option.)

For IBM Spectrum Scale clusters, use to preserve the expiration time of immutable files.

On Isilon IQ OneFS systems, access time (`atime`) is disabled by default. In this case, `atime` is the same as `mtime`. To enable the preservation of `atime`, run the following command:

```
# sysctl efs.bam.atime_enabled=1
```

### **--preserve-acls={native|metafile|none}**

Preserve Access Control Lists (ACL) data for macOS, Windows, and AIX files. To preserve ACL data for other operating systems, use `--preserve-xattrs`. See also `--remote-preserve-acls`. Default: `none`.

- `native` - Preserve attributes using the native capabilities of the file system. This mode is only supported for Windows, macOS, and AIX. If the destination and source do not support the same native ACL format, `async` reports and error and exits.
- `metafile` - Preserve file attributes in a separate file, named `filename.aspera-meta`. For example, attributes for `readme.txt` are preserved in a second file named `readme.txt.aspera-meta`. These metafiles are platform independent and can be copied between hosts without loss of information. This mode is supported on all file systems.
- `none` - Do not preserve attributes. This mode is supported on all file systems.

#### **Important Usage Information:**

- ACLs are not preserved for directories.
- Both `--preserve-acls` and `--remote-preserve-acls` must be specified in order for the target side of a pull (`Ascp` with `--mode=recv`) to apply the ACLs.
- Very old versions of `ascp` do not support values other than `none`, and transfers using `native` or `metafile` fail with an error that reports incompatible FASP protocol versions.

### **--preserve-creation-time**

(Windows only) Preserve source-file creation timestamps at the destination. Only Windows systems retain information about creation time. If the destination is not a Windows computer, this option is ignored.

### **--preserve-file-owner-gid, --preserve-file-owner-uid**

(Linux, UNIX, and macOS only) Preserve the group information (`gid`) or owner information (`uid`) of the transferred files. These options require the transfer user to be authenticated as a superuser.

### **--preserve-modification-time**

Set the modification time, the last time a file or directory was modified (written), of a transferred file to the modification of the source file or directory. Preserve source-file modification timestamps at the destination.



On Windows, modification time may be affected when the system automatically adjusts for Daylight Savings Time (DST). For details, see the Microsoft KB article, <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/129574>.

#### **--preserve-source-access-time**

Preserve the access times of the original sources to the last access times prior to transfer. This prevents access times at the source from being updated by the transfer operation. Typically used in conjunction with the `--preserve-access-time` option.

#### **--preserve-xattrs={native|metafile|none}**

Preserve extended file attributes data (xattr). Default: `none`. See also `--remote-preserve-xattrs`.

- `native` - Preserve attributes using the native capabilities of the file system. This mode is supported only on macOS and Linux. If the destination and source do not support the same native xattr format, `async` reports an error and exits. If the Linux user is not root, some attributes such as system group might not be preserved.
- `metafile` - Preserve file attributes in a separate file, named `filename.aspera-meta`. For example, attributes for `readme.txt` are preserved in a second file named `readme.txt.aspera-meta`. These metafiles are platform independent and can be copied between hosts without loss of information. This mode is supported on all file systems.
- `none` - Do not preserve attributes. This mode is supported on all file systems.

#### **Important Usage Information:**

- Extended attributes are not preserved for directories.
- If Ascp is run by a regular user, only user-level attributes are preserved. If run as superuser, all attributes are preserved.
- The amount of attribute data per file that can be transferred successfully is subject to ascp's internal PDU size limitation.
- Very old versions of Ascp do not support values other than `none`, and transfers using `native` or `metafile` fail with an error that reports incompatible FASP protocol versions.
- Use `--preserve-xattrs=native` to preserve IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs between clusters. For more information, see [Preserving IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs of Transferred Files](#) on page 506.

#### **--proxy=proxy\_url**

Use the proxy server at the specified address. `proxy_url` should be specified with the following syntax:

```
dnat[s]://proxy_username:proxy_password@server_ip_address:port
```

The default ports for DNAT and DNATS protocols are 9091 and 9092. For a usage example, see [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196.

#### **-q**

Run ascp in quiet mode (disables the progress display).

#### **-R remote\_log\_dir**

Log to the specified directory on the server rather than the default directory. **Note:** Client users restricted to aspsell are not allowed to use this option. To specify the location of the local log, use `-L`.

#### **--remote-preserve-acls={native|metafile|none}**

Like `--preserve-acls` but used when ACLs are stored in a different format on the remote computer. Defaults to the value of `--preserve-acls`.

**Note:** Both `--preserve-acls` and `--remote-preserve-acls` must be specified in order for the target side of a pull (Ascp with `--mode=recv`) to apply the ACLs.

**--remote-preserve-xattrs={native|metafile|none}**

Like `--preserve-xattrs` but used when attributes are stored in a different format on the remote computer. Defaults to the value of `--preserve-xattrs`.

**--remove-after-transfer**

Remove all source files, but not the source directories, once the transfer has completed successfully. Requires write permissions on the source.

**--remove-empty-directories**

Remove empty source directories once the transfer has completed successfully, but do not remove a directory specified as the source argument. To also remove the specified source directory, use `--remove-empty-source-directory`. Directories can be emptied using `--move-after-transfer` or `--remove-after-transfer`. Scanning for empty directories starts at the `srcbase` and proceeds down any subdirectories. If no source base is specified and a file path (as opposed to a directory path) is specified, then only the immediate parent directory is scanned and removed if it's empty following the move of the source file. **Note:** Do not use this option if multiple processes (`ascp` or other) might access the source directory at the same time.

**--remove-empty-source-directory**

Remove directories specified as the source arguments. For use with `--remove-empty-directories`.

**-S remote\_ascp**

Use the specified remote `ascp` binary, if different than `ascp`.

**--save-before-overwrite**

Save a copy of a file before it is overwritten by the transfer. A copy of `filename.ext` is saved as `filename.yyyy.mm.dd.hh.mm.ss.index.ext` in the same directory. `index` is set to 1 at the start of each second and incremented for each additional file saved during that second. The saved copies retain the attributes of the original. Not supported for URI path destinations.

**--skip-special-files**

Skip special files, such as devices and pipes, without reporting errors for them.

**--source-prefix=prefix**

Prepend `prefix` to each source path. The prefix can be a conventional path or a URI; however, URI paths can be used only if no `docroot` is defined.

**--source-prefix64=prefix**

Prepend the base64-encoded `prefix` to each source path. If `--source-prefix=prefix` is also used, the last option takes precedence.

**--src-base=prefix**

Strip the specified path prefix from the source path of each transferred file or directory. The remaining portion of the path remains intact at the destination.

Without `--src-base`, source files and directories are transferred without their source path. (However, directories do include their contents.)

**Note:** Sources located outside the source base are not transferred. No errors or warnings are issued, but the skipped files are logged.

**Use with URIs:** The `--src-base` option performs a character-to-character match with the source path. For object storage source paths, the prefix must specify the URI in the same manner as the source paths. For example, if a source path includes an embedded passphrase, the prefix must also include the embedded passphrase otherwise it will not match.

For examples, see [Ascp File Manipulation Examples](#) on page 198.

**--symbolic-links={follow|copy|copy+force|skip}**

Handle symbolic links using the specified method, as allowed by the server. For more information on symbolic link handling, see [Symbolic Link Handling](#) on page 214. On Windows, the only method is `skip`. On other operating systems, any of the following methods can be used:

- `follow` - Follow symbolic links and transfer the linked files. (Default)
- `copy` - Copy only the alias file. If a file with the same name is found at the destination, the symbolic link is not copied.
- `copy+force` - Copy only the alias file. If a file (not a directory) with the same name is found at the destination, the alias replaces the file. If the destination is a symbolic link to a directory, it's not replaced.
- `skip` - Skip symbolic links. Do not copy the link or the file it points to.

**-T**

Disable in-transit encryption for maximum throughput.

**--tags *string***

Metatags in JSON format. The value is limited to 4 Kb.

**--tags64 *string***

Metatags in JSON format and base64 encoded. The value is limited to 4 Kb.

**-u *user\_string***

Define a user string, such as variables, for pre- and post-processing. This string is passed to the pre- and -post-processing scripts as the environment variable `$USERSTR`.

**--user=*username***

Authenticate the transfer using the specified username. Use this option instead of specifying the username as part of the destination path (as `user@host:file`).

**Note:** If you are authenticating on a Windows computer as a domain user, the transfer server strips the domain from the username. For example, `Administrator` is authenticated rather than `DOMAIN\Administrator`. For this reason, you must specify the domain explicitly.

**-v**

Run `ascp` in verbose mode. This option prints connection and authentication debug messages in the log file. For information on log files, see [Log Files](#) on page 502 .

**-W {*token\_string*[@*token\_file*]}**

Authenticate using the authorization token string for the transfer, either as the string itself or when preceded with an `@`, the full path to the token file. This option takes precedence over the setting for the `ASPERA_SCP_TOKEN` environment variable.

**-wr, -wf**

Measure and report bandwidth from server to client (`-wr`) or client to server (`-wf`) before the transfer.

**-X *remsg\_size***

Limit the size of retransmission requests to no larger than the specified size, in bytes. (Max: 1440)

**-Z *dgram\_size***

Use the specified datagram size (MTU) for FASP transfers. Range: 296-65535 bytes. (Default: the detected path MTU)

As of version 3.3, datagram size can be specified on the server by setting `<datagram_size>` in `aspera.conf`. The server setting overrides the client setting, unless the client is using a version of `ascp` that is older than 3.3, in which case the client setting is used. If the pre-3.3 client does not set `-Z`, the datagram size is the discovered MTU and the server logs the message "LOG Peer client does not support alternative datagram size".

## Ascp Options for HTTP Fallback

HTTP fallback serves as a secondary transfer method when the Internet connectivity required for Aspera FASP transfers (UDP port 33001, by default) is unavailable. When HTTP fallback is enabled and UDP connectivity is lost or cannot be established, the transfer will continue over the HTTP/S protocol.

### Limitations:

- HTTP fallback must be enabled on the server.
- Folders that are symbolic links cannot be downloaded directly by using HTTP fallback. Folders that are symbolic links are processed correctly when their parent folder is the source.
- HTTP fallback can only follow symbolic links. Settings in `aspera.conf` or in the command line are ignored.
- HTTP fallback attempts to transfer at the target rate but is limited by TCP.
- HTTP fallback does not support pre-post processing or inline validation.

### Options:

- I *cert\_file***  
Certify fallback transfers with the specified HTTPS certificate file.
- j {0|1}**  
Encode all HTTP transfers as JPEG files when set to 1. (Default: 0)
- t *port***  
Transfer via the specified server port for HTTP fallback.
- x *proxy\_server***  
Transfer to the specified proxy server address for HTTP fallback.
- Y *key\_file***  
Certify HTTPS fallback transfers using the specified HTTPS transfer key.
- y {0|1}**  
If set to "1", use the HTTP fallback transfer server when a UDP connection fails. (Default: 0)

## Ascp General Examples

---

Use the following Ascp examples to craft your own transfers.

To describe filepaths, use single-quote (') and forward-slashes (/) on all platforms. Avoid the following characters in filenames: / \ " : ' ? > < & \* |

- **Fair-policy transfer**

Fair-policy transfer with maximum rate 100 Mbps and minimum at 1 Mbps, without encryption, transfer all files in `\local-dir\files` to 10.0.0.2:

```
# ascp --policy=fair -l 100m -m 1m /local-dir/files root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir
```

- **Fixed-policy transfer**

Fixed-policy transfer with target rate 100 Mbps, without encryption, transfer all files in `\local-dir\files` to 10.0.0.2:

```
# ascp -l 100m /local-dir/files root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir
```

- **Specify UDP port for transfer**

Transfer using UDP port 42000:

```
# ascp -l 100m -O 42000 /local-dir/files user@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir
```

- **Public key authentication**

Transfer with public key authentication using the key file <home dir>/`.ssh/aspera_user_1-key` local-dir/files:

```
$ ascp -l 10m -i ~/.ssh/aspera_user_1-key local-dir/files root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir
```

- **Username or filepath contains a space**

Enclose the target in double-quotes when spaces are present in the username and remote path:

```
# ascp -l 100m local-dir/files "User Name@10.0.0.2:/remote directory"
```

- **Content is specified in a file pair list**

Specify source content to transfer to various destinations in a file pair list. Source content is specified using the full file or directory path. Destination directories are specified relative to the transfer user's docroot, which is specified as "." at the end of the `ascp` command. For example, the following is a simple file pair list, `filepairlist.txt` that lists two source folders, `folder1` and `folder2`, with two destinations, `tmp1` and `tmp2`:

```
/tmp/folder1
tmp1
/tmp/folder2
tmp2
```

```
# ascp --user=user_1 --host=10.0.0.2 --mode=send --file-pair-list=/tmp/
filepairlist.txt .
```

This command and file pair list create the following directories within the transfer user's docroot on the destination:

```
/tmp1/folder1
/tmp2/folder2
```

- **Network shared location transfer**

Send files to a network shares location `\\1.2.3.4\nw-share-dir`, through the computer `10.0.0.2`:

```
# ascp local-dir/files root@10.0.0.2:"//1.2.3.4/nw-share-dir/"
```

- **Parallel transfer on a multi-core system**

Use parallel transfer on a dual-core system, together transferring at the rate 200Mbps, using UDP ports 33001 and 33002. Two commands are executed in different Terminal windows:

```
# ascp -C 1:2 -O 33001 -l 100m /file root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir &
# ascp -C 2:2 -O 33002 -l 100m /file root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir
```

- **Upload with content protection**

Upload the file `local-dir/file` to the server `10.0.0.2` with password protection (password: `secRet`):

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=secRet ascp -l 10m --file-encrypt=encrypt local-dir/file
root@10.0.0.2:/remote-dir/
```

The file is saved on the server as `file.aspera-env`, with the extension indicating that the file is encrypted. See the next example for how to download and decrypt an encrypted file from the server.

- **Download with content protection and decryption**

Download an encrypted file, `file.aspera-env`, from the server `10.0.0.2` and decrypt while transferring:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=secRet; ascp -l 10m --file-encrypt=decrypt root@10.0.0.2:/remote-
dir/file.aspera-env /local-dir
```

- **Decrypt a downloaded, encrypted file**

If the password-protected file `file1` is downloaded on the local computer without decrypting, decrypt `file1.aspera-env` (the name of the downloaded/encrypted version of `file1`) to `file1`:

```
$ export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=secRet; /opt/aspera/bin/asunprotect -o file1 file1.aspera-env
```

- **Download through Aspera forward proxy with proxy authentication**

User `Pat` transfers the file `/data/file1` to `/Pat_data/` on `10.0.0.2`, through the proxy server at `10.0.0.7` with the proxy username `aspera_proxy` and password `pa33w0rd`. After running the command, `Pat` is prompted for the transfer user's (`Pat`'s) password.

```
# ascp --proxy dnats://aspera_proxy:pa33w0rd@10.0.0.7 /data/file1 Pat@10.0.0.2:/Pat_data/
```

### Test transfers using `faux://`

For information on the syntax, see [Testing and Optimizing Transfer Performance](#) on page 495.

- **Transfer random data (no source storage required)**

Transfer 20 GB of random data as user `root` to file `newfile` in the directory `/remote-dir` on `10.0.0.2`:

```
#ascp --mode=send --user=root --host=10.0.0.2 faux:///newfile?20g /remote-dir
```

- **Transfer a file but do not save results to disk (no destination storage required)**

Transfer the file `/tmp/sample` as user `root` to `10.0.0.2`, but do not save results to disk:

```
#ascp --mode=send --user=root --host=10.0.0.2 /tmp/sample faux://
```

- **Transfer random data and do not save result to disk (no source or destination storage required)**

Transfer 10 MB of random data from `10.0.0.2` as user `root` and do not save result to disk:

```
#ascp --mode=send --user=root --host=10.0.0.2 faux:///dummy?10m faux://
```

## Ascp File Manipulation Examples

---

Ascp can manipulate files and directories as part of the transfer, such as upload only the files in the specified source directory but not the directory itself, create a destination directory, and move or delete source files after they are transferred.

- **Upload a directory**

Upload the directory `/data/` to the server at `10.0.0.1`, and place it in the `/storage/` directory on the server:

```
# ascp /src/data/ root@10.0.0.1:/storage/
```

- **Upload only the contents of a directory (not the directory itself) by using the `--src-base` option:**

Upload only the contents of `/data/` to the `/storage/` directory at the destination. Strip the `/src/data/` portion of the source path and preserve the remainder of the file structure at the destination:

```
# ascp --src-base=/src/data/ /src/data/ root@10.0.0.1:/storage/
```

- **Upload a directory and its contents to a new directory by using the `-d` option.**

Upload the `/data/` directory to the server and if it doesn't already exist, create the new folder `/storage2/` to contain it, resulting in `/storage2/data/` at the destination.

```
# ascp -d /src/data/ root@10.0.0.1:/storage2/
```

- **Upload the contents of a directory, but not the directory itself, by using the `--src-base` option:**

Upload all folders and files in the `/clips/out/` folder, but not the `out/` folder itself, to the `/in/` folder at the destination.

```
# ascp -d --src-base=/clips/out/ /clips/out/ root@10.0.0.1:/in/
```

Result: The source folders and their content appear in the `in` directory at the destination:

Source	Destination	Destination without <code>--src-base</code>
<code>/clips/out/file1</code>	<code>/in/file1</code>	<code>/in/out/file1</code>
<code>/clips/out/folderA/file2</code>	<code>/in/folderA/file2</code>	<code>/in/out/folderA/file2</code>
<code>/clips/out/folderB/file3</code>	<code>/in/folderB/file3</code>	<code>/in/out/folderB/file3</code>

Without `--src-base`, the example command transfers not only the contents of the `out/` folder, but the folder itself.

**Note:** Sources located outside the source base are not transferred. No errors or warnings are issued, but the skipped files are logged. For example, if `/clips/file4` were included in the above example sources, it would not be transferred because it is located outside the specified source base, `/clips/out/`.

- **Upload only the contents of a file and a directory to a new directory by using `--src-base`**

Upload a file, `/monday/file1`, and a directory, `/tuesday/*`, to the `/storage/` directory on the server, while stripping the `srcbase` path and preserving the rest of the file structure. The content is saved as `/storage/monday/file1` and `/storage/tuesday/*` on the server.

```
# ascp --src-base=/data/content /data/content/monday/file1 /data/content/tuesday/ root@10.0.0.1:/storage
```

- **Download only the contents of a file and a directory to a new directory by using `--src-base`**

Download a file, `/monday/file1`, and a directory, `/tuesday/*`, from the server, while stripping the `srcbase` path and preserving the rest of the file structure. The content is saved as `/data/monday/file1` and `/data/tuesday/*` on the client.

```
# ascp --src-base=/storage/content root@10.0.0.1:/storage/content/monday/file1 root@10.0.0.1:/storage/content/tuesday/ /data
```

- **Move the source file on the client after it is uploaded to the server by using `--move-after-transfer`**

Upload `file0012` to Pat's docroot on the server at 10.0.0.1, and move (not copy) the file from `C:/Users/Pat/srcdir/` to `C:/Users/Pat/Archive` on the client.

```
# ascp --move-after-transfer=C:/Users/Pat/Archive C:/Users/Pat/srcdir/file0012 Pat@10.0.0.1:/
```

- **Move the source file on the server after it is downloaded to the client by using `--move-after-transfer`**

Download `srcdir` from the server to `C:/Users/Pat` on the client, and move (not copy) `srcdir` to the archive directory `/Archive` on the server.

```
# ascp --move-after-transfer=Archive Pat@10.0.0.1:/srcdir C:/Users/Pat
```

- **Move the source file on the client after it is uploaded to the server and preserve the file structure one level above it by using `--src-base` and `--move-after-transfer`**

Upload `file0012` to Pat's docroot on the server at 10.0.0.1, and save it as `/srcdir/file0012` (stripped of `C:/Users/Pat`). Also move `file0012` from `C:/Users/Pat/srcdir/` to `C:/Users/Pat/Archive` on the client, where it is saved as `C:/Users/Pat/Archive/srcdir/file0012`.

```
# ascp --src-base=C:/Users/Pat --move-after-transfer=C:/Users/Pat/Archive C:/Users/Pat/srcdir/file0012 Pat@10.0.0.1:/
```

- **Delete a local directory once it is uploaded to the remote server by using `--remove-after-transfer` and `--remove-empty-directories`**

Upload `/content/` to the server, then delete its contents (excluding partial files) and any empty directories on the client.

```
# ascp -k2 -E "*.partial" --remove-after-transfer --remove-empty-directories /data/content root@10.0.0.1:/storage
```

- **Delete a local directory once its contents have been transferred to the remote server by using `--src-base`, `--remove-after-transfer`, and `--remove-empty-directories`**

Upload `/content/` to the server, while stripping the `srcbase` path and preserving the rest of the file structure. The content is saved as `/storage/*` on the server. On the client, the contents of `/content/`, including empty directories but excluding partial files, are deleted.

```
# ascp -k2 -E "*.partial" --src-base=/data/content --remove-after-transfer --remove-empty-directories /data/content root@10.0.0.1:/storage
```

## Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS

---

Ascp transfers to and from servers in the cloud are similar to other Ascp transfers, though they might require explicit authorization to the storage as an authorization token or storage credentials.

### Transfers with IBM Aspera On Demand and Cloud-Based HST Servers

Transfers to Aspera on Demand and cloud-based HST Servers require authorization credentials to the storage, but are otherwise the same as transfers to on-premises HST Server.

Provide object storage credentials in one of the following ways:

- Specify the storage password or secret key in the transfer user's docroot. (Preferred method)
- Set the storage password or secret key as an environment variable.
- Specify the storage password or secret key in the command line.

#### With Docroot Configured: Authenticate in the Docroot

If your transfer user account has a docroot set that includes credentials or credentials are configured in the `.properties` file, `ascp` transfers to and from Alibaba Cloud, Amazon S3, IBM COS - S3, Google Cloud Storage, Akamai, SoftLayer, Azure, and are the same as regular `ascp` transfers.

For instructions on configuring a docroot for these types of storage, see [IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide \(Linux\): Docroot Path Formatting for Cloud, Object, and HDFS Storage](#).

For command syntax examples, see [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196. You are prompted for the transfer user's password when you run an `ascp` command unless you set the `ASPERA_SCP_PASS` environment variable or use SSH key authorization.

#### With No Docroot Configured: Authenticate with Environment Variables

**Note:** The `ASPERA_DEST_PASS` variable is not applicable to Google Cloud Storage or Amazon S3 using IAM roles.

Set an environment variable (`ASPERA_DEST_PASS`) with the storage password or access key:

```
# export ASPERA_DEST_PASS = secret_key
```

With `ASPERA_DEST_PASS` and `ASPERA_SCP_PASS` set, run `ascp` with the syntax listed in the table for transfers with no docroot configured, except that you do not need to include the storage password or access key, and are not prompted for the Aspera password upon running `ascp`.



## With No Docroot Configured: Authenticate in the Command Line

If you do not have a docroot configured and do not set an environment variable (described previously), authenticate in the command line. In the following examples, the storage password or secret key are included as part of the destination path. You are prompted for the transfer user's password upon running `ascp` unless you set the `ASPERA_SCP_PASS` environment variable or use SSH key authorization.

Storage Platform	ascp Syntax and Examples
Alibaba Cloud	Aspera recommends running <code>ascp</code> transfers with Alibaba Cloud with a docroot configured.
Amazon S3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you are using IAM roles, you do not need to specify the access ID or secret key for your S3 storage.</li> </ul> <p>Upload syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=send --user=username -- host=s3_server_addr source_files s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/destination_path</pre> <p>Upload example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=send --user=bear -- host=s3.asperasoft.com bigfile.txt s3://1K3C18FBWF9902:GEyU...AqXuxtTVHWtc@s3.amazonaws.com/ demos2014</pre> <p>Download syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=recv --user=username -- host=s3_server_addr s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/ my_source_path destination_path</pre> <p>Download example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=recv --user=bear --host=s3.asperasoft.com s3://1K3C18FBWF9902:GEyU...AqXuxtTVHWtc@s3.amazonaws.com/ demos2014/bigfile.txt /tmp/</pre>
Azure	<p>These examples are for Azure blob storage. For Azure Files, use the syntax: <code>azure-files://storage_account:storage_access_key@file.core.windows.net/share</code>. Aspera recommends running <code>ascp</code> transfers with Azure Data Lake Storage with a docroot configured.</p> <p>Upload syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=send --user=username -- host=server_address source_files azu://storage_account:storage_access_key@blob.core.windows.net/destination_path</pre> <p>Upload example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=send --user=AS037d8eda429737d6 -- host=dev920350144d2.azure.asperaondemand.com bigfile.txt azu://astransfer:zNfMtU...nBTkhB@blob.core.windows.net/abc</pre> <p>Download syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=recv --user=username -- host=server azu://storage_account:storage_access_key@blob.core.windows.net/destination_path</pre>

Storage Platform	ascp Syntax and Examples
	<p>Download example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=recv --user=AS037d8eda429737d6 -- host=dev920350144d2.azure.asperaondemand.com azu:// astransfer:zNfMtU...nBTkHb@blob.core.windows.net/abc / downloads</pre>
Google Cloud Storage	<p><b>Note:</b> The examples below require that the VMI running the Aspera server is a Google Compute instance.</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=send --user=username -- host=server_address source_files gs:///my_bucket/my_path</pre> <p>Upload example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=send --user=bear --host=10.0.0.5 bigfile.txt gs:///2017_transfers/data</pre> <p>Download syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=recv --user=username -- host=server gs:///my_bucket/my_path/source_file destination_path</pre> <p>Download example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=recv --user=bear --host=10.0.0.5 gs:///2017_transfers/data/bigfile.txt /data</pre>
HDFS	Aspera recommends running ascp transfers with HDFS with a docroot configured.
IBM COS - S3	<p>Upload syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=send --user=username -- host=server_address source_files s3://access_id:secret_key@accessor_end</pre> <p>Upload example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=send --user=bear -- host=s3.asperasoft.com bigfile.txt s3://3ITI3OIUFEH233:KrcEW...AIuwQ@38.123.76.24/demo2017</pre> <p>Download syntax:</p> <pre># ascp options --mode=send --user=username -- host=server_address s3://access_id:secret_key@accessor_endpoint/vault_n source_files destination_path</pre> <p>Download example:</p> <pre># ascp --mode=send --user=bear --host=s3.asperasoft.com s3://3ITI3OIUFEH233:KrcEW...AIuwQ@38.123.76.24/demo2017 / tmp/</pre>

## Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage

Files that are uploaded to metadata-compatible storage (S3, Google Cloud, and Azure) can have custom metadata written with them by using the `--tags` or `--tags64` option. The argument is a JSON payload that specifies the metadata and that is base64 encoded if it is used as an argument for `--tags64`.

### Metadata Behavior

- All objects that are uploaded in a session have the same metadata.
- If an upload resumes, the metadata of the original transfer is used.
- Multi-session transfers must specify the same metadata.
- Metadata are not retrieved when downloading objects; use the REST API associated with the storage.
- Transfers to object storages that do not support metadata (such as HDFS and Azure Files) fail if metadata is specified.

### Specifying Metadata in JSON

The JSON payload has the general syntax of key-value pairs in a "cloud-metadata" section:

```
{
  "aspera": {
    "cloud-metadata": [
      {"key1": "value1"},
      {"key2": "value2"},
      ...
    ]
  }
}
```

Restrictions on key-value pairs:

- *key* cannot be `ctime`, `mtime`, or `atime`. These keys are reserved and the transfer fails if they are used.
- *key* might be case-sensitive, depending on the destination storage type.
- The key-value pair must be less than 1024 characters.

### Sample Ascp Session with Metadata

```
# ascp --tags='{"aspera":{"cloud-metadata":[{"location":"skellig"}]}'
--mode=send --user=rey --host=s3.asperasoft.com sourcefile.mov s3://
s3.amazonaws.com/project
```

## Multi-Session Transfers

Ascp can transfer content faster by using multi-session transfers (also known as parallel transfers and multi-part transfers) to and from multi-node and multi-core servers and clusters, on premises or in the cloud. This article describes the syntax of a multi-session transfer and provides an example.

### Multi-session syntax

To run simultaneous `ascp` transfers, you can run each command from its own terminal window, run a script in a single terminal, or background processes with the shell.

For a typical push (`--mode=send`) transfer:

```
# ascp -C nid_1:ncount -l max_rate [-O port_1] [--multi-
session-threshold=threshold] [--tags={"aspera":{"xfer_id\":"
transfer_id\"}}] source_path hostname:destination_path
# ascp -C nid_2:ncount -l max_rate [-O port_2] [--multi-
session-threshold=threshold] [--tags={"aspera":{"xfer_id\":"
transfer_id\"}}] source_path hostname:destination_path
...
```

```
# ascp -C nid n:ncount -l max_rate [-O port_n] [--multi-
session-threshold=threshold] [--tags={"aspera":{"xfer_id\":"
\"transfer_id\"}}] source_path hostname:destination_path
```

Where:

- `-C nid:ncount` tells Ascp that the same source and destination are being used by multiple, concurrent sessions. `nid` is the node ID and `ncount` is the number of nodes or cores. The valid range of values for `nid` and `ncount` is 1 through 128, and `nid` must be less than or equal to `ncount`.
- `-O port` is used to assign each session to a different UDP port. This is **required** when the server's operating system does not support concurrent sessions using the same UDP port. This applies to Windows, macOS, Isilon OneFS, and Solaris operating systems.

**Note:** Make sure that the server's firewall is configured to accept transfers on the range of UDP ports.

- `--multi-session-threshold` is an optional argument that enables files to be split between sessions. The threshold value specifies, in bytes, the smallest-size file that can be split. Files greater than or equal to the threshold are split, while those smaller than the threshold are not. If the multi-session threshold is set to 0 (zero), files are not split.
- `--tags={"aspera":{"xfer_id\":"transfer_id\"}}` is **required** for multi-session transfers to cloud in order to provide a transfer ID. The transfer ID is the same for all the sessions in the multi-session transfer. If an upload is restarted with the same `xfer_id` then the transfer is resumed, but if a different `xfer_id` is used then the upload is completely restarted.
- If you are uploading to a cloud-based AWS S3 cluster, you must authenticate with an access key or Assumed role rather than an IAM role.
- If you are self-managing an Aspera server or cluster of Aspera servers in the cloud (you installed IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server on a VM), you must configure the server for multi-session transfers.

### File-splitting with multi-session threshold

The value of the multi-session threshold depends on the target rates that a single `ascp` transfer can achieve on your system for files of a given size, as well as the typical distribution of file sizes in the transfer list.

**Note:** A default value for the threshold can be specified in the server and client `aspera.conf` by setting `<multi-session_threshold_default>` in the `<default>` section. The command-line setting overrides the `aspera.conf` setting. If the client's `aspera.conf` does not specify a default value for the threshold, then the server's setting is used (if specified). If neither the client nor the server set a multi-session threshold, then no files are split.

To set a value (in bytes) from the command line, run the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_multi_session_threshold_default,threshold"
```

### Multi-Session Transfer Example

The following example shows a multi-session transfer on a dual-core system. Together, the two sessions can transfer at up to 2 Gbps and each session uses a different UDP port. No multi-session threshold is specified on the command line or in `aspera.conf`, so no file splitting occurs.

```
# ascp -C 1:2 -O 33001 -l 1000m /dir01 10.0.0.2:/remote_dir
# ascp -C 2:2 -O 33002 -l 1000m /dir01 10.0.0.2:/remote_dir
```

If `dir01` contains multiple files, `ascp` distributes the files between each command to get the most efficient throughput. If `dir01` contains only one file, only one of the commands transfers the file.

In the following example, the multi-session threshold is used to enable file splitting:

```
# ascp -C 1:2 -O 33001 -l 100m --multi-session-threshold=5242880 /dir01
10.0.0.2:/remote_dir
```

```
# ascp -C 2:2 -O 33002 -l 100m --multi-session-threshold=5242880 /dir01
10.0.0.2:/remote_dir
```

In this case, if `dir01` contains multiple files, all files less than 5 MB are distributed between sessions, while all files 5 MB or larger are split and then distributed between sessions. If `dir01` contains only one file and that file is 5 MB or larger, then the file is split, otherwise the file is transferred by one session.

## Using Standard I/O as the Source or Destination

Ascp can use standard input (stdin) as the source or standard output (stdout) as the destination for a transfer, usually managed by using the Aspera FASP Manager SDK. The syntax depends on the number of files in your transfer; for single files use `stdio://` and for multiple files use `stdio-tar://`. The transfer is authenticated using SSH or a transfer token.

### Named Pipes

A named pipe can be specified as a `stdio` destination, with the syntax `stdio:///path` for single files, or `stdio-tar:///path` for multiple files, where *path* is the path of the named pipe. If a `docroot` is configured on the destination, then the transfer goes to the named pipe `docroot/path`.

**Note:** Do not use `stdio:///path` to transfer multiple files. The file data is asynchronously concatenated in the output stream and might be unusable. Use `stdio-tar:///path` instead, which demarcates multiple files with headers.

**Note:** Do not use zero-byte files with standard I/O transfers.

### Single File Transfers

To upload data that is piped into stdin, set the source as `stdio:///?fsize`, where *fsize* is the number of bytes (as a decimal) that are received from stdin. The destination is set as the path and filename. The file modification time is set to the time at which the upload starts. Standard input must transfer the exact amount of data that is set by *fsize*. If more or less data is received by the server, an error is generated.

To download data and pipe it into stdout, set the destination as `stdio://`.

#### Restrictions:

- `stdio://` cannot be used for persistent sessions. Use `stdio-tar://` instead.
- Only `--overwrite=always` or `--overwrite=never` are supported with `stdio://`. The behavior of `--overwrite=diff` and `--overwrite=diff+older` is undefined.

#### Single-file Transfer Examples:

- Upload 1025 bytes of data from the client stdin to `/remote-dir` on the server at 10.0.0.2. Save the data as the file `newfile`. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
file_source | ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2
stdio:///?1025 /remote-dir/newfile
```

- Download the file `remote_file` from the server at 10.0.0.2 to stdout on the client. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=recv --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 remote_file
stdio://
```

- Upload the file `local_file` to the server at 10.0.0.2 to the named pipe `/tmp/outpipe`. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 local_file
stdio:///tmp/outpipe
```

## Multi-File Transfers

Ascp can transfer one or more files in an encoded, streamed interface, similar to single file transfers. The primary difference is that the stream includes headers that demarcate data from individual files.

To upload files that are piped into stdin, set the source as `stdio-tar://`. The file modification time is set to the time at which the upload starts.

The file(s) in the input stream must be encoded in the following format. `File` can be the file name or file path, `Size` is the size of the file in bytes, and `Offset` is an optional parameter that sets where in the destination file to begin overwriting with the raw inline data:

```
[0 - n blank lines]
File: /path/to/file_1
Size: file_size
Offset: bytes

file_1 data
[0 - n blank lines]
File: /path/to/file_2
Size: file_size

file 2 data
...
```

To download one or more files to stdout, set the destination as `stdio-tar://`. Normal status output to stdout is suppressed during downloads because the transfer output is streamed to stdout. The data sent to stdout has the same encoding as described for uploads.

To download to a named pipe, set the destination to `stdio-tar:///path`, where `path` is the path of the named pipe.

When an offset is specified, the bytes that are sent replace the existing bytes in the destination file (if it exists). The bytes added to the destination file can extend beyond the current file size. If no offset is set, the bytes overwrite the file if overwrite conditions are met.

### Restrictions:

- When downloading to `stdio-tar://`, the source list must consist of individual files only. Directories are not allowed.
- Only `--overwrite=always` or `--overwrite=never` are supported with `stdio-tar://`. The behavior of `--overwrite=diff` and `--overwrite=diff+older` is undefined.
- Offsets are only supported if the destination files are located in the native file system. Offsets are not supported for cloud destinations.

### Multi-file Transfer Examples:

- Upload two files, `myfile1` (1025 bytes) and `myfile2` (20 bytes), to `/remote-dir` on the server at 10.0.0.2. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
cat sourcefile | ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2
stdio-tar:// /remote-dir
```

Where `sourcefile` contains the following:

```
File: myfile1
Size: 1025

<< 1025 bytes of data>>
File: myfile2
Size: 20
```

```
<<20 bytes of data>>
```

- Uploading multiple files from stdin by using a persistent session is the same as a non-persistent session.
- Update bytes 10-19 in file /remote-dir/myfile1 on the server at 10.0.0.2 at 100 Mbps.

```
cat sourcefile | ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2
  stdio-tar:// /remote-dir
```

Where sourcefile contains the following:

```
File: myfile1
Size: 10
Offset: 10
```

```
<< 10 bytes of data>>
```

- Upload two files, myfile1 and myfile2, to the named pipe /tmp/mypipe (streaming output) on the server at 10.0.0.2. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 myfile1 myfile2
  stdio-tar:///tmp/mypipe
```

This sends an encoded stream of myfile1 and myfile2 (with the format of sourcefile in the upload example) to the pipe /tmp/mypipe. If /tmp/mypipe does not exist, it is created.

- Download the files from the previous example from 10.0.0.2 to stdout. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=recv --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 myfile1 myfile2
  stdio-tar://
```

Standard output receives data identical to sourcefile in the upload example.

- Download /tmp/myfile1 and /tmp/myfile2 to stdout by using a persistent session. Start the persistent session, which listens on management port 12345:

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=recv --keepalive -M 12345 --user=username --
  host=10.0.0.2 stdio-tar://
```

Send the following in through management port 12345:

```
FASPMGR 2
Type: START
Source: /tmp/myfile1
Destination: mynewfile1

FASPMGR 2
Type: START
Source: /tmp/myfile2
Destination: mynewfile2

FASPMGR 2
Type: DONE
```

The destination must be a filename; file paths are not supported.

Standard out receives the transferred data with the following syntax:

```
File: mynewfile1
Size: file_size

mynewfile1_data
File: mynewfile2
Size: file_size
```

```
mynewfile2_data
```

- Upload two files, `myfile1` and `myfile2`, to named pipe `/tmp/mypipe` on the server at 10.0.0.2. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 myfile1 myfile2
  stdio-tar:///tmp/mypipe
```

If `file/tmp/mypipe` does not exist, it is created.

- Upload two files, `myfile1` (1025 bytes) and `myfile2` (20 bytes) from `stdio` and regenerate the stream on the destination to send out through the named pipe `/tmp/mypipe` on the server at 10.0.0.2. Transfer at 100 Mbps.

```
cat sourcefile | ascp -l 100m --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2
  stdio-tar:// stdio-tar:///tmp/pipe
```

Where `sourcefile` contains the following:

```
File: myfile1
Size: 1025

<< 1025 bytes of data>>
File: myfile2
Size: 20

<<20 bytes of data>>
```

## Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files

Filters refine the list of source files (or directories) to transfer by indicating which to skip or include based on name matching. When no filtering rules are specified by the client, Ascp transfers all source files in the transfer list; servers cannot filter client uploads or downloads.

### Command Line Syntax

- E '*pattern*' Exclude files or directories with names or paths that match *pattern*.
- N '*pattern*' Include files or directories with names or paths that match *pattern*.

Where:

- *pattern* is a file or directory name, or a set of names expressed with UNIX *glob* patterns.
- Surround patterns that contain wildcards with single quotes to prevent filter patterns from being interpreted by the command shell. Patterns that do not contain wildcards can also be in single quotes.

### Basic usage

- Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order they appear on the command line. If filtering rules are configured in `aspera.conf`, they are applied before the rules on the command line.
- Filtering is a process of exclusion, and `-N` rules override `-E` rules that follow them. `-N` cannot add back files that are excluded by a preceding exclude rule.
- An include rule **must** be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use `-N '/* */' -E '/* */'` at the end of your filter arguments.
- Filtering operates only on the set of files and directories in the transfer list. An include rule (`-N`) cannot add files or directories that are not already part of the transfer list.



Example	Transfer Result
-E 'rule'	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule</i> .
-N 'rule'	Transfer all files and directories because none are excluded. To transfer only the files and directories with names that match <i>rule</i> use: <pre>ascp -N 'rule' -N '/**/' -E '/**'</pre>
-N 'rule1' -E 'rule2'	Transfer all files and directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> , as well as all other files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule2</i> .
-E 'rule1' -N 'rule2'	Transfer all files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule1</i> . All files and directories not already excluded by <i>rule1</i> are included because no additional exclude rule follows -N 'rule2'. To transfer only the files and directories with names that do not match <i>rule1</i> but do match <i>rule2</i> use: <pre>ascp -E 'rule1' -N 'rule2' -N '/**/' -E '/**'</pre>

### Filtering Rule Application

Filters can be specified on the `ascp` command line and in `aspera.conf`. Ascp applies filtering rules that are set in `aspera.conf` *before* it applies rules on the command line.

#### Filtering order

Filtering rules are applied to the transfer list in the order they appear on the command line.

1. Ascp compares the first file (or directory) in the transfer list to the pattern of the first rule.
2. If the file matches the pattern, Ascp includes it (-N) or excludes it (-E) and the file is immune to any following rules.  
**Note:** When a directory is excluded, directories and files in it are also excluded and are not compared to any following rules. For example, with the command-line options `-E '/images/' -N '/images/icons/'`, the directory `/images/icons/` is not included or considered because `/images/` was already excluded.
3. If the file does not match, Ascp compares it with the next rule and repeats the process for each rule until a match is found or until all rules have been tried.
4. If the file never matches any exclude rules, it is included in the transfer.
5. The next file or directory in the transfer list is then compared to the filtering rules until all eligible files are evaluated.

#### Example

Consider the following command:

```
# ascp -N 'file2' -E 'file[0-9]' /images/icons/ user1@examplehost:/tmp
```

Where `/images/icons/` is the source.

If `/images/icons/` contains `file1`, `file2`, and `fileA`, the filtering rules are applied as follows:

1. `file1` is compared with the first rule (`-N 'file2'`) and does not match so filtering continues.
2. `file1` is compared with the second rule (`-E 'file[0-9]'`) and matches, so it is excluded from the transfer.
3. `file2` is compared with the first rule and matches, so it is included in the transfer and filtering stops for `file2`.
4. `fileA` is compared with the first rule and does not match so filtering continues.
5. `fileA` is compared with the second rule and does not match. Because no rules exclude it, `fileA` is included in the transfer.

**Note:** If the filtering rules ended with `-N '/* */' -E '/* */'`, then `fileA` would be excluded because it was not "protected" by an include rule.

## Rule Patterns

Rule patterns (globs) use standard globbing syntax that includes wildcards and special characters, as well as several Aspera extensions to the standard.

- **Character case:** Case always matters, even if the file system does not enforce such a distinction. For example, on Windows FAT or NTFS file systems and macOS HPFS+, a file system search for "DEBUG" returns files "Debug" and "debug". In contrast, Ascp filter rules use exact comparison, such that "debug" does not match "Debug". To match both, use "[Dd]ebug".
- **Partial matches:** With globs, unlike standard regular expressions, the entire filename or directory name must match the pattern. For example, the pattern `abc*f` matches `abcdef` but not `abcdefg`.

## Standard Globbing: Wildcards and Special Characters

/	The only recognized path separator.
\	Quotes any character literally, including itself. \ is exclusively a quoting operator, not a path separator.
*	Matches zero or more characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
?	Matches any single character, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
[ ... ]	Matches exactly one of a set of characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
[ ^... ]	When ^ is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ !... ]	When ! is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ x-x ]	Matches exactly one of a range of characters.
[ :xxxxx: ]	For details about this type of wildcard, see any POSIX-standard guide to globbing.

## Globbing Extensions: Wildcards and Special Characters

no / or * at end of pattern	Matches files only.
/ at end of pattern	Matches directories only. With <code>-N</code> , no files under matched directories or their subdirectories are included in the transfer. All subdirectories are still included, although their files will not be included. However, with <code>-E</code> , excluding a directory also excludes all files and subdirectories under it.
* or /** at end of pattern	Matches both directories and files.
/**	Like <code>*</code> but also matches "/" and the . in "/. ".
/ at start of pattern	Must match the entire string from the root of the transfer set. (Note: The leading / does not refer to the system root or the docroot.)

## Standard Globbing Examples

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/	<code>abc/def/xyz</code>	<code>abc/def/xyz</code>	<code>abc/def</code>
\	<code>abc\?</code>	<code>abc?</code>	<code>abc\?</code> <code>abc/D</code> <code>abcD</code>
*	<code>abc*f</code>	<code>abcdef</code> <code>abc.f</code>	<code>abc/f</code> <code>abcefg</code>
?	<code>abc??</code>	<code>abcde</code> <code>abc.z</code>	<code>abcdef</code> <code>abc/d</code> <code>abc/.</code>

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
[ ... ]	[abc]def	adef cdef	abcdef ade
[^... ]	[^abc]def	zdef .def 2def	bdef /def /.def
[!... ]	[!abc]def	zdef .def 2def	cdef /def /.def
[:xxxx:]	[[:lower:]]def	cdef ydef	Adef 2def .def

### Globber Extension Examples

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/**	a/**/f	a/f a/.z/f a/d/e/f	a/d/f/ za/d/f
* at end of rule	abc*	abc/ abcfile	
** at end of rule	abc/**	abc/.file abc/d/e/	abc/
/ at end of rule	abc*/	abc/dir	abc/file
no / at end of rule	abc	abc (file)	abc/
/ at start of rule	/abc/def	/abc/def	xyz/abc/def

### Testing Your Filter Rules

If you plan to use filtering rules, it's best to test them first. An easy way to test filtering rules, or to learn how they work, is to set up source and destination directories and use `demo.asperasoft.com` as the Aspera server:

1. On your computer, create a set of directories and files (size can be small) that approximate a typical transfer file set. In the following example, the file set is in `/tmp/src`.
2. Upload the file set to the Aspera demo server (`demo.asperasoft.com`) with the following command:

```
# ascp /tmp/src aspera@demo.asperasoft.com:Upload/
```

Where the user is "aspera" and the target is the Upload directory. At the prompt, enter the password "demoaspera".

3. Create a destination directory on your computer, for example `/tmp/dest`.
4. Download your files from the demo server to `/tmp/dest` to test your filtering rules. For example:

```
# ascp -N 'wxy/**' -E 'def' aspera@demo.asperasoft.com:Upload/src/ /tmp/dest
```

5. Compare the destination directory with the source to determine if the filter behaved as expected.

```
$ diff -r dest/ src/
```

The `diff` output shows the missing files and directories (those that were not transferred).

### Example Filter Rules

The example rules below are based on running a command such as the following to download a directory AAA from `demo.asperasoft.com` to `/tmp/dest`:

```
# ascp rules aspera@demo.asperasoft.com:Upload/AAA /tmp/dest
```

The examples below use the following file set:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
```

```
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

Key for interpreting example results below:

```
< xxx/yyy = Excluded
xxx/yyy = Included
zzz/ = directory name
zzz = filename
```

1. Transfer everything except files and directories starting with ".":

```
-N '*' -E 'AAA/**'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
```

2. Exclude directories and files whose names start with wxy:

```
-E 'wxy*'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

3. Include directories and files that start with "wxy" if they fall directly under AAA:

```
-N 'wxy*' -E 'AAA/**'
```

Results:

```
AAA/wxy/
AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
```

```
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

4. Include directories and files at any level that start with `wxy`, but do not include dot-files, dot-directories, or any files under the `wxy` directories (unless they start with `wxy`). However, subdirectories under `wxy` will be included:

```
-N '*/wxy*' -E 'AAA/**'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/def      *
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

\* Even though `wxy` is included, `def` is excluded because it's a file.

5. Include `wxy` directories and files at any level, even those starting with `". "`:

```
-N '*/wxy*' -N '*/wxy/**' -E 'AAA/**'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
```

6. Exclude directories and files starting with `wxy`, but only those found at a specific location in the tree:

```
-E '/AAA/abc/wxy*'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/def
AAA/abc/.def
AAA/abc/.wxy/def
AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
AAA/wxyfile
AAA/wxy/xyx/
AAA/wxy/xyxfile
< AAA/abc/wxy/def
< AAA/abc/wxy/.def
< AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
```

7. Include the `wxy` directory at a specific location, and include all its subdirectories and files, including those starting with `". "`:

```
-N 'AAA/abc/wxy/**' -E 'AAA/**'
```

Results:

```
AAA/abc/wxy/def
AAA/abc/wxy/.def
AAA/abc/wxy/tuv/def
< AAA/abc/def
< AAA/abc/.def
< AAA/abc/.wxy/def
< AAA/abc/xyz/def/wxy
< AAA/wxyfile
< AAA/wxy/xyx/
< AAA/wxy/xyxfile
```

## Symbolic Link Handling

When transferring files using FASP (the Aspera GUI, `ascp`, `ascp4`, or `async`), you can configure how the server and client handle symbolic links.

**Note:** Symbolic links are not supported on Windows. Server settings are ignored on Windows servers. If the transfer destination is a Windows computer, the only supported option that the client can use is **skip**.

### Symbolic Link Handling Options and their Behavior

- **Follow:** Follow a symbolic link and transfer the contents of the linked file or directory as long as the link target is in the user's docroot.
- **Follow\_wide** (Server only): For downloads, follow a symbolic link and transfer the contents of the linked file or directory **even if the link target is outside of the user's docroot**. Use caution with this setting because it might allow transfer users to access sensitive files on the server.
- **Create** (Server only): If the client requests to copy symbolic links in an upload, create the symbolic links on the server.
- **None** (Server only): Prohibit clients from creating symbolic links on the server; with this setting clients can only request to follow or skip symbolic links.
- **Copy** (Client only): Copy only the symbolic link. If a file with the same name exists at the destination, **the symbolic link does not replace the file**.
- **Copy+force** (Client only): Copy only the symbolic link. If a file with the same name exists at the destination, **the symbolic link replaces the file**. If the file of the same name at the destination is a symbolic link to a directory, it is not replaced.

**Note:** A4 and Sync do not support the copy+force option.

- **Skip** (Client only): Skip symbolic links. Neither the link nor the file to which it points are transferred.

Symbolic link handling depends on the server configuration, the client handling request, and the direction of transfer, as described in the following tables. Multiple values can be set on the server as a comma-delimited list, such as the default "follow,create". In this case, the options are logically ORed based on the client's handling request.

### Send from Client to Server (Upload)

	Server setting = create, follow (default)	Server setting = create	Server setting = follow	Server setting = follow_wide	Server setting = none
Client setting = follow	Follow	Follow	Follow	Follow	Follow

	Server setting = create, follow (default)	Server setting = create	Server setting = follow	Server setting = follow_wide	Server setting = none
(default for ascp and ascp4)					
<b>Client setting = copy</b> (default for async)	Copy	Copy	Skip	Skip	Skip
<b>Client setting = copy+force</b>	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Skip	Skip	Skip
<b>Client setting = skip</b>	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip

### Receive to Client from Server (Download)

	Server setting = create, follow (default)	Server setting = create	Server setting = follow	Server setting = follow_wide	Server setting = none
<b>Client setting = follow</b> (default for ascp and ascp4)	Follow	Skip	Follow	Follow even if the target is outside the user's docroot.	Skip
<b>Client setting = copy</b> (default for async)	Copy	Copy	Copy	Copy	Copy
<b>Client setting = copy+force</b>	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.
<b>Client setting = skip</b>	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip

## Server and Client Configuration

### Server Configuration

In the GUI, go to **Configuration > File Handling** and set a value for **Symbolic Link Actions** (see also [File Handling Configuration](#) on page 57). Combinations of actions must be set from the command line using `asconfigurator` or manually editing `aspera.conf`.

To set symbolic link handling globally or per user, run the appropriate command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;symbolic_links,value"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;symbolic_links,value"
```

For more information, see [aspera.conf - File System Configuration](#) on page 108.

### Client Configuration

Transfers initiated in the GUI request that symbolic links be followed. This cannot be adjusted. To specify symbolic link handling on the command line (with `ascp`, `ascp4`, or `async`), use `--symbolic-links=option`.

## Creating SSH Keys (Command Line)

Public key authentication (SSH Key) is a more secure alternative to password authentication that allows users to avoid entering or storing a password, or sending it over the network. Public key authentication uses the client computer to generate the key-pair (a public key and a private key). The public key is then provided to the remote computer's administrator to be installed on that machine.

**Note:** You can use the application GUI to create SSH keys or import existing keys for use with a selected user account. For instructions, see [Creating SSH Keys in the GUI](#) on page 161.

If you are using this machine as a client to connect to other Aspera servers with public key authentication, you can create key-pairs from the command line, as follows:

1. Create a `.ssh` directory in your home directory if it does not already exist:

```
$ mkdir /home/username/.ssh
```

Go to the `.ssh` folder:

```
$ cd /home/username/.ssh
```

2. Run `ssh-keygen` to generate an SSH key-pair.

Run the following command in the `.ssh` folder to create a key pair. For `key_type`, specify either RSA (`rsa`) or ECDSA (`ecdsa`). At the prompt for the key-pair's filename, press ENTER to use the default name `id_rsa` or `id_ecdsa`, or enter a different name, such as your username. For a passphrase, either enter a password, or press return twice to leave it blank:

```
# ssh-keygen -t key_type
```

**Note:** When you run `ascp` in FIPS mode (`<fips_enabled>` is set to `true` in `aspera.conf`), and you use passphrase-protected SSH keys, you must either (1) use keys generated by running `ssh-keygen` in a FIPS-enabled system, or (2) convert existing keys to a FIPS-compatible format using a command such as the following:

```
# openssl pkcs8 -topk8 -v2 aes128 -in id_rsa -out new-id_rsa
```

3. Retrieve the public key file.

The key-pair is generated to your home directory's `.ssh` folder. For example, assuming you generated the key with the default name `id_rsa`:

```
/home/username/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
```

Provide the public key file (for example, `id_rsa.pub`) to your server administrator so that it can be set up for your server connection. The instructions for installing the public key on the server can be found in the [Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server](#) on page 38; however, the server may be installed on an operating system that is different from the one where your client has been installed.

4. Start a transfer using public key authentication with the `ascp` command.

To transfer files using public key authentication on the command line, use the option `-i private_key_file`. For example:

```
$ ascp -T -l 10M -m 1M -i ~/.ssh/id_rsa myfile.txt jane@10.0.0.2:/space
```

In this example, you are connecting to the server (10.0.0.2, directory `/space`) with the user account `jane` and the private key `~/.ssh/id_rsa`.



## Reporting Checksums

File checksums are useful for trouble-shooting file corruption, allowing you to determine at what point in the transfer file corruption occurred. Aspera servers can report source file checksums that are calculated on-the-fly during transfer and then sent from the source to the destination.

To support checksum reporting, the transfer must meet both of the following requirements:

- Both the server and client computers must be running HST Server (formerly Enterprise Server and Connect Server) or HST Endpoint (formerly Point-to-Point Client) version 3.4.2 or higher.
- The transfer must be encrypted. Encryption is enabled by default.

The user on the destination can calculate a checksum for the received file and compare it (manually or programmatically) to the checksum reported by the sender. The checksum reported by the source can be retrieved in the destination logs, a manifest file, in IBM Aspera Console, or as an environment variable. Instructions for comparing checksums follow the instructions for enabling checksum reporting.

Checksum reporting is disabled by default. Enable and configure checksum reporting on the server by using the following methods:

- Edit `aspera.conf` with `asconfigurator`.
- Set options in the client GUI.
- Set `ascp` command-line options (per-transfer configuration).

Command-line options override the settings in `aspera.conf` and the GUI.

**Important:** When checksum reporting is enabled, transfers of very large files (>TB) take a long time to resume because the entire file must be reread.

### Overview of Checksum Configuration Options

<b>asconfigurator Option</b> <b>GUI Setting</b> <b>ascp Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>file_checksum</code> File checksum method <code>--file-checksum=type</code>	Enable checksum reporting and specify the type of checksum to calculate for transferred files.  <code>any</code> - Allow the checksum format to be whichever format the client requests. (Default in <code>aspera.conf</code> and the GUI) <code>md5</code> - Calculate and report an MD5 checksum. <code>sha1</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-1 checksum. <code>sha256</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-256 checksum. <code>sha384</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-384 checksum. <code>sha512</code> - Calculate and report a SHA-512 checksum.  <b>Note:</b> The default value for the <code>ascp</code> option is <code>none</code> , in which case the reported checksum is the one configured on the server, if any.
<code>file_manifest</code> File Manifest <code>--file_manifest=output</code>	The file manifest is a file that contains a list of content that was transferred in a transfer session. The file name of the file manifest is automatically generated from the transfer session ID.  When set to <code>none</code> , no file manifest is created. (Default)  When set to <code>text</code> , a text file is generated that lists all files in each transfer session.

asconfigurator Option GUI Setting ascp Option	Description
file_manifest_path File Manifest Path --file_manifest_path= <i>path</i>	The location where manifest files are written. The location can be an absolute path or a path relative to the transfer user's home directory. If no path is specified (default), the file is generated under the destination path at the receiver, and under the first source path at the sender.  <b>Note:</b> File manifests can be stored only locally. Thus, if you are using S3 or other non-local storage, you must specify a local manifest path.

### Enabling checksum reporting by editing `aspera.conf`

To enable checksum reporting, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_checksum,checksum"
```

To enable and configure the file manifest where checksum report data is stored, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest,text"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_manifest_path,filepath"
```

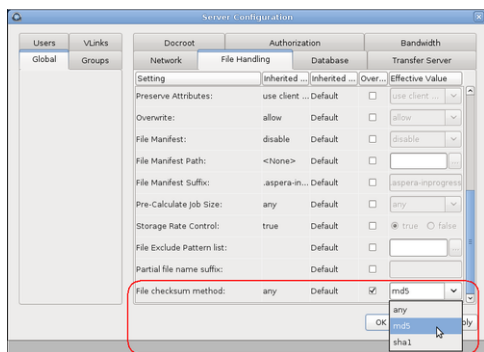
These commands create lines in `aspera.conf` as shown in the following example, where checksum type is md5, file manifest is enabled, and the path is `/tmp`.

```
<file_system>
...
<file_checksum>md5</file_checksum>
<file_manifest>text</file_manifest>
<file_manifest_path>/tmp</file_manifest_path>
...
</file_system>
```

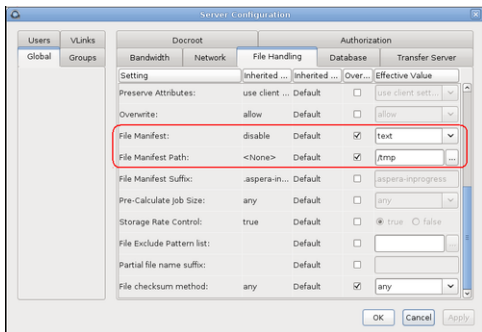
### Enabling checksum reporting from the GUI

Click **Configuration** to open the **Server Configuration** window. Select the **Global**, **Groups**, or **Users** tab, depending on whether you want to enable checksum reporting for all users, or for a particular group or user.

Under the **File Handling** tab, locate the setting for **File checksum method**. Check the override box and for the effective value, select any, md5, sha1, sha256, sha384, or sha512.



To enable the file manifest, select the override check box for **File Manifest** and set the effective value to **text**. To set the path, select the override check box for **File Manifest Path** and set the effective value to the folder in which you want the manifest files saved.



In the examples above, the manifest is generated when files are transferred and saved as a text file called `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the directory `/tmp`.

### Enabling checksum reporting in an ascp session

To enable checksum reporting on a per-transfer-session basis, run `ascp` with the `--file-checksum=hash` option, where `hash` is `sha1`, `md5`, `sha-512`, `sha-384`, `sha-256`, or `none` (the default).

Enable the manifest with `--file-manifest=output` where `output` is either `text` or `none`. Set the path to the manifest file with `--file-manifest-path=path`.

For example:

```
# ascp --file-checksum=md5 --file-manifest=text --file-manifest-path=/
tmp file aspera_user_1@189.0.202.39:/destination_path
```

### Setting up a Pre/Post-processing Script

An alternative to enabling and configuring the file manifest to collect checksum reporting is to set up a pre/post-processing script to report the values.

The checksum of a transferred file is stored in the pre/post environment variable `FILE_CSUM`, which can be used in pre/post scripts to output file checksums. For example, the following script outputs the checksum to the file `/tmp/cksum.log`:

```
#!/bin/bash
if [ $TYPE == File ]; then
  if [ $STARTSTOP == Stop ]; then
    echo "The file is: $FILE" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    echo "The file checksum is: $FILE_CSUM" >> /tmp/cksum.log
    chmod 777 $FILE
  fi
fi
```

For information on pre- and post-processing scripts and environment variables, see [File Pre- and Post-Processing \(Prepost\)](#) on page 137.

### Comparing Checksums

If you open a file that you downloaded with Aspera and find that it is corrupted, you can determine when the corruption occurred by comparing the checksum that is reported by Aspera to the checksums of the files on the destination and on the source.

1. Retrieve the checksum that was calculated by Aspera as the file was transferred.

- If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path as part of an `ascp` transfer or pre/post processing script, the checksums are in that file in the specified location.
- If you specified a file manifest and file manifest path in the GUI or `aspera.conf`, the checksums are in a file that is named `aspera-transfer-transfer_id-manifest.txt` in the specified location.

2. Calculate the checksum of the corrupted file. This example uses the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

```
# md5sum filepath
```

3. Compare the checksum reported by Aspera with the checksum that you calculated for the corrupted file.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred as the file was written to the destination. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted. If it is corrupted, compare the checksums again. If they do not match, investigate the write process or attempt another download. If they match, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, then corruption might have occurred as the file was read from the source. Continue to the next step.
4. Calculate the checksums for the file on the source. These examples use the MD5 checksum method; replace MD5 with the appropriate checksum method if you use a different one.

Windows:

```
> CertUtil -hashfile filepath MD5
```

Mac OS X:

```
$ md5 filepath
```

Linux and Linux on z Systems:

```
# md5sum filepath
```

AIX:

```
# csum -h MD5 filepath
```

Solaris:

```
# digest -a md5 -v filepath
```

5. Compare the checksum of the file on the source with the one reported by Aspera.
  - If they do not match, then corruption occurred when the file was read from the source. Download the file again and confirm that it is not corrupted on the destination. If it is corrupted, continue to the next step.
  - If they match, confirm that the source file is not corrupted. If the source file is corrupted, replace it with an uncorrupted one, if possible, and then download the file again.

## Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)

---

Aspera clients can set their transfers to encrypt content that they upload to a server while it is in transit and stored on the server, a process known as client-side encryption-at-rest (EAR). The client specifies an encryption password and the files are uploaded to the server with a `.aspera-env` extension. Anyone downloading these `.aspera-env` files must have the password to decrypt them, and decryption can occur as the files are downloaded or later once they are physically moved to a computer with no network connection.

### Implementation Notes:

- Client-side and server-side EAR can be used simultaneously, in which case files are doubly encrypted on the server.
- Servers can require client-side encryption. In this case, transfers that do not use client-side EAR fail with the error message, "Error: Server aborted session: Server requires content protection."
- Client-side encryption-at-rest is supported only for `ascp` transfers, and is not supported for `ascp4` or `async` transfers.

## Using Client-Side EAR

Client-side EAR can be set in the GUI or in the `ascp` command line.

**GUI:** Go to **Connections > connection\_name > Security**. Select **Encrypt uploaded files with a password** and set the password. Select **Decrypt password-protected files downloaded** and enter the password.

**Ascp command line:** First, set the encryption and decryption password as the environment variable `ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS`:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=password
```

For uploads (`--mode=send`), use `--file-crypt=encrypt`. For downloads (`--mode=recv`), use `--file-crypt=decrypt`.

```
# ascp --mode=send --file-crypt=encrypt source_file user@host:/remote_destination
# ascp --mode=recv --file-crypt=decrypt user@host:/source_path/file.aspera-env local_destination
```

For more command line examples, see [Ascp General Examples](#) on page 196.

**Note:** When a transfer to HST Server falls back to HTTP or HTTPS, client-side EAR is no longer supported. If HTTP fallback occurs while uploading, then the files are NOT encrypted. If HTTP fallback occurs while downloading, then the files remain encrypted.

## Encrypting and Decrypting Files Outside of a Transfer

For particularly sensitive content, do not store unencrypted content on any computer with network access. Use an external drive to physically move encrypted files between computers. HST Server include the `asprotect` and `asunprotect` command-line tools that can be used to encrypt and decrypt files.

- To encrypt a file before moving it to a computer with network access, run the following command:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=password;/opt/aspera/bin/asprotect -
o file1.aspera-env file1
```

- To download client-side-encrypted files without decrypting them immediately, run the transfer without decryption enabled (clear **Decrypt password-protected files downloaded** in the GUI or do not specify `--file-crypt=decrypt` on the `ascp` command line).
- To decrypt encrypted files once they are on a computer with no network access, run the following command:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=password;/opt/aspera/bin/asunprotect -
o file1 file1.aspera-env
```

## Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options

Many command-line options are the same for `Ascp` and `Ascp 4`; however, some options are available for only one or the behavior of an option is different. The following table lists the options that are available only for `Ascp` or `Ascp 4`, and the options that are available with both. If the option behavior is different, the `Ascp` option has **\*\*** added to the end and the difference is described following the table.

Ascp	Ascp 4
-6	
-@ [range_low:range_high]	
-A, --version	-A, --version

Ascp	Ascp 4
--apply-local-docroot	
-C <i>nodeid:nodecount</i>	
-c <i>cipher</i>	-c <i>cipher</i>
--check-sshfp= <i>fingerprint</i>	
	--chunk-size= <i>bytes</i>
	--compare= <i>method</i>
	--compression= <i>method</i>
	--compression-hint= <i>num</i>
-D   -DD   -DDD	
-d	
	--delete-before
--delete-before-transfer**	--delete-before-transfer**
--dest64	
-E <i>pattern</i>	-E <i>pattern</i>
-e <i>prepost_filepath</i>	
	--exclude-newer-than= <i>mtime</i>
	--exclude-older-than= <i>mtime</i>
-f <i>config_file</i>	
	--faspmgr-io
--file-checksum= <i>hash</i>	
--file-crypt={ <i>encrypt decrypt</i> }	
--file-list= <i>filepath**</i>	--file-list= <i>filepath**</i>
--file-manifest={ <i>none text</i> }	
--file-manifest-path= <i>directory</i>	
--file-manifest-inprogress-suffix= <i>suffix</i>	
--file-pair-list= <i>filepath</i>	
-G <i>write_size</i>	
-g <i>read_size</i>	
-h, --help	-h, --help
-i <i>private_key_file_path**</i>	-i <i>private_key_file_path</i>
-K <i>probe_rate</i>	
-k {0 1 2 3}	-k {0 1 2 3}
--keepalive	--keepalive
-l <i>max_rate</i>	-l <i>max_rate</i>

Ascp	Ascp 4
-L <i>local_log_dir[:size]</i>	-L <i>local_log_dir[:size]</i>
-m <i>min_rate</i>	-m <i>min_rate</i>
	--memory= <i>bytes</i>
	--meta-threads= <i>num</i>
--mode={ <i>send recv</i> }	--mode={ <i>send recv</i> }
--move-after-transfer= <i>archivedir</i>	
--multi-session-threshold= <i>threshold</i>	
-N <i>pattern</i>	-N <i>pattern</i>
	--no-open
	--no-read
	--no-write
-O <i>fasp_port</i>	-O <i>fasp_port</i>
--overwrite= <i>method**</i>	--overwrite= <i>method**</i>
-P <i>ssh-port</i>	-P <i>ssh-port</i>
-p	-p
--partial-file-suffix= <i>suffix</i>	
--policy={ <i>fixed high fair low</i> }	--policy={ <i>fixed high fair low</i> }
--precalculate-job-size	
--preserve-access-time	
--preserve-acls= <i>mode</i>	
--preserve-creation-time	
--preserve-file-owner-gid	--preserve-file-owner-gid
--preserve-file-owner-uid	--preserve-file-owner-uid
--preserve-modification-time	
--preserve-source-access-time	
--preserve-xattrs= <i>mode</i>	
--proxy= <i>proxy_url</i>	
-q	-q
-R <i>remote_log_dir</i>	-R <i>remote_log_dir</i>
	--read-threads= <i>num</i>
	--remote-memory= <i>bytes</i>
--remote-preserve-acls= <i>mode</i>	
--remote-preserve-xattrs= <i>mode</i>	
--remove-after-transfer	

Ascp	Ascp 4
--remove-empty-directories	
--remove-empty-source-directory	
	--resume (similar to -k)
--retry-timeout=secs	
-S <i>remote_ascp</i>	
--save-before-overwrite	
	--scan-threads= <i>num</i>
--source-prefix= <i>prefix</i>	
--source-prefix64= <i>prefix</i>	
	--sparse-file
--src-base= <i>prefix</i>	--src-base= <i>prefix</i>
--symbolic-links= <i>method</i> **	--symbolic-links= <i>method</i> **
-T	-T
-u <i>user_string</i>	-u <i>user_string</i>
--user= <i>username</i>	--user= <i>username</i>
-v	
-W <i>token_string</i>   @ <i>token_filepath</i>	
-w{r f}	
-X <i>rexmsg_size</i>	-X <i>rexmsg_size</i>
-Z <i>dgram_size</i>	-Z <i>dgram_size</i>

### Differences in Option Behavior

#### **--delete-before-transfer**

With `ascp4`, `--delete-before-transfer` can be used with URI storage. URI storage is not supported for this option in `ascp`.

#### **--file-list**

`ascp` automatically applies `-d` if the destination folder does not exist. With `ascp4`, you must specify `-d`, otherwise all the files in the file list are written to a single file.

#### **-i (SSH key authentication)**

With `ascp`, the argument for `-i` can be just the file name of the private key file and `ascp` automatically looks in the `.ssh` directory of the user's home directory. With `ascp4`, the full or relative path to the private key file must be specified.

#### **--overwrite=method**

The default overwrite method is "diff" for `ascp` and "always" for `ascp4`.

#### **--symbolic-links**

Both `ascp` and `ascp4` support follow, copy, and skip, but only `ascp` supports copy+force.



## Ascp FAQs

Answers to some common questions about controlling transfer behavior, such as bandwidth usage, resuming files, and overwriting files.

### 1. How do I control the transfer speed?

You can specify a transfer policy that determines how a FASP transfer utilizes the network resource, and you can specify target and minimum transfer rates where applicable. In an `ascp` command, use the following flags to specify transfer policies that are fixed, fair, high, or low:

Policy	Command template
Fixed	<code>--policy=fixed -l target_rate</code>
Fair	<code>--policy=fair -l target_rate -m min_rate</code>
High	<code>--policy=high -l target_rate -m min_rate</code>
Low	<code>--policy=low -l target_rate -m min_rate</code>

The policies have the following characteristics:

- `high` - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The `high` policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.
- `fair` - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The `fair` policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.
- `low` - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.
- `fixed` - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the `fixed` policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The `fixed` policy requires a maximum (target) rate.

### 2. What transfer speed should I expect? How do I know if something is "wrong" with the speed?

Aspera's FASP transport has no theoretical throughput limit. Other than the network capacity, the transfer speed may be limited by rate settings and resources of the computers. To verify that your system's FASP transfer can fulfill the maximum bandwidth capacity, prepare a client computer to connect to a server, and test the maximum bandwidth.

**Note:** This test typically occupies most of a network's bandwidth. Aspera recommends this test be performed on a dedicated file transfer line or during a time of low network activity.

On the client computer, start a transfer with fixed bandwidth policy. Start with a lower transfer rate and gradually increase the transfer rate toward the network bandwidth (for example, 1 MB, 5 MB, 10 MB, and so on). Monitor the transfer rate; at its maximum, it should be slightly below your available bandwidth:

```
$ ascp -l 1m source-file destination
```

To improve the transfer speed, also consider upgrading the following hardware components:

Component	Description
Hard disk	The I/O throughput, the disk bus architecture (such as RAID, IDE, SCSI, ATA, and Fiber Channel).
Network I/O	The interface card, the internal bus of the computer.
CPU	Overall CPU performance affects the transfer, especially when encryption is enabled.

### 3. How do I ensure that if the transfer is interrupted or fails to finish, it will resume without re-transferring the files?

Use the `-k` flag to enable resume, and specify a resume rule:

- `-k 0` – Always re-transfer the entire file.
- `-k 1` – Compare file attributes and resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.
- `-k 2` – Compare file attributes and the sparse file checksums; resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.
- `-k 3` – Compare file attributes and the full file checksums; resume if they match, and re-transfer if they do not.

Corruption or deletion of the `.asp-meta` file associated with an incomplete transfer will often result in a permanently unusable destination file even if the file transfer resumed and successfully transferred.

### 4. How does Aspera handle symbolic links?

The `ascp` command follows symbolic links by default. This can be changed using `--symbolic-links=method` with the following options:

- `follow` - Follow symbolic links and transfer the linked files. (Default)
- `copy` - Copy only the alias file. If a file with the same name is found at the destination, the symbolic link is not copied.
- `copy+force` - Copy only the alias file. If a file (not a directory) with the same name is found at the destination, the alias replaces the file. If the destination is a symbolic link to a directory, it's not replaced.
- `skip` - Skip symbolic links. Do not copy the link or the file it points to.

**Important:** On Windows, the only option is `skip`.

Symbolic link handling also depends on the server configuration and the transfer direction. For more information, see [Symbolic Link Handling](#) on page 214.

### 5. What are my choices for overwriting files on the destination computer?

In `ascp`, you can specify the `--overwrite=method` rule with the following method options:

- `never` - Never overwrite the file. However, if the parent folder is not empty, its access, modify, and change times may still be updated.
- `always` - Always overwrite the file.
- `diff` - Overwrite the file if different from the source. If a complete file at the destination is the same as a file on the source, it is not overwritten. Partial files are overwritten or resumed depending on the resume policy.
- `diff+older` - Overwrite the file if older and also different than the source. For example, if the destination file is the same as the source, but with a different timestamp, it will not be overwritten. Plus, if the destination file is different than the source, but newer, it will not be overwritten.
- `older` - Overwrite the file if its timestamp is older than the source timestamp.

**Interaction with resume policy (-k):** If the overwrite method is `diff` or `diff+older`, difference is determined by the resume policy (`-k {0|1|2|3}`). If `-k 0` or no `-k` is specified, the source and destination files are always considered different and the destination file is always overwritten. If `-k 1`, the source and destination files are compared based on file attributes (currently file size). If `-k 2`, the source and destination files are compared based on sparse checksums. If `-k 3`, the source and destination files are compared based on full checksums.

## ascp4: Transferring from the Command Line with Ascp 4

---

Ascp 4 is a FASP transfer binary similar to Ascp but it has different strengths as well as capabilities that are unavailable with Ascp.

### Introduction to Ascp 4

---

Ascp 4 is a FASP transfer binary that is optimized for sending extremely large sets of individual files. The executable, `ascp4`, is similar to `ascp` and shares many of the same options and capabilities, in addition to data streaming capabilities.

Both Ascp 4 and Ascp are automatically installed with IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server, IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Endpoint, and IBM Aspera Desktop Client.

As installed, Ascp is used for transfers started from the GUI and Ascp 4 transfers can only be initiated from the command line. For information on how to make GUI-initiated transfers use Ascp 4, see [Using Ascp 4 from the GUI](#) on page 242.

#### Ascp 4 Streaming Transfers

Ascp 4 can be used for high-speed data stream transfers. For more information, see [Data Streaming Command Syntax](#) on page 237.

HST Server and HST Endpoint licenses prohibit users from streaming video or media. A separate product, IBM Aspera Streaming for Video, is available for video streaming. For more information, see the [IBM Aspera Streaming for Video User Guide](#).

#### Required Configuration for Multicast-to-Multicast Streaming

The transfer user who authenticates the data multicast stream transfer must have no `docroot` configured in `aspera.conf`. A file restriction can be set instead to restrict access.

Run the following command to unset a `docroot` and set a file restriction:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,AS_NULL;file_restriction,|restriction"
```

The restriction can be set to allow all access (\*) or limited by protocol, hostname or path:

Restriction	Format Example
By protocol	udp://* tcp://*
By protocol and hostname	udp://hostname*
By protocol, hostname, and port	tcp://hostname:5000*

### Ascp 4 Command Reference

---

Supported environment variables, the general syntax, and command options for `ascp4` are described in the following sections. `ascp4` exits with a 0 on success or a 1 on error. The error code is logged in the `ascp4` log file.

**Note:** Not all `ascp` options are available with `ascp4`. For more information, see [Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options](#) on page 221. Additionally, `ascp4` transfers fail if the user's `docroot` is a symbolic link, whereas `ascp` supports symbolic link `docroots`.

## ascp4 Syntax

```
ascp4 options [[user@]srcHost:]source_file1[,source_file2,...]
           [[user@]destHost:]dest_path
```

### User

The username of the Aspera transfer user can be specified as part of the as part of the source or destination, whichever is the remote server or with the `--user` option. If you do not specify a username for the transfer, the local username is authenticated by default.

**Note:** If you are authenticating on a Windows machine as a domain user, the transfer server strips the domain from the username. For example, `Administrator` is authenticated rather than `DOMAIN\Administrator`. Thus, you must specify the domain explicitly.

### Source and destination paths

- If there are multiple source arguments, then the target path must be a directory.
- To describe filepaths, use single quotes ( ' ) and forward slashes ( / ) on all platforms.
- To transfer to the transfer user's docroot, specify "." as the destination.
- Avoid the following characters in filenames: / \ " : ' ? > < & \* | .
- If the destination is a symbolic link, then the file is written to the target of the symbolic link. However, if the symbolic link path is a relative path to a file (not a directory) and a partial file name suffix is configured on the receiver, then the destination path is relative to the user's home directory. Files within directories that are sent to symbolic links that use relative paths are not affected.

**URI paths:** URI paths are supported, but only with the following restrictions:

- If the source paths are URIs, they must all be in the same cloud storage account. No docroot (download), local docroot (upload), or source prefix can be specified.
- If a destination path is a URI, no docroot (upload) or local docroot (download) can be specified.
- The special schemes `stdio://` and `stdio-tar://` are supported only on the client side. They cannot be used as an upload destination or download source.
- If required, specify the URI passphrase as part of the URI or set it as an environment variable (`ASPERA_SRC_PASS` or `ASPERA_DST_PASS`, depending on the direction of transfer).

**UNC paths:** If the server is Windows and the path on the server is a UNC path (a path that points to a shared directory or file on Windows operating systems) then it can be specified in an `ascp4` command using one of the following conventions:

#### 1. UNC path that uses backslashes ( \ )

If the client side is a Windows machine, the UNC path can be used with no alteration. For example, `\192.168.0.10\temp`. If the client is not a Windows machine, every backslash in the UNC path must be replaced with two backslashes. For example, `\\192.168.0.10\temp`.

#### 2. UNC path that uses forward slashes ( / )

Replace each backslash in the UNC path with a forward slash. For example, if the UNC path is `\192.168.0.10\temp`, change it to `//192.168.0.10/temp`. This format can be used with any client-side operating system.

## Required File Access and Permissions

- Sources (for downloads) or destinations (for uploads) on the server must be in the transfer user's docroot or match one of the transfer user's file restrictions, otherwise the transfer stops and returns an error.
- The transfer user must have sufficient permissions to the sources or destinations, for example write access for the destination directory, otherwise the transfer stops and returns a permissions error.
- The transfer user must have authorization to do the transfer (upload or download), otherwise the transfer stops and returns a "management authorization refused" error.

- Files that are open for write by another process on a Windows source or destination cannot be transferred and return a "sharing violation" error. On Unix-like operating systems, files that are open for write by another process are transferred without reporting an error, but may produce unexpected results depending on what data in the file is changed and when relative to the transfer.

## Environment Variables

If needed, you can set the following environment variables for use with an `ascp4` session. The total size for environment variables depends on your operating system and transfer session. Aspera recommends that each environment variable value should not exceed 4096 characters.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_PASS=*password***

The password that is used for SSH authentication of the transfer user.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_TOKEN=*token***

Set the transfer user authorization token. Ascp 4 currently supports transfer tokens, which must be created by using `astoken` with the `--full-paths` option. For more information, see [Transfer Token Generation \(astoken\)](#) on page 438.

### **ASPERA\_SCP\_COOKIE=*cookie***

A cookie string that is passed to monitoring services.

### **ASPERA\_SRC\_PASS=*password***

The password that is used to authenticate to a URI source.

### **ASPERA\_DST\_PASS=*password***

Set the password that is used to authenticate to a URI destination.

## Ascp 4 Options

### **-A, --version**

Display version and license information.

### **-c {aes128|aes192|aes256|none}**

Encrypt in-transit file data using the specified cipher. This option overrides the `<encryption_cipher>` setting in `aspera.conf`.

### **--check-sshfp=*fingerprint***

Compare *fingerprint* to the server SSH host key fingerprint that is set with `<ssh_host_key_fingerprint>` in `aspera.conf`. Aspera fingerprint convention is to use a hex string without the colons; for example, `f74e5de9ed0d62feaf0616ed1e851133c42a0082`. For more information on SSH host key fingerprints, see [Securing Your SSH Server](#) on page 19.

### **--chunk-size=*bytes***

Perform storage read/write operations with the specified buffer size. Also use the buffer size as an internal transmission and compression block. Valid range: 4 KB - 128 MB. For transfers with object storage, use `--chunk-size=1048576` if chunk size is not configured on the server to ensure that the chunk size of `ascp4` and `Trapd` match.

### **--compare={size|size+mtime|md5|md5-sparse|sha1|sha1-sparse}method**

When using `--overwrite` and `--resume`, compare files with the specified method. If the `--overwrite` method is `diff` or `diff+older`, the default `--compare` method is `size`.

### **--compression={none|zlib|lz4}**

Compress file data inline. Default: `lz4`. If set to `zlib`, `--compression-hint` can be used to set the compression level.

### **--compression-hint=*num***

Compress file data to the specified level when `--compression` is set to an option that accepts compression level settings (currently only `zlib`). A lower value results in less, but faster, data

compression (0 = no compression). A higher value results in greater, slower compression. Valid values are -1 to 9, where -1 is "balanced". Default: -1.

**-D | -DD | -DDD**

Log at the specified debug level. With each D, an additional level of debugging information is written to the log. This option is not supported if the transfer user is restricted to aspshe ll.

**--delete-before, --delete-before-transfer**

Before transfer, delete files that exist at the destination but not at the source. The source and destination arguments must be directories that have matching names. Objects on the destination that have the same name but different type or size as objects on the source are not deleted. Do not use with multiple sources or `--keepalive`.

**-E *pattern***

Exclude files or directories from the transfer based on the specified pattern. Use the `-N` option (include) to specify exceptions to `-E` rules. Rules are applied in the order in which they are encountered, from left to right. The following symbols can be used in the pattern:

- `*` (asterisk) represents zero or more characters in a string, for example `*.tmp` matches `.tmp` and `abcde.tmp`.
- `?` (question mark) represents a single character, for example `t?p` matches `tmp` but not `temp`.

For details and examples, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

**Note:** When filtering rules are found in `aspera.conf`, they are applied *before* rules given on the command line (`-E` and `-N`).

**--exclude-newer-than=*mtime***

**--exclude-older-than=*mtime***

Exclude files (but not directories) from the transfer based on when the file was last changed. Positive *mtime* values are used to express time, in seconds, since the original system time (usually 1970-01-01 00:00:00). Negative *mtime* values (prefixed with "-") are used to express the number of seconds prior to the current time.

**--faspmgr-io**

Run `ascp4` in API mode using FASP manager I/O. `ascp4` reads FASPMGR4 commands from management and executes them. The FASPMGR4 commands are PUT/WRITE/STOP to open/write/close on a file on the server.

**--file-list=*filepath***

Transfer the files and directories that are listed in *filepath*. Only the files and directories are transferred; path information is not preserved at the destination. Each source must be specified on a separate line, for example:

```
src
src2
...
srcN
```

To read a file list from standard input, use "-" in place of *filepath* (as `ascp4 --file-list=-`...). UTF-8 file format is supported. Use with `-d` if the destination folder does not exist.

**Restrictions:**

- Paths in file lists cannot use `user@host:filepath` syntax. You must use `--user` with `--file-list`.
- Only one `--file-list` option is allowed per `ascp4` session. If multiple file lists are specified, all but the last are ignored.
- Only files and directories from the file list are transferred, and any additional source files or directories specified on the command line are ignored.

- If more than one read thread is specified (default is 2) for a transfer that uses `--file-list`, the files in the file list must be unique. Duplicates can produce unexpected results on the destination.
- Because multiple sources are being transferred, the destination must be a directory.
- If the source paths are URIs, the size of the file list cannot exceed 24 KB.

For very large file lists (~100 MB+), use with `--memory` to increase available buffer space.

**-h, --help**

Display the usage summary.

**--host=host**

Transfer to the specified host name or address. Requires `--mode`. This option can be used instead of specifying the host as part of the filename (as `hostname:filepath`).

**-i private\_key\_file**

Authenticate the transfer using public key authentication with the specified SSH private key file (specified with a full or relative path). The private key file is typically in the directory `$HOME/.ssh/`. If multiple `-i` options are specified, only the last one is used.

**-k {0|1|2|3}**

Enable the resumption of partially transferred files at the specified resume level. Default: 0. This option must be specified for your first transfer or it does not work for subsequent transfers. Resume levels:

- `-k 0`: Always re-transfer the entire file (same as `--overwrite=always`).
- `-k 1`: Compare file modification time and size and resume if they match (same as `--overwrite=diff --compare=size --resume`).
- `-k 2`: Compare sparse checksum and resume if they match (same as `--overwrite=diff --compare=md5-sparse --resume`).
- `-k 3`: Compare full checksum and resume if they match (same as `--overwrite=diff --compare=md5 --resume`).

**--keepalive**

Enable `ascp4` to run in persistent mode. This option enables a persistent session that does not require that source content and its destination are specified at execution. Instead, the persistent session reads source and destination paths through `mgmt` commands. Requires `--mode` and `--host`.

**-L local\_log\_dir[:size]**

Log to the specified directory on the client machine rather than the default directory. Optionally, set the size of the log file (default 10 MB).

**-l max\_rate**

Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. Default: 10 Mbps. This option accepts suffixes "G/g" for Giga, "M/m" for Mega, "K/k" for Kilo, and "P/p/%" for percentage. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the server target rate is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server `aspera.conf`, then the rate does not exceed the cap.

**-m min\_rate**

Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate. Default: 0. If this option is not set by the client, then the server's `aspera.conf` setting is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server `aspera.conf`, then the rate does not exceed the cap.

**--memory=bytes**

Allow the local `ascp4` process to use no more than the specified memory. Default: 256 MB. See also `--remote-memory`.

**--meta-threads=num**

Use the specified number of directory "creation" threads (receiver only). Default: 2.

**--mode={ send | recv }**

Transfer in the specified direction: `send` or `recv` (receive). Requires `--host`.

**-N pattern**

Protect ("include") files or directories from exclusion by any `-E` (exclude) options that follow it. Files and directories are specified using *pattern*. Each option-plus-pattern is a *rule*. Rules are applied in the order (left to right) in which they're encountered. Thus, `-N` rules protect files only from `-E` rules that follow them. Create patterns using standard globbing wildcards and special characters such as the following:

- `*` (asterisk) represents zero or more characters in a string, for example `*.tmp` matches `.tmp` and `abcde.tmp`.
- `?` (question mark) represents any single character, for example `t?p` matches `tmp` but not `temp`.

For details on specifying patterns and rules, including examples, see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

**Note:** Filtering rules can also be specified in `aspera.conf`. Rules found in `aspera.conf` are applied *before* any `-E` and `-N` rules specified on the command line.

**--no-open**

In test mode, do not actually open or write the contents of destination files.

**--no-read**

In test mode, do not read the contents of source files.

**--no-write**

In test mode, do not write the contents of destination files.

**-O fasp\_port**

Use the specified UDP port for FASP transfers. Default: 33001.

**--overwrite={ always | never | diff | diff+older | older }**

Overwrite files at the destination with source files of the same name based on the *method*. Default: `always`. Use with `--compare` and `--resume`. *method* can be the following:

- `always` – Always overwrite the file.
- `never` – Never overwrite the file. If the destination contains partial files that are older or the same as the source files and `--resume` is enabled, the partial files resume transfer. Partial files with checksums or sizes that differ from the source files are not overwritten.
- `diff` – Overwrite the file if it is different from the source, depending on the `compare` method (default is `size`). If the destination is object storage, `diff` has the same effect as `always`.

If `resume` is not enabled, partial files are overwritten if they are different from the source, otherwise they are skipped. If `resume` is enabled, only partial files with different sizes or checksums from the source are overwritten; otherwise, files resume.

- `diff+older` – Overwrite the file if it is older and different from the source, depending on the `compare` method (default is `size`). If `resume` is not enabled, partial files are overwritten if they are older and different from the source, otherwise they are skipped. If `resume` is enabled, only partial files that are different and older than the source are overwritten, otherwise they are resumed.
- `older` – Overwrite the file if its timestamp is older than the source timestamp.

**-P ssh-port**

Use the specified TCP port to initiate the FASP session. (Default: 22)

**-p**

Preserve file timestamps for access and modification time. Equivalent to setting `--preserve-modification-time`, `--preserve-access-time`, and `--preserve-creation-`



time. Timestamp support in object storage varies by provider; consult your object storage documentation to determine which settings are supported.

On Windows, modification time may be affected when the system automatically adjusts for Daylight Savings Time (DST). For details, see the Microsoft KB article, <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/129574>.

On Isilon IQ OneFS systems, access time (`atime`) is disabled by default. In this case, `atime` is the same as `mtime`. To enable the preservation of `atime`, run the following command:

```
# sysctl efs.bam.atime_enabled=1
```

#### **--policy={fixed|high|fair|low}**

Transfer according to the specified policy:

- `fixed` – Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network capacity. Content is transferred at a constant rate and the transfer finishes in a guaranteed time. The `fixed` policy can consume most of the network's bandwidth and is not recommended for most types of file transfers. This option requires a maximum (target) rate value (`-l`).
- `high` – Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as transfer with a fair policy. This option requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates (`-l` and `-m`).
- `fair` – Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. This option requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates (`-l` and `-m`).
- `low` – Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.

If `--policy` is not set, `ascp4` uses the server-side policy setting (`fair` by default).

#### **--preserve-access-time**

Preserve the file timestamps (currently the same as `-p`).

#### **--preserve-creation-time**

Preserve the file timestamps (currently the same as `-p`).

#### **--preserve-file-owner-gid**

#### **--preserve-file-owner-uid**

(Linux, UNIX, and macOS only) Preserve the group information (`gid`) or owner information (`uid`) of the transferred files. These options require that the transfer user is authenticated as a superuser.

#### **--preserve-modification-time**

Preserve the file timestamps (currently the same as `-p`).

#### **--preserve-source-access-time**

Preserve the file timestamps (currently the same as `-p`).

#### **-q**

Run `ascp4` in quiet mode. This option disables the progress display.

#### **-R remote\_log\_dir**

Log to the specified directory on the remote host rather than the default directory. **Note:** Client users that are restricted to `aspsell` are not allowed to use this option.

#### **--read-threads=num**

Use the specified number of storage "read" threads (sender only). Default: 2. To set "write" threads on the receiver, use `--write-threads`.

**Note:** If more than one read thread is specified for a transfer that uses `--file-list`, the files in the file list must be unique. Duplicates can produce unexpected results on the destination.

**`--remote-memory=bytes`**

Allow the remote `ascp4` process to use no more than the specified memory. Default: 256 MB.

**`--resume`**

Resume a transfer rather than re-transferring the content if partial files are present at the destination and they do not differ from the source file based on the `--compare` method. If the source and destination files do not match, then the source file is re-transferred. See `-k` for another way to enable resume.

**`--scan-threads=num`**

Use the specified number of directory "scan" threads (sender only). Default: 2.

**`--sparse-file`**

Enable `ascp4` to write sparse files to disk. This option prevents `ascp4` from writing zero content to disk for sparse files; `ascp4` writes a block to disk if even one bit is set in that block. If no bits are set in the block, `ascp4` does not write the block (`ascp4` blocks are 64 KB by default).

**`--src-base=prefix`**

Strip the specified prefix from each source path. The remaining portion of the source path is kept intact at the destination. Available only in send mode. For usage examples, see [Ascp File Manipulation Examples](#) on page 198.

**Use with URIs:** The `--src-base` option performs a character-to-character match with the source path. For object storage source paths, the prefix must specify the URI in the same manner as the source paths. For example, if a source path includes an embedded passphrase, the prefix must also include the embedded passphrase otherwise it will not match.

**`--symbolic-links={follow|copy|skip}`**

Handle symbolic links using the specified method. For more information on symbolic link handling, see [Symbolic Link Handling](#) on page 214. On Windows, the only option is `skip`. On other operating systems, this option takes following values:

- `follow` – Follow symbolic links and transfer the linked files. (Default)
- `copy` – Copy only the alias file. If a file with the same name exists on the destination, the symbolic link is not copied.
- `skip` – Skip symbolic links. Do not copy the link or the file it points to.

**`-T`**

Disable in-transit encryption for maximum throughput.

**`-u user_string`**

Define a user string for pre- and post-processing. This string is passed to the pre- and -post-processing scripts as the environment variable `$USERSTR`.

**`--user=username`**

Authenticate the transfer using the specified username. Use this option instead of specifying the username as part of the destination path (as `user@host:file`).

**Note:** If you are authenticating on a Windows machine as a domain user, the transfer server strips the domain from the username. For example, `Administrator` is authenticated rather than `DOMAIN\Administrator`. Thus, you must specify the domain explicitly.

**`--worker-threads=num`**

Use the specified number of worker threads for deleting files. On the receiver, each thread deletes one file or directory at a time. On the sender, each thread checks for the presences of one file or directory at a time. Default: 1.

**`--write-threads=num`**

Use the specified number of storage "write" threads (receiver only). Default: 2. To set "read" threads on the sender, use `--read-threads`.

For transfers to object or HDFS storage, write threads cannot exceed the maximum number of jobs that are configured for Trapd. Default: 15. To use more threads, open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/trap.properties` on the server and set `aspera.session.upload.max-jobs` to a number larger than the number of write threads. For example,

```
# Number of jobs allowed to run in parallel for uploads.
# Default is 15
aspera.session.upload.max-jobs=50
```

#### **-x** *rexmsg\_size*

Limit the size of retransmission requests to no larger than the specified size, in bytes. Max: 1440.

#### **-z** *dgram\_size*

Use the specified datagram size (MTU) for FASP transfers. Range: 296-65535 bytes. Default: the detected path MTU.

As of version 3.3, datagram size can be specified on the server by setting `<datagram_size>` in `aspera.conf`. The server setting overrides the client setting, unless the client is using a version of `ascp` that is older than 3.3, in which case the client setting is used. If the pre-3.3 client does not set `-z`, the datagram size is the discovered MTU and the server logs the message "LOG Peer client doesn't support alternative datagram size".

## Ascp 4 Transfers with Object Storage

---

Files that are transferred with object storage are sent in chunks through the Aspera Trapd service. By default, `ascp4` uses 64 KB chunks and Trapd uses 1 MB chunks; this mismatch in chunk size can cause `ascp4` transfers to fail.

To avoid this problem, take one of the following actions:

1. Set the chunk size (in bytes) in the server's `aspera.conf`. This value is used by both `ascp4` and Trapd, so the chunk sizes match.

To set a global chunk size, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_protocol_options_chunk_size,value"
```

Where *value* is between 256 KB (262144 bytes) and 1 MB (1048576 bytes).

To set a chunk size for the user, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name, username;transfer_protocol_options_chunk_size,value"
```

2. Set the chunk size in the client's `aspera.conf` to the Trapd chunk size.

If Trapd is using the default chunk size, run the following command to set the chunk size to 1 MB:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_protocol_options_chunk_size,1048576"
```

3. Set the chunk size in the client command line.

Run the `ascp4` session with the chunk size setting: `--chunk-size=1048576`.

## Ascp 4 Examples

---

The command options for `ascp4` are generally similar to those for `ascp`. The following examples demonstrate options that are unique to Ascp 4. These options enable reading management commands, transfer TCP and UDP data streams, and enable read/write concurrency.

For Ascp examples, see [Ascp Command Reference](#) on page 181 and [Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 200. See [Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options](#) on page 221 for differences in option availability and behavior.

- **Read FASP4 management commands**

Read management commands V4 from management port 5000 and execute the management commands. The management commands version 4 are PUT, WRITE and CLOSE.

```
# ascp4 -L /tmp/client-logs -R /tmp/server-logs --faspmgr-io -M 5000
localhost:/tmp
```

- **Streaming**

See [Ascp 4 Data Streaming Examples](#) on page 239.

- **Increase concurrency**

The following command runs `ascp4` with two scan threads and eight read threads on the client, and eight meta threads and 16 write threads on the server.

```
# ascp4 -L /tmp/logs -R /tmp/logs -llg --scan-threads=2 --read-threads=8
--write-threads=16 --meta-threads=8 /data/100K aspera@10.0.113.53:/data
```

## Built-in I/O Providers

---

Input/Output providers are library modules that abstract I/O scheme in Ascp 4 architecture. Ascp 4 has the following built-in I/O providers:

- file (as a simple path or `file://path`)
- TCP (as `tcp://192.168.120.11`)
- UDP (as `udp://233.3.3.3`)

### File provider

The local disk can be specified for `ascp4` I/O by using a simple path or URL that starts with `file`. The following paths identify the same file (`/test/ascp4.log`) on the disk:

```
file:///test/ascp4.log
/test/ascp4.log
file://localhost:/test/ascp4.log
```

Similarly, the following URLs identify the same file (`test/ascp4.log`) on the disk:

```
file:///test/ascp4.log
test/ascp4.log
```

### TCP provider

A TCP data stream can be used for `ascp4` I/O by specifying a URL that starts with `tcp`. `ascp4` reads TCP data from the source and writes TCP data on the destination. Use the following format to specify a TCP provider on the source or destination:

```
tcp://ip_address:port[?option=value[&option=value]]
```

The TCP provider of the sender can also be specified with the following format:

```
tcp://:port[?option=value[&option=value]]
```

With this format, `ascp4` listens on the specified port up to a specified time (`maxidle`, see the following description of options for TCP provider URLs).

The TCP provider URL accepts the following options:

```
port=N — Set the network port number, default: 0.
iosize=N — Specify the read/write size, default: 32 KB.
maxsize=N — Set the maximum stream length, in bytes, no default.
maxtime=N — Set the maximum stream duration, in seconds, no default.
maxidle=N — Set the maximum idle duration, in seconds, default: 10 sec.
rcvbufsz=N — Set the receive buffer size, default: 4 MB.
sndbufsz=N — Set the send buffer size, default: 4 MB.
ifaddr=ip_address — Specify the TCP connection interface address.
srcaddr=ip_address — Specify the TCP connection source-specific address.
```

## UDP provider

A UDP data stream can be specified for `ascp4` I/O by using a URL that starts with `udp`. If the UDP stream is a multicast IP address, then `ascp4` connects to the multicast address. `ascp4` reads the UDP datagrams on the source and writes UDP datagrams on the destination. A UDP-provider filepath has the following format:

```
udp://ip_address:port[?option=value[&option=value]]
```

The UDP provider URL accepts the following options:

```
pktbatch={0|1} — Enable packet batching in read/write. Default: 1.
maxsize=N — Set the maximum stream length. Default: unlimited.
maxtime=N — Set the maximum stream duration, in seconds. Default: unlimited.
maxidle=N — Set the maximum idle duration, in seconds. Default: unlimited.
rcvbufsz=N — Set the receive buffer size. Default: 10 MB.
sndbufsz=N — Set the send buffer size. Default: 10 MB.
ifaddr=ip_address — Set the multicast interface. Default: 0.0.0.0.
srcaddr=ip_address — Set the multicast source for IGMPv3 source-specific multicast.
ttl=N — Set the multicast time-to-live. Default: 1.
loopback=N — Set the multicast loopback. Default: 1.
dontfrag=N — Prevent fragmentation of outgoing packets. Default: 0.
```

## Data Streaming Command Syntax

---

The `ascp4` that is installed with HST Server can be used for data streaming as well as regular file transfers. The command line is similar to a regular `ascp4` file transfer, but the source and destination are URI paths. The license prohibits video streaming. A separate product, IBM Aspera Streaming for Video, is available for video streaming. For more information, see the [IBM Aspera Streaming for Video User Guide](#).

### Required Configuration for Multicast-to-Multicast Transfers

The transfer user who authenticates the multicast-to-multicast data stream transfer must have no `docroot` configured in `aspera.conf`. A file restriction can be set instead to restrict access.

Run the following command to unset a `docroot` and set a file restriction:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,AS_NULL;file_restriction,|restriction"
```

The restriction can be set to allow all access (\*) or limited by protocol, hostname or path:

Restriction	Format Example
By protocol	udp://* tcp://*
By protocol and hostname	udp://hostname*
By protocol, hostname, and port	tcp://hostname:5000*

## General Command Line Usage

```
# ascp4 -m minimum_rate -l target_rate --mode=mode --host=remote_hostname
--compression=none --user=username --read-threads=1 --write-
threads=1 input_uri output_uri
```

- ascp4 streaming supports two transfer directions: send and recv.
- The ascp4 command defaults to multiple threads, but for reliable and in-order transport of streams you must use only one read and write thread by specifying `--read-threads=1 --write-threads=1`.
- The data stream source and destination can be `udp://`, `tcp://`, or `file://`. For more information, see [Built-in I/O Providers](#) on page 236
- For command line examples, see [Ascp 4 Data Streaming Examples](#) on page 239.

## Recommended Rate Settings for Video Streams

ascp4 Option	Description	Recommendation
-m	Minimum rate	Take the encoding rate of the transport stream and add 1 Mbps.
-l	Target rate	Take the minimum rate and add 10% of the minimum rate.

For example, if the encoding rate is 10 Mbps, use the following settings:

```
# ascp4 -m 11M -l 13M ...
```

## Multicast URI Syntax

The input multicast URI and the output multicast URI uses the same syntax.

```
multicast_protocol_scheme://stream_ip_address:port?option=value&option=value...
```

The multicast protocol scheme can be either `udp` or `mcast`. If the IP address of your data stream is a multicast address, `ascp4` uses multicast regardless of the protocol scheme (in other words, both `udp` and `mcast` use multicast). In order to use unicast addresses, you must use the `udp` scheme.

You can configure properties of the stream by adding options to the URI after the question mark (?), each separated by an ampersand (&). The following table describes the supported options.

Option	Description	Default
<code>pktbatch={1 0}</code>	How to handle packet read and write. If 1, batch read and write UDP datagrams. If 0, read and write one packet at a time.	1

Option	Description	Default
<code>maxsize=maximum_size</code>	Maximum stream length	No default
<code>maxtime=maximum_time</code>	Maximum stream duration, in seconds	No default
<code>maxidle=maximum_time</code>	Maximum idle duration, in seconds	No default
<code>rcvbufsz=buffer_size</code>	Receive buffer size	10MB
<code>sndbufsz=buffer_size</code>	Send buffer size	10MB
<code>ifaddr=ip_address</code>	Multicast interface IP address	0.0.0.0
<code>srcaddr=ip_address</code>	Multicast source IP address	0.0.0.0
<code>ttl=hops</code>	Multicast time-to-live	1
<code>loopback=boolean</code>	Multicast loopback	1

## Ascp 4 Data Streaming Examples

Use the following examples as a guide for creating your own streaming transfers with Ascp 4.

- Send a multicast stream:

```
# ascp4 --mode=send --host=desthost --compression=none --read-threads=1 --write-threads=1 udp://233.3.3.3:3000?loopback=1&t1=2
udp://233.4.4.4:3000?loopback=1&t1=2
```

- Capture a local multicast stream and send it to the receiver as a UDP unicast stream:

```
# ascp4 --mode=send --host=desthost --compression=none --read-threads=1 --write-threads=1 udp://233.3.3.3:3000?loopback=1&t1=2 udp://localhost:3000/
```

- Read a TCP stream from 192.168.10.10 port 2000 and send it to 10.10.0.51. On 10.10.0.51, write the stream to localhost port 3000.

```
# ascp4 -l 6000 -m 5000 --host=10.10.0.51 --mode=send --read-threads=1 --write-threads=1 tcp://192.168.10.10:2000 tcp://localhost:3000
```

- Send a multicast UDP stream on 233.3.3.3 port 3000 to host 192.168.0.11, then multicast the stream on 233.3.3.3 port 3001.

```
# ascp4 -l 6000 -m 5000 --host=192.168.0.11 --mode=send --read-threads=1 --write-threads=1
udp://233.3.3.3:3000/?pktbatch=0 udp://233.3.3.3:3001/?loopback=1
```

- Multicast using the same multicast IP address and varying the multicast port.

```
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-01 -R/opt/test-remote-01 -DD -m 12m -l 15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads 1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.1:3001?sndbufsz=100MB&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.1:4001?rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-02 -R/opt/test-remote-02 -DD -m 12m -l 15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads 1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.1:3002?sndbufsz=100MB&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.1:4002?rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
```

```
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-03 -R/opt/test-remote-03 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.1:3003?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.1:4003?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-04 -R/opt/test-remote-04 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.1:3004?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.1:4004?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
```

- Multicast using the same multicast port and varying the multicast IP address:

```
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-01 -R/opt/test-remote-01 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.1:3001?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.1:4001?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-02 -R/opt/test-remote-02 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.2:3001?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.2:4001?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-03 -R/opt/test-remote-03 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.3:3001?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.3:4001?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
# ascp4 -L/opt/test-local-04 -R/opt/test-remote-04 -DD -m 12m -l
15m --mode send --host 10.132.117.2 --user root --read-threads
1 --write-threads 1 --compression none "udp://233.33.3.4:3001?
sndbufsz=100M&ifaddr=10.131.117.1" "udp://233.44.4.4:4001?
rcvbufsz=100M&loopback=0"
```

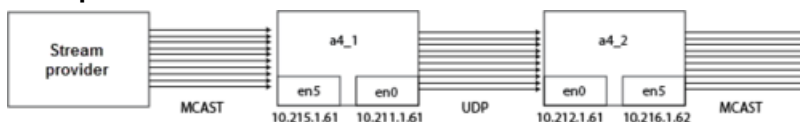
## Configuring macOS Server for Multicast Streams

If you are sending or receiving multicast streams from a macOS server, multicast fails if the receiving or sending interface is not the macOS default interface. If no default gateway is defined on a macOS server, the default interface is **en0**. To use a different interface than the default, change the default interface for your server

Run the following commands:

```
# route delete default new_interface_ip
# route add default new_interface_ip
```

### Example



Server Name	en0 IP Address	en5 IP Address
a4_1	10.211.1.61	10.215.1.61
a4_2	10.212.1.62	10.216.1.62

In this example, server **a4\_1** acts as the multicast receiver and sends the stream over UDP to server **a4\_2**. Server **a4\_2** then broadcasts the multicast streams to waiting receivers. Since both servers are using a non-default interface (not



**en0**) to receive and send the multicast streams, we must set the interface receiving and sending the multicast streams as the server default interface.

Run the following command on **a4\_1**:

```
# route delete default 10.215.0.1
# route add default 10.215.0.1
```

Run the following command on **a4\_2**:

```
# route delete default 10.216.0.1
# route add default 10.216.0.1
```

**Note:** The interface IP addresses 10.215.0.1 and 10.216.0.1 routes are the primary gateways and route all 10.215.0.\* and 10.216.0.\* traffic, respectively.

## Troubleshooting Stream Transfers

---

### Multicast Transfer Fails with "Error: Empty file list from file/stdin"

This error might indicate that the transfer user has a docroot set in `aspera.conf`, which is not supported for multicast-to-multicast transfers.

The transfer user who authenticates the multicast-to-multicast data stream transfer must have no docroot configured in `aspera.conf`. A file restriction can be set instead to restrict access.

Run the following command to unset a docroot and set a file restriction:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,AS_NULL;file_restriction,|restriction"
```

The restriction can be set to allow all access (\*) or limited by protocol, hostname or path:

Restriction	Format Example
By protocol	udp://* tcp://*
By protocol and hostname	udp://hostname*
By protocol, hostname, and port	tcp://hostname:5000*

### Transfer from macOS Fails

To diagnose the problem, re-run the stream transfer with the logging level set to debug by adding `-DD` to the command. After the transfer fails, open the log file (`homedir/Library/Logs/Aspera/`) and search for an ERR response.

**ERR udp\_io\_open: failed to set rcvbufsz=10485760 (e=55) (ENOBUFS)**

This error indicates that the socket buffer size on the Mac computer is too small to send or receive UDP packets. To increase the socket buffer size, specify a large buffer size by adding the following parameters to the URL:

```
url/?rcvbufsz=4000000&sndbufsz=4000000
```

With these parameters, a transfer to and from a Mac computer is written similar to the following example:

```
# ascp4 -DD -m 12m -l 15m --mode send --host 10.13.117.12 --
user root --read-threads 1 --write-threads 1 --compression none
```

```
"udp://233.13.13.2:3002/?rcvbufsz=4000000&sndbufsz=4000000"
"udp://233.14.14.2:4002/?rcvbufsz=4000000&sndbufsz=4000000"
```

## Using Ascp 4 from the GUI

---

By default, transfers that are started in the GUI use Ascp and Ascp 4 transfers can be run only from the command line. You can make transfers that are started in the GUI use Ascp 4 by renaming the executables.

1. Back up the `ascp` executable.

Locate the `ascp` executable.

```
/opt/aspera/bin/ascp
```

Rename the file `ascp-version.bak`.

2. In the same directory, make a copy of `ascp4` and rename it `ascp`.

The transfer server now uses Ascp 4 for transfers initiated from the GUI.

**Important:** Not all standard Ascp options are available with Ascp 4; review [Comparison of Ascp and Ascp 4 Options](#) on page 221 before transferring to avoid unexpected behavior.

## Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service

---

### Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service

---

Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service offer tools for easily monitoring file system changes in real-time and automatically transferring new and modified files.

#### Watch Folders

Watch Folders enables large-scale, automated file and directory transfers, including ultra-large directories with over 10 million items and directories with "growing" files. Watch Folders use input from `asperawatchd` to automate transfers of files added to or modified in a source folder. They can be configured to push from the local server or pull from a remote server. Remote servers can be HST Server, HST Endpoint, and IBM Aspera Shares servers, as well as servers in object storage. Push Watch Folders can use IBM Aspera on Cloud and IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes for a destination.

Watch Folders can be created and managed in the GUI or the command line.

For more information, see:

- [Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 247
- [Watch Folders in the Command Line](#) on page 271
- [IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide: Working with Watch folders](#)

#### The Aspera Watch Service

The Aspera Watch Service (`asperawatchd`) is a file system change detection and snapshot service that is optimized for speed, scale, and distributed sources. On file systems that have file system notifications, changes in source file systems (new files and directories, deleted items, and renames) are detected immediately, eliminating the need to scan the file system. On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans are automatically triggered.

The Aspera Watch Service monitors changes to the file system by taking snapshots and analyzing the difference between them. Users create watches by subscribing to a watch service and specifying the part of the file system to watch. You can use the output from `asperawatchd` to generate a source file list for `ascp` and `async` sessions.

Watch Services can be started and managed in the GUI or command line. The Watch Service itself and watches can only be managed from the command line.

For more information, see:

- [Managing Services in the GUI](#) on page 267
- [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320
- [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322
- [Transferring and Deleting Files with the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 325
- [Aspera Sync with Aspera Watch Service Session Examples](#) on page 369

### The IBM Aspera Run Service (`asperarund`)

Both `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` are managed by `asperarund`, which stores `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` configurations in its database. It automatically starts services when they are added and restarts services if they fail. It also enables admins to start services under different users without switching between accounts, and apply logging and database configurations to all services.

Similar to other Aspera services, `asperarund` starts automatically upon installation and runs as a system daemon (`asperarund`).

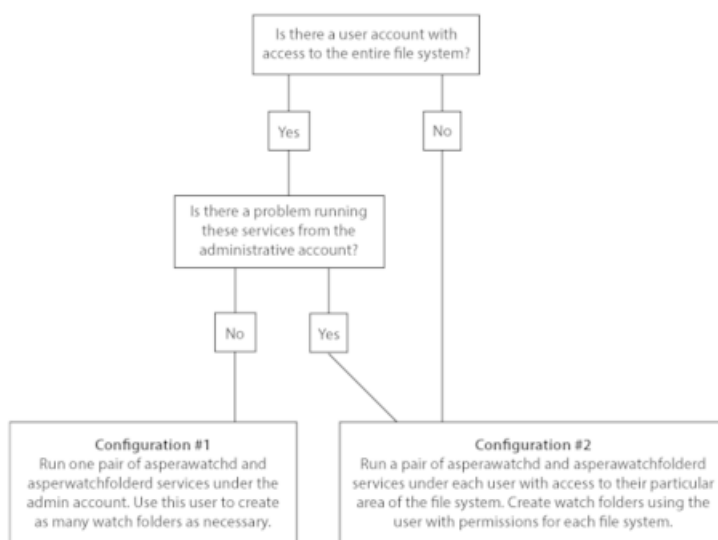
For more information on `asperarund`, see [Creating, Managing, and Configuring Services](#) on page 244.

## Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services

Run `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` under a user with access to the area of your file system in which you intend to create a watch and Watch Folder. In most cases, the services are run under one user who has access to your entire file system, and watches and Watch Folders are created for specific areas of the file system.

You can also run multiple Watch and Watch Folder services under different users if that is required by your storage configuration or user access restrictions. For example, if your file system includes different mounted storages and no single user can access files in all mounted storages, or if your administrative account has access to the entire file system but your policy prohibits running the services under that user account.

Configure services depending on your user account scenario:



## Configuration #1

This is the simplest and most common configuration of Watch Folder services. Use an account that has read permissions for all your files and follow the instructions in [Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 273.

## Configuration #2

If you cannot run Watch Folder services under the administrative account or you do not have a single user that has access to the entire file system, run pairs of `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` under enough users to access your entire file system.

For example, if you have mounted storage from the marketing department that can only be accessed by user `xasp1`, and another storage from the release team, which can only be accessed by user `xasp2`, run a pair of `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` under each user. Aspera recommends using the Node API to configure services and manage Watch Folders in a multi-user context. You can interact with the Node API by using IBM Aspera Console, by managing Watch Folders in the GUI, or using `curl` commands from the command line.

For more information on using Watch Folders with Console, see "Working with Watch Folders" in the [IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#). For instructions on creating Watch Folders using Node API, see [Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 303.

## Creating, Managing, and Configuring Services

---

Both `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` are managed by `asperarund`, which stores `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` configurations in its database. It automatically starts services when they are added and restarts services if they fail. It also enables admins to start services under different users without switching between accounts, and apply logging and database configurations to all services.

Similar to other Aspera services, `asperarund` starts automatically upon installation and runs as a system daemon (`asperarund`).

### Configuring Services

Configuration settings for `asperarund`, `asperawatchd`, and `asperawatchfolderd` are located in the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf`. These can only be edited in the command line or by opening `aspera.conf`.

To view current service settings, run the following command and look for settings that start with `rund`, `watch`, `watchd`, and `watchfolderd`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

For more information on configuring , see:

[Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322

[Watch Folder Service Configuration](#) on page 282

### Configuring asperarund

Logging and the Redis database used by `asperarund` is configured in `aspera.conf`:

```
<server>
...
  <rund>
    <log_level>log</log_level>
    <log_directory>AS_NULL</log_directory>
    <db_spec>redis:127.0.0.1:31415</db_spec>
  </rund>
  <watch>
    ...
  </watch>
```

```
</server>
```

Run the corresponding `asconfigurator` command to edit a setting:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;rund_log_level,log_level"
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;rund_log_dir,path"
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;rund_db_spec,db_spec"
```

Setting	Description	Default
<code>log_level</code>	The level of detail for <code>asperarund</code> logging. Valid values are <code>log</code> , <code>dbg1</code> , and <code>dbg2</code> .	<code>log</code>
<code>log_directory</code>	Log to the specified directory.	The Aspera logging file ( <a href="#">Log Files</a> on page 502).
<code>db_spec</code>	Use the specified Redis database, which is defined with the syntax <code>redis:ip_address:port</code> .	<code>redis:127.0.0.1:31415</code> (the localhost on port 31415).

### Starting `asperarund`

If `asperarund` is not running, then you cannot create Watch Folders or start a watch. The service is started automatically during installation, but you might have to start it if it was disabled or stopped.

```
# ps ax | grep aspera
```

Locate `asperarund` in the output. If the status is not "R", start the service:

```
# systemctl restart asperarund
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperarund restart
```

### Creating Services

Both `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd` run under system users. These users must have a `docroot` configured for them in `aspera.conf` and have write permissions to the default log directory if no custom log directory is configured in `aspera.conf`. Aspera recommends running `asperawatchd` under root, and selecting a user to run `asperawatchfolderd` as described in [Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services](#) on page 243. For more information, see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320 and [Creating a Push Watch Folder with `aswatchfolderadmin`](#) on page 273.

To start `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd`, use the GUI ([Managing Services in the GUI](#) on page 267) or run the corresponding command:

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchfolderd --user username
```

A Watch service must be running under a user before a Watch Folders service can be created for that user.

### Managing Services

Use the GUI ([Managing Services in the GUI](#) on page 267) or the `asrun` command line utility to view, enable, disable, or delete services.

The general syntax of `asrun` commands is:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send [options]
```

Run `asrun send -h` to output a complete list of options.

### View a list of running services

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send -l
```

The output is similar to the following:

```
[asrun send] code=0
{
  "services": [
    {
      "id": "52ca847a-6981-47e1-9f9b-b661cf298af1",
      "configuration": {
        "enabled": true,
        "run_as": {
          "pass": "*****",
          "user": "root"
        },
        "type": "WATCHD"
      },
      "state": "RUNNING",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-10-20T19:14:34Z"
    },
    {
      "id": "d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4",
      "configuration": {
        "enabled": true,
        "run_as": {
          "pass": "*****",
          "user": "root"
        },
        "type": "WATCHFOLDERD"
      },
      "state": "RUNNING",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-10-20T00:11:19Z"
    }
  ]
}
```

The Watch Service configuration includes the string `"type": "WATCHD"` and, before this entry in the output, a value for `"id"`. The Watch Folder service includes the string: `"type": "WATCHFOLDERD"`.

### Disable a Service

Disabling a service stops the service but saves its configuration in the database. Disabled services can be restarted (enabled).

For example, to disable the `asperawatchfolderd` service with `"id": "d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4"`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send --disable="d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-
ca6ff9abb5f4"
[asrun send] code=0
null
```

### Enable a Service

Enabling a stopped service starts the service. This command can be used to restart a service that stops due to an error, without changing the configuration to trigger a reload of the configuration.

For example, to enable the `asperawatchfolderd` service with "id": "d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4":

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send --enable="d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4"
[asrun send] code=0
null
```

### Delete a Service

Stop a service and remove its configuration from the database. A deleted service cannot be re-enabled.

**Note:** When deleting the `asperawatchfolderd` service, all existing Watch Folders started with that service are also deleted.

For example, to delete the `asperawatchfolderd` service with "id": "d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4":

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send --delete="d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4"
[asrun send] code=0
null
```

## Watch Folders in the GUI

---

Watch Folders can be created and managed in the GUI, which offers all the functionality of the command line set up and management tools. Only the Node API user must be set up from the command line.

### Getting Started with Watch Folders in the GUI

Watch Folders can be created in the HST Server GUI to automatically transfer files. Remote servers can be HST Server, HST Endpoint, and IBM Aspera Shares servers, as well as servers in object storage. Push Watch Folders can use IBM Aspera on Cloud, IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service, and IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes for a destination.

**Note:** Though this is a server-to-server transfer, the server on which the watch folder is configured is referred to as the client.

1. Select or create a user account to run your services.

Watch Folder services must be run under a user with access to every area of your file system in which you intend to create a Watch Folder. You can run multiple instances of these services under different users; however, most deployments run these services under one user. Choose a user that has access to your entire file system.

If you need to run multiple instances of these services to access every area of your file system, see [Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services](#) on page 243.

2. Configure a docroot or restriction for the user.

Docroots and path restrictions limit the area of a file system or object storage to which the user has access. Users can create Watch Folders and Watch services on files or objects only within their docroot or restriction.

**Note:** Users can have a docroot or restriction, but not both or Watch Folder creation fails.

Docroots can be set up in the GUI or command line. In the GUI, click **Configuration > Users > *username* > Docroot** and set the permitted path as the value for **Absolute Path**. To set up a docroot from the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Restrictions must be set from the command line:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|path"
```

The restriction path format depends on the type of storage. In the following examples, the restriction allows access to the entire storage; specify a bucket or path to limit access.

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>
Azure Data Lake Storage	<code>adl://*</code>
Alibaba Cloud	<code>oss://*</code>
Google Cloud	<code>gs://*</code>
HDFS	<code>hdfs://*</code>

With a docroot or restriction set up, the user is now an Aspera transfer user. Restart `asperanoded` to activate your change:

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

- Associate the Aspera transfer user with a Node API username and password, and set admin ACLs for the Node API user.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x transfer_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

Confirm that the user was created by running the following command. The output lists the Node API user name, the transfer user associated with it, and the permissions. For example, for the Node API user **aspera** associated with transfer user **root** and admin ACLs, the output appears as:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
                                List of Node API user(s):
=====
user      system/transfer user      acls
=====
aspera    root      [admin,impersonation]
```



For other Node API users with access to Watch Folders, you can customize permissions, rather than allowing complete admin access. For instructions, see [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI](#) on page 268.

A transfer user can be associated with multiple Node API usernames.

#### 4. Configure Linux for many Watch Folders.

If you plan to watch more than 8,200 directories on a Linux computer, you might need to configure it to support that many processes. For instructions, see [Configuring Linux for Many Watch Folders](#) on page 302.

#### 5. Configure asperawatchd and asperawatchfolderd settings.

Though the default values are already optimized for most users, you can also configure the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, logging, scan threads, and drop handling, among other features. For instructions, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322 and [Watch Folder Service Configuration](#) on page 282.

#### 6. Ensure the user has permissions to write to the default log directory if no directory is specified.

For more information about configuring log directories, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

#### 7. To access the Watch Folders set up GUI, open HST Server and click **Watch Folders**.



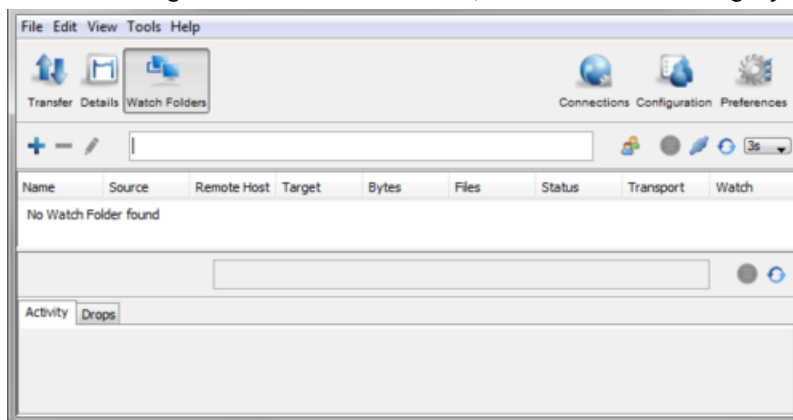
**Note:** When you click **Watch Folders**, the GUI attempts to connect to asperanoded at localhost:9092. If you are using a different HTTPS port or host, or using HTTP instead of HTTPS, you might not be able to connect. For instructions on configuring the GUI connection to Watch Folders, see [Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 270.

#### 8. Enter the Node API username and password at the prompt.

You now have access to the Watch Folders GUI, described in the following section ([The Watch Folders GUI](#) on page 249). To create Watch Folders, see [Creating Push Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 250.











## The Watch Folders GUI

Start and manage Watch Folders in the GUI, which has the following layout:



**Note:** Some icons might be greyed out and unavailable to you. This can occur when:

- No Watch Folders exist.
- The Node API user does not have permissions to any existing Watch Folders.
- The Node API user does not have permissions to do an action.

Item	Description
	Create a Watch Folder. See <a href="#">Creating Push Watch Folders in the GUI</a> on page 250. For descriptions of all configuration options, see <a href="#">Watch Folder Configuration Reference</a> on page 254.
	Delete the selected Watch Folder.
	Edit the selected Watch Folder. For descriptions of all configuration options, see <a href="#">Watch Folder Configuration Reference</a> on page 254.
	Create and edit Watch and Watch Folder services and permissions. For more information, see <a href="#">Creating Push Watch Folders in the GUI</a> on page 250, <a href="#">Managing Services in the GUI</a> on page 267, and <a href="#">Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI</a> on page 268.
	Search for files in the Watch Folder.
	Connect or disconnect from the local node. Use this button to connect as a different Node API user, or activate changes in Node API user permissions by signing in again.
	Retrieve all Watch Folders by refreshing the list.
	Set the refresh rate of the Watch Folder list, activity, and drops.
<b>Activity</b>	View the transfer activity of the selected Watch Folder. For more information, see <a href="#">Managing and Monitoring Watch Folders in the GUI</a> on page 264.
<b>Drops</b>	View the drops that have been triggered for the selected Watch Folder. For more information, see <a href="#">Managing and Monitoring Watch Folders in the GUI</a> on page 264.
	Show files for the selected drop.
	Refresh the activity information for the selected Watch Folder.

## Creating Push Watch Folders in the GUI



The GUI enables you to easily create Watch Folders that automatically push files and directories to a remote server as they are added to a local directory.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to aspsell and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.
- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

### Compatibility

Push Watch Folders are compatible with previous versions of HST Server and HST Endpoint on the remote server.


1. Prepare the client as described in [Getting Started with Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 247.
2. If you want to create the Watch Service and Watch Folder service under the current user, go on to step 4. If you want to create a Watch Service and Watch Folder Service for a different user, take the following steps:
  - a) Open the **Services & Policies** window by clicking .
  - b) To create a new pair of services, click .

- c) Select **Watch Folder** for the service type and enter the username and password under which to run the services.

Both a Watch Service and Watch Folder service are started. For more information about choosing a user to run services, see [Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services](#) on page 243.

If you do not want the services to be enabled immediately, such as if you need to configure user policies first, clear **Enabled**.

- d) Click **OK**.

The list of services now shows one Watch service and Watch Folder service. Initially the state of the service is reported as "Starting", but changes to "Running". If the services list does not update automatically, click  to refresh the list.

Close the **Services & Policies** window.

3. To create a Watch Folder, click .

If the error message, "You cannot create Watch Folders. Please contact your Administrator." is displayed, the Node API user is not configured with the necessary permissions. Node API user permissions can be modified as described in [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI](#) on page 268. To configure a Node API user with all admin permissions, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x transfer_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

4. Configure Watch Folder settings.

- a) **Watch Folder Service:** If no Watch Folder services exist, one is created for the transfer user associated with Node API username that was used for login. To create a Watch Folder service under a different user, click **Create** and follow the substeps in step 2. If a service exists for the transfer user, it is automatically populated. To run the Watch Folder under a different user or service, click **Change** and select the correct user and service combination.
- b) **Watch Folder name:** A unique name for the Watch Folder.
- c) **Watchd scan period:** Set the amount of time between assessments of the watch (from end of one to start of the next). The value can be specified with units, such as 30m for 30 minutes, or 24-hour clock, such as 01:00:00 for one hour. Watches are assessed for change by asperawatchd independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are captured.

On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to *infinite*.

Shorter scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.

- d) **Direction:** Select **Push** to transfer from the local computer to a remote server.
- e) **Source path:** Click **Browse** to select the local source path.
- f) **Host** (and authentication): The IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote server. Click **Import** to import connection information from the **Connections** list. The username, authentication, and target path are automatically populated from the connection settings, as are settings under **Transfer** and **File Handling**.

If you enter the host manually, use the following syntax based on the type of remote endpoint and authentication method:

- **HST Server or HST Endpoint authenticated with an SSH user:** Enter the IP address or hostname of the endpoint for the host, then enter the SSH user and their password or public key.
- **HST Server or HST Endpoint authenticated with Node API or access key credentials:** Enter the node URL as `https://ip_address_or_server_url:9092/`. If a different HTTPS port is configured,

replace 9092 with the correct port. Enter the Node API username or access key ID as the **User** and the Node API user's password or the access key secret as the **Password**.

- **IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service nodes) and IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes:** Enter the endpoint URL as `https://ip_address_or_server_url:443/` and provide the access key ID and secret for the **User** and **Password**.
- **IBM Aspera Shares:** Enter the URL of the Shares server as `https://ip_address:443` and provide the Shares login credentials.

g) **Target path:** Click **Browse** to select the remote directory.

h) Configure other Watch Folder settings, if needed.

For information about all Watch Folder settings, see [Watch Folder Configuration Reference](#) on page 254.

5. Once all required fields are set, click **OK** to create the Watch Folder.

If the source directory contains files, the Watch Folder collects them into a drop and begins the transfer to the target. If the transfer does not start, see [Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 270.

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

## Creating Pull Watch Folders in the GUI

The GUI enables you to easily create Watch Folders that pull files and directories from a remote server to a local directory as they are added to a remote directory.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to aspsell and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.
- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

### Restrictions on Pull Watch Folders

- The remote server must be running HST Server or HST Endpoint version 3.8.0 or newer.
- Pull Watch Folders must be authenticated with an access key ID and secret, a Node API username and password, or IBM Aspera Shares credentials. SSH authentication is not supported for remote sources.
- Pull Watch Folders that use Node API authentication cannot be authenticated with a Node API user whose associated transfer user is configured with a restriction (the Watch Folder status is reported as impaired). Edit the transfer user's configuration to use a docroot, restart asperanoded, and the Watch Folder recovers automatically.
- Pull Watch Folders cannot use IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service nodes) or IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes as the remote source.
- Pull Watch Folders do not support growing files.

1. Prepare the client as described in [Getting Started with Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 247.

2. Create a Watch Service on the remote server.

If you have SSH access to the server, create the service from the server's command line.

- a) Create the service.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username
```

The *username* is for a system user with permissions to the source path.

- b) Confirm that the service was created.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
```

If the service exists, the following output is returned (in this example, the user is "root"):

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
    root
```

If other services are running on the server, other daemons are also returned.

If you do not have SSH access to the server, use the Node API from your local computer to create the service. This approach requires that you have node credentials for the server. For instructions, see [Creating a Pull Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 307.

3. To create a Watch Folder, click .

If the error message, "You cannot create Watch Folders. Please contact your Administrator." is displayed, the Node API user is not configured with the necessary permissions. Node API user permissions can be modified as described in [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI](#) on page 268. To configure a Node API user with all admin permissions, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x transfer_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

4. Configure Watch Folder settings.

- a) **Watch Folder Service:** If no Watch Folder services exist, one is created for the transfer user associated with Node API username that was used for login. To create a Watch Folder service under a different user, click **Create** and follow the substeps in step 2. If a service exists for the transfer user, it is automatically populated. To run the Watch Folder under a different user or service, click **Change** and select the correct user and service combination.
- b) **Watch Folder name:** A unique name for the Watch Folder.
- c) **Watchd scan period:** Set the amount of time between assessments of the watch (from end of one to start of the next).

**Important:** For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by the scan period interval are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory. Shorter scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage. For most use cases, a one minute scan period balances detection frequency with resource consumption.

The scan period can be specified with units, such as 30m for 30 minutes, or 24-hour clock, such as 01:00:00 for one hour. Watchd assesses watches for change independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are captured.

- d) **Direction:** Select **Pull** to transfer from the remote server to the local computer.
- e) **Target path:** Click **Browse** to select the target path.
- f) **Host** (and authentication): The IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote server. Click **Import** to import connection information from the **Connections** list. The username, authentication, and target path are automatically populated from the connection settings, as are settings under **Transfer** and **File Handling**.

If you are entering the host manually, use the following syntax based on the type of remote endpoint and authentication method:

- **HST Server or HST Endpoint authenticated with Node API or access key credentials:** Enter the node URL as `https://ip_address_or_server_url:9092/`. If a different HTTPS port is configured, replace 9092 with the correct port. Enter the Node API username or access key ID as the **User** and the Node API user's password or the access key secret as the **Password**.
- **IBM Aspera Shares:** Enter the URL of the Shares server as `https://ip_address:443` and provide the Shares login credentials.

**Note:** Pull Watch Folders must be authenticated with an access key ID and secret, a Node API username and password, or Shares credentials. SSH authentication is not supported for remote sources. If using node credentials, the transfer user associated with the Node API user must have a docroot configured, not a restriction.

g) **Source path:** Click **Browse** to select the local source path.

h) Configure other Watch Folder settings.

To ensure that only one drop is created for each scan interval, go to **Settings** and set the **Drops Detection cool off** to a value greater than the Watchd scan period.

For information about all Watch Folder settings, see [Watch Folder Configuration Reference](#) on page 254.

5. Once all required fields are set and any other configuration is done, click **OK** to create the Watch Folder.

If the source directory contains files, the Watch Folder collects them into a drop after the Watch service scan interval passes and transfers them to the target.

**Note:** No files are transferred until the first scan interval passes. If the Watch service scan interval is set to the default, files transfer after 30 minutes.

If the transfer does not start after the scan period, see [Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 270.

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

## Watch Folder Configuration Reference

When you create or edit a Watch Folder in the GUI, you must specify the Watch Folder service, the source path, Watch scan period, and the remote connection. Other settings can be left with their default values or configured to meet your requirements. The following tables describe available Watch Folder settings by tab.

### Watch Folder

These settings configure the Watch Folder source and destination, and the connection to the remote host.

Setting	Description	Default
Watch Folder Service	The Watch Folder service, defined by its user and service ID, that the Watch Folder uses.	The first Watch Folder service in the list of services alphabetized by username.
Watch Folder name	A unique name for the Watch Folder. The value specified in this field is added to the cookie reported by <code>ascp</code> . Optional.	None specified
Watchd scan period	How frequently the Watch Service scans the source path for file system changes. For file systems with file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), set to 30 minutes (30m) to provide a backup to the notification system, or set to "infinite" to never scan.  On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), <code>asperawatchd</code> uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable.	30m

Setting	Description	Default
	<p>and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <code>infinite</code>.</p> <p>For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by <code>scan_period</code> are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.</p> <p>Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.</p>	
Direction	Select <b>Push</b> to transfer from the local computer to a remote server. Select <b>Pull</b> to transfer from the remote server to the local computer.	Push
Local path	Click <b>Browse</b> to select the local path. The local path is the source for push Watch Folders, and the target for pull Watch Folders.	None specified
Host	<p>The IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote server. If you enter the host manually, use the following syntax based on the type of remote endpoint and authentication method:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>HST Server or HST Endpoint authenticated with an SSH user:</b> Enter the IP address or hostname of the endpoint for the host, then enter the SSH user and their password or public key. (Note: This method is not supported for pull Watch Folders)</li> <li>• <b>HST Server or HST Endpoint authenticated with Node API or access key credentials:</b> Enter the node URL as <code>https://ip_address_or_server_url:9092/</code>. If a different HTTPS port is configured, replace 9092 with the correct port. Enter the Node API username or access key ID as the <b>User</b> and the Node API user's password or the access key secret as the <b>Password</b>. <b>Note:</b> Node API authentication uses HTTPS, even if HTTP is specified in the node URL.</li> <li>• <b>IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service nodes) and IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes:</b> Enter the endpoint URL as <code>https://ip_address_or_server_url:443/</code> and provide the access key ID and secret for the <b>User</b> and <b>Password</b>. (Note: These remote endpoint types are not supported for pull Watch Folders)</li> <li>• <b>IBM Aspera Shares:</b> Enter the URL of the Shares server as <code>https://ip_address:443</code> and provide the Shares login credentials.</li> </ul>	None specified
User	The username for authentication. <b>Required</b> . Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID. For SSH, the system account username. For a Shares server, the Shares username. For a node URL host, the Node API username or access key ID.	None specified
Authentication	<p>For SSH authentication, select <b>Password</b> and enter the user's password, or select <b>Public Key</b> and select the user's public key from the drop-down menu.</p> <p>For Shares hosts, enter the Shares user's password.</p>	Password



Setting	Description	Default
	For node authentication, enter the Node API user's password or access key secret.	
SSH Port (TCP)	The port to use for SSH connections.	22
FASP port (UDP)	The port to use for UDP connections.	33001
SSH host key fingerprint	The SSH fingerprint of the remote server. Aspera strongly recommends using SSH fingerprint for security. If the fingerprint does not match that of the server, the transfer fails with the error "Remote host is not who we expected". For more information, see <a href="#">Securing Your SSH Server</a> on page 19 ("Configuring Transfer Server Authentication").	None specified
Connection timeout	How long to wait for a connection to respond before failing.	10s
Proxy URL	If using, the address of an IBM Aspera Proxy server. The proxy syntax is: <code>dnat(s)://user:password@server:port</code>	None specified
Remote path	Click <b>Browse</b> to select the source or target directory on the remote server. The remote path must be within the user's docroot.  For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key.	None specified

## Settings

These settings define how Watch Folder watches the file system and groups new files added to the source folder into "drops". Drops are groups of files that are transferred together in one session, post-processed together, and reported as a unit.

Setting	Description	Default
Sample period	Period used to compute the current bandwidth. Used with <code>queue_threshold</code> to compute the amount of data pushed to <code>ascp</code> .	2s
Queue threshold	Watch Folders controls the amount of data pushed to <code>ascp</code> for transferring. When the capacity is reached, Watch Folders waits before pushing new data. This capacity is based on the effective bandwidth reported by <code>ascp</code> .	5s
Snapshot creation period	The interval during which Watch Folders groups new files in the source directory into a drop. All files in a drop are transferred in the same transfer session, post-processed together, and reported as a unit. Watch Folders uses <code>asperawatchd</code> to detect file system modifications, and continuously creates snapshots to compute the snapshot differential. A small value results in high temporal resolution for detecting file system modifications, whereas a large value improves <code>asperawatchd</code> performance. Default: 3s.	3s
Detection strategy	The strategy that Watch Folders uses to create drops when new files are added to the source folder: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cool off only:</b> The drop includes new files that are added to the source folder within the cool off period.</li> <li>• <b>Top level files:</b> Create a drop for each file added to the top level of the source folder.</li> </ul>	Cool off only



Setting	Description	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Top level dirs:</b> Create a drop for each directory added to the top level of the source folder. The drop includes new subdirectories and files in the top-level directory.</li> </ul>	
(Drops) Detection cool off	The time after the first new file is added to the source file during which any other new files are included in the same drop. This setting is only relevant if the detection strategy is <b>Cool off only</b> . Aspera recommends setting the detection cool off to a multiple of the <b>Snapshot creation period</b> for predictable results.	5s
Maximum parallel ascp	The maximum number of concurrent <code>ascp</code> sessions that Watch Folders can start.	10
(Files) Detection cool off	How long the Watch Folder service waits for files in the watched folder to stop changing (stabilize) before taking a directory snapshot and creating a drop. Default: 5s.	3s
Filters	<p>Restrict the files that are included in the Watch Folder transfer by setting filters.</p> <p>Click  to add a filter.</p> <p>Setting an <b>Include</b> filter protects matching files from subsequent <b>Exclude</b> filters. Filters are applied in order. Watch Folders supports glob and Regex filters. The glob filter system is the same as <code>Ascp</code>; see <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An include rule must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use <code>/**</code> for glob or <code>.*</code> for Regex.</p> <p>Click  to delete the filter.</p>	None specified

## Transfer

These settings configure the `ascp` transfer sessions that transfer files in each drop.

Setting	Description	Default
Bandwidth policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li><code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage.</li> </ul>	Fair

Setting	Description	Default									
	Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.										
Target rate	The target transfer rate. Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. This option accepts suffixes T for terabits/s, G for gigabits/s, M for megabits/s, K for kilobits/s, or B for bits/s. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the setting in the server's <code>aspera.conf</code> is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server <code>aspera.conf</code> , the rate does not exceed the cap.	10.00 Mbps									
Minimum rate	Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate.	0 bps									
Transport Encryption	<p>Select the encryption cipher. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.</p> <p><b>Cipher rules</b></p> <p>The encryption cipher that you are allowed to use depends on the server configuration and the version of the client and server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you request a cipher key that is shorter than the cipher key that is configured on the server, the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server configuration. For example, when the server setting is AES-192 and you request AES-128, the server enforces AES-192.</li> <li>• When the server requires GCM, you must use GCM (requires version 3.9.0 or newer) or the transfer fails.</li> <li>• When you request GCM and the server is older than 3.8.1 or explicitly requires CFB, the transfer fails.</li> <li>• When the server setting is "any", you can use any encryption cipher. The only exception is when the server is 3.8.1 or older and does not support GCM mode; in this case, you cannot request GCM mode encryption.</li> <li>• When the server setting is "none", you must use "none". Transfer requests that specify an encryption cipher are refused by the server.</li> </ul> <p><b>Cipher Values</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Support</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>AES-128</b> <b>AES-192</b> <b>AES-256</b></td> <td>Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).</td> <td>All client and server versions.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>AES-128-CFB</b></td> <td>Use the CFB encryption mode.</td> <td>Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Value	Description	Support	<b>AES-128</b> <b>AES-192</b> <b>AES-256</b>	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.	<b>AES-128-CFB</b>	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.	AES-128
Value	Description	Support									
<b>AES-128</b> <b>AES-192</b> <b>AES-256</b>	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.									
<b>AES-128-CFB</b>	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.									

Setting	Description				Default	
	<b>Value</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Support</b>			
	AES-192-CFB AES-256-CFB					
	AES-128-GCM AES-192-GCM AES-256-GCM	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.			
	NONE	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.			
	<b>Client-Server Cipher Negotiation</b>					
	The following table shows which encryption mode is used depending on the server and client versions and settings:					
	<b>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</b>	<b>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</b>	<b>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</b>	<b>Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</b>		
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</b>	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer		
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB		
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</b>	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB		
<b>Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB		
SSH host key fingerprint	The SSH fingerprint of the remote server. Aspera strongly recommends using SSH fingerprint for security. If the fingerprint does not match that of the server, the transfer fails with the error "Remote host is not who we expected". For more information, see				None specified	

Setting	Description	Default
	<a href="#">Securing Your SSH Server</a> on page 19 ("Configuring Transfer Server Authentication").	
Token	If required, the token string. Not valid for use with growing files.	None specified
Tags	Specify custom metadata in JSON format. The tags object is passed directly to the ascp session. For more information on writing custom metadata for uploads to object storage (as in the example), see <a href="#">Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage</a> on page 203.	None specified
Read block size	The read block size.	None specified (uses the value set in <code>aspera.conf</code> ).
Write block size	The write block size.	None specified (uses the value set in <code>aspera.conf</code> ).
Datagram size	The datagram size (MTU) for FASP.	None specified (uses the detected path MTU).
Rex message size	The maximum size of a retransmission request. Maximum: 1440.	None specified
Raw ascp options	Specify <code>ascp</code> options and their arguments that are not yet available in Watch Folders to apply to Watch Folder transfers. To use raw options, they must be enabled in the client's <code>aspera.conf</code> by running the following command:  <pre># asconfigurator -x "set_central_server_data;raw_options,enable"</pre>	None specified
Cookie	Each transfer session (drop) includes a cookie that provides information about the Watch Folder that initiates the transfer session and the drop. The cookie has the following format:  <pre>aspera:watchfolder:watchfolder_id:watchfolder_name:drop_id:drop_name</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>watchfolder_id</code>: The Watch Folder ID</li> <li><code>watchfolder_name</code>: The Watch Folder name (as specified for <b>Watch Folder name</b> in the <b>Watch Folder</b> settings)</li> <li><code>drop_id</code>: The drop ID that is automatically generated by Watch Folders</li> <li><code>drop_name</code>: The drop name. Unless otherwise specified, the drop name is generated from the file name.</li> </ul> <p>You can override the default values by specifying your own.</p>	None specified (use default values)
Content protection	Enter a password to enable client-side encryption at rest. Files that are uploaded to the server are appended with a <code>.aspera-env</code> extension. To download and decrypt <code>.aspera-env</code> files from the server, the client must provide the password. For more information on client-side encryption at rest, see <a href="#">Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 220.	None specified (content protection disabled)

Setting	Description	Default
	To disable content protection, clear the check box.	
Number of retry attempts	How many times to try transferring a file before the file is marked as failed.	3
Wait between retries	How frequently to retry file transfers.	3s
Retry maximum for	If no bytes are transferred during the specified period and no file is completed, the drop and all remaining incomplete files in the drop are marked as failed.	1m

## File Handling

These settings configure how files and their attributes are handled on the source and destination.

Setting	Description	Default
Resume policy	<p>Specify if partial files are resumed. To always re-transfer files, select <b>Never</b>. To resume conditionally, select from the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Compare file attributes</b> - Compares the sizes of the existing and original file. If they are the same, then the transfer resumes, otherwise the original file is transferred again.</li> <li>• <b>Compare sparse file checksums</b> - Performs a sparse checksum on the existing file and resumes the transfer if the file matches the original, otherwise the original file is transferred again. (Default)</li> <li>• <b>Compare full file checksums</b> - Performs a full checksum on the existing file and resumes the transfer if the file matches the original, otherwise the original file is transferred again.</li> </ul> <p>When resuming file transfer is enabled, select an overwrite rule for when the same file exists at the destination. Click the drop-down menu for <b>If a complete file already exists at the destination</b>.</p>	Never
Preserve file UIDs and GIDs	Select to preserve the file owner user ID or group ID.	None selected
Preserve file timestamps	<p>Select to preserve all file timestamps. Equivalent to enabling <b>Preserve creation timestamps</b>, <b>Preserve modification timestamps</b>, and <b>Preserve access timestamps</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Access, modification, and source access times cannot be preserved for node and Shares connections that are using cloud storage.</p>	Not enabled
Preserve creation timestamps	Set creation time of the destination be set to that of the source. If the destination is a non-Windows host, this option is ignored.	Not enabled
Preserve modification timestamps	Set the modification time of the destination file to that of the source.	Not enabled
Preserve access timestamps	Set the access time of the destination to that of the source. The destination file has the access time of the source file prior to the transfer.	Not enabled
Source Handling	Select what to do with source files after they are successfully transferred to the destination. Files can be archived, deleted, or	Do nothing after transfer

Setting	Description	Default
	<p>retained after transfer of a drop. When files are archived or deleted, source sub-directories are also deleted from the source, unless the sub-directories were empty to start. File structure is preserved in the archive.</p> <p>File archiving (<b>Automatically move source files to an archive folder</b>) is not supported for sources in object storage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Do nothing:</b> Source files remain in the Watch Folder after transfer.</li> <li>• <b>Automatically move source files to an archive folder:</b> Move source files to the specified archive folder. The archive path can use the following variables: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• { \$TIMESTAMP } (Drop creation time in seconds since epoch)</li> <li>• { \$DAY_OF_MONTH } (Time format for drop's creation time)</li> <li>• { \$MONTH }</li> <li>• { \$YEAR }</li> <li>• { \$HOUR }</li> <li>• { \$MINUTE }</li> <li>• { \$SECOND }</li> <li>• { \$DATETIME } (alias for { \$YEAR } { \$MONTH } { \$DAY_OF_MONTH } - { \$HOUR } { \$MINUTE } { \$SECOND })</li> <li>• { \$UUID }</li> <li>• { \$NAME }</li> <li>• { \$STATE }</li> <li>• { \$FILE :: STATE } (such as SUCCEEDED, FAILED)</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Automatically delete source files (once drop is done):</b> Delete source files after the entire transfer session is complete and successful.</li> <li>• <b>Automatically delete source file (immediately after transfer):</b> Delete source files as they are successfully transferred, rather than waiting for the entire session to complete before deleting files.</li> </ul>	


## Growing Files


Growing files (files that are written to the source folder from a streaming input) are transferred using FASPSStream technology rather than `ascp`. Identify growing files by specifying filters; files that match the filters are considered growing files. This feature requires a growing files-enabled license.

**Note:** Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to `aspsshell` and the source cannot be in object storage.

These settings configure how growing files are identified and the transfer session.




Setting	Description	Default
Maximum active drops	The maximum number of concurrent FASPSStream sessions the Watch Folder can initiate.	8

Setting	Description	Default
Bandwidth policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>high</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is twice as fast as a fair-policy transfer. The <code>high</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>fair</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to fully utilize the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. When congestion occurs, bandwidth is shared fairly by transferring at an even rate. The <code>fair</code> policy requires maximum (target) and minimum transfer rates.</li> <li><code>low</code> - Adjust the transfer rate to use the available bandwidth up to the maximum rate. Similar to fair mode, but less aggressive when sharing bandwidth with other network traffic. When congestion occurs, the transfer rate is reduced to the minimum rate until other traffic decreases.</li> <li><code>fixed</code> - Attempt to transfer at the specified target rate, regardless of network or storage capacity. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. Aspera discourages using the <code>fixed</code> policy except in specific contexts, such as bandwidth testing. The <code>fixed</code> policy requires a maximum (target) rate.</li> </ul>	Fair
Target rate	The target transfer rate. Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. This option accepts suffixes T for terabits/s, G for gigabits/s, M for megabits/s, K for kilobits/s, or B for bits/s. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the setting in the server's <code>aspera.conf</code> is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server <code>aspera.conf</code> , the rate does not exceed the cap.	10.00 Mbps
Minimum rate	Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate.	0 bps
Datagram size	The datagram size (MTU) for FASP.	None specified
Transport encryption	Select the encryption cipher ( <b>AES-128</b> ) to use for encrypting data in transit, or disable encryption by selecting <b>none</b> .	AES-128
SSH Port (TCP)	The port to use for SSH connections.	22
FASP Port (UDP)	The port to use for UDP connections.	33001
Completion timeout	How long to wait before the session is considered complete. A growing file is considered complete when no new data arrives within the timeout period.	5s
Send data after maximum	Force FASPStream to send data after the given time, even if the chunk is not full.	2s
Memory	The maximum amount of memory FASPStream is allowed to use.	2.00 MB
Chunk size	Packet size for transfers over the network.	128.00 KB
Filters	Identify growing files as those that match the specified filters. Click  to add a filter. Set an <b>Include</b> filter that matches your growing files. Filters are applied in order. Watch Folders supports glob and Regex filters. The glob filter system is the same as Ascp; see <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208.	None specified

Setting	Description	Default
	<p><b>Note:</b> An include rule must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use <code>/**</code> for glob or <code>.*</code> for Regex.</p> <p>Click  to delete a filter.</p>	

## Packages

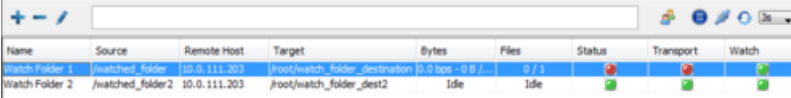
These settings enable the use of package files to define the order of files in the transfer queue for a session, and specify which file, either the last in the list or the package file itself, to transfer last. The package file is identified by setting matching filters.







Setting	Description	Default
Package timeout	How long to wait for file dependencies to be satisfied (files that must be transferred before the last file are transferred) before considering the dependency as unsatisfied.	10s
Parsers	<p>Click  to define the file to transfer last in the transfer session. Select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>List:</b> The package file is transferred last, after all files in the package file successfully transfer.</li> <li>• <b>Last file in list:</b> The last file in the package file is transferred last.</li> </ul> <p>Identify package files as those that match the specified filters. Click  to add a filter. Set an <b>Include</b> filter that matches your package files. Filters are applied in order. Watch Folders supports glob and Regex filters. The glob filter system is the same as Ascp; see <a href="#">Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files</a> on page 208.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An include rule must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use <code>/**</code> for glob or <code>.*</code> for Regex.</p> <p>Click  to delete the filter.</p>	None specified

## Managing and Monitoring Watch Folders in the GUI

Watch Folders are listed in a searchable, sortable table. Clicking on a specific Watch Folder shows its activity (file transfer status) and drops associated with the watch folder. Transfers can also be monitored from the **Transfers** view in the main HST Server GUI.

### The Watch Folders List



Name	Source	Remote Host	Target	Bytes	Files	Status	Transport	Watch
Watch Folder 1	/watched_folder	10.0.111.203	/root/watch_folder_destination	0.0 bps - 0 B / ...	0 / 1			
Watch Folder 2	/watched_folder2	10.0.111.203	/root/watch_folder_dest2	Idle	Idle			

The table includes columns for:


- **Status:** reports the state of the Watch Folder as **Healthy** (green), **Impaired** (red), or **Watchfolderd is down** (red).
- **Transport:** reports the state of transfers with the server as **Healthy** (green) or errored (red). The hover text displays the transfer error. More details are available in the **Activity** and **Drops** tabs.



- **Watch:** reports the state of the Watch service as **Healthy** (green) or errored (red). The hover text displays the problem with the Watch.


For help addressing errors, see [Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 270.

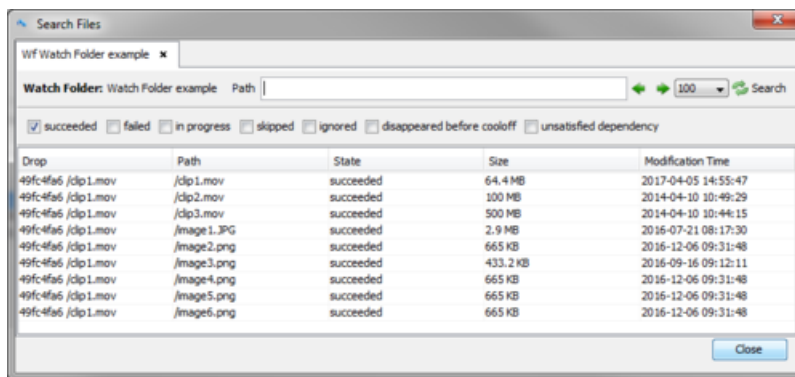
### Viewing and Editing Watch Folder Configuration

Select the Watch Folder from the list and either double click the row or click  to open the configuration. You can edit all settings except the Watch Folder ID.

**Note:** If you edit the remote path by clicking **Browse**, you must reenter the password for the remote host at the prompt because it is not saved on the client.

### Files in a Watch Folder

To get more information about the files in a Watch Folder, select the Watch Folder and click . This opens a searchable list of files in the Watch Folder that can be filtered by transfer state (**Succeeded**, **Failed**, **In Progress**, **Skipped**, **Ignored**, **Disappeared Before Cooloff**, or **Unsatisfied Dependency**).

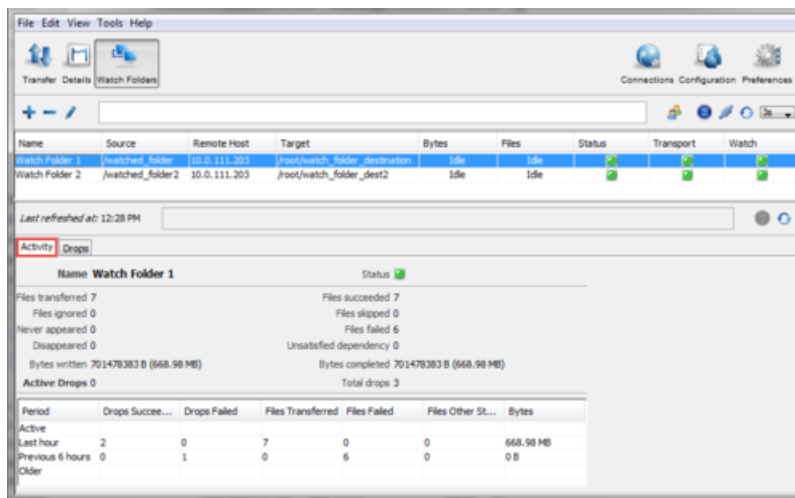


The **Failed** filter is selected by default; select a different filter or enter text in the **Path** field and click **Search** to refresh the search.

If your search returns more files than are allowed on the page, click the arrows to go forward or backward in the list.

### Activity

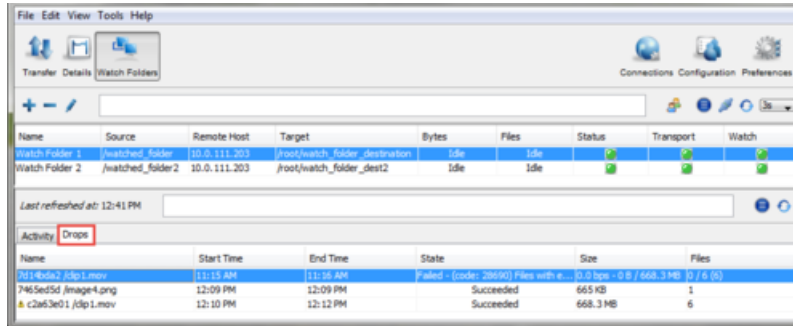
To view summary activity statistics for a Watch Folder, select the Watch Folder from the Watch Folder list and click **Activity**.



The transfer statistics table shows the number of active drops, drops and files attempted in the last hour, drops and files attempted in the preceding 6 hours (**Previous 6 hours** shows from 7 hours before now to 1 hour before now), and drops and files attempted before 7 hours before now (**Older**).

## Drops


To view the state of drops associated with the selected Watch Folder, click **Drops**.

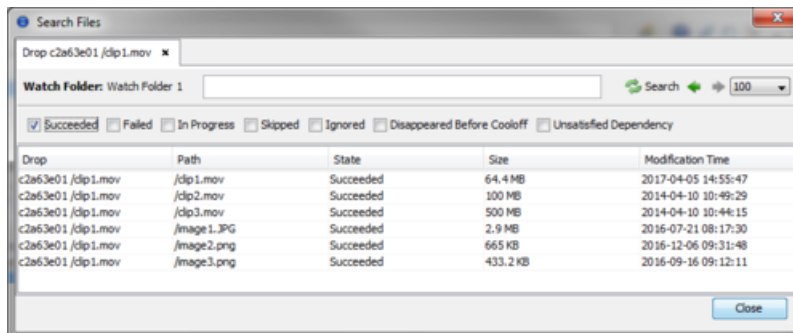


**Name:** The drop name is a unique identifier followed by the first file in the drop.

**Status:** The status of the drop shows a progress bar when the transfer is active or pending. Pending drops can occur when there are more drops than `ascp` processes available, and their progress bar does not show progress until the transfer begins. You can set the maximum number of parallel `ascp` processes allowed when you create a Watch Folder in **Settings > Maximum parallel ascp**. If the drop status is "Failed", you can retry the drop once the error is corrected by right-clicking the drop and clicking **Retry**.

### Files in a Drop

To get more information about the files in a drop, select the drop and click . This opens a searchable list of files in the drop that can be filtered by transfer state (**Succeeded**, **Failed**, **In Progress**, **Skipped**, **Ignored**, **Disappeared Before Cooloff**, or **Unsatisfied Dependency**):

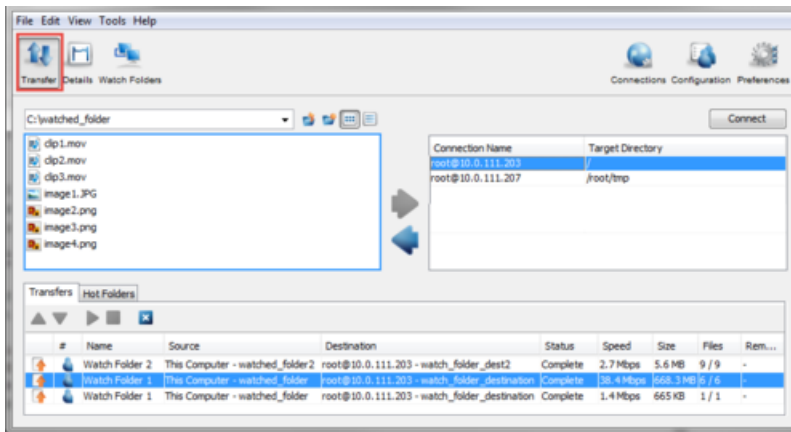


**Note:** If a file is removed from the watched folder within the cooloff period (before transfer begins), then the Drop status reports that it succeeded while the file is reported as "disappeared before cooloff." If the file is removed from the watched folder after cooloff but before transfer, then both the Drop and the file are reported as "failed."


## Transfers

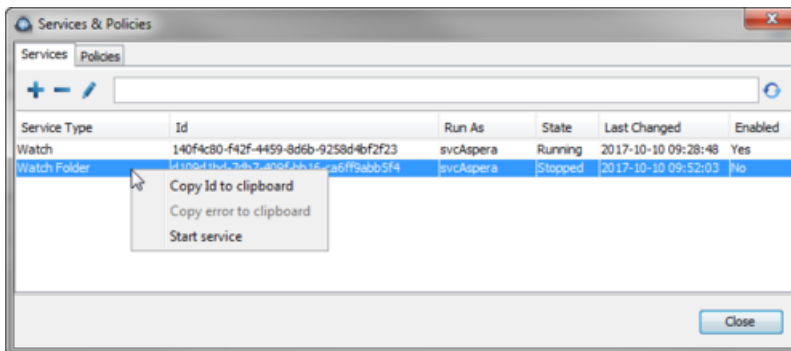
Transfers associated with Watch Folders can be monitored from the **Transfer** page of the HST Server GUI.

**Note:** Watch Folder transfers in the **Transfers** list do not show a progress bar, only the current transfer rate.




## Managing Services in the GUI

Services are managed (added, started, restarted, stopped, edited, and deleted) in the **Services & Policies** dialog. Open the **Services & Policies** dialog by clicking .




**Tip:** Right-click a service to copy its ID or error (if present) to your clipboard.

### Add a Service

Create a new service by clicking . Select the type of service (**Watch** or **Watch Folder**). If you select **Watch Folder**, a **Watch** service is automatically created if one does not exist for the user running the Watch Folder service.

**Note:** If you added a service outside of the GUI (by using asrun commands, [Creating, Managing, and Configuring Services](#) on page 244), the services do not appear in the list of services until the list is refreshed. The Node API user must have permissions to view all services if the services were created for another user.

### Search for a Service

Search for services by entering an expression in the text field and clicking . The expression is matched to values in any of the columns, lowercase column names can be used to restrict filtering, and multiple expressions can be entered as a comma-separated list. For example, to search for stopped Watch Folder services, enter "service-type=watch folder, stopped".


### Start or Restart a Service

Right click the service and click **Start service** if the service is stopped, or **Restart service** if the service is running.

### Stop a Service

Double-click the service, or select the service and then click , to open the **Edit Service** dialog. To stop the service, clear **Enabled** and click **OK**. The state of the service is reported as **Stopping** and then **Stopped**.

## Edit a Service

Double-click the service, or select the service and then click , to open the **Edit Service** dialog. In this dialog you can update the password for the system user and enable or disable the service.

## Delete a Service

Select the service you want to delete and click . Confirm the deletion. Deletions cannot be undone.

## Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI

By default, users are not allowed to perform any Watch Folders-related actions, unless they are configured with admin ACLs. If you do not want every user to have admin permissions, configure users with customized permissions policies, including whether they are allowed or denied permission to create Watch Folders, create Watch and Watch Folder services, and edit policies. The policy is a JSON object that is assigned to specific users. Users can be assigned to multiple policies to incrementally allow or deny permissions.

Polices can be managed in the GUI or the command line. For command line instructions, see [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies](#) on page 315.

### Create a Permission Policy

Go to **Watch Folders** >  (**Services & Policies**) > **Policies**. Click  to create a new policy. Select the template from which to build your policy:

- **Empty**: A blank template. You must enter policy settings; a blank policy is not supported.
- **All permissions**: A template that allows all actions on all resources.
- **All watch folders**: A template that allows only Watch Folder-related actions on any Watch Folder, and gives the user permission to view a list of Watch Folder services.

### Policy Syntax

A permissions policy is a JSON object with the following syntax:

```
{
  "id": "policy_name",
  "statements": [
    {
      "effect": "effect_value",
      "actions": [
        "permission_1",
        "permission_2",
        ...
        "permission_n"
      ],
      "resources": [
        "resource_id"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The placeholders take the following values:

- *policy\_name*: A descriptive name for the policy, such as "only-wfd-aspera". If no value is specified, a UUID is generated and returned in the output when the policy is created.
- *effect\_value*: Set to ALLOW or DENY.
- *permission*: An action that the user is allowed or denied, depending on *effect\_value*. Values can use \* to match any sequence of characters. For example, to allow all Watch Folder-related actions, enter "WF\_\*". See the following section for a complete list of permissions.

- *resource\_id*: For Watch Folder-related permissions, specify the resources to which the actions apply by their Aspera Resource Name (ARN), using the following general syntax:

```
arn:service:resource_type:resource
```

Where *service* identifies the product (*watchfolder* or *watch*), *resource\_type* is the type of resource (*wfd* for a Watch Folder daemon, *wf* for a Watch Folder), and *resource* is the resource ID, or a series of IDs to specify the daemon and Watch Folder ID of a specific Watch Folder. See the following section for examples.

## Actions

The following actions are permissions to create, delete, and view policies, and assign users to policies. These actions do not require that you specify a value for "resources". To allow all permissions, use "PERM\_\*".

```
PERM_CREATE_POLICY
PERM_DELETE_POLICY
PERM_LIST_POLICIES
PERM_ATTACH_USER_POLICY
PERM_DETACH_USER_POLICY
PERM_LIST_USER_POLICIES
```

The following actions create, delete, and view Watch and Watch Folder services. These actions do not require that you specify a value for "resources". Users without these permissions must create Watch Folders that use existing Watch and Watch Folder services.

```
PERM_LIST_RESOURCES
PERM_CREATE_RESOURCE
PERM_DELETE_RESOURCE
```

The following actions create and delete Watch Folders. These actions require that you specify the *wfd* resource, as `arn:watchfolder:wfd:daemon`. To allow actions on Watch Folders as any daemon, use `arn:watchfolder:wfd:*`.

```
WF_CREATE_WATCHFOLDER
WF_DELETE_WATCHFOLDER
```

**Note:** Node API users must have `PERM_LIST_RESOURCES` allowed in order to allow `WF_CREATE_WATCHFOLDER` or `WF_DELETE_WATCHFOLDER`.


The following actions retrieve Watch Folder configuration and state, update the Watch Folder, and retry a Watch Folder drop. These actions require that you specify the *wf* resource, as `arn:watchfolder:wf:daemon:watchfolder_id`. To allow actions on any Watch Folders run by any daemon, use `arn:watchfolder:wf:*:*`.

```
WF_GET_WATCHFOLDER
WF_GET_WATCHFOLDER_STATE
WF_UPDATE_WATCHFOLDER
WF_RETRY_DROP
```


To allow all Watch Folder actions on all Watch Folders, enter "WF\_\*" as the action and "arn:watchfolder:wfd:\*" as the resource.

## Assigning Node API Users to Policies

Go to the **Policies** tab in the GUI and select the policy. Click the lower  and enter the Node API user to which to assign the policy. Assign users to multiple policies to incrementally build their permissions.

To remove a Node API user from a policy, select the user and click .

## Editing Policies

Select the policy. Click .

To test that your edits have produced a valid policy, click **Validate**. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To save your changes, click **Save**.

**Note:** The policy name ("id") cannot be edited. To change the name, create a new policy.

## Troubleshooting Watch Folders in the GUI

Troubles with Watch Folders can usually be solved by correcting a configuration error or restarting key Watch Folders services.

### Issue: GUI Returns Error "Connection to https://localhost:9092 refused" After Clicking "Watch Folders"

The Aspera GUI does not read asperanoded configuration from `aspera.conf`. If you have configured the Aspera Node API to use an HTTPS port other than 9092, a host other than **localhost**, or HTTP instead of HTTPS, the GUI does not know and tries to start the Watch Folders GUI interface on a connection to `localhost:9092`. You can view these settings by running the following command

```
# asuserdata -a
```

Review the values for `server_name`, `http_port`, `https_port`, `enable_http`, and `enable_https` under `server` option set.

Manually change the port, host, and protocol that are used by the GUI to connect to asperanoded, as needed:

1. Open the Aspera GUI configuration file:

```
/opt/aspera/bin/asperascp.prop
```

2. Add the following text to the end of the file and update the values, as needed:

```
asperascp.node.port = port
asperascp.node.host = hostname
asperascp.node.protocol = {http|https}
```

3. Save your changes and restart the GUI.

### Issue: Node API User Log in Dialog Keeps Asking For Login

When you first click **Watch Folders**, you are asked to log in as a node user. If you enter credentials, click **OK**, and the dialog refreshes rather than closing and allowing you access to the Watch Folder management interface, then your node user might not exist. Confirm that the Node API user exists by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
List of Node API user(s):
=====
user          system/transfer user          acls
=====
node_api_user          system_user          [admin,impersonation]
```

If the user exists, try resetting the Node API user's password:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -m -u node_username -p node_password
```

### Issue: Cannot create Watch Folders

If the error message, "You cannot create Watch Folders. Please contact your Administrator." is displayed, the Node API user is not configured with the necessary permissions. Node API user permissions can be modified as described

in [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI](#) on page 268. To configure a Node API user with all admin permissions, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x transfer_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

### Issue: Cannot browse localhost

When creating Watch Folders in the GUI, you can click **Browse** to select the local path. If the error message, "Failed to connect to localhost: Forbidden" appears, confirm that the transfer user is configured with a docroot or a restriction then restart asperarund.

### Issue: Watch Folder status is "Impaired"

A Watch Folder can become impaired for several reasons:

#### Transport Error

A red circle under **Transport** indicates that a transfer error occurred. Hover the mouse over the indicator to view the error. Transfer errors can be caused by expired licenses, incorrect passwords, or targets that are outside the user's docroot or restriction. Check the following:


- Valid licenses are installed on the client and server.
- The authentication method is correct.
- For pull Watch Folders that are authenticated with a Node API user, the associated transfer user must have a docroot configured rather than a restriction.

Once the error is resolved, go to **Drops**, right click the drop that failed, and select **Retry** to transfer the files.


**Note:** Files in a failed drop are not automatically retried after the transfer error is resolved. The drop must be manually retried in order to refresh the `ascp` process.

#### Watch Error

A red circle under **Watch** indicates that a problem with asperawatchd is impairing the Watch Folder.

- "... does not respond" indicates that asperawatchd is disabled. Click , double-click the service, and select **Enabled**.

### Issue: Watch Folder status is "Watchfolderd is down"

This status indicates that asperawatchfolderd is not running. Click  and confirm that asperawatchfolderd that is used by the Watch Folder is enabled. If not, double-click the service and select **Enabled**.

## Watch Folders in the Command Line

---

Watch Folders can be created and managed in the command line, using the `aswatchfolderadmin` tool or the API.

### Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line

Watch Folders enables large-scale, automated file and directory transfers, including ultra-large directories with over 10 million items and directories with "growing" files. Watch Folders use input from `asperawatchd` to automate transfers of files added to or modified in a source folder. They can be configured to push from the local server or pull from a remote server. Remote servers can be HST Server, HST Endpoint, and IBM Aspera Shares servers, as well as servers in object storage. Push Watch Folders can use IBM Aspera on Cloud and IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes for a destination.

HST Server requires configuration to support Watch Folders. Whether you create Watch Folders using the command line tool `aswatchfolderadmin` ([Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 273) or the

Watch Folder API ([Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 303), prepare your computer by taking the following steps.

1. Ensure that asperarund is running.

Run the following command:

```
# systemctl status asperarund
Aspera Run Server: asperarund          [ RUNNING ]
```

Or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperarund status
Aspera Run Server: asperarund          [ RUNNING ]
```

2. Select or create a user account to run your services.

Watch Folder services must be run under a user with access to every area of your file system in which you intend to create a Watch Folder. You can run multiple instances of these services under different users; however, most deployments run these services under one user. Choose a user that has access to your entire file system.

If you need to run multiple instances of these services to access every area of your file system, see [Choosing User Accounts to Run Watch Folder Services](#) on page 243.

3. Configure a docroot or restriction for the user.

Docroots and path restrictions limit the area of a file system or object storage to which the user has access. Users can create Watch Folders and Watch services on files or objects only within their docroot or restriction.

**Note:** Users can have a docroot or restriction, but not both or Watch Folder creation fails.

Docroots can be set up in the GUI or command line. In the GUI, click **Configuration > Users > *username* > Docroot** and set the permitted path as the value for **Absolute Path**. To set up a docroot from the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Restrictions must be set from the command line:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|path"
```

The restriction path format depends on the type of storage. In the following examples, the restriction allows access to the entire storage; specify a bucket or path to limit access.

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>
Azure Data Lake Storage	<code>adl://*</code>



Storage Type	Format Example
Alibaba Cloud	oss://*
Google Cloud	gs://*
HDFS	hdfs://*

With a docroot or restriction set up, the user is now an Aspera transfer user. Restart asperanoded to activate your change:

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

4. Ensure the user has permissions to write to the default log directory if no directory is specified. For more information about configuring log directories, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.
5. Configure asperawatchd and asperawatchfolderd settings. Though the default values are already optimized for most users, you can also configure the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, logging, scan threads, and drop handling, among other features. For instructions, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322 and [Watch Folder Service Configuration](#) on page 282.
6. Configure Linux for many Watch Folders. If you plan to watch more than 8,200 directories on a Linux computer, you might need to configure it to support that many processes. For instructions, see [Configuring Linux for Many Watch Folders](#) on page 302.

Your system is now ready for Watch Folders.

To create a push Watch Folder, see [Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 273 or [Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 303.

To create a pull Watch Folder, see [Creating a Pull Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 278 or [Creating a Pull Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 307.

## Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin

These instructions describe how to create a push Watch Folder by using the `aswatchfolderadmin` utility. `aswatchfolderadmin` requires a JSON configuration file with the syntax introduced in 3.8.0 (described in the following section). Push Watch Folders can still be created from JSON configuration files that follow the 3.7 version syntax by using the Watch Folder API.

To create and manage Watch Folders by using the Watch Folder API, the GUI, or IBM Aspera Console, see [Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 303, [Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 247, and the [IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#).

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to `aspsell` and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.

- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

To create a push Watch Folder:

1. Prepare your computer as described in [Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line](#) on page 271.
2. Create a Watch Service and Watch Folder service for your user on the local computer.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchfolderd --user username
```

3. Verify that the services are running for the user.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send -l
```

The output is similar to the following:

```
[asrun send] code=0
{
  "services": [
    {
      "id":"52ca847a-6981-47e1-9f9b-b661cf298af1",
      "configuration": {
        "enabled":true,
        "run_as": {
          "pass": "*****",
          "user":"root"
        },
        "type":"WATCHD"
      },
      "state":"RUNNING",
      "state_changed_at":"2016-10-20T19:14:34Z"
    },
    {
      "id":"d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4",
      "configuration": {
        "enabled":true,
        "run_as":{
          "pass": "*****",
          "user":"root"
        },
        "type":"WATCHFOLDERD"
      },
      "state":"RUNNING",
      "state_changed_at":"2016-10-20T00:11:19Z"
    }
  ]
}
```

Use the `aswatchadmin` and `aswatchfolderadmin` utilities to retrieve a list of running daemons. Daemons usually have the same name as the user for which they are running. For example, if you used the root user to run your services, you should see the root daemon listed when you run the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root

# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons
[aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

**Note:** Daemons for services that are started in the GUI are named with the ID of the service, rather than the user.

#### 4. Create a JSON configuration file for your Watch Folder.

The Watch Folder JSON file describes the source, target, and authentication to the remote server, and can also specify transfer session settings, file handling and post-processing, filters, and growing file handling.

A basic push Watch Folder configuration file has the following syntax:

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "source_directory"
  },
  "target": {
    "path": "target_directory",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "hostname",
      "port": port,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "authentication_mode",
        "user": "username",
        "pass": "password"
        "keypath": "key_file"
      }
    }
  },
  "watchd": {
    "scan_period": "scan_period"
  }
}
```

For a full configuration reference, see [Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference](#) on page 283.

Field	Description	Default
source path	The local source directory. If the transfer user who is associated with the Node API user is configured with a docroot, then the path is relative to that docroot. If the transfer user is configured with a restriction, then the path is the absolute or UNC path.	N/A
target path	The remote target directory. For SSH and Node API user authentication, the path is relative to the user's docroot, or the absolute path if the transfer user is configured with a restriction. For Shares authentication, the path is the share name and, optionally, a path within the share. For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key.	N/A
location type	Set "type" to "REMOTE" for the remote server. "type": "REMOTE" is assumed if "host" is specified.	"REMOTE"
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote file system. <b>Required.</b> The host can be specified with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The preferred format for IPv6 addresses is x:x:x:x:x:x:x, where each of the eight x is a hexadecimal number of up to 4 hex digits. Zone IDs (for example, %eth0) can be appended to the IPv6 address.	N/A
port	The port to use for authentication to the remote file system. By default, if the authentication type is SSH, then the SSH port for the <code>ascp</code> process (the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section) is used. If the authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , 9092 is used. For Shares, IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager, or IBM Aspera on Cloud endpoints, enter 443.	If authentication type is SSH, then default is the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section

Field	Description	Default
		(default: 22). If authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , then default is 9092.
authentication type	<p>How Watch Folders authenticates to the remote server. Valid values are <code>SSH</code> or <code>NODE_BASIC</code>.</p> <p>For <code>SSH</code>, authenticate with a transfer user's username and password, or specify the username and the path to their SSH private key file.</p> <p>For <code>NODE_BASIC</code>, authenticate with a Node API username and password, Shares credentials, or an access key ID and secret.</p> <p>Sample JSON syntax for each authentication type is provided following this table.</p>	<code>NODE_BASIC</code>
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	<p>The password for authentication. Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's password, the Node API user's password, the Shares user's password, or the access key secret.</p> <p><b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "keypath" is not specified</p>	N/A
keypath	<p>For SSH authentication with an SSH key, the path to the transfer user's SSH private key file.</p> <p><b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "pass" is not specified</p>	N/A
watchd identifier	The daemon associated with the Watch Service that is used to monitor the file system. Optional. Required only when you want to use a Watch Service that is run by a user who is not associated with the Node API user or access key. Use to specify the daemon on the remote host if it is not <b>xfer</b> .	N/A
scan_period	<p>The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite". On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <code>infinite</code>.</p> <p>For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by <code>scan_period</code> are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.</p>	30m

Field	Description	Default
	<p>Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The value for scan period cannot be empty, otherwise the configuration is rejected.</p>	

Save the configuration file. The path to the configuration file is used in the next step.

##### 5. Create the Watch Folder.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin create-folder daemon -f json_file
```

Where *daemon* is the user that is running the Watch Folder services and *json\_file* is the path to the Watch Folder configuration file. If you do not know the daemon, retrieve a list of running daemons by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons
[aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

Daemons usually have the same name as the user for which they are running. For example, if you used the root user to run your services, you should see the root daemon listed.

**Note:** Daemons for services that are started in the GUI are named with the ID of the service, rather than the user.

For example, using the root daemon and a valid JSON file, *watchfolderconf.json*, the output of the *aswatchfolderadmin* command should look like the following:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin create-folder root -f
watchfolder_conf.json
[aswatchfolderadmin create-folder]
Successfully created instance b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585.
```

If *aswatchfolderadmin* returns `err=28672`, confirm that the user's docroot allows access to the source directory. If you need to make changes to your docroot, see [Updating the Docroot or Restriction of a Running Watch Folder Service](#) on page 318.

If *aswatchfolderadmin* returns `err=2`, a Watch Service is not running for the user. See the previous section for instructions on starting a Watch Service.

##### 6. Verify that the Watch Folder is running.

To retrieve a list of running Watch Folders, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders daemon_name
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders root
[aswatchfolderadmin query-folders] Found a
single watchfolder:
b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

##### 7. Test your Watch Folder.

If the source directory is empty, add files to it. If the configuration is correct, Watch Folders detects the new files, starts a transfer, and the new files appear in the target directory.

If the source directory is not empty, open the target directory to view files that are automatically transferred as Watch Folders starts.

Once Watch Folders are created, manage them by using the `aswatchfolderadmin` utility. For information, see [Managing Watch Folders with `aswatchfolderadmin`](#) on page 301.

## Creating a Pull Watch Folder with `aswatchfolderadmin`

These instructions describe how to create a pull Watch Folder by using the `aswatchfolderadmin` utility. `aswatchfolderadmin` requires a JSON configuration file with the syntax introduced in 3.8.0 (described in the following section). Pull Watch Folders can still be created from JSON configuration files that follow the 3.7 version syntax by using the Watch Folder API.

To create and manage Watch Folders by using the Watch Folder API, the GUI, or IBM Aspera Console, see [Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 303, [Watch Folders in the GUI](#) on page 247, and the [IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#).

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to `aspsell` and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.
- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

### Restrictions on Pull Watch Folders

- The remote server must be running HST Server or HST Endpoint version 3.8.0 or newer.
- Pull Watch Folders must be authenticated with an access key ID and secret, a Node API username and password, or IBM Aspera Shares credentials. SSH authentication is not supported for remote sources.
- Pull Watch Folders that use Node API authentication cannot be authenticated with a Node API user whose associated transfer user is configured with a restriction (the Watch Folder status is reported as impaired). Edit the transfer user's configuration to use a `docroot`, restart `asperanoded`, and the Watch Folder recovers automatically.
- Pull Watch Folders cannot use IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service nodes) or IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes as the remote source.
- Pull Watch Folders do not support growing files.

To create a pull Watch Folder:

1. Create a Watch Service on the remote server.

If you have SSH access to the server, create the service from the server's command line.

- a) Create the service.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username
```

The *username* is for a system user with permissions to the source path.

- b) Confirm that the service was created.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
```

If the service exists, the following output is returned (in this example, the user is "root"):

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
```

```
root
```

If other services are running on the server, other daemons are also returned.

If you do not have SSH access to the server, use the Node API from your local computer to create the service. This approach requires that you have node credentials for the server. For instructions, see [Creating a Pull Watch Folder with the API](#) on page 307.

2. Create a Watch Folder service for your user on the local computer.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchfolderd --user username
```

3. Verify that the service is running for the user.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asrun send -l
```

The output is similar to the following (in this example, the user is "root"):

```
[asrun send] code=0
{
  "services": [
    {
      "id": "d109d1bd-7db7-409f-bb16-ca6ff9abb5f4",
      "configuration": {
        "enabled": true,
        "run_as": {
          "pass": "*****",
          "user": "root"
        },
        "type": "WATCHFOLDERD"
      },
      "state": "RUNNING",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-10-20T00:11:19Z"
    }
  ]
}
```

Use the `aswatchadmin` and `aswatchfolderadmin` utilities to retrieve a list of running daemons. Daemons usually have the same name as the user for which they are running. For example, if you used the root user to run your services, you should see the root daemon listed when you run the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root

# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons
[aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

**Note:** Daemons for services that are started in the GUI are named with the ID of the service, rather than the user.

4. Create a JSON configuration file for your Watch Folder.

The Watch Folder JSON file describes the source, target, and authentication to the remote server, and can also specify transfer session settings, file handling and post-processing, filters, and growing file handling.

A basic pull Watch Folder configuration has the following syntax:

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "source_directory",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "ip_address",
```

```

        "port": port,
        "authentication": {
            "type": "authentication_mode",
            "user": "username",
            "pass": "password"
        }
    },
    "target": {
        "path": "target_directory"
    },
    "watchd": {
        "scan_period": "scan_period",
        "identifier": "daemon"
    }
}

```

For a full configuration reference, see [Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference](#) on page 283.

Field	Description	Default
source path	The source directory on the remote server. For SSH and Node API user authentication, the path is relative to the associated transfer user's docroot, or the absolute path if the transfer user is configured with a restriction. For Shares authentication, the path is the share name and, optionally, a path within the share. For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key.	N/A
location type	Set "type" to "REMOTE" for the remote server. "type" : "REMOTE" is assumed if "host" is specified.	"REMOTE"
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote file system. <b>Required.</b> The host can be specified with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The preferred format for IPv6 addresses is x:x:x:x:x:x:x, where each of the eight x is a hexadecimal number of up to 4 hex digits. Zone IDs (for example, %eth0) can be appended to the IPv6 address.	N/A
port	The port to use for authentication to the remote file system. By default, if the authentication type is SSH, then the SSH port for the ascp process (the value for tcp_port in the "transport" section) is used. If the authentication type is NODE_BASIC, 9092 is used. For Shares, IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager, or IBM Aspera on Cloud endpoints, enter 443.	If authentication type is SSH, then default is the value for tcp_port in the "transport" section (default: 22). If authentication type is NODE_BASIC, then default is 9092.
authentication type	How Watch Folders authenticates to the remote server. Pull Watch Folders must use NODE_BASIC and authenticate with a Node API username and password, Shares credentials, or an access key ID and secret.	NODE_BASIC
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	The password for authentication, depending on the type of authentication.	N/A



Field	Description	Default
target path	The target directory on the local computer, relative to the transfer user's docroot.	N/A
watchd identifier	The daemon associated with the Watch Service that is used to monitor the file system. Optional. Required only when you want to use a Watch Service that is run by a user who is not associated with the Node API user or access key.	The system user that is associated with the Node API user or access key.
scan_period	<p>The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite". On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <i>infinite</i>.</p> <p>For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by <code>scan_period</code> are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.</p> <p>Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The value for scan period cannot be empty, otherwise the configuration is rejected.</p>	30m

Save the configuration file. The path to the configuration file is used in the next step.

##### 5. Create the Watch Folder.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin create-folder daemon -f json_file
```

Where *daemon* is the user that is running the Watch Folder services and *json\_file* is the path to the Watch Folder configuration file. If you do not know the daemon, retrieve a list of running daemons by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons
[aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

Daemons usually have the same name as the user for which they are running. For example, if you used the root user to run your services, you should see the root daemon listed.

**Note:** Daemons for services that are started in the GUI are named with the ID of the service, rather than the user.

For example, using the root daemon and a valid JSON file, `watchfolderconf.json`, the output of the `aswatchfolderadmin` command should look like the following:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin create-folder root -f
watchfolder_conf.json
```

```
[aswatchfolderadmin create-folder]
Successfully created instance b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585.
```

If `aswatchfolderadmin` returns `err=28672`, confirm that the user's docroot allows access to the source directory. If you need to make changes to your docroot, see [Updating the Docroot or Restriction of a Running Watch Folder Service](#) on page 318.

If `aswatchfolderadmin` returns `err=2`, a Watch Service is not running for the user. See the previous section for instructions on starting a Watch Service.

## 6. Verify that the Watch Folder is running.

To retrieve a list of running Watch Folders, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders daemon_name
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders root
[aswatchfolderadmin query-folders] Found a
single watchfolder:
b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

## 7. Test your Watch Folder.

If the source directory contains files, the Watch Folder collects them into a drop after the Watch service scan interval passes and transfers them to the target.

**Note:** No files are transferred until the first scan interval passes. If the Watch service scan interval is set to the default, files transfer after 30 minutes.

Once Watch Folders are created, manage them by using the `aswatchfolderadmin` utility. For information, see [Managing Watch Folders with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 301.

## Watch Folder Service Configuration

The configuration for `asperawatchfolderd` is in the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf`. It includes drop and file management and enabling the use of raw options (`ascp` options that are not yet directly included in Watch Folders).

```
<server>
  <rund>...</rund>
  <watch>
    <log_level>log</log_level>
    <log_directory>AS_NULL</log_directory>
    <db_spec>redis:host:31415:domain</db_spec>
    <watchd>...</watchd>
    <watchfolderd>
      <remote_tmpdir_conf>hide</remote_tmpdir_conf>
      <purge_drops_max_age>1d</purge_drops_max_age>
      <purge_drops_max_files>9223372036854775807</
purge_drops_max_files>
      <raw_options>disable</raw_options>
    </watchfolderd>
```

To view the current settings, run the following command and look for settings that start with `watch` and `watchfolderd`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

## Configuring asperawatchfolderd Settings

Configure asperawatchfolderd by using `asconfigurator` commands with this general syntax:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;option,value"
```

Options and values are described in the following table.

### Watch Folder Configuration Options

**Note:** The logging and database configuration settings apply to both `asperawatchd` and `asperawatchfolderd`, and are described in [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description	Default
watchfolderd_purge_drops_max_age <purge_drops_max_age>	The maximum age of stored drops. Drops older than this age are purged.	1d
watchfolderd_purge_drops_max_files <purge_drops_max_files>	The maximum number files across all drops. When this number is exceeded, drops are purged until the file count is less than the specified number.	9223372036854775807
watchfolderd_raw_options <raw_options>	Enable the use of new <code>ascp</code> options in Watch Folders-initiated transfers before the options are built into the application. Valid values are <code>disable</code> or <code>enable</code> .	disable

## Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference

Watch Folders are configured by using a JSON configuration file. This article describes all the available configuration options. For simple push and pull configuration examples that contain only the required options, see [Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 273 and [Creating a Pull Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 278.

To get a complete JSON schema that provides the default values, value options, and a description of each parameter, run the following command:

```
# curl -i -u nodeuser:nodepassword https://{domain}:9092/schemas/watchfolders/configuration
```

### Sample JSON Configuration File (Pull Watch Folder with Node Authentication)

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "/projectA",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "10.0.111.124",
      "port": 9092,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "NODE_BASIC",
        "user": "nodeuser1",
        "pass": "watchfoldersaregreat",
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  },
  "target": {
    "path": "/projectA"
  },
  "id": "b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585",
  "cool_off": "30s",
  "snapshot_creation_period": "10s",
  "meta": {
    "version": 0,
    "name": "aspera_watchfolder"
  },
  "drop": {
    "detection_strategy": "COOL_OFF_ONLY",
    "cool_off": "5s"
  },
  "post_processing": {
    "source": {
      "type": "TRANSFER_NONE",
      "archive_dir": "/watchfolder_sessions/{${UUID}}_{{${DATETIME}}}"
    }
  },
  "filters": [
    {
      "type": "GLOB",
      "pattern": "*.txt",
      "rule": "INCLUDE"
    },
    {
      "type": "GLOB",
      "pattern": "/*",
      "rule": "EXCLUDE"
    }
  ],
  "packages": {
    "timeout": "10s",
    "parsers": [
      {
        "final_transfer": "LIST",
        "filters": [
          {
            "type": "REGEX",
            "rule": "INCLUDE",
            "pattern": ".*\\.txt"
          },
          {
            "type": "REGEX",
            "rule": "EXCLUDE",
            "pattern": ".*"
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  },
  "transport": {
    "host": "",
    "user": "aspx2",
    "pass": "",
    "proxy": "dnat://aspx1:passwordsarecool@localhost:9001",
    "keypath": "",
    "fingerprint": "",
    "cookie": "",
    "tags": {
    },
  },

```

```

"error_handling":{
  "file":{
    "max_retries":3,
    "retry_timeout":"3s"
  },
  "drop":{
    "retry_period":"1m"
  }
},
"regular":{
  "max_parallel":10,
  "connect_timeout":"10s",
  "policy":"FAIR",
  "min_rate":"0B",
  "target_rate":"10M",
  "tcp_port":22,
  "udp_port":33001,
  "read_blk_size":"",
  "write_blk_size":"",
  "datagram_size":"",
  "rexmsg_size":"",
  "cipher":"AES128",
  "overwrite":"DIFF",
  "resume":"NONE",
  "preserve_uid":false,
  "preserve_gid":false,
  "preserve_time":false,
  "preserve_creation_time":false,
  "preserve_modification_time":false,
  "preserve_access_time":false,
  "queue_threshold":"5s",
  "sample_period":"2s"
},
"growing_file": {
  "max_parallel":8,
  "policy":"FAIR",
  "min_rate":"",
  "target_rate":"10M",
  "tcp_port":22,
  "udp_port":33001,
  "datagram_size":"",
  "cipher":"AES128",
  "completion_timeout":"5s",
  "memory":"2M",
  "chunk_size":"128K",
  "force_send_after":"2s",
  "filters":[
    {
      "type":"REGEX",
      "rule":"INCLUDE",
      "pattern":".*\\.growing"
    },
    {
      "type":"REGEX",
      "rule":"EXCLUDE",
      "pattern":".*"
    }
  ]
},
"watchd" : {
  "scan_period":"30m",
  "identifier" : "root"
}

```

```
}

```

## Top Level Configuration

Watch Folders supports transfers between a local server and a remote server. For the local server, Watch Folders requires only the local path, whether it is the source or target. For the remote server, Watch Folders requires the host address, port for authentication, and authentication credentials. In the following example, the source is remote and the target is local.

**Note:** The header "X-aspera-WF-version:2017\_10\_23" is required when submitting POST, PUT, and GET requests to /v3/watchfolders on servers that are version 3.8.0 or newer. This enables Watch Folders to parse the JSON "source" and "target" objects in the format that was introduced in version 3.8.0.

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "path",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "host",
      "port": port,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "SSH|NODE_BASIC",
        "user": "username",
        "pass": "password",
        "keypath": "key_file",
        "fingerprint": "ssh_fingerprint"
      }
    }
  },
  "target": {
    "path": "path"
  },
  "id": "watchfolder_id",
  "cool_off": "30s",
  "snapshot_creation_period": "10s",
  ...
}
```

Field	Description	Default
path	<p>The source or target directory. <b>Required.</b></p> <p><b>Local path:</b> The path is relative to the docroot of the transfer user associated with the node username. If the transfer user is configured with a restriction, the path is the absolute or UNC path.</p> <p><b>Remote path:</b> For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key. For SSH and Node API user authentication, the path is relative to the user's docroot, configured, or the absolute or UNC path if the user is configured with a restriction. For IBM Aspera Shares authentication, the path is the share name and, optionally, a path within the share.</p> <p>When asperawatchd detects a new file in the source directory, asperawatchfolderd starts an <code>ascp</code> session to transfer the file to target directory. The target directory must be within the docroot or restriction set for the user running asperawatchd.</p>	N/A
location type	Set "type" to "REMOTE" for the remote server. For push Watch Folders the remote server is the "target", for pull Watch Folders the remote server is the "source". One endpoint must be remote and one	"REMOTE" is assumed if "host" is

Field	Description	Default
	must be local. Local-to-local and remote-to-remote Watch Folders are not supported.	specified. "LOCAL" is assumed if "REMOTE" or "host" is not specified.
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote file system. <b>Required.</b> The host can be specified with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The preferred format for IPv6 addresses is x:x:x:x:x:x, where each of the eight x is a hexadecimal number of up to 4 hex digits. Zone IDs (for example, %eth0) can be appended to the IPv6 address.	N/A
port	The port to use for authentication to the remote file system. By default, if the authentication type is SSH, then the SSH port for the <code>ascp</code> process (the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section) is used. If the authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , 9092 is used. For Shares, IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager, or IBM Aspera on Cloud endpoints, enter 443.	If authentication type is SSH, then default is the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section (default: 22). If authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , then default is 9092.
authentication type	How Watch Folders authenticates to the remote server. Valid values are <code>SSH</code> or <code>NODE_BASIC</code> .  For <code>SSH</code> , authenticate with a transfer user's username and password, or specify the username and the path to their SSH private key file.  For <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , authenticate with a Node API username and password, Shares credentials, or an access key ID and secret.  Sample JSON syntax for each authentication type is provided following this table.	<code>NODE_BASIC</code>
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	The password for authentication. Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's password, the Node API user's password, the Shares user's password, or the access key secret.  <b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "keypath" is not specified	N/A
keypath	For SSH authentication with an SSH key, the path to the transfer user's SSH private key file.  <b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "pass" is not specified	N/A
fingerprint	The SSH fingerprint of the remote server. Aspera strongly recommends using SSH fingerprint for security. If the fingerprint does not match that of the server, the transfer fails with the error "Remote host is not who we expected". For more information, see <a href="#">Securing Your SSH Server</a> on page 19 ("Configuring Transfer Server Authentication").	N/A

Field	Description	Default
id	Value used to identify a Watch Folder. If this field is not configured at creation, a UUID is automatically generated for and assigned to the Watch Folder.	N/A
cool_off	How long the Watch Folder service waits for files in the watched folder to stop changing (stabilize) before taking a directory snapshot and creating a drop. Default: 5s.	5s
snapshot_creation_per	The interval during which Watch Folders groups new files in the source directory into a drop. All files in a drop are transferred in the same transfer session, post-processed together, and reported as a unit. Watch Folders uses asperawatchd to detect file system modifications, and continuously creates snapshots to compute the snapshot differential. A small value results in high temporal resolution for detecting file system modifications, whereas a large value improves asperawatchd performance. Default: 3s.	3s

### Authentication JSON Syntax

- SSH with password

```
"authentication": {
  "type": "SSH",
  "user": "username",
  "pass": "password",
  "fingerprint": "server_fingerprint"
}
```

- SSH with SSH key

```
"authentication": {
  "type": "SSH",
  "user": "username",
  "keypath": "key_path",
  "fingerprint": "server_fingerprint"
}
```

- NODE\_BASIC with Node API username and password

```
"authentication": {
  "type": "NODE_BASIC",
  "user": "node_username",
  "pass": "node_password",
}
```

- NODE\_BASIC with Shares credentials

```
"authentication": {
  "type": "NODE_BASIC",
  "user": "shares_username",
  "pass": "shares_password",
}
```

- NODE\_BASIC with access key ID and secret

```
"authentication": {
  "type": "NODE_BASIC",
  "user": "access_key_id",
  "pass": "access_key_secret",
}
```



## Meta Fields

```
{
  ...
  "meta":{
    "version":0,
    "name":"aspera_watchfolder"
  },
  ...
}
```

Field	Description	Default
version	Specifies the current version of the configuration. When updating the configuration, this value must match the version stored by the server. Otherwise, the update is rejected.	0
name	The value specified in this field is added to the cookie reported by ascp. Optional.	N/A

## Drop Fields

Watch Folders groups new or updated files it detects in its source folder into "drops". A drop is defined by the duration set by the `snapshot_creation_period`. All files in a given drop are transferred in the same transfer session, post-processed together, and reported as a unit.

```
{
  ...
  "drop":{
    "detection_strategy":"COOL_OFF_ONLY",
    "cool_off":"5s"
  },
  ...
}
```

Field	Description	Default
detection_strategy	The strategy that Watch Folders uses to create drops when new files are added to the source folder: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>COOL_OFF_ONLY</code>: The drop includes new files added to the source folder within the duration of the <code>cool_off</code> field.</li> <li><code>TOP_LEVEL_FILES</code>: Create a drop for each file placed in the top level of the source folder.</li> <li><code>TOP_LEVEL_DIRS</code>: Create a drop for each directory added to the top level of the source folder. This drop also includes the sub-directories and files in the top level directory.</li> </ul>	<code>COOL_OFF_ONLY</code>
cool_off	The time after the first new file is added to the source file during which any other new files are included in the same drop. This setting is only relevant for the <code>COOL_OFF_ONLY</code> detection strategy. Aspera recommends choosing a multiple of the specified <code>snapshot_creation_period</code> for predictable results.	5s

## Post Processing Fields

Optionally, specify post-processing to do after a drop or file is successfully transferred.

```
{
  ...
  "post_processing":{
    "source":{
      "type":"TRANSFER_NONE",
      "archive_dir":"/watchfolder_sessions/{${UUID}}_{{${DATETIME}}}"
    }
  },
  ...
}
```

Field	Description	Default
type	<p>The type of post-transfer processing. Files can be archived, deleted, or retained after transfer of a drop. When files are archived or deleted, source sub-directories are also deleted from the source, unless the sub-directories were empty to start. File structure is preserved in the archive.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>TRANSFER_NONE: Files stay in the source directory.</li> <li>TRANSFER_ARCHIVE: Files in the source directory are moved to a final archive after successful transfer. This option is not supported for sources in object storage.</li> <li>TRANSFER_DELETE: Files in the source directory are deleted after successful transfer once the session completes.</li> <li>FILE_TRANSFER_DELETE: Files in the source directory are deleted after each successfully transfers, rather than waiting for the session to complete.</li> </ul>	TRANSFER_NONE
archive_dir	<p>The destination of archived files, if the archive type is TRANSFER_ARCHIVE. The path can be determined using the following variables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{\${TIMESTAMP}} (Drop creation time in seconds since epoch)</li> <li>{\${DAY_OF_MONTH}} (Time format for drop's creation time)</li> <li>{\${MONTH}}</li> <li>{\${YEAR}}</li> <li>{\${HOUR}}</li> <li>{\${MINUTE}}</li> <li>{\${SECOND}}</li> <li>{\${DATETIME}} (alias for {\${YEAR}} {\${MONTH}} {\${DAY_OF_MONTH}} - {\${HOUR}} {\${MINUTE}} {\${SECOND}})</li> <li>{\${UUID}}</li> <li>{\${NAME}}</li> <li>{\${STATE}}</li> <li>{\${FILE}::STATE} (such as SUCCEEDED, FAILED)</li> </ul>	N/A

## Filter Fields

Each filter object must include values for "type", "pattern", and "rule". Filters are applied in order. Watch Folders supports glob and Regex filters. The glob filter system is the same as Ascp; see [Using Filters to Include and Exclude Files](#) on page 208.

```
{
  ...
  "filters": [
    {
      "type": "GLOB",
      "pattern": "*.txt",
      "rule": "INCLUDE"
    },
    {
      "type": "GLOB",
      "pattern": "/*",
      "rule": "EXCLUDE"
    }
  ],
  ...
}
```

Field	Description	Default
type	The type of filter. Supported filters are GLOB and REGEX.	N/A
pattern	The filter pattern.	N/A
rule	The rule for the filter. Supported rules are INCLUDE and EXCLUDE. <b>Note:</b> An include rule must be followed by at least one exclude rule, otherwise all files are transferred because none are excluded. To exclude all files that do not match the include rule, use /* for glob or .* for Regex.	N/A

## Packages Fields

Packages values are used to define an order for the transfer queue. For example, if file B depends on file A, file A must be transferred before File B. Dependencies are defined by package files, where the package file contains the set of files on which it depends. The package file (by default) is transferred after successfully transferring all the files defined in the package file

```
{
  ...
  "packages": {
    "timeout": "10s",
    "parsers": [
      {
        "final_transfer": "LIST",
        "filters": [
          {
            "type": "REGEX",
            "rule": "INCLUDE",
            "pattern": ".*\\.txt"
          },
          {
            "type": "REGEX",
            "rule": "EXCLUDE",
            "pattern": ".*"
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  },
  ...
}
```

```

    ...
  }
]
},
...
}

```

Field	Description	Default
timeout	How long to wait for file dependencies to be satisfied (files that must be transferred before the last file are transferred) before considering the dependency as unsatisfied.	10s
final_transfer	Define the file to transfer last. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LIST: The package file is transferred last, after all files in the package file successfully transfer.</li> <li>LAST_FILE_IN_LIST: The last file in the package file is transferred last.</li> </ul>	LIST
filters	Select files to include in the package as those that match the specified filters. Use the same syntax as in the "filters" object.	N/A

### The transport object

Use to configure authentication to the remote host.

```

}
...
"transport": {
  "host": "198.51.100.22",
  "user": "aspx2",
  "pass": "XF324cd28",
  "token": "fiewle535etn23TEIW234n5sEWTnseonts",
  "proxy": "dnat://aspx1:XF324cd28@localhost:9001",
  "keypath": "~/.ssh/id_rsa",
  "fingerprint": "stringalsdjfad",
  "tags": {
    "aspera": {
      "cloud-metadata": [
        {"location": "tarawera"}
      ]
    }
  },
},
...
}
}

```

Option	Description	Default
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL.	N/A
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	The password for authentication. Depending on the type of authentication, it is the SSH user's password, the Node API user's password, the Shares user's password, or the access key secret.	N/A

Option	Description	Default
	This value is not required for SSH authentication that specifies a value for "keypath".	
token	If required, the token string. Not valid for use with growing files.	N/A
proxy	If using, the address of an IBM Aspera Proxy server. The proxy syntax is: <code>dnat (s) ://user:password@server:port</code>	N/A
keypath	If authenticating by SSH user and key, the path to the SSH user's private key file.  <b>Note:</b> If a relative path is provided, the file at the relative path is checked for existence. If the relative path is not found, <code>\$HOME/.ssh/</code> is prepended to the relative path.	N/A
fingerprint	The SSH fingerprint of the remote server. Aspera strongly recommends using SSH fingerprint for security. If the fingerprint does not match that of the server, the transfer fails with the error "Remote host is not who we expected". For more information, see <a href="#">Securing Your SSH Server</a> on page 19 ("Configuring Transfer Server Authentication").	N/A
tags	Specify custom metadata in JSON format. The tags object is passed directly to the ascp session. For more information on writing custom metadata for uploads to object storage (as in the example), see <a href="#">Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage</a> on page 203.	N/A

### Error Handling Fields

Watch folder error handling distinguishes between two different error categories:

**File-Specific Errors:** These errors increase the file retry count every time a failure occurs. When the `max_retries` count is reached, the file is marked as failed and the session attempts to transfer the next file in the drop queue. File-specific error include all errors except the following:

- License error
- Authentication error
- Any other error in establishing an ascp session

**Other Errors:** These errors do not increase the file retry count. If a given error re-occurs again and again, the same file is retried until the drop's `retry_period` is exceeded. Then, the drop is marked as failed.

```

}
...
"transport":{
  ...
  "error_handling":{
    "file":{
      "max_retries":3,
      "retry_timeout":"3s"
    },
    "drop":{
      "retry_period":"1m"
    }
  },
  ...
}

```

Option	Description	Default
max_retries	How many times to try transferring a file before the file is marked as failed.	3
retry_timeout	How frequently to retry file transfers.	3s
retry_period	If no bytes are transferred during the specified period and no file is completed, the drop and all remaining incomplete files in the drop are marked as failed.	1m

### The regular object

Use to configure Ascp transfer session options.

```
{
  ...
  "transport":{
    ...
    "regular":{
      "max_parallel":10,
      "connect_timeout":"10s",
      "policy":"FAIR",
      "min_rate":"0B",
      "target_rate":"10M",
      "tcp_port":22,
      "udp_port":33001,
      "read_blk_size":"","
      "write_blk_size":"","
      "datagram_size":"","
      "rexmsg_size":"","
      "cipher":"AES128",
      "overwrite":"DIFF",
      "resume":"NONE",
      "preserve_uid":false,
      "preserve_gid":false,
      "preserve_time":false,
      "preserve_creation_time":false,
      "preserve_modification_time":false,
      "preserve_access_time":false,
      "queue_threshold":"5s",
      "sample_period":"2s",
      "content_protect_password":"ear_password"
      "raw_options":["-L","/tmp/log"],
      "symbolic_links":"follow"
    },
    ...
  }
}
```

Field	Description	Default
max_parallel	The maximum number of concurrent ascp sessions that Watch Folders can start.	10
connect_timeout	How long Watch Folders waits before reporting that ascp as failed.	10s
policy	Specify how ascp manages the bandwidth. The policy can be set to the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FIXED</li> <li>FAIR</li> </ul>	FAIR

Field	Description	Default
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HIGH</li> <li>LOW</li> </ul>	
min_rate	Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate.	0B
target_rate	The target transfer rate. Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. This option accepts suffixes T for terabits/s, G for gigabits/s, M for megabits/s, K for kilobits/s, or B for bits/s. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the setting in the server's <code>aspera.conf</code> is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server <code>aspera.conf</code> , the rate does not exceed the cap.	10M
tcp_port	The port to use for SSH connections.	22
udp_port	The port to use for UDP connections.	33001
read_blk_size	The read block size.	Default determined by settings in <code>aspera.conf</code>
write_blk_size	The write block size.	Default determined by settings in <code>aspera.conf</code>
datagram_size	The datagram size (MTU) for FASP.	Uses the detected path MTU.
rexmsg_size	The maximum size of a retransmission request. Maximum: 1440.	Determined by <code>ascp</code>
cipher	<p>The encryption cipher that is used to encrypt data in transit. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.</p> <p><b>Cipher rules</b></p> <p>The encryption cipher that you are allowed to use depends on the server configuration and the version of the client and server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you request a cipher key that is shorter than the cipher key that is configured on the server, the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server configuration. For example, when the server setting is AES-192 and you request AES-128, the server enforces AES-192.</li> <li>When the server requires GCM, you must use GCM (requires version 3.9.0 or newer) or the transfer fails.</li> <li>When you request GCM and the server is older than 3.8.1 or explicitly requires CFB, the transfer fails.</li> <li>When the server setting is "any", you can use any encryption cipher. The only exception is when the server is 3.8.1 or older and does not support GCM mode; in this case, you cannot request GCM mode encryption.</li> <li>When the server setting is "none", you must use "none". Transfer requests that specify an encryption cipher are refused by the server.</li> </ul>	AES128

Field	Description	Default																																								
	<p><b>Cipher Values</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Support</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>AES128 AES192 AES256</td> <td>Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).</td> <td>All client and server versions.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AES128CFB AES192CFB AES256CFB</td> <td>Use the CFB encryption mode.</td> <td>Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AES128GCM AES192GCM AES256GCM</td> <td>Use the GCM encryption mode.</td> <td>Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NONE</td> <td>Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.</td> <td>All client and server versions.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Client-Server Cipher Negotiation</b></p> <p>The following table shows which encryption mode is used depending on the server and client versions and settings:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</th> <th>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</th> <th>Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</th> <th>Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</b></td> <td>GCM</td> <td>server refuses transfer</td> <td>GCM</td> <td>server refuses transfer</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</b></td> <td>server refuses transfer</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</b></td> <td>GCM</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</b></td> <td>server refuses transfer</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> <td>CFB</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Value	Description	Support	AES128 AES192 AES256	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.	AES128CFB AES192CFB AES256CFB	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.	AES128GCM AES192GCM AES256GCM	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.	NONE	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.		Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX	<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</b>	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer	<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB	<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</b>	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB	<b>Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB	
Value	Description	Support																																								
AES128 AES192 AES256	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.																																								
AES128CFB AES192CFB AES256CFB	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.																																								
AES128GCM AES192GCM AES256GCM	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.																																								
NONE	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.																																								
	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX																																						
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM</b>	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer																																						
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB																																						
<b>Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX</b>	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB																																						
<b>Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX</b>	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB																																						



Field	Description	Default
overwrite	Specify whether a file is overwritten if it already exists at the destination. Valid options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NEVER</li> <li>• ALWAYS</li> <li>• DIFF</li> <li>• OLDER</li> <li>• DIFF+OLDER</li> </ul>	DIFF
resume	Specify if and how partial transfers are resumed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NONE: Always transfer the entire file</li> <li>• FILE_ATTRIBUTES: Resume if file attributes match.</li> <li>• SPARSE_CHECKSUM: Resume if file attributes and sparse checksum match.</li> <li>• FULL_CHECKSUM: Resume if file attributes and full checksum match.</li> </ul>	NONE
preserve_uid	Preserve the file owner user ID.	false
preserve_gid	Preserve the file owner group ID.	false
preserve_time	This option is equivalent to configuring <code>preserve_creation_time</code> , <code>preserve_modification_time</code> , and <code>preserve_access_time</code> .	false
preserve_creation_time	Set creation time of the destination be set to that of the source. If the destination is a non-Windows host, this option is ignored.	false
preserve_modification_time	Set the modification time of the destination file to that of the source.	false
preserve_access_time	Set the access time of the destination to that of the source. The destination file has the access time of the source file prior to the transfer.	false
queue_threshold	Watch Folders controls the amount of data pushed to <code>ascp</code> for transferring. When the capacity is reached, Watch Folders waits before pushing new data. This capacity is based on the effective bandwidth reported by <code>ascp</code> .	5s
sample_period	Period used to compute the current bandwidth. Used with <code>queue_threshold</code> to compute the amount of data pushed to <code>ascp</code> .	2s
content_protect_password	Enter a password to enable client-side encryption at rest. Files that are uploaded to the server are appended with a <code>.aspera-env</code> extension. To download and decrypt <code>.aspera-env</code> files from the server, the client must provide the password. For more information on client-side encryption at rest, see <a href="#">Client-Side Encryption-at-Rest (EAR)</a> on page 220.	N/A
raw_options	Specify <code>ascp</code> options and their arguments that are not yet available in Watch Folders to apply to Watch Folder transfers. To use raw	disabled

Field	Description	Default
	options, they must be enabled in the client's <code>aspera.conf</code> by running the following command:  <pre># asconfigurator -x   "set_central_server_data;raw_options,enable"</pre>	
<code>symbolic_links</code>	Set the symbolic link handling policy, as allowed by the server. Value can be <code>FOLLOW</code> , <code>COPY</code> , or <code>SKIP</code> . On Windows, the only method is <code>SKIP</code> . For more information on symbolic link handling, see <a href="#">Symbolic Link Handling</a> on page 214.	<code>FOLLOW</code>

### The growing Object

Use to stream growing files from the Watch Folder. If a file does not match the growing file filter, it is transferred by Ascp.

**Note:** Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to `aspsell` and the source cannot be in object storage.

```
{
  ...
  "transport":{
    ...
    "growing_file":{
      "max_parallel":8,
      "policy":"FAIR",
      "min_rate":"",
      "target_rate":"10M",
      "tcp_port":22,
      "udp_port":33001,
      "datagram_size":"",
      "cipher":"AES128",
      "completion_timeout":"5s",
      "memory":"2M",
      "chunk_size":"128K",
      "force_send_after":"2s",
      "filters":[
        {
          "type":"REGEX",
          "rule":"INCLUDE",
          "pattern":".*\\.growing"
        },
        {
          "type":"REGEX",
          "rule":"EXCLUDE",
          "pattern":".*"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

Option	Description	Default
<code>max_parallel</code>	The maximum number of concurrent FASPStream sessions the Watch Folder can initiate.	8

Option	Description	Default
policy	Defines how FASPStream manages the bandwidth. The policy can be set to the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>FIXED</li> <li>FAIR</li> <li>HIGH</li> <li>LOW</li> </ul>	FAIR
min_rate	Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate.	0B
target_rate	The target transfer rate. Transfer at rates up to the specified target rate. This option accepts suffixes T for terabits/s, G for gigabits/s, M for megabits/s, K for kilobits/s, or B for bits/s. Decimals are allowed. If this option is not set by the client, the setting in the server's <code>aspera.conf</code> is used. If a rate cap is set in the local or server <code>aspera.conf</code> , the rate does not exceed the cap.	10M
tcp_port	The port to use for SSH connections.	22
udp_port	The port to use for UDP connections.	33001
datagram_size	The datagram size (MTU) for FASP.	The detected path MTU.
cipher	The encryption cipher that is used to encrypt streamed data in transit, either NONE and AES128.	AES128
completion_timeout	How long to wait before the session is considered complete. A growing file is considered complete when no new data arrives within the timeout period.	5s
force_send_after	Force FASPStream to send data after the given time, even if the chunk is not full.	2s
memory	The maximum amount of memory FASPStream is allowed to use.	2M
chunk_size	Packet size for transfers over the network.	128K
filters	Select growing files to include in the package as those that match the specified filters. Use the same syntax as in the "filters" object.	N/A

### The watchd Object

Use to manage watchd services for pull Watch Folders when `asperawatchd` is run on a different node than `asperawatchfolderd`.

```
{
  ...
  "watchd": {
    "scan_period": "30m",
    "identifier": "daemon",
    "connection": {
      "type": "NONE|REDIS|NODE",
      "host": "ip_address",
      "port": port,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "NODE_BASIC",
        "user": "node_username",
        "pass": "node_password"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

Option	Description	Default
scan_period	<p>The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite". On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <code>infinite</code>.</p> <p>For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by <code>scan_period</code> are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.</p> <p>Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The value for scan period cannot be empty, otherwise the configuration is rejected.</p>	30m
identifier	The daemon associated with the Watch Service that is used to monitor the file system. Optional. Required only when you want to use a Watch Service that is run by a user who is not associated with the Node API user or access key.	The system user that is associated with the Node API user or access key.
connection type	<p>The method for connecting to asperawatchd. Value can be <code>NONE</code>, <code>NODE</code>, or <code>REDIS</code>.</p> <p>If <code>NODE</code> or <code>REDIS</code> is specified, then host and port must also be specified. If <code>NODE</code> is specified, then Node API credentials must be specified in the authorization object.</p>	<code>NONE</code>
host	The IP address or the URL of the host of asperanoded or the Redis database.	localhost
port	The port for asperanoded or the Redis database. By default, Node uses 9092 and Redis uses 31415.	31415
authentication type	The method for authentication. Only option is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> . This value is used only if connection type is <code>NODE</code> .	<code>NODE_BASIC</code>
user	The Node API username. This value is used only if connection type is <code>NODE</code> .	N/A
pass	The Node API password. This value is used only if connection type is <code>NODE</code> .	N/A

## Managing Watch Folders with `aswatchfolderadmin`

The `aswatchfolderadmin` tool can be used to retrieve a list of Watch Folders, update the configuration of Watch Folder, and delete a Watch Folder.

### Retrieve a List of Running Daemons

Use the `aswatchadmin` and `aswatchfolderadmin` utilities to retrieve a list of running daemons. Daemons usually have the same name as the user for which they are running. For example, if you used the root user to run your services, you should see the root daemon listed when you run the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root

# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons
[aswatchfolderadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

**Note:** Daemons for services that are started in the GUI are named with the ID of the service, rather than the user.

### Retrieve a List of Watch Folders

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders daemon
```

For example, if two Watch Folders are configured for the daemon root, the output is similar to the following:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders root
[aswatchfolderadmin query-folders] Found 2 watchfolders:
3354f360-dfa6-4789-930e-074cd9d4551b
b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

### Update a Watch Folder's Configuration

To update a Watch Folder configuration, retrieve the Watch Folder's configuration, make the desired changes, and then save the configuration as a JSON file. You cannot pass a new configuration file to the `update-folder` sub-command, because the new configuration file must match the old file exactly, except for the changes you are making.

1. Retrieve and save the Watch Folder configuration in a new file:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin query-folders daemon -
i watch_folder_id --config > filename.json
```

2. Edit the configuration settings in the file.

**Note:** When `aswatchfolderadmin` returns the JSON configuration, it obfuscates the password for the host with asterisks (\*\*\*\*\*). If you do not want to update the password, leave it obfuscated (as asterisks) in the new file and the old password is used. To update the password, enter the new string. If no password is specified, then the password value is empty and transfers cannot be authenticated.

3. Save your changes.
4. Submit the updated configuration file to `aswatchfolderadmin`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin update-folder daemon watchfolder_id -
f json_file
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin update-folder root 3354f360-
dfa6-4789-930e-074cd9d4551b -f watchfolder_conf.json
```

```
[aswatchfolderadmin update-folder] Successfully updated
instance b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

## Delete a Watch Folder

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin delete-folder daemon watchfolder_id
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchfolderadmin update-folder root 3354f360-
dfa6-4789-930e-074cd9d4551b
[aswatchfolderadmin update-folder] Successfully deleted
instance b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

## Configuring Linux for Many Watch Folders

To run many (>100) push Watch Folders on Linux computers, adjust three system settings and then reload the `sysctl.conf` file to activate them.

1. Increase the maximum number of watches allowed by the system.

Retrieve the current value by running the following command:

```
$ cat /proc/sys/fs/inotify/max_user_watches
8192
```

To permanently increase the number of available watches (to a value that is greater than the number of files to watch, such as 524288), add the configuration to `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
$ sudo echo "fs.inotify.max_user_watches=524288" >> /etc/sysctl.conf
```

2. Increase the maximum number of inotify instances, which correspond to the number of allowed Watch Services instances.

Retrieve the current value by running the following command:

```
$ cat /proc/sys/fs/inotify/max_user_instances
128
```

On many systems, the default value is 128, meaning only 128 watches can be created. To permanently increase the number available (to a value that is greater than the number of desired Watch Folder instances, such as 1024), add the configuration to `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
$ sudo echo "fs.inotify.max_user_instances=1024" >> /etc/sysctl.conf
```

3. Increase the open file limit.

Retrieve the current value by running the following command:

```
$ cat /proc/sys/fs/file-max
794120
```

To permanently increase the open file limit (to a value that is greater than the number of desired watches, such as 2097152), add the configuration to `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
$ sudo echo "fs.file-max=2097152" >> /etc/sysctl.conf
```

4. Reload systemd settings to activate the new settings.

To reload systemd settings, either reboot the machine or run the following command:

```
$ sudo systemctl -p /etc/sysctl.conf
```

## Creating a Push Watch Folder with the API

These instructions describe how to create a push Watch Folder by using the Watch Folder API.

You can also create and manage Watch Folders from the command line ([Creating a Push Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 273) or by using IBM Aspera Console ([IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#)).

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to aspsell and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.
- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

To create a push Watch Folder with the API:

1. Prepare your computer as described in [Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line](#) on page 271.
2. Create a Node API user and associate it with a transfer user account. The user account must have administrative (root / sudo) privileges to interact with asperawatchfolderd.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x admin_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u watchfolder_user -p X245lskd3 -x root
--acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

Adding, modifying, or deleting a node-user triggers automatic reloading of the user database and the node's configuration and license files. For more information on the Node API, see your transfer server's administrator guide.

3. Verify that you correctly added the Node API user.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
List of Node API user(s):
=====
user          system/transfer user          acls
=====
node_api_user          system_user          [admin,impersonation]
```

For example, using the information from the example in the previous step, the output is similar to the following:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
=====
user          system/transfer user          acls
=====
watchfolder_user          root          [admin,impersonation]
```

4. Create the Watch service and Watch Folder service.

- a) Create a JSON configuration file for each service.

For the Watch Service:

```
{
  "type": "WATCHD",
  "run_as": {
    "user": "username",
    "pass": "password"
  },
  "enabled": true
}
```

For the Watch Folder service:

```
{
  "type": "WATCHFOLDERD",
  "run_as": {
    "user": "username",
    "pass": "password"
  },
  "enabled": true
}
```

The *username* and *password* are for a transfer user with permissions to the source path. Save the files, with the *.json* extension.

- b) To create the services, run the following command for each one:

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X POST -d @config_file
  "https://localhost:9092/rund/services"
```

If service creation succeeds, the ID of the service is returned. Record the IDs for use in the next step.

5. Confirm that the services are running.

For each service, run the following command:

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X GET "https://localhost:9092/
rund/services/service_id"
```

The state is reported as "RUNNING".

6. Create a JSON configuration file for your Watch Folder.

The Watch Folder JSON file describes the source, target, and authentication to the remote server, and can also specify transfer session settings, file handling and post-processing, filters, and growing file handling.

A basic push Watch Folder configuration file has the following syntax:

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "source_directory"
  },
  "target": {
    "path": "target_directory",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "hostname",
      "port": port,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "authentication_mode",
        "user": "username",
        "pass": "password"
      }
    }
  }
}
```



```

    }
  },
  "watchd": {
    "scan_period": "scan_period"
  }
}

```

For a full configuration reference, see [Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference](#) on page 283.

Field	Description	Default
source path	The local source directory. If the transfer user who is associated with the Node API user is configured with a docroot, then the path is relative to that docroot. If the transfer user is configured with a restriction, then the path is the absolute or UNC path.	N/A
target path	The remote target directory. For SSH and Node API user authentication, the path is relative to the user's docroot, or the absolute path if the transfer user is configured with a restriction. For Shares authentication, the path is the share name and, optionally, a path within the share. For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key.	N/A
location type	Set "type" to "REMOTE" for the remote server. "type": "REMOTE" is assumed if "host" is specified.	"REMOTE"
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote file system. <b>Required.</b> The host can be specified with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The preferred format for IPv6 addresses is x:x:x:x:x:x:x, where each of the eight x is a hexadecimal number of up to 4 hex digits. Zone IDs (for example, %eth0) can be appended to the IPv6 address.	N/A
port	The port to use for authentication to the remote file system. By default, if the authentication type is SSH, then the SSH port for the <code>ascp</code> process (the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section) is used. If the authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , 9092 is used. For Shares, IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager, or IBM Aspera on Cloud endpoints, enter 443.	If authentication type is SSH, then default is the value for <code>tcp_port</code> in the "transport" section (default: 22). If authentication type is <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , then default is 9092.
authentication type	How Watch Folders authenticates to the remote server. Valid values are <code>SSH</code> or <code>NODE_BASIC</code> .  For <code>SSH</code> , authenticate with a transfer user's username and password, or specify the username and the path to their SSH private key file.  For <code>NODE_BASIC</code> , authenticate with a Node API username and password, Shares credentials, or an access key ID and secret.  Sample JSON syntax for each authentication type is provided following this table.	<code>NODE_BASIC</code>

Field	Description	Default
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	The password for authentication. Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's password, the Node API user's password, the Shares user's password, or the access key secret.  <b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "keypath" is not specified	N/A
keypath	For SSH authentication with an SSH key, the path to the transfer user's SSH private key file.  <b>Required</b> for SSH authentication if "pass" is not specified	N/A
watchd identifier	The daemon associated with the Watch Service that is used to monitor the file system. Optional. Required only when you want to use a Watch Service that is run by a user who is not associated with the Node API user or access key. Use to specify the daemon on the remote host if it is not <b>xfer</b> .	N/A
scan_period	The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite". On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <i>infinite</i> .  For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by scan_period are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.  Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.  <b>Note:</b> The value for scan period cannot be empty, otherwise the configuration is rejected.	30m

Save the configuration file. The path to the configuration file is used in the next step.

#### 7. Start the Watch Folder.

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @path/to/json_file https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders
```

By default, the API port is 9092.

**Note:** The header "X-aspera-WF-version:2017\_10\_23" is required when submitting POST, PUT, and GET requests to /v3/watchfolders on servers that are version 3.8.0 or newer. This enables Watch Folders to parse the JSON "source" and "target" objects in the format that was introduced in version 3.8.0.

For example:

```
# curl -k --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @/watchfolder_conf.json
https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders
{
  "id": "b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585"
}
```

#### 8. Verify that the Watch Folder is running.

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id/state
```

For example:

```
# curl -sk --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/
watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585/state
```

If the Watch Folder is running, it is reported with "state": "HEALTHY".

You can manage Watch Folders using the API. For more information, see [Managing Watch Folders with the API](#) on page 312.

## Creating a Pull Watch Folder with the API

These instructions describe how to create a pull Watch Folder by using the Watch Folder API.

You can also create and manage Watch Folders from the command line ([Creating a Pull Watch Folder with aswatchfolderadmin](#) on page 278) or by using IBM Aspera Console ([IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#)).

When you create a Watch Folder, a Watch service subscription is automatically created to monitor the source directory. In the rare case that the subscription is somehow deleted or impaired, Watch Folders automatically creates a new subscription; however, the new subscription does not retain the file change history and all files in the source directory are re-transferred.

### Restrictions on all Watch Folders

- Only local-to-remote (push) and remote-to-local (pull) configurations are supported. Remote-to-remote and local-to-local are not supported.
- Growing files are only supported for local sources (push Watch Folders) and must be authenticated by a transfer user (password or SSH key file). The transfer user cannot be restricted to aspsell and the source cannot be in object storage.
- Source file archiving is not supported if the Watch Folder source is in object storage.
- IBM Aspera Shares endpoints must have version Shares version 1.9.11 with the Watch Folder patch or a later version.

### Restrictions on Pull Watch Folders

- The remote server must be running HST Server or HST Endpoint version 3.8.0 or newer.
- Pull Watch Folders must be authenticated with an access key ID and secret, a Node API username and password, or IBM Aspera Shares credentials. SSH authentication is not supported for remote sources.
- Pull Watch Folders that use Node API authentication cannot be authenticated with a Node API user whose associated transfer user is configured with a restriction (the Watch Folder status is reported as impaired). Edit the transfer user's configuration to use a docroot, restart asperanoded, and the Watch Folder recovers automatically.
- Pull Watch Folders cannot use IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service nodes) or IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager nodes as the remote source.
- Pull Watch Folders do not support growing files.

1. Prepare your computer as described in [Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line](#) on page 271.
2. Create a Node API user and associate it with a transfer user account. The user account must have administrative (root / sudo) privileges to interact with asperawatchfolderd.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_username -p node_password -
x admin_user --acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u watchfolder_user -p X245lskd3 -x root
--acl-set "admin,impersonation"
```

Adding, modifying, or deleting a node-user triggers automatic reloading of the user database and the node's configuration and license files. For more information on the Node API, see your transfer server's administrator guide.

3. Verify that you correctly added the Node API user.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
List of Node API user(s):
=====
user          system/transfer user          acs
=====
node_api_user          system_user          [admin,impersonation]
```

For example, using the information from the example in the previous step, the output is similar to the following:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
List of Node API user(s):
=====
user          system/transfer user          acs
=====
watchfolder_user          root          [admin,impersonation]
```

4. Create a Watch Service on the remote server.

This approach requires that you have node credentials for the remote server.

- a) Create a JSON configuration file for the remote Watch Service.

```
{
  "type": "WATCHD",
  "run_as": {
    "user": "username",
    "pass": "password"
  },
  "enabled": true
}
```

The *username* and *password* are for a transfer user with permissions to the source path. Save the file as `wfd_create.json`.

- b) To create the service, run the following command:

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X POST -d @wfd_create.json
"https://server_ip_address:9092/rund/services"
```

The output includes the service ID. Record the ID for the next substep.

- c) Confirm that the service is running.

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X GET
"https://server_ip_address:9092/rund/services/service_id"
```

5. Create the Watch Folder service on the local computer.

- a) Create a JSON configuration file for the service with the following text:

```
{
  "type": "WATCHFOLDERD",
  "run_as": {
    "user": "username",
    "pass": "password"
  },
  "enabled": true
}
```

The *username* and *password* are for a transfer user with permissions to the source path. Save the files, with the *.json* extension.

- b) Create the service.

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X POST -d @config_file
"https://localhost:9092/rund/services"
```

If service creation succeeds, the ID of the service is returned. Record the ID for use in the next step.

- c) Confirm that the service is running.

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X GET "https://
localhost:9092/rund/services/service_id"
```

## 6. Create a JSON configuration file for your Watch Folder.

The Watch Folder JSON file describes the source, target, and authentication to the remote server, and can also specify transfer session settings, file handling and post-processing, filters, and growing file handling.

A basic pull Watch Folder configuration has the following syntax:

```
{
  "source": {
    "path": "source_directory",
    "location": {
      "type": "REMOTE",
      "host": "ip_address",
      "port": port,
      "authentication": {
        "type": "authentication_mode",
        "user": "username",
        "pass": "password"
      }
    }
  },
  "target": {
    "path": "target_directory"
  },
  "watchd": {
    "scan_period": "scan_period",
    "identifier": "daemon"
  }
}
```

For a full configuration reference, see [Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference](#) on page 283.

Field	Description	Default
source path	The source directory on the remote server. For SSH and Node API user authentication, the path is relative to the associated transfer user's docroot, or the absolute path if the transfer user is	N/A

Field	Description	Default
	configured with a restriction. For Shares authentication, the path is the share name and, optionally, a path within the share. For access key authentication, the path is relative to the storage specified in the access key.	
location type	Set "type" to "REMOTE" for the remote server. "type" : "REMOTE" is assumed if "host" is specified.	"REMOTE"
host	The host IP address, DNS, hostname, or URL of the remote file system. <b>Required.</b> The host can be specified with an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The preferred format for IPv6 addresses is x:x:x:x:x:x, where each of the eight x is a hexadecimal number of up to 4 hex digits. Zone IDs (for example, %eth0) can be appended to the IPv6 address.	N/A
port	The port to use for authentication to the remote file system. By default, if the authentication type is SSH, then the SSH port for the ascp process (the value for tcp_port in the "transport" section) is used. If the authentication type is NODE_BASIC, 9092 is used. For Shares, IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager, or IBM Aspera on Cloud endpoints, enter 443.	If authentication type is SSH, then default is the value for tcp_port in the "transport" section (default: 22). If authentication type is NODE_BASIC, then default is 9092.
authentication type	How Watch Folders authenticates to the remote server. Pull Watch Folders must use NODE_BASIC and authenticate with a Node API username and password, Shares credentials, or an access key ID and secret.	NODE_BASIC
user	The username for authentication. <b>Required.</b> Depending on the type of authentication, it is the transfer user's username, Node API username, Shares username, or access key ID.	N/A
pass	The password for authentication, depending on the type of authentication.	N/A
target path	The target directory on the local computer, relative to the transfer user's docroot.	N/A
watchd identifier	The daemon associated with the Watch Service that is used to monitor the file system. Optional. Required only when you want to use a Watch Service that is run by a user who is not associated with the Node API user or access key.	The system user that is associated with the Node API user or access key.
scan_period	The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite". On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this	30m

Field	Description	Default
	<p>case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to <code>infinite</code>.</p> <p>For pull Watch Folders, file systems scans that are triggered by <code>scan_period</code> are the sole means for detecting changes in the source directory.</p> <p>Lower scan periods detect changes faster but can result in greater resource consumption, particularly for object storage.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The value for scan period cannot be empty, otherwise the configuration is rejected.</p>	

Save the configuration file. The path to the configuration file is used in the next step.

#### 7. Start the Watch Folder.

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @path/to/json_file https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders
```

By default, the API port is 9092.

**Note:** The header "X-aspera-WF-version:2017\_10\_23" is required when submitting POST, PUT, and GET requests to `/v3/watchfolders` on servers that are version 3.8.0 or newer. This enables Watch Folders to parse the JSON "source" and "target" objects in the format that was introduced in version 3.8.0.

For example:

```
# curl -k --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @/watchfolder_conf.json https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders
{
  "id": "b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585"
}
```

#### 8. Verify that the Watch Folder is running.

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders/watchfolder_id/state
```

For example:

```
# curl -sk --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585/state
```

If the Watch Folder is running, it is reported with "state": "HEALTHY".

You can manage Watch Folders using the API. For more information, see [Managing Watch Folders with the API](#) on page 312.

## Managing Watch Folders with the API

You can use the Watch Folder API to create, remove, and manage Watch Folders. The instructions below uses `curl` commands to interact with the API.

### Retrieve a list of Watch Folders

To retrieve a list of Watch Folders, run the following `curl` command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-
version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders
```

For example:

```
# curl -k --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-WF-
version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders
{
  "ids" : [
    "b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585"
  ]
}
```

If there are no running Watch Folders, the server returns the following output.

```
{
  "ids" : [

  ]
}
```

### Check state, statistics, and status of a watch, transfer, or Watch Folder

```
curl -ks -u node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id/state
```

In the following example, the output shows Watch Folder errored due to a configuration option that was not set. Errors with `ascp` transfers are displayed similarly in the transport section.

```
# curl -ks --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/
watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585/state
{
  "state": "HEALTHY",
  "statistics": {
    "files_transferred": 0,
    "files_succeeded": 0,
    "files_failed": 0,
    "files_skipped": 0,
    "files_ignored": 0,
    "files_disappeared_before_cool_off": 0,
    "files_unsatisfied_dependency": 0,
    "files_never_appeared": 0,
    "bytes_completed": 0,
    "bytes_written": 0
  },
  "components": {
    "watch": {
      "state": "HEALTHY",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-12-19T20:18:47Z"
    }
  }
}
```



```

    "transport": {
      "state": "UNKNOWN",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-12-19T20:17:48Z"
    },
    "watchfolderd": {
      "state": "HEALTHY",
      "state_changed_at": "2016-12-19T20:18:47Z",
      "last_error": "UAC don't allow raw_options",
      "last_error_at": "2016-12-19T20:18:10Z"
    }
  }
}

```

### Query and save a configuration for a specific Watch Folder

```

# curl -ks -u node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id > config_file.json

```

For example:

```

# curl -ks --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/
watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585 > wf_config1.json

```

Copy the output in a `.json` file.

### Retry a failed drop

Watch Folders groups files into "drops" for transfer. If a file in a drop fails to transfer, it is automatically retried based on the Watch Folder configuration (see options in the "error\_handling" section, [Watch Folder JSON Configuration File Reference](#) on page 283). A drop is marked as failed if the file does not transfer within the specified retry period.

You can retry to transfer the failed drop through the Watch Folder API by retrieving the Watch Folder ID and drop ID, then updating the state of the drop:

1. Get the ID of the Watch Folder that you want to update by getting a list of Watch Folders:

```

# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-
version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders

```

2. Get the ID of the failed drop:

```

# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id/drops?state="FAILED"

```

If you need to disambiguate failed drops by seeing the files that are contained in them, you can run the following command:

```

# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id/drops/drop_id/files

```

3. Retry the drop by changing the state to RETRY:

```

# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X PUT https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id/drops/drop_id -d '{"state":"RETRY"}'

```

The drop transfer now retries for the specified number of attempts within the retry period.

## Updating a Watch Folder

To update a Watch Folder configuration, retrieve the Watch Folder's configuration, make the desired changes, and then save the configuration as a JSON file.

You cannot use a new configuration file, because the new configuration file must match the old file exactly, except for the changes you are making, and because the configuration version number increments with each update.

1. Get the ID of the Watch Folder that you want to update by getting a list of Watch Folders:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-
version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders
```

2. Save the Watch Folder configuration file for editing:

```
# curl -ks -u node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X GET https://host:node_api_port/v3/
watchfolders/watchfolder_id > config_file.json
```

3. Open the configuration file in an editor, make your changes, and save the file.

**Note:** When `aswatchfolderadmin` returns the JSON configuration, it obfuscates the password for the host with asterisks (`*****`). If you do not want to update the password, leave it obfuscated (as asterisks) in the new file and the old password is used. To update the password, enter the new string. If no password is specified, then the password value is empty and transfers cannot be authenticated.

4. Update the Watch Folder configuration by sending the updated configuration file:

```
# curl -kv --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-
version:2017_10_23" -X PUT -d @/path_to_json https://host:node_api_port/
v3/watchfolders/watchfolder_id
```

**Note:** The header `"X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23"` is required when submitting POST, PUT, and GET requests to `/v3/watchfolders` on servers that are version 3.8.0 or newer. This enables Watch Folders to parse the JSON `"source"` and `"target"` objects in the format that was introduced in version 3.8.0.

For example:

```
# curl -kv --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-
WF-version:2017_10_23" -X PUT -d @/tmp/wf_config_update.json
https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-
efdc6496c585
```

If the update is successful, then the following is returned:

```
HTTP/1.1 100 Continue
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
```

## Moving a Watch Folder from one user or daemon to another

To move a Watch Folder configuration, you must first retrieve the Watch Folder's configuration, make the desired changes, and then create a new Watch Folder with the modified configuration file. Follow the steps provided previously to query and save a configuration for the Watch Folder.

Open the configuration file in an editor and make the following changes:

1. Remove the `"id"` field.
2. Remove the `"version"` field.
3. Re-enter the password in the `"pass"` field.
4. Set proper `watchfolderid` IDs in the (`"wfd_id"`) fields

Save the configuration file and then run the following command, specifying the modified configuration file as the JSON file:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @path/to/json_file https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders
```

For example, to change the user to admin2, run the following:

```
# curl -k --user admin2:XF324cd28 -H "X-aspera-WF-version:2017_10_23" -X POST -d @~/watchfolder_conf.json https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders {
  "id": "b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585"
}
```

To verify that the configuration was updated, retrieve the configuration file again and look for your changes.

## Deleting a Watch Folder

To remove a Watch Folder, run the following command:

```
# curl -sk --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X DELETE https://host:node_api_port/v3/watchfolders/watchfolder_id
```

For example:

```
# curl -k --user watchfolder_admin:XF324cd28 -X DELETE https://198.51.100.22:9092/v3/watchfolders/b394d0ee-1cda-4f0d-b785-efdc6496c585
```

To verify that the Watch Folder was removed, retrieve the list of Watch Folders with the command as shown previously. If the Watch Folder ID is no longer listed, the Watch Folder was successfully deleted.

## Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies

By default, users are not allowed to perform any Watch Folders-related actions, unless they are configured with admin ACLs. If you do not want every user to have admin permissions, configure users with customized permissions policies, including whether they are allowed or denied permission to create Watch Folders, create Watch and Watch Folder services, and edit policies. The policy is a JSON object that is assigned to specific users. Users can be assigned to multiple policies to incrementally allow or deny permissions.

Policies can be managed in the GUI or the command line. For GUI instructions, see [Configuring Custom Watch Folder Permissions Policies in the GUI](#) on page 268.

### Create a Permission Policy

Run the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X POST -d @path/to/json_file https://localhost:9092/access_control/policies
```

Where the JSON file contains the permissions policy, as described in the next section. The Node API user must have permission to create policies to run this command.

### Policy Syntax

A permissions policy is a JSON object with the following syntax:

```
{
  "id": "policy_name",
```

```

"statements": [
  {
    "effect": "effect_value",
    "actions": [
      "permission_1",
      "permission_2",
      ...
      "permission_n"
    ],
    "resources": [
      "resource_id"
    ]
  }
]
}

```

The placeholders take the following values:

- *policy\_name*: A descriptive name for the policy, such as "only-wfd-aspera". If no value is specified, a UUID is generated and returned in the output when the policy is created.
- *effect\_value*: Set to ALLOW or DENY.
- *permission*: An action that the user is allowed or denied, depending on *effect\_value*. Values can use \* to match any sequence of characters. For example, to allow all Watch Folder-related actions, enter "WF\_\*". See the following section for a complete list of permissions.
- *resource\_id*: For Watch Folder-related permissions, specify the resources to which the actions apply by their Aspera Resource Name (ARN), using the following general syntax:

```
arn:service:resource_type:resource
```

Where *service* identifies the product (*watchfolder* or *watch*), *resource\_type* is the type of resource (*wfd* for a Watch Folder daemon, *wf* for a Watch Folder), and *resource* is the resource ID, or a series of IDs to specify the daemon and Watch Folder ID of a specific Watch Folder. See the following section for examples.

## Actions

The following actions are permissions to create, delete, and view policies, and assign users to policies. These actions do not require that you specify a value for "resources". To allow all permissions, use "PERM\_\*".

```

PERM_CREATE_POLICY
PERM_DELETE_POLICY
PERM_LIST_POLICIES
PERM_ATTACH_USER_POLICY
PERM_DETACH_USER_POLICY
PERM_LIST_USER_POLICIES

```

The following actions create, delete, and view Watch and Watch Folder services. These actions do not require that you specify a value for "resources". Users without these permissions must create Watch Folders that use existing Watch and Watch Folder services.

```

PERM_LIST_RESOURCES
PERM_CREATE_RESOURCE
PERM_DELETE_RESOURCE

```

The following actions create and delete Watch Folders. These actions require that you specify the *wfd* resource, as `arn:watchfolder:wfd:daemon`. To allow actions on Watch Folders as any daemon, use `arn:watchfolder:wfd:*`.

```

WF_CREATE_WATCHFOLDER
WF_DELETE_WATCHFOLDER

```

**Note:** Node API users must have `PERM_LIST_RESOURCES` allowed in order to allow `WF_CREATE_WATCHFOLDER` or `WF_DELETE_WATCHFOLDER`.

The following actions retrieve Watch Folder configuration and state, update the Watch Folder, and retry a Watch Folder drop. These actions require that you specify the `wf` resource, as `arn:watchfolder:wf:daemon:watchfolder_id`. To allow actions on any Watch Folders run by any daemon, use `arn:watchfolder:wf:*:*`.

```
WF_GET_WATCHFOLDER
WF_GET_WATCHFOLDER_STATE
WF_UPDATE_WATCHFOLDER
WF_RETRY_DROP
```

To allow all Watch Folder actions on all Watch Folders, enter `"WF_*`" as the action and `"arn:watchfolder:wfd:*"` as the resource.

## Sample Policies

Allow the user to view policies and user permissions:

```
{
  "id": "read-permissions",
  "statements": [
    {
      "effect": "ALLOW",
      "actions": [
        "PERM_LIST_*"
      ],
      "resources": []
    }
  ]
}
```

Allow the user to do all Watch Folders actions:

```
{
  "id": "all-watch-folders",
  "statements": [
    {
      "effect": "ALLOW",
      "actions": [
        "WF_*",
        "PERM_LIST_RESOURCES"
      ],
      "resources": [
        "arn:watchfolder:wfd:*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

## Assigning Node API Users to Policies

Assign a user to one or more policies by running the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X PUT -d {"policies":
["policy_id1", "policy_id2"]} https://localhost:9092/access_control/
users/username/policies
```

You can also assign a policy to multiple users at once:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X PUT" -d
{"users":["user1", "user2"]} https://localhost:9092/access_control/
policies/policy_id/users
```

To retrieve the IDs of available permissions policies, run the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X GET https://
localhost:9092/access_control/policies
```

To view the permissions policies that are assigned to a user, run the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X GET https://
localhost:9092/access_control/users/username/policies
```

To view the users that are assigned to a permissions policy, run the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X GET https://
localhost:9092/access_control/policies/policy_id/users
```

## Editing Policies

To edit a policy, create a JSON configuration file as if you were creating a new policy, but do not include the "id". Run the following command to update the policy:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X PUT -d @path/to/
json_file https://localhost:9092/access_control/policies/policy_id
```

To retrieve the configuration of an existing policy, run the following command:

```
# curl -k --user node_api_user:node_api_password -X GET https://
localhost:9092/access_control/policies/policy_id
```

**Note:** The policy name ("id") cannot be edited. To change the name, create a new policy.

## Updating the Docroot or Restriction of a Running Watch Folder Service

If `aswatchfolderadmin` returns the error code `err=28672` when you try to create a Watch Folder, confirm that the user's docroot or restriction allows access to the source directory specified in the JSON configuration file. You might have specified a destination that is not permitted by the docroot or restriction of the user running `asperawatchfolderd`, or you may have no docroot configured at all.

These instructions describe how to retrieve the docroot or restriction configuration for the user and update the docroot or restriction, if necessary. The configuration change automatically triggers `asperawatchd` that is associated with the user to restart.

1. Run the following command to retrieve the docroot or restriction setting for the user:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -u username | grep "absolute"
```

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -u username | grep "restriction"
```

- If no docroot is configured for the user, no output is returned. Proceed to the next step to set a docroot or restriction.
- If a docroot is configured, the command returns output similar to the following:

```
canonical_absolute: "/"
```

```
absolute: "/"
```

- If a restriction is configured, the command returns output similar to the following:

```
file_restriction: "file:////*"
```

If the user's docroot or restriction does not permit access to the source folder, proceed to the next step to update the docroot.

## 2. Configure a docroot or restriction for the user.

Docroots and path restrictions limit the area of a file system or object storage to which the user has access. Users can create Watch Folders and Watch services on files or objects only within their docroot or restriction.

**Note:** Users can have a docroot or restriction, but not both or Watch Folder creation fails.

Docroots can be set up in the GUI or command line. In the GUI, click **Configuration > Users > *username* > Docroot** and set the permitted path as the value for **Absolute Path**. To set up a docroot from the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Restrictions must be set from the command line:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|path"
```

The restriction path format depends on the type of storage. In the following examples, the restriction allows access to the entire storage; specify a bucket or path to limit access.

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>
Azure Data Lake Storage	<code>adl://*</code>
Alibaba Cloud	<code>oss://*</code>
Google Cloud	<code>gs://*</code>
HDFS	<code>hdfs://*</code>

With a docroot or restriction set up, the user is now an Aspera transfer user. Restart `asperanoded` to activate your change:

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## The Aspera Watch Service

Automatically detect file system changes with the Aspera Watch Service.

### Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches

The Aspera Watch Service (`asperawatchd`) is a file system change detection and snapshot service that is optimized for speed, scale, and distributed sources. On file systems that have file system notifications, changes in source file systems (new files and directories, deleted items, and renames) are detected immediately, eliminating the need to scan the file system. On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans are automatically triggered.

The Aspera Watch Service can be used on any local or shared (CIFS, NFS) host. However, when watching mounted shared storage and the change originates from a remote server, the Watch Service does not receive file notifications. In such cases, set `<scan_period>` in `aspera.conf` to frequent scans, such as 1 minute. See the following steps for instructions.

When used in conjunction with `ascp` commands, the Aspera Watch Service enables fast detection and transfer of new and deleted items. For more information on using watches with `ascp`, see [Transferring and Deleting Files with the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 325.

To start the Aspera Watch Service and subscribe to (create) a watch:

1. Configure a docroot or restriction for the user.

Docroots and path restrictions limit the area of a file system or object storage to which the user has access. Users can create Watch Folders and Watch services on files or objects only within their docroot or restriction.

**Note:** Users can have a docroot or restriction, but not both or Watch Folder creation fails.

Docroots can be set up in the GUI or command line. In the GUI, click **Configuration > Users > *username* > Docroot** and set the permitted path as the value for **Absolute Path**. To set up a docroot from the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Restrictions must be set from the command line:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|path"
```

The restriction path format depends on the type of storage. In the following examples, the restriction allows access to the entire storage; specify a bucket or path to limit access.

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>



Storage Type	Format Example
Azure	azu://*
Azure Files	azure-files://*
Azure Data Lake Storage	adl://*
Alibaba Cloud	oss://*
Google Cloud	gs://*
HDFS	hdfs://*

With a docroot or restriction set up, the user is now an Aspera transfer user. Restart `asperanoded` to activate your change:

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

2. Ensure the user has permissions to write to the default log directory if no directory is specified.

For more information about configuring log directories, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

3. Configure Watch Service settings.

Though the default values are already optimized for most users, you can also configure the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, and logging. For instructions, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

4. Start a Watch Service under the user.

The following command adds the Watch Service run under the user to the Aspera Run Service database:

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username [options]
```

5. Verify that the Watch Service daemon is running under the user.

Use the `aswatchadmin` utility to retrieve a list of running daemons. Daemons are named for the user who runs the service. For example, if you started a Watch Service under `root`, you should see the `root` daemon listed when you run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

6. Create a watch.

A watch is a path that is watched by the Aspera Watch Service. To create a watch, users subscribe to a Watch Service and specify the path to watch. run the following command, where *daemon* is the username used to start the `asperawatchd` service and *filepath* is the directory to watch:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe daemon filepath
```

When you create a new subscription, you can also set watch-specific logging, database, scan period, and expiration period, and override `aspera.conf` settings.

**Note:** The default scan period is 30 minutes. If you are watching a file system that does not support file system notifications (such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon), Aspera recommends setting a more frequent scan to detect file system changes quicker.

For more information on using these options, see [Managing Watch Subscriptions](#) on page 324 or run:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe -h
```

**Note:** The default expiration for watches is 24 hours. If a watch subscription expires before the user resubscribes to it, a new subscription must be created.

## Watch Service Configuration

The Aspera Watch Service configuration in the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf` includes the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, and logging:

```
<server>
  <rund>...</rund>
  <watch>
    <log_level>log</log_level>
    <log_directory>AS_NULL</log_directory>
    <db_spec>redis:host:31415:domain</db_spec>
    <watchd>
      <max_directories>1000000</max_directories>
      <max_snapshots>10000</max_snapshots>
      <snapshot_min_interval>3s</snapshot_min_interval>
      <snapshot_min_changes>100</snapshot_min_changes>
      <scan_threads>16</scan_threads>
    </watchd>
    <watchfolderd>...</watchfolderd>
  </watch>
</server>
```

To view current settings without opening `aspera.conf`, run the following command and look for settings that start with `watch` and `watchd`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

**Note:** Logging and database settings apply to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.

## Configuring Watch Service Settings

Configure the Watch Service by using `asconfigurator` commands with this general syntax:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;option,value"
```

Options and values are described in the following table.

### Configuration Options and Values

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description	Default
watch_log_dir <log_dir>	Log to the specified directory. This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.	The Aspera logging file ( <a href="#">Log Files</a> on page 502).
watch_log_level <log_level>	The level of detail for Aspera Watch Service logging. This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services. Valid values are <code>log</code> , <code>dbg1</code> , and <code>dbg2</code> .	<code>log</code>

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description	Default
watch_db_spec <db_spec>	Use the specified Redis database, which is defined with the syntax <code>redis:ip_address:port[:domain]</code> . This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.	redis:127.0.0.1:31415
watchd_max_directories <max_directories>	The maximum number of directories that can be watched (combined across all watches).  This setting is used only on Linux machines to overwrite the system value <code>/proc/sys/fs/inotify/max_user_watches</code> . To overwrite the system value with the <code>aspera.conf</code> value, run the setup procedure in the admin tool:  <pre># aswatchadmin setup</pre>	1000000
watchd_max_snapshots <max_snapshots>	The number of snapshots that are stored in the database before the oldest are overwritten.	10000
watchd_snapshot_min_interval <snapshot_min_interval>	The maximum amount of time between snapshots. If this period passes without the minimum number of changes to trigger a snapshot, a new snapshot is taken.	3s
watchd_snapshot_min_changes <snapshot_min_changes>	The minimum number of changes that trigger a snapshot. If this number is reached before the snapshot minimum interval passes, a new snapshot is taken.	100
watchd_scan_threads <scan_threads>	The number of threads to use to scan the watched folder. More threads increase the speed of the scan, particularly for folders with large numbers of files, but require more of your computer's resources.	16

## Setting Custom Watch Scan Periods

When a new subscription to a watch is created, it uses the default scan period of 30 minutes unless otherwise specified. You can also modify the scan period of an existing subscription.

### Set the Default Scan Period When Upgrading from 3.7.4 or earlier to 3.8.0 or later

To update the default scan period that is applied during the migration, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;watchd_scan_period,value"
```

## Modify the Scan Period of an Existing Subscription

In the subscription model, you cannot update the scan period of an existing subscription. Instead, create a new subscription and let the old one expire. To retrieve the configuration of the existing subscription, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-subscription daemon
```

To create a new subscription and set the scan period, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe daemon path --scan-period=seconds
```

## Managing Watch Subscriptions

The Aspera Watch Service can watch the entire area of the file system to which the user has access. Individual watches are created by subscribing to the service and specifying a portion of the file system to watch. Each subscription can specify a scan period, database, and subscription expiration. When subscriptions overlap in the file system, the shortest scan period is used to scan the shared area.

Watch subscriptions are managed by using the `aswatchadmin` command line utility.

### Create a new subscription to a watch

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe daemon filepath [options]
```

Options include:

#### **--db-spec=type:host:port**

Use the specified Redis database, which is defined with the syntax `redis:ip_address:port[:domain]`.

#### **-L, --logdir=log\_dir**

Specify the location for watch logging, particularly if the user does not have access to the default log location (`/var/log/messages`) or the location specified in `aspera.conf`.

#### **--scan-period=seconds**

The time between file system scans of the watches (from end of one to start of the next). These scans are independent of the snapshot minimum interval and snapshot minimum changes to ensure that changes are identified. To never scan (asperawatchd relies entirely on file notifications), set to "infinite".

On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans triggered by the scan period are used to detect file changes. In this case, set the scan period to frequently scan for changes. On operating systems that support file notifications (Linux, Windows, macOS), asperawatchd uses the file notifications as the primary means for detecting changes, and the scan period serves as a backup. In this case, the default value of 30 minutes is usually acceptable and no change is necessary. To never scan, and rely entirely on file notifications, set to `infinite`.

#### **-x, --expire\_in=seconds**

How long the watch subscription lasts before being removed from the database, with a default of 86400 seconds (24 hours). Users can resubscribe to a watch before the expiration period. Once a watch subscription expires, a new subscription must be created.

Command line options override settings in `aspera.conf`.

### List subscriptions for a specific daemon

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-subscriptions daemon
```

The output includes the subscription IDs, which are used to unsubscribe and resubscribe to the specific watch.

### Unsubscribe from a watch

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin unsubscribe daemon subscription_id
```

### Resubscribe to a watch

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin resubscribe daemon subscription_id
```

## Transferring and Deleting Files with the Aspera Watch Service

When used in conjunction with `ascp` commands, the Aspera Watch Service (`asperawatchd`) allows for fast detection and sending of new and deleted items. By comparing snapshots of the file directory it is watching, `asperawatchd` generates file lists for `ascp` transfers.

### Prerequisites

To generate snapshots and file lists, configure and start `asperawatchd`. For more information, see [Configuring the Aspera Watch Service](#).

### Creating a Subscription, Snapshots, and Snapshot Differential

1. Create a subscription and decide how to manage its expiration.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe daemon filepath [options]
```

By default, subscriptions expire in 24 hours. If your snapshot comparisons will be spaced more than 24 hours apart, either set the expiration time to a duration longer than the time between snapshots (add `--expire_in=seconds` to the command) or send a resubscribe command periodically to maintain the subscription.

For more information on creating subscriptions and resubscribing to them, see [Managing Watch Subscriptions](#) on page 324.

In the following example, user **aspera** subscribes to **/projectA/source** and the subscription expires in 48 hours:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe aspera /projectA/source --
expire_in=172800
[aswatchadmin subscribe] Successfully created
subscription {"identifier":"bec581b3-3c34-47d7-
a719-93f26f8272d1", "path":"file:///projectA/source", "scan_period":
{"sec":9223372036854775807, "usec":999999}, "expiration":"2018-03-15T07:39:21Z"}
```

Record the subscription ID (the value of "identifier" in the output) for use in creating the snapshot. You can also retrieve the subscription ID later.

2. Create a snapshot.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin create-snapshot daemon subscription_id
```

If you do not have the subscription ID, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-subscriptions daemon
```

In the following example, user **aspera** creates a snapshot of the directory that is watched by subscription **bec581b3-3c34-47d7-a719-93f26f8272d1**:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin create-snapshot aspera bec581b3-3c34-47d7-
a719-93f26f8272d1
[aswatchadmin create-snapshot] Successfully created snapshot 1.
```

3. After the desired interval, create another snapshot to compare with the previous snapshot.

The snapshot ID is automatically incremented with each `create-snapshot` command. For example, running the same command as the previous step outputs a new snapshot:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin create-snapshot aspera bec581b3-3c34-47d7-a719-93f26f8272d1
[aswatchadmin create-snapshot] Successfully created snapshot 2.
```

4. Generate the snapshot differential between the most recent snapshot and the snapshot before it.

To create a snapshot differential that outputs a list that can be used by `ascp`, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin snapshot-differential daemon subscription_id snapshot_id --format=PATH
```

Where the snapshot ID is the latest snapshot. For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin snapshot-differential aspera
bec581b3-3c34-47d7-a719-93f26f8272d1 2
/new_file.png
/new_file.pdf
```

Save the file list for use in the transfer session.

5. Send the new and modified files with `ascp` or `ascp4`.

Use the `--source-prefix` option to append the watch directory path to the filepaths in the list:

```
# ascp --file-list=filelist_pathname --source-prefix=prefix --mode=send --user=username --host=host target_directory
```

For example:

```
# ascp --file-list=/Users/aspera/filelist.txt --source-prefix=/projectA/source --mode=send --user=aspera --host=10.0.0.1 /projectA/destination
new_file.png      100%   10MB   9.7Mb/s    00:07
new_file.pdf      100%  100MB   9.7Mb/s    00:35
Completed: 112640K bytes transferred in 42 seconds
(268190 bits/sec), in 2 files.
```

### Removing Files from the Target Directory

The `asdelete` utility compares the source directory with the target directory and deletes extraneous files from the target directory. Run first with the `-d` option to do a dry run and view a list of files that would be deleted in an actual run. If the initiator of the `asdelete` command is a Windows OS, files that contain ASCII characters (such as `<`, `|`, `?`, or `"`) are not deleted and an error is logged.



**CAUTION:** `asdelete` follows symbolic links, which can result in files being deleted that are not within the target directory.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asdelete --host host --auth-name username --auth-pass password /source_directory /target_directory
```

For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asdelete --host 10.0.0.1 --auth-name aspera --auth-pass !XF345lui@ /projectA/source /projectA/destination
```

View the target directory to confirm deletion of the correct files.

# Aspera Sync

---

A complete guide to IBM Aspera Sync.

## Introduction

---

Learn about the key features and capabilities of IBM Aspera Sync.



**CAUTION:**

Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager (ATCM) is not supported with Aspera Sync.

## Overview

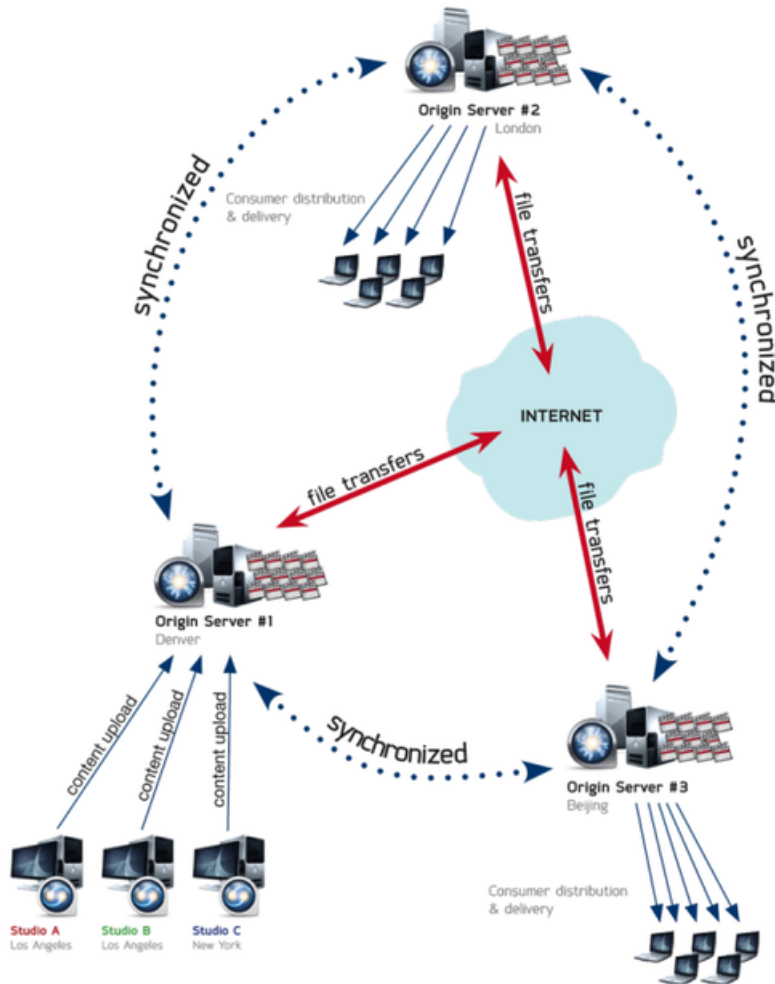
IBM Aspera Sync is a software application that provides high-speed, highly-scalable, multi-directional, file-based replication and synchronization. Aspera Sync is designed to fill the performance gap of uni-directional file synchronization tools like `rsync`, which are often slow for synchronizing large files and large sets of files over the WAN. Additionally, Aspera Sync surpasses the capability of uni-directional synchronization tools with full support for bi-directional synchronization.

Aspera Sync offers the following key capabilities:

- Utilizes high-speed Aspera FASP transport for moving data at maximum speed over the WAN, whereas traditional synchronization tools are built on TCP. Aspera Sync transfers new data between remote hosts at full bandwidth capacity, regardless of round-trip delay and packet loss, and does not degrade in performance for large file sizes.
- Compares against a local snapshot, thereby avoiding making a comparison against the remote file system over the WAN, which is used by most traditional tools and can be slow.
- Recognizes file system changes (such as moves and renames) on the source and propagates these changes to the destination. Traditional tools treat these operations as deletion of old data and then recreate or re-transfer the new data, which can lead to costly data copying over the WAN.
- Supports bi-directional and multi-directional synchronization topologies, where files are changing on multiple nodes. For a bi-directional synchronization, Aspera Sync runs with a bi-directional option. For a multi-directional synchronization, one session is run for each peer to remain sync. Any topology that has an acyclic graph topology between peers is supported.
- Uses file system notifications for change notification, when available.
- Monitors file contents and waits for files to be stable (no longer changing in `md5sum`) before transferring. The wait period is configurable and is designed to avoid transferring only partially complete files.

Aspera Sync is a command-line tool, `async`, that uses an SSH connection to establish connectivity with its remote peers and is spawned as an SSH subsystem binary on the remote system. The program can be run one time or periodically (through a cron tab scheduled job) on file systems that do not provide asynchronous change notification, or in a continuous mode on file systems that do support asynchronous change notification. Aspera Sync is designed to process files and transfer new data in a continuous pipeline for maximum speed, even when running in scan-only mode (when no file system change notification is available).

## Sample Sync Deployment Diagram



## Synchronization and Direction Modes

Aspera Sync offers two modes of operation: one-time ("on demand") synchronization and continuous synchronization, as well as three direction modes: uni-directional, bi-directional, and multi-directional.

### One-time vs. Continuous Synchronization

#### One-time synchronization

In this mode, `async` performs synchronization of the endpoints, and exits. If available, `async` uses an existing snapshot to determine changes, unless specifically instructed to drop the snapshot and scan the file system again (see the `-x` option in [async Command Reference](#) on page 342).

This mode should be used for one\_time operations, or for periodic, scheduled synchronizations where file systems do not support event-based change notification. For the latter, `async` can be scheduled as a cron job to run periodically.

One-time synchronization is supported between all operating systems.

#### Continuous synchronization

In this mode, Aspera Sync synchronizes the endpoints and continues running. As file system updates occur (for example, files or directories are added, deleted or modified), Aspera Sync detects these changes and synchronizes with the peer endpoint.

Continuous mode is supported only when the file source is Windows, Linux, or macOS. See the following table for the operating system requirements for the Aspera Sync server and client for the different Aspera Sync directions.



Continuous Aspera Sync Direction	Supported Aspera Sync Client OS	Supported Aspera Sync Server OS
PUSH	Linux, Windows, macOS	All
PULL	All	Linux, Windows, macOS
BIDI	Linux, Windows, macOS	Linux, Windows, macOS

## Aspera Sync Direction Modes

### Uni-directional

Similar to `rsync`, the uni-directional mode supports replication of files and directories, and any updates to these (including deletions, renames, moves, and copies) from a source to a target. The direction of replication can be specified as a "push" or "pull" operation, relative to the initiating host. Once a snapshot is taken after the first replication, all file system updates are recognized against this snapshot, and no comparison of source to target over the WAN is performed (as in `rsync`). Aspera Sync supports most of the same uni-directional synchronization options as `rsync`, such as include/exclude filters, overwrite only if newer, symbolic link handling, and preservation of file system ownership and timestamps.

### Bi-directional

Bi-directional mode supports the replication of all file and directory updates between the peers. For any case in which the most recent version of an update cannot be reliably determined, or when a file changes on both endpoints concurrently, Aspera Sync flags the update as a conflict and leaves the peer file systems in their present state (and in conflict). Files in conflict can be reviewed using the `asynadmin` command-line tool (see [asynadmin Command-Line Options](#) on page 370). In this version, it is up to the operator to resolve conflicts manually.

### Multi-directional

Multi-directional synchronization requires one Aspera Sync session (one `async` process execution) for each remote peer. Any number of `async` processes can be run concurrently, and any number of peers can be synchronized concurrently; however, a downstream peer cannot be configured to synchronize "back" in a loop to an upstream peer.

## Aspera Sync FAQ

Get answers about what Aspera Sync does and how it does it.

### What does Aspera Sync actually do?

Aspera Sync synchronizes new and modified files and directories between remote endpoints. It moves, deletes, renames, and transfers new file contents as needed. For example:

- Moving a file out of the synchronized directory results in deletion at the remote peer.
- Moving a file into the synchronized directory results in a copy at the remote peer.
- Renaming a file in a previously synchronized directory renames the file at the remote peer; moving a file in a previously synchronized directory results in the same move operation at the peer.

### How does Aspera Sync differ from rsync?

Aspera Sync is a high-speed replacement for `rsync` in uni-directional mode, and is designed to be a drop-in replacement with similar command-line options. Aspera Sync also supports bi-directional and multi-directional synchronization. The following key capabilities distinguish it from `rsync`:

- Uses Aspera's high-speed FASP transport technology, while `rsync` transfers over traditional TCP.
- Operates in push, pull and bi-directional modes.
- Circumvents the typically slower comparison of the local system to the remote system over the WAN, and instead, it efficiently compares the current file system state to a *snapshot* of the last sync.
- Detects and implements file or directory moves and renames to avoid unnecessary transfers over the network.
- Waits for the systems to become stable (that is, it detects whether files are still being modified) before performing synchronization.

For a comparison of `async` options versus `rsync` options, see [rsync vs. async Uni-directional Example](#).

### How is one-time mode different from continuous mode?

Aspera Sync offers two modes of operation: one-time ("on-demand") synchronization and continuous synchronization. When running in one-time mode, it synchronizes once and exits. In continuous mode, on the other hand, it offers constant synchronization between file systems.

Continuous mode can only be used where file system change notification (that is, *inotify*, which monitors file system events) is available on the systems that are running `async`. NFS-mounted file systems do not support *inotify* change notification for updates made by remote NFS clients, so in these scenarios, `async` should be run in one-time mode (which can be scheduled through `cron`). The Aspera Sync scan mode is designed for maximum speed and is fully pipelined with transfer, so as to allow for maximum performance even in one-time mode.

### In what directions does Aspera Sync work?

Aspera Sync works in multiple directions: push, pull, and bi-directional.

- Aspera Sync supports pushing content from the local system to a remote system, and pulling content from a remote system to the local system.
- Bi-directional synchronization occurs between two endpoints, such that file system changes on either end (local or remote) are replicated on both sides.

### How are conflicts handled in bi-directional mode?

A conflict situation can arise in bi-directional mode when a file or directory changes content, an entity is renamed before synchronization has completed, or the change occurs on both endpoints concurrently such that the "newer" version cannot be reliably determined. Aspera Sync reports such conflicts and does not modify either file system, leaving the file systems in conflict. For instructions on resolving conflicts, see [Resolving Bidirectional Aspera Sync File Conflicts](#) on page 375.

### How much space is required for an Aspera Sync snapshot?

Snapshots require up to 1 GB of disk space for every 1 million files, and an additional 1 GB for cleanup purposes. For optimum performance, Aspera recommends that the file system have at least 2 GB free per 1 million files, and 3 GB free per 1 million files on Windows (due to the poor performance of Windows NTFS when more than half of the available disk space is occupied).

## Aspera Sync Set Up

---

Aspera Sync is installed when you install HST Server; your license must enable Aspera Sync. Before using Aspera Sync, prepare the file systems to synchronize and plan your replication strategy, as described in the following sections.

### Configuring Aspera Sync Endpoints

Aspera Sync reads configuration settings from `aspera.conf`, which can be edited using `asconfigurator` commands or manually. The following sections provide instructions for setting Aspera-recommended security configuration, instructions for how to edit other configurations, a reference for many of the available configuration options, and a sample `aspera.conf`.

#### Aspera-Recommended Configuration

Aspera recommends setting the following configuration options for greatest security. Additional settings are described in the following table.

**Note:** To synchronize with AWS S3 storage, you must configure specific locations for the log and database directories. For more information, see [Synchronizing with AWS S3 Storage](#) on page 361.

### 1. Set the location for the Aspera Sync log for each transfer user.

By default, Aspera Sync events are logged to the system log (see [Logging](#) on page 372). Aspera recommends setting the log to a directory within the transfer user's home folder.

Log location, size, and log level can be configured for both `ascp` and `async` by setting default or user-specific configurations in `aspera.conf`. For instructions, see [Server Logging Configuration for Ascp and Ascp 4](#) on page 125.

To set a logging directory for `async` that is separate from `ascp`, you can set `async_log_dir`. For example:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;async_log_dir,log_dir"
```

**Note:** If `async_log_dir` is not set, then the logging configuration for `ascp` is applied. The client can override the server logging settings with the `-R` option.

### 2. Set the location for the Aspera Sync database for each transfer user.

Aspera Sync uses a database to track file system changes between runs of the same session (see [The Aspera Sync Database](#) on page 336). The Aspera Sync database should not be located on CIFS, NFS, or other shared file systems mounted on Linux, unless you are synchronizing through IBM Aspera Proxy. If server data are stored on a mount, specify a local location for the Aspera Sync database. Aspera recommends setting the database location to a directory within the user's home folder by using the same approach as setting the local Aspera Sync log:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;async_db_dir,db_dir"
```

This setting overrides the remote database directory specified by the client with the `-B` option.

**Note:** If the transfer user's docroot is a URL (such as `file:///*`), then `async_db_dir` must be set in `aspera.conf`. For an example, see [Synchronizing with AWS S3 Storage](#) on page 361.

### 3. If the Aspera Sync source files are on a NFS or CIFS mount, create a mount signature file.

Aspera Sync can use a mount signature file to recognize that the source is on a mount. If you do not use the mount signature file and the NFS or CIFS mount is unreachable, Aspera Sync considers those files as deleted and delete them from the other endpoint.

To create a mount signature file, create the file in the parent directory of the source directory on the mount. For example, if the Aspera Sync directory is `/mnt/sync/data`, create the mount signature file `/mnt/sync/mount_signature.txt` by running the following command:

```
# echo mount >> /mnt/sync/mount_signature.txt
```

When you run a Aspera Sync session, use `--local-mount-signature=mount_signature.txt` if the local source is on a mount and `--remote-mount-signature=mount_signature.txt` if the remote source is on a mount. For bidirectional Aspera Sync sessions between mounts, use both.

## Configuring Other Settings

To configure Aspera Sync settings in `aspera.conf` by using `asconfigurator` commands, use the following general syntax for setting default values (first line) or user-specific values (second line):

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;option,value"
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;option,value"
```

To manually edit `aspera.conf`, open it in a text editor with administrative privileges from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

See an example `aspera.conf` following the settings reference table. For an example of the `asperawatchd` configuration, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

After manually editing `aspera.conf`, validate that its XML syntax is correct by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

This command does not check if the settings are valid.

## Sync Configuration Options

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description and Value Options
async_connection_timeout <async_connection_timeout>	<p>The number of seconds <code>async</code> waits for a connection to be established before it terminates.</p> <p>Value is a positive integer. (Default: 20) If synchronization fails and returns connection timeout errors, which could be due to issues such as under-resourced computers, slow storage, or network problems, set the value higher, from 120 (2 minutes) to even 600 (10 minutes).</p>
async_db_dir <async_db_dir>	<p>Specify an alternative location for the <code>async</code> server's snap database files. If unspecified, log files are saved in the default location or the location that is specified by the client with the <code>-B</code> option.</p>
async_db_spec <async_db_spec>	<p>Value has the syntax <code>sqlite:lock_style:storage_style</code>. (Default: undefined)</p> <p><i>lock_style</i>: Specify how <code>async</code> interfaces with the operating system. Values depend on operating system.</p> <p>Unix-based systems have the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>empty</code> or <code>unix</code>: The default method that is used by most applications.</li> <li>• <code>unix-flock</code>: For file systems that do not support POSIX locking style.</li> <li>• <code>unix-dotfile</code>: For file systems that do not support POSIX nor flock-locking styles.</li> <li>• <code>unix-none</code>: No database-locking mechanism is used. Allowing a single database to be accessed by multiple clients is not safe with this option.</li> </ul> <p><i>storage_style</i>: Specify where Aspera Sync stores a local database that traces each directory and file. Three values can be used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>undefined</code> or <code>disk</code>: The default option. Read and write the database to disk. This provides maximum reliability and no limitations on the number of files that can be synchronized.</li> <li>• <code>lms</code>: The database is loaded from disk into memory at startup, changes during the session are saved to memory, and the database is saved to disk on exit. This option increases speed but all changes are lost if <code>async</code> stops abruptly, and the number of synchronized files is limited by available memory.</li> <li>• <code>memory</code>: The database is stored completely in memory. This method provides maximum speed but is not reliable because the database is not backed up to disk.</li> </ul>

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description and Value Options
async_enabled <async_enabled>	Enable (set to <code>true</code> , default) or disable (set to <code>false</code> ) Sync. When set to <code>false</code> , the client <code>async</code> session fails with the error "Operation 'sync' not enabled or not permitted by license".
async_log_dir <async_log_dir>	Specify an alternative location for the <code>async</code> server's log files. If unspecified, log files are saved in the default location or the location that is specified by the client with the <code>-R</code> option. For information on the default log file location, see <a href="#">Logging</a> on page 372.
async_log_level <async_log_level>	Set the amount of detail in the <code>async</code> server activity log. Valid values are <code>log</code> (default), <code>dbg1</code> , or <code>dbg2</code> .
async_session_timeout <async_session_timeout>	The number of seconds <code>async</code> waits for a non-responsive session to resume before it terminates. Value is a positive integer. (Default: 20)
directory_create_mode <directory_create_mode>	Specify the directory creation mode (permissions). If specified, create directories with these permissions irrespective of <code>&lt;directory_create_grant_mask&gt;</code> and permissions of the directory on the source computer. This option is applied only when the server is a Unix-based receiver.  Value is a positive integer (octal). (Default: undefined)
directory_create_grant_mask <directory_create_grant_mask>	Specify the mode for newly created directories if <code>directory_create_mode</code> is not specified. If specified, directory modes are set to their original modes plus the grant mask values. This option is applied only when the server is a Unix-based receiver and when <code>directory_create_mode</code> is not specified.  Value is a positive integer (octal). (Default: 755)
preserve_acls preserve_xattrs <preserve_acls> <preserve_xattrs>	Specify if the ACL access data ( <code>acls</code> ) or extended attributes ( <code>xattrs</code> ) from Windows or macOS files are preserved. Three modes are supported. (Default: none)  <code>native</code> : <code>acls</code> or <code>xattrs</code> are preserved by using the native capabilities of the file system. If the destination does not support <code>acls</code> or <code>xattrs</code> , <code>async</code> generates an error and exits.  <code>metafile</code> : <code>acls</code> or <code>xattrs</code> are preserved in a separate file. The file is in the same location and has same name, but has the added extension <code>.aspera-meta</code> . The <code>.aspera-meta</code> files are platform-independent, and files can be reverted to native form if they are synchronized with a compatible system.  <code>none</code> : No <code>acls</code> or <code>xattrs</code> data is preserved. This mode is supported on all file systems.  ACL preservation is only meaningful if both hosts are in the same domain. If a SID (security ID) in a source file does not exist at a destination, the sync proceeds but no ACL data is saved and the log records that the ACL was not applied.  The <code>aspera.conf</code> settings for <code>acls</code> or <code>xattrs</code> can be overwritten by using the <code>--preserve-acls</code> or <code>--preserve-xattrs</code> options, respectively, in a command-line <code>async</code> session.

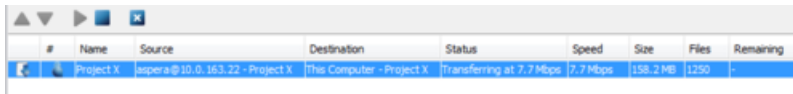
## Example Sync Configuration in `aspera.conf`

```
<file_system>
...
<directory_create_mode> </directory_create_mode>
<directory_create_grant_mask>755</directory_create_grant_mask>
<preserve_acls>none</preserve_acls>
<preserve_xattrs>none</preserve_xattrs>
...
</file_system>
...
<default>
...
<async_db_dir> </async_db_dir>
<async_db_spec> </async_db_spec>
<async_enabled>true</async_enabled>
<async_connection_timeout>20</async_connection_timeout>
<async_session_timeout>20</async_session_timeout>
<async_log_dir>AS_NULL</async_log_dir>
<async_log_level>log</async_log_level>
...
</default>
```

## Viewing Aspera Sync Transfers in the Aspera GUI

The HST Server GUI shows `async`-initiated transfers if Aspera Sync is run on the machine (as client) by default, whereas server `async` transfers are not shown.

In the following example, the GUI shows transfers associated with a Aspera Sync job in which the remote user, `aspera`, is pushing files to the server folder for Project X.



#	Name	Source	Destination	Status	Speed	Size	Files	Remaining
1	Project X	aspera@10.0.163.22 - Project X	This Computer - Project X	Transferring at 7.7Mbps	7.7Mbps	138.2 MB	1/250	-

You can configure the server and client reporting to the Aspera GUI with the following options.

### Server reporting:

Server reporting is disabled by default. To enable the server to report Aspera Sync-initiated transfers:

1. Run the following command on the server:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;async_activity_logging,true"
```

2. Restart `asperanoded` to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

### Client reporting:

Client reporting is enabled by default. To disable the client from reporting Aspera Sync-initiated transfers, run the following command on the client machine:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_client_data;async_management_activity_logging,false"
```

You do not need to restart `asperanoded` for this change to take effect.

## Symbolic Link Handling

When transferring files using FASP (the Aspera GUI, `ascp`, `ascp4`, or `async`), you can configure how the server and client handle symbolic links.

**Note:** Symbolic links are not supported on Windows. Server settings are ignored on Windows servers. If the transfer destination is a Windows computer, the only supported option that the client can use is **skip**.

### Symbolic Link Handling Options and their Behavior

- **Follow:** Follow a symbolic link and transfer the contents of the linked file or directory as long as the link target is in the user's docroot.
- **Follow\_wide** (Server only): For downloads, follow a symbolic link and transfer the contents of the linked file or directory **even if the link target is outside of the user's docroot**. Use caution with this setting because it might allow transfer users to access sensitive files on the server.
- **Create** (Server only): If the client requests to copy symbolic links in an upload, create the symbolic links on the server.
- **None** (Server only): Prohibit clients from creating symbolic links on the server; with this setting clients can only request to follow or skip symbolic links.
- **Copy** (Client only): Copy only the symbolic link. If a file with the same name exists at the destination, **the symbolic link does not replace the file**.
- **Copy+force** (Client only): Copy only the symbolic link. If a file with the same name exists at the destination, **the symbolic link replaces the file**. If the file of the same name at the destination is a symbolic link to a directory, it is not replaced.

**Note:** A4 and Sync do not support the copy+force option.

- **Skip** (Client only): Skip symbolic links. Neither the link nor the file to which it points are transferred.

Symbolic link handling depends on the server configuration, the client handling request, and the direction of transfer, as described in the following tables. Multiple values can be set on the server as a comma-delimited list, such as the default "follow,create". In this case, the options are logically ORed based on the client's handling request.

#### Send from Client to Server (Upload)

	Server setting = create, follow (default)	Server setting = create	Server setting = follow	Server setting = follow_wide	Server setting = none
<b>Client setting = follow</b> (default for <code>ascp</code> and <code>ascp4</code> )	Follow	Follow	Follow	Follow	Follow
<b>Client setting = copy</b> (default for <code>async</code> )	Copy	Copy	Skip	Skip	Skip
<b>Client setting = copy+force</b>	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Skip	Skip	Skip
<b>Client setting = skip</b>	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip

#### Receive to Client from Server (Download)

	Server setting = create, follow (default)	Server setting = create	Server setting = follow	Server setting = follow_wide	Server setting = none
<b>Client setting = follow</b> (default for ascp and ascp4)	Follow	Skip	Follow	Follow even if the target is outside the user's docroot.	Skip
<b>Client setting = copy</b> (default for async)	Copy	Copy	Copy	Copy	Copy
<b>Client setting = copy+force</b>	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.	Copy and replace any existing files.
<b>Client setting = skip</b>	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip	Skip

## Server and Client Configuration

### Server Configuration

In the GUI, go to **Configuration > File Handling** and set a value for **Symbolic Link Actions** (see also [File Handling Configuration](#) on page 57). Combinations of actions must be set from the command line using `asconfigurator` or manually editing `aspera.conf`.

To set symbolic link handling globally or per user, run the appropriate command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;symbolic_links,value"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;symbolic_links,value"
```

For more information, see [aspera.conf - File System Configuration](#) on page 108.

### Client Configuration

Transfers initiated in the GUI request that symbolic links be followed. This cannot be adjusted. To specify symbolic link handling on the command line (with `ascp`, `ascp4`, or `async`), use `--symbolic-links=option`.

## The Aspera Sync Database

Each `async` session creates a database (`snap.db`) that is stored on both the local (client) computer and the remote (server) computer. The database records the state of the file system at the end of the last `async` session, and the next time the session is run, the file system is compared to the database to identify changes.

### Aspera Sync Database Location and Structure

Aspera Sync creates private directories (`.private-asp`) to store the database and in-progress transfers (a transfer cache for pending files).

The Aspera Sync database directory is stored on the local computer in the directory specified by the `-b` option in the command line, and on the remote computer in the directory set for `<async_db_dir>` in the server's `aspera.conf` (or set by the client with `-B` if no value is set on the server).

**Note:** The Aspera Sync database does not work on CIFS, NFS, or other mounted shared file systems; therefore, `-B` and `-b` must specify a directory on a file system physically local to the endpoint host.

Multiple `async` sessions can synchronize the same directory or specify the same database directory (`-b` or `-B`), so for each session `async` creates a subdirectory in `.private-asp` that is named with the session name specified by



-N. To allow the session name to be used as a directory name, names can only use standard alphanumeric characters and "\_" and "-" characters.

Each `async` session must have a unique name. If multiple sessions synchronize the same directory or specify the same database directory (`-b/-B`), then the session names *must* be unique. For example, you run an `async` session named **job1** that synchronizes the local directory `/data` and the remote directory `/data1`, and that stores the database in `/sync/db` on both endpoints. You cannot run another `async` session named **job1** that synchronizes `/data` with `/data2` and that stores the database in `/sync/db`; you must either run the session with a unique name or store the database in a different location.

### Example 1: Bi-directional async

```
# -N ex1 -b /var/db -B /opt/aspera/var -d /data/users -r root@server:/
storage/users -K bidi
```

The above command creates the following:

On the local computer (client):

- `/var/db/.private-asp/ex1/snap.db`
- `/data/users/.private-asp/ex1` (for transfer cache)

On the remote computer (server):

- `/opt/aspera/var/.private-asp/ex1/snap.db`
- `/storage/users/ex1` (for transfer cache)

### Example 2: Uni-directional async

```
# -N ex2 -b /var/db -B /opt/aspera/var -d /data/users -r root@server:/
storage/users -K push
```

The above command creates the following:

On the local computer (client):

`/var/db/.private-asp/ex2/snap.db`

On the remote computer (server):

`/opt/aspera/var/.private-asp/ex2/snap.db`

`/storage/users/ex2` (for transfer cache)

## Changing Synchronization Direction Between Runs of the Same Session

Changing direction between runs of the same session is not supported. `async` fails with an error message and you must run it with `-x` (or `--reset`) or provide a new database directory.

**Note:** The `-x` or `--reset` options delete the existing database, and Aspera Sync must create a new one, which can take a long time if the file system contains many files and directories.

## Starting a Aspera Sync Session When a Sync Database is Missing

If the database is missing or corrupted on either endpoint, repeating an `async` session fails with error messages similar to the following (in these examples, `/sync/peer` is the remote database directory and the session is named **push**):

```
Failed. Peer error: Local snapshot DB exists but remote snapshot DB /sync/
peer/.private-asp/push/snap.db does not exist
Failed. Peer error: file is encrypted or is not a database
Failed. Peer error: Corrupt database /sync/peer/.private-asp/push/snap.db
```

If this is the case, you can run `async` with `-x` or `--reset`. This option rebuilds the database, which can take some time for very large directories. A Aspera Sync session run with `--reset` has the following behavior:

1. If the private directory (`.private-asp`) is missing, Aspera Sync creates it.
2. If the database directory (`.private-asp/session_name`) is missing (and, therefore, the database file `snap.db` doesn't exist), Aspera Sync creates `snap.db` and its directory.
3. If the database directory does not contain the `snap.db` file, Aspera Sync creates it.

### Deleting a Snapshot Database During Synchronization

Deleting either of the snapshot databases (client or server) that are in use by an active synchronization session results in undefined behavior. To recover, stop `async`, delete the database on the other side as well, and restart the session.

## Running `async`

Aspera Sync uses the `async` command line tool to synchronize content from the source to the destination. `async` has many options for customizing the behavior of the synchronization, and this section describes how to compose an `async` session, the command line arguments, and examples for specific use cases.

### Composing an Async Session

Aspera Sync has more than 80 options that can be used when composing an `async` session, but only a few are required, and Aspera recommends using several others. These instructions describe how to compose a bidirectional `async` session between a Windows client and a Linux server, and includes the required and recommended options in the correct order. You can use the short form or long form (POSIX) option tags and the complete commands using both tag formats are summarized at the end.

For a complete list and descriptions of available options, see the [async Command Reference](#) on page 342. For configuration and option usage required to synchronize with AWS S3 storage, see [Synchronizing with AWS S3 Storage](#) on page 361.

1. Confirm that both endpoints have Aspera Sync-enabled licenses and that the remote endpoint is running an Aspera transfer server application (HST Server or HST Endpoint).

Run `ascp -A` in the command line and look for `sync2` in the `Enabled settings` section.

2. Begin by invoking `async`.

```
# async
```

3. Enter instance options.

Instance options are used to configure the local (client) computer for the `async` session and are mostly optional. Aspera recommends that you include `-L log_dir` (or `--alt-logdir=log_dir`) to set client-side logging to a directory that you can access, because you might not have permission to access the log in its default location (see [Logging](#) on page 372). The logging directory must not be in the directory that is being synchronized.

For example, if the Windows client's username is **Morgan**, Morgan can use `-L` to log to a directory in the home folder:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log"
```

In this example, the path must be in quotes because the path includes a folder name that contains a space. For more information on path formatting, see [async Command Reference](#) on page 342.

4. Name the session by using the `-N` option (or `--name=pair`).

`-N pair` is required in `async` commands. The value for `pair` is a name that uniquely identifies the Aspera Sync session and is visible in IBM Aspera Console. `-N pair` must follow any instance options and must precede all session arguments. Names can only use standard alphanumeric characters, plus "\_" and "-" characters.

**Note:** If your remote host is an Aspera cluster, ensure that your session name is unique by naming the session with a descriptive string followed by the UUID of the local host, such as "cluster-sync-ba209999-0c6c-11d2-97cf-00c04f8eea45".

For example, name the session **job1**:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1
```

Once you name the session, you enter the session options. Session options define the transfer parameters including authentication, transfer rate and policy, database storage, and the folders to synchronize.

#### 5. Provide authentication credentials.

Aspera Sync supports three methods of authenticating to the server: SSH key, password, and basic token. Aspera recommends using SSH keys, unless your server requires a basic token.

- **SSH key:** To use SSH key authentication, your SSH public key must be configured on the remote server. For instructions on creating keys and setting them up on the server, see the [IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide](#). Specify the path to your private key file by using the `-i file` (or `--private-key-path=file`) option.
- **Password:** The password is the one associated with the Aspera transfer user account on the server. You can provide the password as an environment variable (ASPERA\_SCP\_PASS) or when prompted after starting the command.
- **Basic token:** Basic tokens are used for synchronizing with Aspera products that require access key authentication, such as IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service (AoCts). For instructions on creating the basic token, see [Aspera Sync with Basic Token Authorization](#) on page 364. You can provide the token as an environment variable (ASPERA\_SCP\_TOKEN) or in the command line using the `-W token_string` (or `--token=token_string`) option.

For example, use `-i` and specify the path to Morgan's SSH private key in their home folder:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/morgan/.ssh/id_rsa
```

In this case, the path to the SSH key can use platform-agnostic path separators ( / ) and be entered without quotes around it because it does not have a space in it.

#### 6. If the local data are stored on a mount or object storage, specify the locations for the local snapshot database.

The snapshot database cannot be located on CIFS, NFS, or other shared file systems mounted on Linux. If the local files and directories specified in the previous step are on a mount, you must specify a local location using `-b db_dir` (or `--local-db-dir=db_dir`). The database must not be in the directory that is being synchronized.

For example, use `-b` to store the local snapshot database in Morgan's "Aspera jobs" folder:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db"
```

#### 7. Set transfer parameters.

The same transfer rate and transfer policy options that are used to control `ascp` transfers can be applied to `async` sessions. Aspera recommends setting a target rate that is based on your available bandwidth and system capabilities. Set the target (maximum) rate using `-l rate` (or `--target-rate=rate`).

For example, use `-l` to set the target rate to 500 Mbps:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m
```

#### 8. Specify the local directory for synchronization.

Enter the local directory using `-d ldir` (or `--local-dir=ldir`).

For example, use `-d` to set the local directory to Morgan's **data** folder:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/
morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m -d c:/
users/morgan/data
```

### 9. Specify the transfer username, remote host, and remote directory for synchronization.

Unlike previous options for which one short option flag was equivalent to one long option flag, when specifying the username, remote host, and remote directory, the short flag option is the equivalent of one to three long option flags. For example, if the username is **morgan**, the remote host IP address is **10.0.0.1**, and the remote directory is **data**, then the following options are equivalent to each other:

```
-r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data
--remote-dir=morgan@10.0.0.1:/data
--user=morgan --remote-dir=10.0.0.1:/data
--user=morgan --host=10.0.0.1 --remote-dir=/data
```

If the name of your remote directory contains an "@", use the `--user` option so that the "@" is not treated specially in the argument for `--remote-dir`.

For example, use `-r` to set the username, remote host, and remote directory:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/
morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m -d c:/
users/morgan/data -r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data
```

### 10. If a source directory is on an NFS or CIFS mount, require Aspera Sync to use the mount signature file.



**Warning:** If you do not use the mount signature file and the NFS or CIFS mount is unreachable, Aspera Sync considers those files as deleted and deletes them from the other endpoint.

If the local endpoint is on a NFS or CIFS mount and the Aspera Sync is push or bidirectional, use `--local-mount-signature`. If the remote endpoint is on a NFS or CIFS mount and the Aspera Sync is pull or bidirectional, use `--remote-mount-signature`.

### 11. Specify the locations for the remote Aspera Sync log and database.

On the server, Aspera Sync logs to the default location (see [Logging](#) on page 372) if no location is specified for `<async_log_dir>` in the server's configuration file. Aspera recommends using `-R` (or `--remote-logdir`) to specify a logging location to which you have access. The location must be within your docroot on the server, unless you are synchronizing with AWS S3 object storage. `-R` is overridden by the server's configuration file. If you are restricted to `aspsell` on the server, you cannot use this option.

Aspera also recommends using `-B` (or `--remote-db-dir`) to specify a location for the remote Aspera Sync database. As with the log file, the location must be within your docroot, it is overridden by `<async_db_dir>` in the server's configuration file, and you cannot use this option if you are restricted to `aspsell`.

As on the local computer, the Aspera Sync log and database must not be in a directory that is being synchronized.

For example, to set the remote log and snapshot database files to Morgan's home folder:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/
morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m -d c:/
users/morgan/data -r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data -R /morgan/async/log -B /
morgan/async/db
```

### 12. Specify the synchronization mode.

Aspera Sync can be run in three modes:

- **push:** The contents of *ldir* are synchronized to *rdir*, with the *ldir* content overwriting the *rdir* content, by default (unless the overwrite options are specified otherwise, such as to only overwrite if *rdir* is older, or never overwrite).

- `pull`: The contents of `rdir` are synchronized to `ldir`, with the `rdir` content overwriting the `ldir` content, by default.
- `bidi` (bi-directional): The contents of `ldir` and `rdir` are synchronized, with newer versions of files and directories overwriting older versions in either `ldir` or `rdir`, by default.

To synchronize the remote folder with the local folder use `-K push` (or `--direction=push`).

For example, use `-K bidi` to do a bidirectional sync:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/
morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m -d c:/
users/morgan/data -r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data -R /morgan/async/log -B /
morgan/async/db -K bidi
```

### 13. Preserve file attributes.

When a file or directory is transferred between computers, the file is written to the destination as the transfer user and the file modification time (and creation time on Windows) are reset. Most users prefer to preserve timestamps from the source to the destination by using the `-t` option.

For example, use `-t timestamps`:

```
async -L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log" -N job1 -i c:/users/
morgan/.ssh/id_rsa -b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db" -l 500m -d c:/
users/morgan/data -r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data -R /morgan/async/log -B /
morgan/async/db -K bidi -t
```

**Note:** When synchronizing between Unix-like operating systems, you can also preserve the user IDs (uid) and group IDs (gid) from the source to the destination by using the options `-u -j` (equivalent to `--preserve-uid --preserve-gid`).

Extended file attributes and ACLs can also be preserved; see the [async Command Reference](#) on page 342.

When using `--dedup`, file metadata preservation is supported for `copy`.

### Summary

The instructions created the following Aspera Sync session, shown using short option flags and POSIX (long) flags. Each option is shown on a separate line for clarity, but should be entered in the command line as a single line.



**Warning:** This example does not include the option to make Aspera Sync check for a mount signature file. If a source is on a NFS or CIFS mount, include `--local-mount-signature` and `--remote-mount-signature` to prevent Aspera Sync from deleting files on an endpoint if a mount becomes unavailable. For instructions, see [Configuring Aspera Sync Endpoints](#) on page 330.

Using short-format option flags:

```
async
-L "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log"
-N job1
-i c:/users/morgan/.ssh/id_rsa
-b "C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\db"
-l 500m
-d c:/users/morgan/data
-r morgan@10.0.0.1:/data
-R /morgan/async/log
-B /morgan/async/db
-K bidi
-t
```

Using long-format option flags:

```
async
--alt-logdir="C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera jobs\log"
```

```

--name=job1
--private-key-path=c:/users/morgan/.ssh/id_rsa
--local-db-dir="C:\Users\Morgan\Aspera_jobs\db"
--target-rate=500m
--local-dir=c:/users/morgan/data
--user=morgan
--host=10.0.0.1
--remote-dir=/data
--remote-logdir=/morgan/async/log
--remote-db-dir=/morgan/async/db
--direction=bidi
--preserve-time

```

If the session is between Linux computers, it also includes the following session options:

```

-u
-j

```

Or using long-format option flags:

```

--preserve-uid
--preserve-gid

```

## async Command Reference

An `async` session accepts the following options, some of which are required.

### Syntax

```

# async [instance_options] -N pair -d ldir -r [user@host:rdir]
  [session_options] ...

```

**Note:** Transfers started by `async` can be controlled from the HST Server GUI. Canceling an `async` transfer in the GUI shuts down `async`.

### Required Command Options

#### Naming the `async` session: `-N pair`

`-N pair` is required in `async` commands. The value for *pair* is a name that uniquely identifies the Aspera Sync session and is visible in IBM Aspera Console. `-N pair` must follow any instance options and must precede all session arguments. Names can only use standard alphanumeric characters, plus "\_" and "-" characters.

**Note:** If your remote host is an Aspera cluster, ensure that your session name is unique by naming the session with a descriptive string followed by the UUID of the local host, such as "cluster-sync-ba209999-0c6c-11d2-97cf-00c04f8eea45".

#### Specifying filepaths and filenames: *ldir* and *rdir*

*ldir* specifies the local directory to be synchronized and *rdir* specifies the remote directory to be synchronized. File paths and filenames must follow these rules:

- The drive letter is required in Windows paths, unless the server's `aspera.conf` file has a `docroot` defined for the user. If no drive letter is included when syncing with a Windows computer and `docroot` is not defined for the user, `async` displays the error message: "Failed. Peer error: Remote directory is not absolute."
- You can synchronize Windows, Linux, macOS, and other Unix-based endpoints and servers, but must take care with path separators. The path separator "/" is supported on Windows and other platforms. The path separator "\" is platform-agnostic *only* for the options `-d/r/L/R/B/b` and `--keep-dir-local/remote`. In Aspera Sync filtering rules, however, "\" is exclusively a quoting operator and "/" is the only path separator recognized.
- File names may not contain `\n`, `\r`, or `\.` Files with these in their names are skipped.

- When scanning or monitoring a file system for changes, `async` skips over files with names that end in one of the special suffixes specified in `aspera.conf` with `<resume_suffix>` and `<partial_file_suffix>`. To disable this behavior, you can set these values to the empty string. `<resume_suffix>` defaults to `.aspx`. The `<partial_file_suffix>` tag defaults to the empty string, but is often set to `.partial`.



**Warning:** If a source is on a NFS or CIFS mount, use `--local-mount-signature` or `--remote-mount-signature` (or both if both endpoints are on mounts and the Aspera Sync is bidirectional) to prevent Aspera Sync from deleting files on the non-mount endpoint if the mount becomes unavailable. For instructions on creating mount signature files, see [Configuring Aspera Sync Endpoints](#) on page 330.

### Specifying the direction of the sync: `-K direction`

Aspera Sync has three modes of synchronization: `push`, `pull`, and `bidirectional`.

- `push`: The contents of `ldir` are synchronized to `rdir`, with the `ldir` content overwriting the `rdir` content, by default (unless the overwrite options are specified otherwise, such as to only overwrite if `rdir` is older, or never overwrite).
- `pull`: The contents of `rdir` are synchronized to `ldir`, with the `rdir` content overwriting the `ldir` content, by default.
- `bidirectional` (bi-directional): The contents of `ldir` and `rdir` are synchronized, with newer versions of files and directories overwriting older versions in either `ldir` or `rdir`, by default.

### Using continuous mode: `-C`

Continuous mode is supported only when the file source is Windows, Linux, or macOS. See the following table for the operating system requirements for the Aspera Sync server and client for the different Aspera Sync directions.

Continuous Aspera Sync Direction	Supported Aspera Sync Client OS	Supported Aspera Sync Server OS
PUSH	Linux, Windows, macOS	All
PULL	All	Linux, Windows, macOS
BIDI	Linux, Windows, macOS	Linux, Windows, macOS

One-time synchronization is supported between all operating systems.

The following tables are complete command-line options references. View an abbreviated version from the command line by running:

```
# async -h
```

For examples of `async` commands and output, see [Examples of Async Commands and Output](#) on page 355.

### Environment Variables

If needed, you can set the following environment variables for use with `async`. The total size for environment variables depends on your operating system and transfer session. Aspera recommends that each environment variable value should not exceed 4096 characters.

#### **ASPERA\_SCP\_COOKIE=cookie**

Set the transfer user cookie. Overridden by `--cookie`.

#### **ASPERA\_SCP\_LICENSE=license\_string**

Set a base64-encoded Aspera license string.

#### **ASPERA\_SCP\_PASS=password**

Set the transfer user password. Overridden by `-w` and `--pass`.

#### **ASPERA\_SCP\_TOKEN=token**

Set the transfer user authorization token. Overridden by `-W` and `--token`.

## Instance Options

**-A, --version**

Display the `async` version information and license information.

**--apply-local-docroot**

Prepend the local `docroot` to the local directory.

**-D[D...]**

Log at the specified debug level. Default is 0. Additional Ds return more messages.

**-h, --help**

Display help for command-line options.

**-L log\_dir, --alt-logdir=log\_dir**

Log to the specified logging directory on the local host. If the directory doesn't exist, `async` creates it for you.

**-q, --quiet**

Disable all output.

**--watchd=datastore:host:port[:domain]**

Use `asperawatchd` connected to the specified Redis for the transfer session. `datastore` can be `redis` or `scalekv`.

For example:

```
--watchd=redis:localhost:31415
```

The optional `domain` argument allows you to specify if the domain is other than the default root. For more information see [Using the Aspera Watch Service with Aspera Sync](#) on page 364.

## Session Options

**-a policy, --rate-policy=policy**

Transfer with the specified rate policy. `policy` can be `fixed`, `fair`, `high`, or `low`. Default: `fair`

**--assume-no-mods**

Assume that the directory structure has not been modified. If a directory's modification time has not changed compared to the Aspera Sync database, `async` in non-continuous mode skips scanning the directory. This option makes scanning static directory structures faster. Aspera recommends using `--exclude-dirs-older-than` instead of this option.

**-B rdbdir, --remote-db-dir=rdbdir**

Save the remote database to the specified directory. Similar to `-b`, but applies to the remote database. For further usage information, see [The Aspera Sync Database](#) on page 336. Default: `.private-asp` at the root level of the synchronized directory. The directory is created if it does not already exist. If `<async_db_dir>` is set in `aspera.conf` on the server, that setting overrides the location specified with `-B`.

**-b ldbdir, --local-db-dir=ldbdir**

Use the specified local database directory. Default: `.private-asp` at the root level of the synchronized directory.

You can save the Aspera Sync database to a different location than the default one under the `ldir` specified with `-d`. This allows you to store the database away from the main data files, which is useful for performance tuning. It is also useful when `-d ldir` is located on a network share volume that does not reliably support database locking. For more usage information, see [The Aspera Sync Database](#) on page 336.



**-C, --continuous**

Run continuous synchronization. Default: disabled.

**Usage notes:**

- Continuous mode is supported only when the file source is Windows or Linux. Continuous pulls can be run from any operating system if the source is Windows or Linux. Continuous push can be run only by Windows or Linux. Continuous bidi requires that both the Aspera Sync client and server are Windows or Linux.
- If a file is open, `async` cannot transfer the file due to sharing violations and might ignore the file if it is closed without changes. To specify the maximum number of retries after a sharing violation, use with `--sharing-retry-max`. To enable periodic scans that detect when an opened file has been closed and is ready for transfer, use with `--scan-interval`.
- If you receive an `inotify` error when attempting to run continuous synchronization, see [Troubleshooting Continuous Aspera Sync Errors](#) on page 374.

**-c cipher, --cipher=cipher**

Encrypt file data with encryption algorithm. Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.

**Cipher rules**

The encryption cipher that you are allowed to use depends on the server configuration and the version of the client and server:

- When you request a cipher key that is shorter than the cipher key that is configured on the server, the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server configuration. For example, when the server setting is AES-192 and you request AES-128, the server enforces AES-192.
- When the server requires GCM, you must use GCM (requires version 3.9.0 or newer) or the transfer fails.
- When you request GCM and the server is older than 3.8.1 or explicitly requires CFB, the transfer fails.
- When the server setting is "any", you can use any encryption cipher. The only exception is when the server is 3.8.1 or older and does not support GCM mode; in this case, you cannot request GCM mode encryption.
- When the server setting is "none", you must use "none". Transfer requests that specify an encryption cipher are refused by the server.

**Cipher Values**

Value	Description	Support
aes128 aes192 aes256	Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version (see cipher negotiation matrix).	All client and server versions.
aes128cfb aes192cfb aes256cfb	Use the CFB encryption mode.	Clients version 3.9.0 and newer, all server versions.
aes128gcm aes192gcm aes256gcm	Use the GCM encryption mode.	Clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.

Value	Description	Support
none	Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.	All client and server versions.

- NONE - Do not encrypt data in transit. Aspera strongly recommends against using this setting.
- AES128, AES192, AES256 - Use the GCM or CFB encryption mode, depending on the server configuration and version. Supported by all client and server versions.
- AES128CFB, AES192CFB, AES256CFB - Use the CFB encryption method. Supported by clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.
- AES128GCM, AES192GCM, AES256GCM - Use the GCM encryption mode. Supported by clients and servers version 3.9.0 and newer.

Default: AES128.

### Client-Server Cipher Negotiation

The following table shows which encryption mode is used depending on the server and client versions and settings:

	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	Server, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	Server, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-GCM	GCM	server refuses transfer	GCM	server refuses transfer
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX-CFB	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB
Client, v3.9.0+ AES-XXX	GCM	CFB	CFB	CFB
Client, v3.8.1 or older AES-XXX	server refuses transfer	CFB	CFB	CFB

#### **--check-sshfp=fingerprint**

Compare *fingerprint* to the remote host key hash and fail on mismatch.

#### **--clean-excluded**

Remove excluded directories from `snap.db` on both Aspera Sync endpoints to decrease the size of `snap.db`. This option applies when directories are excluded by path (`--exclude`) or by modification time (`--exclude-dirs-older-than`). If the remote endpoint is running Aspera Sync older than 3.8.0, then the option is accepted (the session does not fail) but it has no effect on either endpoint.

#### **--compression={zlib|none}**

Compress a file before transfer using the specified method. Default: none.

#### **--cookie=cookie**

Specify a user-defined identification string to report to the Aspera Management interface. *cookie* cannot contain the special characters `\r`, `\n`, or `\0`.

#### **--cooloff=sec**

Delay the start of the transfer. For example, if `--cooloff=5`, `async` waits 5 seconds before copying a file. If `--cooloff=0` transfers start immediately. The client and server use the same cooloff period. Valid range for `sec`: integers 0-60. Default: 3.

**`--cooloff-max=sec`**

Wait up to the specified time (in seconds) for a file to stop changing before skipping synchronization of the file. Using this option prevents a one-time sync from waiting on a constantly changing file. The file is skipped and reported as an error. Default: 0 (disabled).

**`--create-dir`**

Create the source directory, target directory, or both if they do not exist, rather than reporting an error and quitting. Use with `-d` and `-r`.

**`-d ldir, --local-dir=ldir`**

Synchronize the specified local directory. Use `--create-dir` to create the remote directory if it does not already exist.

**`--dedup [=mode]`**

Take the specified the action when Aspera Sync detects duplicate files on the source, even if they have different pathnames. Requires `-k` with a full checksum. Available modes are `hardlink`, `inode` (only supported for Unix-based OSes), or `copy`. Default: `hardlink`.

- `hardlink` - When two or more source files are duplicates, a hardlink is created between them on the target. This saves storage by preventing multiple copies of the same file from accumulating on the target. The files on the target have the same inode, even if the source files have different inodes. The target must be running a Unix-based operating system. File metadata preservation options (`-u` and `-j`) are not supported with this option.
- `inode` - When two or more source files have matching inodes, a hardlink is created between them on the target and the target files have matching inodes. This option is supported only between Unix-based platforms. If `--dedup=inode` is used in a continuous sync, Aspera recommends using the `scan-interval` option.
- `copy` - After a file is synchronized on the target, the synchronized file is copied to the duplicate. This saves bandwidth by not transferring duplicate files. This mode is useful when the target is Windows. File metadata preservation options (`-u` and `-j`) are supported with this option.

Without the dedup option, all duplicate files are synchronized. Duplicates might still be synchronized, rather than hardlinked or copied, if one of the duplicates has not yet been synchronized on the target.

**`--delete-delay`**

Postpone the actual deletion of files or directories until the end of the synchronization. Use this option to prevent transfer delays that can occur when deletions are slow on the destination.

**`-E file, --exclude-from=file`**

Skip paths specified in the filter `file`. For more information on setting filters, see [Include and Exclude Filtering Rules](#) on page 356.

**`--exclude="pattern"`**

Exclude paths that match `pattern`. Wildcards, such as `*` and `?`, are supported but rules containing them must be in double quotes. For example, `--exclude="*.jpg"`. For more information, see [Include and Exclude Filtering Rules](#) on page 356.

**`--exclude-dirs-older-than=mtime`**

After the initial scan, do not scan directories during subsequent synchronizations if they or their parents have a recursive modified time older than the specified value. The recursive modified time of a directory is the most recent modification time of it or any of its children (file or directory). Use this option to avoid rescanning directories that are known to be unchanged since the previous synchronization, such as a monthly archive directory structure in which only the most recent subdirectory is being modified.

*mtime* may be specified in any one of the following ways:

- As a positive number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00, for Unix and POSIX-compliant operating systems.  
**Note:** Some file servers, such as Windows NT, use a different epoch for the recursive modified time. In this case, *MTIME* should be specified as a duration relative to present or UTC timestamp.
- As a UTC timestamp with the format YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS, such as 2015-01-01T08:00:00.
- As a duration formatted as DDd HH:MM:SS or WWw DDd HHh MMm SSs. Directories whose "mtime" is older than Now minus *MTIME* are not scanned. **Input requirements:** Leading zero fields and spaces may be omitted. The leftmost fields are optional, but fields to the right of the largest unit specified are required. For example, to exclude directories older than 24 hours, you could specify 1d 0:0:0, 24:00:00, or 24h 00m 00s, but not 1d.

This option does not apply to the root directory.

**Note:** Aspera Sync stops and returns an error if the first run of `async` and the next run do not use the same `--exclude-dirs-older-than` option. If the first run specifies `--exclude-dirs-older-than`, then the next run must use this option, too. If the first run does not include `--exclude-dirs-older-than`, then the next run fails if this option is specified.

**-G *size*, --write-block-size=*size***

Use the specified block size for writing. *size* is an integer with units of K, M, or bytes. Default: 64 MB.

**-g *size*, --read-block-size=*size***

Set block size for reading. *size* is an integer with units of K, M, or bytes. Default: 64 MB.

**-H *val*, --scan-intensity=*val***

Scan at the set intensity. *val* can be `vlow`, `low`, `medium`, `high`, or `vhigh`. `vlow` minimizes system activity. `vhigh` maximizes system activity by continuously scanning files without rest. Default: `medium`.

**--host=*host***

Synchronize with the remote host that is specified by hostname or IP address. If the remote host is a cluster, enter the cluster DNS. When using `--host=`, the characters "@" and ":" are not treated specially in the argument to `-r` or `--remote-dir`. The transfer username cannot be specified as part of the remote directory filepath. Instead, it must be set with `--user=` or in the environment variable `$user` (on Windows, `%USER%`). Allowed forms are as follows:

```
--remote-dir user@host:/rdir # (old method)
--user user --remote-dir host:/rdir
--user user --host host --remote-dir /rdir
--remote-dir host:/rdir # (uses $user)
--host host --remote-dir /rdir # (uses $user)
```

The following means the same as the first three lines above:

```
-r /rdir --user=user --host=host
```

For backward compatibility, `-r A:/rdir` for any single letter *A* is still taken as a Windows path, not as `--host A -r /rdir`. To specify a one-letter host name *A*, use an explicit `--host=A`.

**-I *file*, --include-from=*file***

Scan and include paths specified in the filter *file*. For more information, see [Include and Exclude Filtering Rules](#) on page 356.

**-i *file*, --private-key-path=*file***

Authenticate with the specified SSH private key file. For information on creating a key pair, see [Creating SSH Keys](#) on page 377.

**--ignore-delete**

Do not copy removals to the peer. This option is used mostly with uni-directional syncs. In bi-directional sync, a deletion on one side is ignored but the next time `async` is run, the file is recopied from the other end. In continuous mode, the file is not recopied until either `async` is restarted or the file is changed (touched).

**--ignore-mode**

Do not synchronize file permissions of the source to the destination. This argument is useful when synchronizing from a Unix-like source to a Windows destination, which has different file permission behavior than the Unix-like source ("read only" files cannot be deleted or modified on Windows).

**--include="pattern"**

Include paths that match *pattern*. Wildcards, such as `*` and `?`, are supported but rules containing them must be in double quotes. For example, `--include="*.jpg"`. For more information on how to set include and exclude patterns, see [Include and Exclude Filtering Rules](#) on page 356.

**-j, --preserve-gid**

Preserve file owner's *gid* when synchronizing files between Unix-like operating systems. Requires that `async` is running as root. Default: disabled.

**-K direction, --direction=direction**

Transfer in the specified direction. *direction* can be `push`, `pull`, or `bidi` (bi-directional). Default: `push`.

**-k type, --checksum=type**

Calculate the specified checksum type. *type* can be `sha1`, `md5`, `sha1-sparse`, `md5-sparse`, or `none`. A value of `none` is equivalent to a size check only and `async` will not detect a change in timestamp. Default: `sha1-sparse` for local storage, `none` for object storage.

**--keep-dir-local=dir**

Move deleted files into *dir*. The directory must exist (it is not created by `--create-dir`), and must be outside the synchronization directory (or excluded from the sync using `--exclude` or `--exclude-from`), but on the same file system.

**--keep-dir-remote=dir**

Move the server's deleted files into *dir*. The directory must exist (it is not created by `--create-dir`), and must be outside the synchronization directory (or excluded from the sync using `--exclude` or `--exclude-from`), but on the same file system.

**-l rate, --target-rate=rate**

Transfer no faster than the specified maximum transfer rate. *rate* is an integer with units of G/g, M/m, K/k, or bps. Default: 10 Mbps.

**--local-force-stat**

Force the local Aspera Sync to retrieve file information even if no changes were detected by scanning or file system notifications (equivalent to the behavior of Aspera Sync versions 3.8.1 and older). This option incurs a performance cost at the expense of immediately detecting file changes. See also `--remote-force-stat`.

**--local-fs-threads=number**

Use up to the specified number of threads to do file system operations on the local computer. Default: 1. This option is particularly useful when the local Sync directory is in cloud storage or mounted storage (NFS) where file system operations are slow. To set multiple threads for file system operations on the remote computer, use `--remote-fs-threads`.

**--local-mount-signature=signature file**

Verify that the local file system is mounted by the existence of this file. This option increases the time required to synchronize deletes. See also `--remote-mount-signature`.

**-m *rate*, --min-rate=*rate***

Attempt to transfer no slower than the specified minimum transfer rate. *rate* is an integer with units of G/g, M/m, K/k, or bps. Default: 200 Kbps.

**-N *pair*, --name=*pair***

Assign a name for the synchronization session. The value can contain only ASCII alphanumeric, hyphen, and underscore characters. This value is stored in the session cookie and can be used in IBM Aspera Console to identify the transfer session.

**Note:** -N must precede all session options.

**-n *action*, --symbolic-links=*action***

Handle symbolic links with the specified method, as allowed by the server. For more information on symbolic link handling, see [Symbolic Link Handling](#) on page 214.

*action* can be:

`copy` - create or update the link at the destination (default). Not valid for Windows source or destination.

`skip` - ignore the link altogether.

`follow` - treat the link as if it were the file or directory it points to, so that at the destination, what was a link is now a copy of the file or directory. Functions as `skip` if source is Windows.

**--no-preserve-root-attrs**

Disable the preservation of attributes on the Aspera Sync root.

**--no-scan**

Never scan. Use this option in a continuous `async` session to synchronize only new files (files that are added to the directory after the start of the `async` session) but not existing files. With `--no-scan`, Aspera Sync relies entirely on file system notifications to detect changes. As a result, if a directory is renamed after the `async` session starts, then the directory name is synchronized but the contents are not (because Aspera Sync does not recognize that the files were "moved" to the renamed directory). This option cannot be used with `--scan-interval` or one-time `async` sessions.

**-O *port*, --udp-port=*port***

Use the specified UDP port for FASP data transfer. Default: 33001.

**-o *policy*, --overwrite=*policy***

Overwrite files according to the specified policy, which can be `always`, `older`, or `conflict`. Use with `-K push` and `pull`. Default: `always` for `-K push` and `pull`; `conflict` for `-K bidi`.

**Note:** When syncing with object storage, only file size (`--checksum=none`) can be used to compare files. Thus, using `--overwrite=always` only overwrites files whose sizes have changed. If the content of a local file is different from a file with the same name in object storage but the files are the same size, the file in object storage is not overwritten. To overwrite files in this case, use `--overwrite=older`.

`--overwrite=older` is only accurate if the user also specifies `--preserve-time` (preserve timestamps).

To resolve `conflict` and `error` situations in a uni-directional sync, "touch" the problem files on the source and run `async` with `--overwrite=always`. This clears all `conflict` and `error` states as the problem files are synchronized.

**-P *port*, --tcp-port=*port***

Use the specified TCP port for SSH. *port* must be a valid numeric IP port. Default: 22.

**--pending-max=N**

Allow the maximum number of files that are pending transfer to be no more than the specified number. This option acts as a buffer. Default: 2000.

**--preserve-access-time**

Preserve file access time from the source to the destination. For IBM Spectrum Scale clusters, use to preserve the expiration time of immutable files. Default: disabled.

**--preserve-acls={native|metafile|none}**

Preserve Access Control Lists (ACL) data for macOS, Windows, and AIX files. To preserve ACL data for other operating systems, use `--preserve-xattrs`. See also `--remote-preserve-acls`.

- `native` - Preserve attributes using the native capabilities of the file system. This mode is only supported for Windows, macOS, and AIX. If the destination and source do not support the same native ACL format, `async` reports and error and exits.
- `metafile` - Preserve file attributes in a separate file, named `filename.aspera-meta`. For example, attributes for `readme.txt` are preserved in a second file named `readme.txt.aspera-meta`. These metafiles are platform independent and can be copied between hosts without loss of information. This mode is supported on all file systems.
- `none` - (Default) Do not preserve attributes. This mode is supported on all file systems.

**Important Usage Information:**

- This feature is only meaningful if both hosts are in a common security domain. If a SID (security ID) in a source file does not exist at a destination, the synchronization proceeds but no ACL data is saved and the log records that the ACL could not be applied.
- Both `--preserve-acls` and `--remote-preserve-acls` must be specified in order for the target side of a pull to apply the ACLs.
- ACLs are not synchronized when only the ACL is modified, or when only the ACL and filename are modified. ACLs are not preserved for directories.
- On Windows, the ACLs that are created for files that are transferred into user directories might restrict file access to specific users. Ensure that the ACLs on the transfer-cache directory (`destination_path/session_name`) are generic enough to allow access to all users who require it. For more information about the transfer-cache directory, see [The Aspera Sync Database](#) on page 336.

**--preserve-creation-time**

Preserve file creation time from the source to the destination. Valid only on Windows computers. Default: disabled.

**--preserve-modification-time**

Preserve file modification time from the source to the destination. Default: disabled.

**--preserve-time**

Preserve file timestamps. This is equivalent to `--preserve-modification-time` for Unix-based operating systems, and to `--preserve-modification-time --preserve-creation-time` on Windows. Default: disabled. Same as `-t`.

**--preserve-xattrs={native|metafile|none}**

Preserve extended file attributes data (xattr). See also `--remote-preserve-xattrs`.

- `native` - Preserve attributes using the native capabilities of the file system. This mode is supported only on macOS and Linux. If the destination and source do not support the same native xattr format, `async` reports and error and exits. If the Linux user is not root, some attributes such as system group might not be preserved.
- `metafile` - Preserve file attributes in a separate file, named `filename.aspera-meta`. For example, attributes for `readme.txt` are preserved in a second file named

readme.txt.aspera-meta. These metafiles are platform independent and can be copied between hosts without loss of information. This mode is supported on all file systems.

- none - (Default) Do not preserve attributes. This mode is supported on all file systems.

#### Important Usage Information:

- Xattr are not preserved for directories.
- If Aspera Sync is run by a regular user, only user-level attributes are preserved. If run as superuser, all attributes are preserved.
- Use `--preserve-xattrs=native` to preserve IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs between clusters. For more information, see [Preserving IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs of Transferred Files](#) on page 506.

#### `--proxy proxy_url`

Synchronize using the specified IBM Aspera Proxy address. The Proxy URL is specified with the following syntax:

```
dnat[s]://proxy_username:proxy_password@proxy_ip_address[:port]
```

The default port for DNAT is 9091, and for DNATS is 9092. The Proxy password must be specified or the synchronization fails to connect to the Proxy server.

#### `-R rem_log_dir,--remote-logdir=rem_log_dir`

Use the specified logging directory on the remote host. The directory is created if it does not already exist. If `<async_log_dir>` is set in `aspera.conf` on the server, `async` initially logs to `rem_log_dir` but is then redirected to the directory specified for `<async_log_dir>`.

**Note:** `-R` cannot be used if the transfer user is restricted to `aspsshell`.

#### `-r rdir,--remote-dir=rdir`

Synchronize the specified directory on the remote host. `rdir` is `[[user@]host:]path`. If the target is the remote directory, you can use `--create-dir` to create the remote directory if it does not already exist.



**CAUTION:** If the source and target directories are both on the local host, do not specify a target directory that is inside your source directory.

#### `--remote-force-stat`

Force the remote Aspera Sync to retrieve file information even if no changes were detected by scanning or file system notifications (equivalent to the behavior of Aspera Sync versions 3.8.1 and older). This option incurs a performance cost at the expense of immediately detecting file changes. See also `--local-force-stat`.

#### `--remote-fs-threads=number`

Use up to the specified number of threads to do file system operations on the remote computer. Default: 1. This option is particularly useful when the remote Sync directory is in cloud storage or mounted storage (NFS) where file system operations are slow. To set multiple threads for file system operations on the local computer, use `--local-fs-threads`.

#### `--remote-mount-signature=signature file`

Verify that the remote file system is mounted by the existence of this file. This option increases the time required to synchronize deletes.

#### `--remote-preserve-acls={native|metafile|none}`

Like `--preserve-acls` but used when ACLs are stored in a different format on the remote computer. Defaults to the value of `--preserve-acls`.

**Note:** Both `--preserve-acls` and `--remote-preserve-acls` must be specified in order for the target side of the pull to apply the ACLs.

#### `--remote-preserve-xattrs={native|metafile|none}`



Like `--preserve-xattrs` but used attributes are stored in a different format on the remote computer. Defaults to the value of `--preserve-xattrs`.

**`--remote-scan-interval=duration`**

Set the scanning interval of the remote computer. See also `--scan-interval`.

**`--remote-scan-threads=N`**

Use the specified number of directory scanning threads on the remote computer. More threads decrease the time it takes for `async` to scan the directory after the initial synchronization, and increase the number of pending files. Default: 1. To specify the number of scanning threads on the local computer, see `--scan-threads`.

**`--remove-after-transfer`**

Remove source files after they are successfully synchronized.

**`--scan-dir-rename`**

Enable the detection of renamed directories and files compared to the previous scan, based on matching inodes. Enable the detection of renamed directories and files compared to the previous scan, based on matching inodes. When a new directory is found on the source and its inode matches that of a previously found directory, it is considered a "rename" and the target directory is renamed accordingly. The source directory is scanned for content changes, and the target directory is updated accordingly.

**Usage note:**

- This option can be used only on file systems with persistent inodes, and does not work if inodes are volatile, as is the case with many network-mounted file systems.

**`--scan-file-rename`**

Enable the detection of renamed files compared to the previous scan, based on matching inodes. If a new file is found and its inode and last-modified time matches that of a previously found file that does not have multiple hardlinks, it is considered a "rename" and the remote file is renamed accordingly.

**Usage note:**

- This option can be used only on file systems with persistent inodes, and does not work if inodes are volatile, as is the case with many network-mounted file systems.
- If `--scan-file-rename` is used without `--scan-dir-rename`, a directory rename causes `async` to create a new directory and rename its files individually.

**`--scan-interval=duration`**

Enable periodic scans during a continuous Aspera Sync (a session run with the `-C` option) on the local host. *duration* is the interval between periodic scans and can be specified as DDd HH:MM:SS.mmm or WWw DDd HHh MMm SSs XXms XXus. Leading zero fields can be omitted. Spaces can be omitted. A plain number XX is interpreted as SSs (seconds).

**`--scan-threads=N`**

Use the specified number of directory scanning threads on the local computer. More threads decrease the time it takes for `async` to scan the directory after the initial synchronization, and increase the number of pending files. Default: 1. To specify the number of scanning threads on the remote computer, see `--remote-scan-threads`.

**`--sharing-retry-max=N`**

Retry synchronizations up to the specified maximum number after a sharing violation. The interval between retries is the number of seconds specified by `--cooloff`. Default: 3.

**`--symbolic-links=action`**

See `-n`.

**`-t`**

Preserve file timestamps. Same as `--preserve-time`.

**`--tags=string`**

User-defined metadata tags in JSON format that can be used in transfer session reporting and searches.

**`--tags64=string`**

User-defined metadata tags in JSON format and base64-encoded that can be used in transfer session reporting and searches.

**`--transfer-threads=N[:size]`**

Use the specified number of dedicated transfer threads and optionally specify the file size at which files are assigned groups of threads. The number of threads should not exceed the number of available CPU cores (the lower value of the client and server computers). If no size is specified, infinity is used as an upper bound.

For example, to use two transfer threads to transfer files smaller than or equal to 128 bytes and six transfer threads for all other files (those larger than 128 bytes), use the following options:

```
--transfer-threads=2:128 --transfer-threads=6
```

**`-u, --preserve-uid`**

Preserve the file owner's *uid* when synchronizing files between Unix-like operating systems. `async` must be run as root to use this option. Default: disabled.

**`--user=user`**

Authenticate the transfer with the specified username. With this option, the characters "@" and ":" are not treated specially in the argument to `-r` or `--remote-dir`.

**`-W token_string, --token=token_string`**

Use the specified authorization token. The token type (`sync-push`, `sync-pull`, or `sync-bidi`) must match the direction (`push`, `pull`, or `bidi`) of the requested transfer. The token path must match the remote directory of the requested transfer. If an invalid token is provided, the requested transfer will be denied.

**`-w pass, --pass=pass`**

Authenticate the transfer with the specified password.

**`--write-uid=uid`**

**`--write-gid=gid`**

Write files as the user *uid* or the group *gid*. *uid* and *gid* can be numeric, or by name. If by name, the name is looked up on the host performing the write. Failure to set the *uid* or *gid* is logged, but is not an error. The *uid* or *gid* is set after `ascp` completes and before moving the file from the staging directory to the final location.

`--write-uid` conflicts with `--preserve-uid`, and `--write-gid` conflicts with `--preserve-gid`.

**`-X size, --remsg-size=size`**

Use the specified *size* (in bytes) for a retransmission request. Maximum: 1440.

**`-x, --reset`**

Clear the Aspera Sync database and rescan the synchronized directories and files to create a fresh database. Default: off.

**`-Z mtu, --datagram-size=mtu`**

Use the specified datagram size. Value is an integer. Default: detected-path MTU.

## Examples of Async Commands and Output

Examples of common Aspera Sync use cases and a description of `async` output.

### Async Command Examples

#### 1. Continuous synchronization of a daily archive of large files on a Windows computer to Linux computer, preserving Windows ACLs, run as an `async` pull on the Linux computer:

```
$ async -L /sync/logs -N backup -d /sync/backup -r
alligator@everglades.company.com:"C:\data\" -i /.ssh/lion_private_key
-K pull --remote-scan-interval=4h --preserve-acls=metafile --remote-
preserve-acls=metafile -C --exclude-dirs-older-than=1w0d0h0m0s
```

Details:

- Logs are stored on the Linux computer in the specified location.
- The user, lion, authenticates with an SSH key using the `-i` option
- Because the files in the backup are large, `remote-scan-interval` is used to scan the Windows computer every 4 hours, which forces an additional scan in case any notifications are missed.
- In order to preserve Windows ACLs in the backup, both `preserve-acls=metafile` and `remote-preserve-acls=metafile` must be specified.
- Since the archive directory creates a new directory for each day, use `exclude-dirs-older-than=1w0d0h0m0s` to avoid scanning directories that are no longer changing (older than a week).

#### 2. High performance push synchronization of many (10,000s) of small files (<10 KB) between Windows computers:

```
> async -L c:/logs:200 -q -N small-files -c none --pending-max=10000 --
preserve-acls=native --transfer-threads=4 -R c:/logs:200 -d c:/data/ -r
bobcat@192.168.4.24:"C:\data\" -K push -l 500m
```

Details:

- Specifying the logging locations (`-L` and `-R`) is optional. Adding `:200` to the end of the log directory value allows the logs to reach 200 MB before being rotated.
- If the connection is secure, disabling encryption using `-c none` may boost performance.
- Increase the number of pending files from the default of 2000 using `--pending-max=10000`.
- The `--preserve-acls=native` option preserves Windows ACLs.
- Using more FASP threads to move the data can improve performance, set with `--transfer-threads=4`. The number of threads should not exceed the number of CPU cores (the lower value of the client and server computers).
- The user must enter the password at the prompt because it is not provided in the command. Aspera recommends using SSH keys for authentication, but this is not required.

#### 3. Non-continuous bidirectional synchronization of directories containing a mix of large and small files in which small files are synchronized using one thread and large files use another, run on a Linux computer to a macOS computer:

```
$ async -L /sync/logs -q -N sync-2017-01-01 -d /images --
user=gazelle@company.com --host=10.4.25.10 -r Library/data/images
-i /lion/.ssh/lion_private_key -R Library/sync/logs --transfer-
threads=2:100000 -K bidi
```

Details:

- Logs are saved in the specified locations on both computers.
- The user authenticates with an SSH key using the `-i` option.
- The user and host are specified as separate options, rather than as part of the destination folder, so that the username with an `@` can be used (`@` is reserved in an `-r` argument for specifying the host).

- The async session uses two threads, one for files larger than 100 KB and one for files less than or equal to 100 KB, specified with the `--transfer-threads` option.

#### 4. Non-continuous push synchronization through reverse IBM Aspera Proxy:

```
$ async -N pushproxy -d /images -r lion@10.0.0.1:/data/images --
proxy=dnats://gazelle:password@10.0.0.4 -K push
```

Details:

- The transfer username on the destination (10.0.0.1) is lion, the Proxy IP address is 10.0.0.4, and the Proxy username is gazelle.
- The Proxy URL option must include the Proxy user's password.

#### Async Output Example

When `async` is run in interactive mode, the status of each file in the synchronized directory is displayed in a list similar to the following:

```
/file1          SYNCHRONIZED
/file2          SYNCHRONIZED (exs)
/file3          SYNCHRONIZED (skp)
/file4          SYNCHRONIZED (del)
```

The status may be one of the following options:

- SYNCHRONIZED: file transferred
- SYNCHRONIZED (skp): file skipped
- SYNCHRONIZED (del): file deleted
- SYNCHRONIZED (ddp): dedup (duplicate files present)
- SYNCHRONIZED (exs): file exists
- SYNCHRONIZED (mov): file has changed (renamed, moved, or different attributes)

### Include and Exclude Filtering Rules

Filtering rules can be specified in the `async` command line or in the client or server configuration (`aspera.conf`) to include or exclude files and directories from Aspera Sync scanning and transfer. Rules in `aspera.conf` are applied before rules specified in the command line.

#### Command Line Syntax

To specify an include or exclude rule on the command line, use:

```
--exclude="RULE"
--include="RULE"
```

Where:

- *RULE* is a file or directory name, or a set of names expressed with UNIX *glob* patterns.
- Surround patterns that contain wildcards with double quotes to prevent filter patterns from being interpreted by the command shell. Patterns that do not contain wildcards can also be in double quotes.

To read include and exclude rules from a file, use:

```
--exclude-from=FILE
--include-from=FILE
```

Where:

- *FILE* is a file that contains a set of file and directory names, or names expressed with UNIX *glob* patterns.

## Basic usage

The filtering options can be intermixed and have the following behavior:

- Filtering rules are applied in the order they appear on the command line. If filtering rules are configured in `aspera.conf`, they are applied before the rules on the command line.
- Filtering is a process of exclusion, and include rules override exclude rules that follow them. Include rules cannot add back files that are excluded by a preceding exclude rule.
- Unlike `Ascp`, include rules imply exclude all file and directory names that do not match.
- Filtering operates only on the set of files and directories in the transfer list. An include rule cannot add files or directories that are not already part of the transfer list.
- Directories and files are visited in strict depth order.

**Note:** When a directory is excluded, directories and files in it are also excluded and are not compared to any following rules. For example, with the command-line options `--exclude="/images/" --include="/images/icons/"`, the directory `/images/icons/` is not included or considered because `/images/` was already excluded.

- In filtering rules, `"\"` is exclusively a quoting operator and `/"` is the only path separator recognized.
- Case always matters, even when the scanned file system does not enforce such a distinction. For example, on Windows FAT or NTFS file systems and macOS HPFS+, a file system search for "DEBUG" returns files "Debug" and "debug". In contrast, `async` filter rules use exact comparison. To match both "Debug" and "debug" in a `async` filter, use `"[Dd]ebug"`.

Example	Expected Behavior
<code>--include="rule1" --include="rule2"</code>	Transfer all files and directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> or <i>rule2</i> . All others are excluded.
<code>--include="rule1" --exclude="rule2"</code>	Transfer all files and directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> , as well as all other files and directories except those with names that match <i>rule2</i> .
<code>--exclude="rule1" --include="rule2"</code>	Do not transfer files or directories with names that match <i>rule1</i> ; of the rest, transfer only those with names that match <i>rule2</i> .
<code>--exclude-from=FILE1 --include-from=FILE2</code>	Read filter specifications from FILE1 and FILE2. Files and directories with names that match rules in FILE1 are excluded by default, unless the rule specifies otherwise. Files and directories with names that match rules in FILE2 are included by default, unless the rule specifies otherwise.

## Sync Handling New and Renamed Files

*Excluded* new files are invisible to `async`. Files that have been synchronized continue to be tracked even when they have, or are changed to, a name that is now excluded. For example, when run with `--exclude FILE3`:

Local event	Effect on peer (previously synchronized)	Clean start
<code>mv FILE4 FILE3</code>	<code>mv FILE4 FILE3</code>	<code>rm FILE4</code>
<code>rm FILE3</code>	<code>rm FILE3</code>	(ignored)
<code>cp FILE4 FILE3</code>	<code>cp FILE4 FILE3</code>	(ignored)
<code>mv FILE3 FILE4</code>	<code>mv FILE3 FILE4</code>	new file FILE4

## Specifying Rules in a File

Rules can be specified in a text file, with each rule on a separate line.

- Rules in the file are applied to the file set as if from a series of `--include A --exclude B` options.
- Leading white spaces, blank lines and comment lines (`# comment`) are ignored.
- Rules default to include for `--include-from` or exclude for `--exclude-from` rules.
  - To force include in an `--exclude-from` file, start a line with `+` (*plus* and a *space*). For example, `+ image*` is equivalent to `--include="image"`.
  - To force exclude in an `--include-from` file, start a line with `-` (*minus* and a *space*). For example, `- image*` is equivalent to `--exclude="image"`.
- A file or directory name that does not match any rule is still tracked, as if by a final `"+ *` and `"+ *.*"`.

**Note:** To reliably exclude all unmatched files, add two final rules: `"- *` and `"- *.*"`.

- Rules in files can point to other files:
  - To name a file to read for more rules, enter `. FILE (dot-space-filepath)`. This syntax does not set a default filter action (include or exclude). In this case, each line in the rule file must specify if it is an include or exclude rule.
  - Lines that start with `.+ (dot plus and space)`, such as `.+ F`, are equivalent to `--include-from=F`.
  - Lines that start with `.- (dot minus and space)`, such as `.- G`, are equivalent to `--exclude-from=G`.

## Specifying Rules in `aspera.conf`

Rules can be specified in `aspera.conf` and applied to sessions run by a specific user or all users, as they are for `ascp` sessions. Rules in `aspera.conf` are applied first, then any command line filters are applied.



**CAUTION:** Rules that are set in `aspera.conf` apply to both `ascp` and `async` sessions. If you do not want `async` filtering rules to apply to `ascp` sessions, set the rules for a specific user and use that user for `async` sessions. If you notice your `async` sessions are being filtered in unexpected ways, search `aspera.conf` for `<filters>` to determine what rules have been configured. You can find `aspera.conf` in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

### Rule Syntax

- To specify an inclusion, start the filter pattern with `'+' (+ and a whitespace, such as + *.jpg)`.
- To specify an exclusion, start the filter pattern with `'-' (- and a whitespace, such as - *.png)`.

### Set Filters in `aspera.conf`

To set filters for a specific user, run the following `asconfigurator` command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;file_filters,|filter1[|filter2]"
```

To set filters for all users, run the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_filters,|filter1[|filter2]"
```

The separator `"|"` is not required if only one filter is set.

## Rule Patterns

Rules use standard globbing syntax and globbing extensions.

### Standard Globbing Syntax

/	The only recognized path separator.
---	-------------------------------------

\	Quotes any character literally, including itself. \ is exclusively a quoting operator, not a path separator.
*	Matches zero or more characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
?	Matches any single character, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
[ ... ]	Matches exactly one of a set of characters, except "/" or the . in "/. ".
[ ^... ]	When ^ is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ !... ]	When ! is the first character, matches exactly one character <i>not</i> in the set.
[ x-x ]	Matches exactly one of a range of characters.
[ :xxxxx: ]	For details about this type of wildcard, see any POSIX-standard guide to globbing.

### Examples of Standard Globbing

Wildcard	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/	abc/def/xyz	abc/def/xyz	abc/def
\	abc\?	abc?	abc\? abc/D abcD
*	abc*f	abcdef abc.f	abc/f abcefg
?	abc??	abcde abc.z	abcdef abc/d abc/.
[ ... ]	[abc]def	edef cdef	abcdef ade
[ ^... ]	[^abc]def	zdef .def 2def	bdef /def /.def
[ !... ]	[!abc]def	zdef .def 2def	cdef /def /.def
[ :xxxxx: ]	[[:lower:]]def	cdef ydef	Adef 2def .def

### Globbing Extensions

Globbing Extensions	Description
no / or * at end of rule	Matches only files.
/ at end of rule	Matches only directories.
* or /** at end of rule	Matches both directories and files.
/**	Like * except that it also matches the / character.
/ at start of rule	Matches from the system's root directory (absolute path) only; that is, the entire string must be matched. Note: The / means the system's root, not the docroot, and not from the top level specified for the transfer set.

### Examples of Globbing Extensions

Globbing Extensions	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/**	abc/**/def	abc/def abc/x/def abc/.wxy/def abc/wxy/tuv/def	abc/xyz/def/ zabc/wxy/def
* at end of rule	abc*	abc/file abc/dir	
/** at end of rule	abc/**	abc/.file abc/dir abc/wxy/.dir abc/wxy/tuv/file	abc/

Globbing Extensions	Example	Matches	Does Not Match
/ at end of rule	abc/*/	abc/dir	abc/file
no / at end of rule	file	file	dir
/ at start of rule	/abc/def	/abc/def	.../abc/def

## Filtering Examples

Filtering examples that demonstrate the effects of adding more filter rules to the command and show how to format a filter rule file.

**Note:** You can synchronize Windows, Linux, macOS, and other Unix-based endpoints and servers, but must take care with path separators. The path separator "/" is supported on Windows and other platforms. The path separator "\" is platform-agnostic *only* for the options -d/r/L/R/B/b and --keep-dir-local/remote. In Aspera Sync filtering rules, however, "\" is exclusively a quoting operator and "/" is the only path separator recognized.

1. Include files under top-level directories Raw and Jpg. Exclude all others.

```
# async ... --include='/Raw/**' --include='/Jpg/**' --exclude='*' \
--exclude='.*' ...
```

2. Same as Example 1, except also include directories starting with ".", at any level.

```
# async ... --include='./' --include='/Raw/**' --include='/Jpg/**' \
--exclude='*' --exclude='.*' ...
```

3. Same as Example 2, except exclude regular files ending in "~" or ".thm".

```
# async ... --include='./' --exclude='.*~' --exclude='*~' \
--exclude='*.thm' --exclude='*.thm' --include='/Raw/**' \
--include='/Jpg/**' --exclude='*' --exclude='.*' ...
```

4. Same as Example 3, except include only certain directories under Jpg.

```
# async ... --exclude='.*~' --exclude='*~' --exclude='*.thm' \
--exclude='*.thm' --include='./' --include '/Raw/**' \
--include='/Jpg/Big/**' --include='/Jpg/Med/**' \
--exclude='*' --exclude='.*' ...
```

The long sequence in Example 4 can also be represented as a file:

```
# async ... --exclude-from=- <<EOF
# no regular files with ~ suffix, dot or otherwise:
  .*~
  *~
# similarly for ".thm" suffix files:
  *.thm
  *.thm
# include directories starting with "."
+ ./
# include everything else found under top-level Raw :
+ /Raw/**
# and under Big/ and Med/ in Jpg:
+ /Jpg/Big/**
+ /Jpg/Med/**
# but nothing else:
*
.*
EOF
```



## Bidirectional Example

Bidirectional synchronization syntax is similar to push or pull `async` sessions, as show in the following example.

**Note:** You can synchronize Windows, Linux, macOS, and other Unix-based endpoints and servers, but must take care with path separators. The path separator "/" is supported on Windows and other platforms. The path separator "\" is platform-agnostic *only* for the options `-d/r/L/R/B/b` and `--keep-dir-local/remote`. In Aspera Sync filtering rules, however, "\" is exclusively a quoting operator and "/" is the only path separator recognized.

### Example Options:

- Pair name = "asyncTwoWay"
- Local directory is /fio/S
- Remote directory and login is admin@192.168.200.218:d:/mnt/fio/S (Windows computer)
- Password is v00d00
- Target rate = 100,000 Kbps or 100 Mbps
- Transfer policy = fair
- Read-block size = 1048576 or 1MB
- Write-block size = 1048576 or 1MB
- Continuous transfer
- Bidirectional transfer

### Example Command:

```
$ async -N asyncTwoWay -d /fio/S -r admin@192.168.200.218:d:/mnt/fio/S -w
v00d00 -l 100M -a fair -g 1M -G 1M -C -K BIDI
```

### Example Output:

```
/ SYNCHRONIZED
/a SYNCHRONIZED
/b SYNCHRONIZED
/c SYNCHRONIZED
/DIR1 SYNCHRONIZED
/A1 SYNCHRONIZED
/DIR2 SYNCHRONIZED
/A2 SYNCHRONIZED
/REMOTE_DIR1 SYNCHRONIZED
/REMOTE_DIR2 SYNCHRONIZED
/REMOTE_DIR1 SYNCHRONIZED
SYNCHRONIZED (del)
/DIR1/a SYNCHRONIZED
/DIR1/b SYNCHRONIZED
/DIR1/c SYNCHRONIZED
[idle ] Found/synchronized/Pending/Error/Conflict=9/9/0/0/0
```

## Synchronizing with AWS S3 Storage

Aspera Sync can be used to synchronize files when the source or destination is AWS S3 Cloud Object Storage. Each endpoint (HST Server) of the `async` session must be configured to support Aspera Sync and the `async` must include certain file system-related options.

### Capabilities:

- Non-continuous PUSH, PULL, and BIDI synchronization between a local disk and AWS S3, as well as between S3 buckets.
- Continuous PUSH mode from local disk to S3 is fully supported.
- Continuous PULL and BIDI when S3 is the content source; requires the `--scan-interval` option.

**Requirements:**

- An IBM Aspera On Demand instance in AWS S3, or HST Server for Linux or Windows version 3.7.3 or later installed on a virtual machine instance in AWS with Trapd enabled. For instructions on setting up a HST Server in the cloud, see the [High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide for Linux: Enabling AWS EC2/AWS S3 Using the Command Line](#).
- The S3 instance must have an On Demand entitlement and a Aspera Sync-enabled license.
- The `async` binary must be installed on both the source and destination server.
- Configure the S3 instance, or both S3 endpoints if you are running an S3-to-S3 synchronization, as described in the following steps.

1. SSH into your instance as root by running the following command.

The command is for Linux but also works for Mac. Windows users must use an SSH tool, such as PuTTY.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
```

2. Elevate to root privileges by running the following command:

```
# su -
```

3. Set an S3 docroot for the system account user that will be used to run `async`.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,s3://s3.amazonaws.com/bucketname"
```

If you are not using IAM roles, then you must also specify the S3 credentials in your docroot:

```
s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket
```

By setting the docroot for the system user, the account becomes an Aspera transfer user.

4. Set database and log directories for `async`.

These directories must be located in `/mnt/ephemeral/data`. The `/mnt/ephemeral/` directory is no-cost ephemeral storage that is associated with your instance. Aspera recommends creating a directory to use that is named for the transfer user, and giving the transfer user write access. For example, if the transfer user is `ec2_user`, run the following commands to create the directory `/mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user`, create the database and log subdirectories, give `ec2_user` write access, and set the directories as the location for the database and logs:

```
# mkdir /mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user
# mkdir /mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user/db
# mkdir /mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user/log
# chown -R ec2_user /mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;async_db_dir,/mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user/db"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;async_log_dir,/mnt/ephemeral/data/ec2_user/log"
```

**Examples of Sync to or from S3**

**Note:** If the client is on the cloud storage host, the following options are required:

- The log directory and local database directory must be specified by using the `-L` and `-b` options.
- The `--apply-local-docroot` option must be used in order to transfer content into the object storage, rather than the local disk.

The following examples include the optional arguments `--transfer-threads`, `--local-fs-threads`, and `--remote-fs-threads`, which improve performance when one or both endpoints are in cloud storage.

**One-time push from local disk to S3:**

A one-time (non-continuous) push that is run from a local disk to an S3 bucket using SSH keys (for more information on using SSH keys, see [Creating SSH Keys](#) on page 377), where `ec2_user` is the transfer user:

```
# async -N sync-to-s3 -d /data/data-2017-01 -r ec2_user@192.0.4.24:/data
-i /bobcat/.ssh/private_key -K push -B /mnt/ephemeral/data/db --transfer-
threads=8 --remote-fs-threads=16
```

### One-time bidi from S3 to local disk:

A one-time bidirectional sync that is run from the S3 client to a local disk:

```
# async -L /mnt/ephemeral/data/log --apply-local-docroot -N bidi_london -d /
data -r bear@192.0.12.442:/data -K bidi -b /mnt/ephemeral/data/db -B /async/
log --transfer-threads=8 --local-fs-threads=16
```

### One-time pull from S3 to S3:

A one-time pull by `ec2_user` from `s3host` to `/data/2017` in the client S3 storage:

```
# async -L /mnt/ephemeral/data/log --apply-local-docroot -N s3sync -d /
data/2017 -r ec2_user@s3host:/data/2017-01 -K pull -b /tmp --transfer-
threads=8 --local-fs-threads=16 --remote-fs-threads=16
```

## Writing Custom Metadata for Objects in Object Storage

Files that are uploaded to metadata-compatible storage (S3, Google Cloud, and Azure) can have custom metadata written with them by using the `--tags` or `--tags64` option. The argument is a JSON payload that specifies the metadata and that is base64 encoded if it is used as an argument for `--tags64`.

### Metadata Behavior

- All objects that are uploaded in a session have the same metadata.
- If an upload resumes, the metadata of the original transfer is used.
- Multi-session transfers must specify the same metadata.
- Metadata are not retrieved when downloading objects; use the REST API associated with the storage.
- Transfers to object storages that do not support metadata (such as HDFS and Azure Files) fail if metadata is specified.

### Specifying Metadata in JSON

The JSON payload has the general syntax of key-value pairs in a "cloud-metadata" section:

```
{
  "aspera": {
    "cloud-metadata": [
      {"key1": "value1"},
      {"key2": "value2"},
      ...
    ]
  }
}
```

Restrictions on key-value pairs:

- `key` cannot be `ctime`, `mtime`, or `atime`. These keys are reserved and the transfer fails if they are used.
- `key` might be case-sensitive, depending on the destination storage type.
- The key-value pair must be less than 1024 characters.

### Sample Async Session with Metadata

One-time push:

```
# async -L /async_log -N S3_sync -i /bear/.ssh/id_rsa --tags='{"aspera":
{"cloud-metadata":[{"location":"skye"}]}' -K push -B /mnt/ephemeral/data/db
-d /clips -r ec2_user@192.0.04.24:/project
```

## Aspera Sync with Basic Token Authorization

Aspera nodes that require access key authentication, such as IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service (AoCts), can be used as synchronization endpoints by configuring the `async` database on the node and authenticating the `async` session with a basic token. A basic token requires a docroot on the server and allows access to all files in the docroot.

1. On the client, set a location for the Aspera Sync snapshot database by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;async_db_dir,filepath"
```

2. On the server, set a docroot for the transfer user.

Log in or SSH into the server and run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,filepath"
```

3. Create an Aspera access key.

For AoCts, see <https://ibm.ibmaspera.com/helpcenter/transfer-service/managing-access-keys/transfer-service-access-keys>.

4. Create the basic token from the access key ID and secret.

Run the following command to encode the access key ID and secret in base64.

```
# echo -n access_key_id:secret | base64
```

The basic token looks similar to the following:

```
ZG1EZXXVGTGNwRz1JWWRzdnhqMFNDcTRtT29oTkpUS3ZwNVEyblJXakRnSUE6YXNwZXJh
```

If the basic token breaks across lines in the output, rerun the command using the `-w0` option to remove the line break. For example:

```
# echo -n diDeuFLcpG9IYdsvxj0SCq4mOohNJTKvp5Q2nRWjDgIA:aspera | base64 -w0
```

5. Run a synchronization, using the basic token.

Run `async` with the `-W` option or set the `ASPERA_SCP_TOKEN` environment variable. For example,

```
# async -N sync -d /images -r lion@10.0.0.1:/data/images -K push -W "Basic
ZG1EZXXVGTGNwRz1JWWRzdnhqMFNDcTRtT29oTkpUS3ZwNVEyblJXakRnSUE6YXNwZXJh"
```

## Using the Aspera Watch Service with Aspera Sync

Aspera Sync can use `asperawatchd` for more efficient file system change detection, particularly for file systems with many files.

### Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches

The Aspera Watch Service (`asperawatchd`) is a file system change detection and snapshot service that is optimized for speed, scale, and distributed sources. On file systems that have file system notifications, changes in source file systems (new files and directories, deleted items, and renames) are detected immediately, eliminating the need to scan the file system. On file systems without file notifications, such as object storage, Solaris, AIX, and Isilon, file system scans are automatically triggered.

The Aspera Watch Service can be used on any local or shared (CIFS, NFS) host. However, when watching mounted shared storage and the change originates from a remote server, the Watch Service does not receive file notifications. In such cases, set `<scan_period>` in `aspera.conf` to frequent scans, such as 1 minute. See the following steps for instructions.

When used in conjunction with `ascp` commands, the Aspera Watch Service enables fast detection and transfer of new and deleted items. For more information on using watches with `ascp`, see [Transferring and Deleting Files with the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 325.

To start the Aspera Watch Service and subscribe to (create) a watch:

1. Configure a docroot or restriction for the user.

Docroots and path restrictions limit the area of a file system or object storage to which the user has access. Users can create Watch Folders and Watch services on files or objects only within their docroot or restriction.

**Note:** Users can have a docroot or restriction, but not both or Watch Folder creation fails.

Docroots can be set up in the GUI or command line. In the GUI, click **Configuration > Users > *username* > Docroot** and set the permitted path as the value for **Absolute Path**. To set up a docroot from the command line, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Restrictions must be set from the command line:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|path"
```

The restriction path format depends on the type of storage. In the following examples, the restriction allows access to the entire storage; specify a bucket or path to limit access.

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>
Azure Data Lake Storage	<code>adl://*</code>
Alibaba Cloud	<code>oss://*</code>
Google Cloud	<code>gs://*</code>
HDFS	<code>hdfs://*</code>

With a docroot or restriction set up, the user is now an Aspera transfer user. Restart `asperanoded` to activate your change:

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

2. Ensure the user has permissions to write to the default log directory if no directory is specified.  
For more information about configuring log directories, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

3. Configure Watch Service settings.

Though the default values are already optimized for most users, you can also configure the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, and logging. For instructions, see [Watch Service Configuration](#) on page 322.

4. Start a Watch Service under the user.

The following command adds the Watch Service run under the user to the Aspera Run Service database:

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperawatchd --user username [options]
```

5. Verify that the Watch Service daemon is running under the user.

Use the `aswatchadmin` utility to retrieve a list of running daemons. Daemons are named for the user who runs the service. For example, if you started a Watch Service under `root`, you should see the `root` daemon listed when you run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin query-daemons
[aswatchadmin query-daemons] Found a single daemon:
root
```

6. Create a watch.

A watch is a path that is watched by the Aspera Watch Service. To create a watch, users subscribe to a Watch Service and specify the path to watch. run the following command, where *daemon* is the username used to start the `asperawatchd` service and *filepath* is the directory to watch:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe daemon filepath
```

When you create a new subscription, you can also set watch-specific logging, database, scan period, and expiration period, and override `aspera.conf` settings.

**Note:** The default scan period is 30 minutes. If you are watching a file system that does not support file system notifications (such as object storage, mounted storage (NFS), Solaris, AIX, and Isilon), Aspera recommends setting a more frequent scan to detect file system changes quicker.

For more information on using these options, see [Managing Watch Subscriptions](#) on page 324 or run:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/aswatchadmin subscribe -h
```

**Note:** The default expiration for watches is 24 hours. If a watch subscription expires before the user resubscribes to it, a new subscription must be created.

## Starting the Aspera Watch Service

Aspera Sync can be configured to use `asperawatchd` for fast synchronization of very large numbers of files without scanning the directory. Aspera Sync can push files from a local directory, pull files from a remote directory, or create a bi-directional session between two directories (as long as `asperawatchd` is properly configured to monitor both directories).

To **push** files to a remote server using Aspera Watch Service, configure `asperawatchd` on the local host. The remote server does not need to be configured. For instructions on starting `asperawatchd` for a push Aspera Sync, see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320.

To **pull** files from a remote host, configure `asperawatchd` on the remote host. See the following steps for configuration instructions. The local host does not need to be configured.

1. On the remote server, configure asperawatchd database storage.

If you set default database storage, Aspera Sync uses asperawatchd for all pull requests to the server, whereas if you set database storage for a specific user then asperawatchd is used only for pull requests by that user.

To configure the Watch Service database as the default, run the following command:

```
#asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;async_watchd,redis:hostname:31415[:domain]"
```

To configure the database storage for a specific user, run the following command:

```
#asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;async_watchd,redis:hostname:31415[:domain]"
```

2. On the remote server, set up asperawatchd.

For instructions, see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320.

## Watch Service Configuration

The Aspera Watch Service configuration in the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf` includes the snapshot database, snapshot frequency, and logging:

```
<server>
  <rund>...</rund>
  <watch>
    <log_level>log</log_level>
    <log_directory>AS_NULL</log_directory>
    <db_spec>redis:host:31415:domain</db_spec>
    <watchd>
      <max_directories>1000000</max_directories>
      <max_snapshots>10000</max_snapshots>
      <snapshot_min_interval>3s</snapshot_min_interval>
      <snapshot_min_changes>100</snapshot_min_changes>
      <scan_threads>16</scan_threads>
    </watchd>
    <watchfolderd>...</watchfolderd>
  </watch>
</server>
```

To view current settings without opening `aspera.conf`, run the following command and look for settings that start with `watch` and `watchd`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

**Note:** Logging and database settings apply to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.

## Configuring Watch Service Settings

Configure the Watch Service by using `asconfigurator` commands with this general syntax:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;option,value"
```

Options and values are described in the following table.

## Configuration Options and Values

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description	Default
watch_log_dir <log_dir>	Log to the specified directory. This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.	The Aspera logging file ( <a href="#">Log Files</a> on page 502).
watch_log_level <log_level>	The level of detail for Aspera Watch Service logging. This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services. Valid values are log, dbg1, and dbg2.	log
watch_db_spec <db_spec>	Use the specified Redis database, which is defined with the syntax <code>redis:ip_address:port[:domain]</code> . This setting applies to both the Watch Service and Watch Folders services.	redis:127.0.0.1:31415
watchd_max_directories <max_directories>	<p>The maximum number of directories that can be watched (combined across all watches).</p> <p>This setting is used only on Linux machines to overwrite the system value <code>/proc/sys/fs/inotify/max_user_watches</code>. To overwrite the system value with the <code>aspera.conf</code> value, run the setup procedure in the admin tool:</p> <pre># aswatchadmin setup</pre>	1000000
watchd_max_snapshots <max_snapshots>	The number of snapshots that are stored in the database before the oldest are overwritten.	10000
watchd_snapshot_min_interval <snapshot_min_interval>	The maximum amount of time between snapshots. If this period passes without the minimum number of changes to trigger a snapshot, a new snapshot is taken.	3s
watchd_snapshot_min_changes <snapshot_min_changes>	The minimum number of changes that trigger a snapshot. If this number is reached before the snapshot minimum interval passes, a new snapshot is taken.	100
watchd_scan_threads <scan_threads>	The number of threads to use to scan the watched folder. More threads increase the speed of the scan, particularly for folders with large numbers of files, but require more of your computer's resources.	16



## Aspera Sync with Aspera Watch Service Session Examples

Examples of `async` commands for push, pull, and bidi sessions that use `asperawatchd` to identify files to transfer.

### Push Example

Configure and start `asperawatchd` on the local host to push files with `asperawatchd` (see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320).

To push files, start a Aspera Sync session with the `--watchd datastore:host:port[:domain]` option. For example:

```
async --watchd redis:localhost:31415:root -N watch_push -d /data/D1 -r
adminuser@10.0.0.1:/data/R1
```

### Pull Example

Configure and start `asperawatchd` on the remote host to pull files with `asperawatchd` (see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320).

Aspera Sync reads the remote host's `aspera.conf` file to determine whether or not to use `asperawatchd` for the session. To pull files, start a Aspera Sync session with the `-K pull` option. For example:

```
async -N watch_pull -d /data/D1 -r adminuser@10.0.0.1:/data/R11 -K pull
```

### Bidirectional Example

Configure and start `asperawatchd` on the local and remote hosts to start a bidirectional session with `asperawatchd` (see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320).

To synchronize bidirectionally, start a Aspera Sync session with the `--watchd datastore:host:port:domain` option and the `-K BIDI` option. For example:

```
async --watchd redis:localhost:31415:root -N watch_session -d /data/D1 -r
adminuser@10.0.0.1:/data/R11 -K BIDI
```

### Remote from `ascp` Example

If you are using CIFS or NFS mounted storage, you must configure and run `asperawatchd` service on the host running the NFS server, but neither the local host nor the remote host need to be configured.

On the NFS server, you must also set the Redis database to a non-loopback address by configuring Redis with a modified configuration file including the correct port and host address bindings. For example, if your host address is "10.54.44.194":

```
# Accept connections on the specified port, default is 6379.
# If port 0 is specified Redis will not listen on a TCP socket.
port 31415

# If you want you can bind a single interface, if the bind option is not
# specified all the interfaces will listen for incoming connections.
#
bind 10.54.44.194
```

Save your configuration file and then run the `asperaredisd` service with the location of your configuration file.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/asperaredisd /filepath/redis_configuration.conf.
```

Point asperawatchd to the new Redis location by running the following command on your server:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;watchfolderd_db_spec,redis:redis_host:redis_port:domain"
```

For example,

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;watchfolderd_db_spec,redis:10.54.44.194:31415:root"
```

Restart asperawatchd.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asperawatchd --user username
```

You can now start a Aspera Sync session from any client mounting NFS storage from that NFS server.

**Important:** The path of your mounted directory must match the path of the directory on the NFS server. For example, if the directory is found at /data/D1 on the NFS server, you must mount it at /data/D1.

Start a Aspera Sync session with the local directory (-d) pointing to the mounted storage and the --watchd option pointing to the remote Redis monitored by asperawatchd. For example:

```
async --watchd redis:10.54.44.194:31415 -N watch_remote -d /data/D1 -r
adminuser@10.0.0.1:/data/R11 -K BIDI
```

In this example, the client on Host A starts the Aspera Sync session. The asperawatchd service on Host B (10.54.44.194) scans the /data/D1 directory mounted by Host A and passes the snapshot to Aspera Sync. Aspera Sync transfers the relevant files from the mounted storage to the target directory remote Host C (10.0.0.1). In this example, only Host B needs to be configured for asperawatchd.

**Note:** These examples are all one-time sessions, but you can run any of these sessions in continuous mode (if the source machine is Windows or Linux) by using the -C option. In continuous mode, any changes you make to a monitored directory are detected by [Introduction to Watch Folders and the Aspera Watch Service](#) on page 242. Changes are propagated through Aspera Sync.

## Aspera Sync Monitoring and Logging

Admins can use the `asynadmin` command-line tool to monitor `async` sessions and snapshots. Aspera Sync logs offer detailed information about session events, such as transfers and conflicts.

### asynadmin Command-Line Options

Administrators can use the `asynadmin` tool to view the status of the current synchronization, as well as the latest snapshot. This includes the number of files in each state and any changes that might be incomplete on the remote endpoint. `asynadmin` also offers troubleshooting options for deleting file records from a snapshot by path globbing match or filename. Learn more about `asynadmin` definitions, allowable values, and defaults.



General `asynadmin` usage:

```
# asynadmin -d path [-N name] [options]
```

The `-N name` option is required if multiple Aspera Sync sessions are running; you must specify the name of the session to which the `asynadmin` command should apply.

**Note:** When records are deleted using the `-M` or `-E` options, Aspera Sync recalculates file counters for the entire database. This can take a while, depending on the size of the database.

## Session Options

- A**  
Display the `asynccadmin` version.
- b *path*, --local-db-dir=*path***  
Specify the local database directory. The default location is the local Aspera Sync directory.
- C, --clean**  
Delete problem records (records with statuses of `CONF`, `PCONF`, and `ERR`).
- d *path*, --local-dir=*path***  
Specify the local Aspera Sync directory.
- E *number*, --erase=*number***  
Delete the specified file record by number.
- F, --force**  
Allow changes while database is in use.
- f, --file-info**  
Report the status of all files.  
 **CAUTION:** The use of this option is not recommended on Windows, as it can cause the database to lock and `async` to fail. An alternative is to use the `-t` option.
- h, --help**  
Display the `asynccadmin` command-line option help.
- j, --journal**  
List the changes that might be incomplete remotely.
- l, --list**  
List the snapshot databases found in the database directory.
- M *pattern*, --match=*pattern***  
Delete file records that have paths that match the specified pattern (path globbing).
- m, --meta**  
Report metadata.
- N *name*, --name=*name***  
Select a source-destination pair from the snapshot database by name.
- O, --compact**  
Compact the database file.
- p, --pause**  
Pause when displaying a large amount of file data (for example, `-f`).
- q, --quiet**  
Display only the requested information. Use with `-f` / `--file-info` to disable abbreviating file names in the output.
- s, --summary**  
Report the number of files in each state. When `-s` is used alone, a brief summary from the `async` database's counters table is reported back (same as the cached counters as in the `-t` option).  
 **CAUTION:** The use of this option is not recommended on Windows, as it can cause the database to lock and `async` to fail. An alternative is to use the `-t` option below.
- s -v**

When `-s` is used with `-v`, every record in the `async` database is counted.

**Important:** This should only be used when `async` is not running.

**-T, --terminate**

Shut down `async` if it is running. This option cannot be used if the storage style set for `<async_db_spec>` is LMS and outputs an error message.

**-t num, --tail=num**

Report status of last `num` files.

**Note:** Use of this option on Windows as an alternative to the `-f` and `-s` options above.

**--touch=path**

Change the recursive mtime of the node and all its parents to current time if they are older. This option is only applied if `async` has been run using the `--exclude-dirs-older-than` option.

**-v, --verbose**

Increase the verbosity of summary (`-s`) or file info (`-f`).

**-x, --init**

Delete all file system snapshot records.

## Logging

By default, Aspera Sync logs all file system synchronization events and transfers, including any errors that were encountered by synchronizing hosts, to `syslog`. You can set the logging location on both endpoints when you start `async`.

**Important:** If you attempt to synchronize a directory without the proper read/write permissions, the directory and files it contains are *not* marked with an ERROR flag in the file directory status output. However, the error will be noted in the log file.

## Troubleshooting Aspera Sync

---

Many Aspera Sync problems can be corrected by using required options, ensuring users have necessary permissions to access files, and configuring the endpoints as required.

### Troubleshooting General Aspera Sync Errors

Fixes for common Aspera Sync issues.

#### The Aspera Sync client displays failure to start sync error

When the `async` binary on the remote computer cannot initialize, the `async` client gets a generic error similar to the following:

```
Failed to start sync session
```

**Causes:** Possible causes include the following:

- `async` binary doesn't exist (or is not in the path and `sshd` cannot find/execute it).
- `async` binary cannot be run.
- `async` binary cannot initialize properly (such as when the system is out of memory or socket resources).
- `async` binary cannot create its log files, if specified with `-R` (bad path, bad permissions).

**Solutions:**

- Confirm that the `async` binary is present. Look in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/bin/
```

- Confirm that the Aspera license shows that Aspera Sync is enabled. Run the following command and look for `sync2` in the list of enabled settings:

```
# ascp -A
```

- If the system is under-resourced, increase the timeout allowed between the start of an `async` session and the FASP transfers associated with it by running the following command. In this example, the timeout is increased to 10 minutes (600 seconds):

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
  "set_node_data;async_connection_timeout_sec,600"
```

- Confirm that the path in the argument for `-R` is valid and that the Aspera Sync user has write permissions to the directory.

### Never-ending bidirectional session, with one file stuck in "pending" state

**Causes:** This can happen if a file is not in error for Aspera Sync but is in error for the underlying `ascp` process. For example, when `async` is run with `--checksum=none` and access to the file is denied, `async` does not open the file to calculate a checksum so it does not recognize that the file is unavailable, but `ascp` cannot open the file and reports an error. This can also happen if a file is truncated during the initial synchronization; the server `ascp` reports an error but the client `ascp` does not.

**How to recover:** Stop the Aspera Sync session by running the following command:

```
# asyncadmin -d path -N name -T
```

Check file permissions on the source and destination, and confirm that files are no longer being modified. Rerun your Sync session. You do not need to use `-x`.

### Async fails with no specific reason

**Causes:** This can happen if the `async` user does not have permission to the files. This problem often arises when scripts are used to write files to one of the endpoints and the system permissions are overridden. Check the user's permissions to the files.

**How to recover:** Stop the `async` session by running the following command:

```
# asyncadmin -d path -N name -T
```

Edit the script to write files with the correct permissions, and rerun the `async` session.

### Error returned when you try a synchronization from Linux to Windows.

When you try to synchronize from Linux to Windows, you receive the following error:

```
Failed. Peer error: Symlink policy copy not supported on Windows peer.
```

**Solution:** Specify `-n skip` or `--symbolic-links=skip` when performing the synchronization.

### Error returned when you synchronize two locations on the same computer

You can synchronize files between two locations on the same computer. If you only enter the "remote" directory, such as `-r /tmp/`, then `async` fails with the following error:

```
Failed - Error, must specify remote-host name
```

**Solution:** Specify the remote host and path as `-r username@127.0.0.1:filename`.

## Troubleshooting Continuous Aspera Sync Errors

In continuous mode, Aspera Sync can encounter operating system-related issues. The following article describes how to fix several of these.

### Error returned when you attempt a continuous synchronization

If you attempt to run a continuous Aspera Sync from a client that does not support continuous mode, you receive the following error:

```
Failed. File system change notification not supported by platform
(code=45112)
```

If you attempt to run a continuous Aspera Sync to a server that does not support continuous mode, you receive the following error:

```
Failed. [PEER] File system change notification not supported by platform
(code=45112)
```

**Solution:** You must run your Aspera Sync session to or from a computer with an operating system that supports continuous mode:

Continuous Aspera Sync Direction	Supported Aspera Sync Client OS	Supported Aspera Sync Server OS
PUSH	Linux, Windows, macOS	All
PULL	All	Linux, Windows, macOS
BIDI	Linux, Windows, macOS	Linux, Windows, macOS

If that is not possible, you have two options for a workaround:

1. You can run `async` as a cron job that detects file system changes with `asperawatchd`. For more information, see [Starting Aspera Watch Services and Creating Watches](#) on page 320.
2. You can run `async` in continuous mode on source systems whose operating systems do not support file notifications by using `--scan-interval`. This enables periodic scanning of the file system to detect changes. The periodic scan is less efficient than the Aspera Watch Service file system monitoring.

### Error returned when you attempt to monitor a Linux directory in continuous mode

If you attempt a continuous `async` session and the source is a Linux computer, you might receive the following error:

```
Failed to set up directory change notification - reached the per-user limit
on number of inotify watch descriptors.
```

**Cause:** You have exceeded the per-user limit imposed by the OS on the number of directories that can be monitored (determined by the number of inotify watch descriptors).

**How to recover:** You must modify the kernel parameters on the Linux computer to increase the maximum number of user watches. The following procedure might differ between Linux versions; consult your operating system Administrator's guide for more information.

1. On the Linux computer, open `/etc/sysctl.conf` in a text editor and increase the maximum number of user watches. Enter a value that exceeds the maximum number of directories ever expected to exist in the doctroot that is monitored by `async`. For example,

```
fs.inotify.max_user_watches=1000000
```

2. Save your changes.
3. Load the configuration changes by running the following command:

```
# sysctl -p
```

4. Confirm that the changes took effect by running the following command:

```
# sysctl -a | grep max_user_watches
fs.inotify.max_user_watches=1000000
```

## Resolving Bidirectional Aspera Sync File Conflicts

When run in bidirectional mode, Aspera Sync reports file conflicts when a file was modified on both endpoints and Aspera Sync cannot determine which version to use.

For example, you have computer A and computer B and you want to synchronize the following directory and files on both computers:

```
My_documents
---Document1
---Document2
---Document3
```

If `Document2` is changed on both computer A and computer B, then when you run the `async` session, Sync reports the conflict:

```
async -N my_bidi_sync -d /my_documents -r colleague@B:/home/my_documents -w
pass -K bidi
/          SYNCHRONIZED
/Document1 SYNCHRONIZED
/Document2 CONFLICT
/Document3 SYNCHRONIZED
```

Both versions of `Document2` are left intact and you must manually resolve the conflict between them.

Resolve the conflict using one of the following methods, depending on if you have access to both endpoints (use method 1 or 2), which changes you want to preserve, and how soon you need resolution:

### 1. Reconcile the files

The slowest method, but it preserves changes and resolves the issue immediately (once files are edited).

If you have access to the file on both endpoints, compare the files and edit them until they are no longer different. To use a utility like `diff`, use `ascp` or other means to copy the remote file onto your local computer in a different directory from the local conflicted file.

Verify that the two files are no longer conflicted by comparing their checksums. Run the following command for each file to calculate its checksum:

```
# md5sum filepath
```

If the checksums match, then you can run the `async` session again and the files are synchronized without conflict.

```
async -N my_bidi_sync -d /my_documents -r colleague@B:/home/my_documents -w
pass -K bidi
/          SYNCHRONIZED
/Document1 SYNCHRONIZED
/Document2 SYNCHRONIZED
/Document3 SYNCHRONIZED
```

## 2. Delete the conflicted file from one endpoint

A faster method, but it does not preserve changes on both sides and requires access to both endpoints.

If you have access to the file on both endpoints, compare the files and determine if the changes to the conflicted file on one endpoint do not need to be preserved (such as if they duplicate changes on the other endpoint or they add obsolete or incorrect information). If changes on both endpoints need to be preserved, use one of the other methods.

Delete the file that has changes you do not want to preserve and run the Sync session again. The version with the changes you want to keep is synchronized between the two endpoints. For example, if the changes to `Document2` on computer B do not need to be preserved, delete `Document2` on computer B and then run the session again. All files are synchronized.

## 3. Rename the conflicted file on one side

The fastest method, changes on both sides are preserved but in separate files, allowing you to resolve the original conflict after synchronization. Requires access to only one endpoint.

If you only have access to one endpoint, want to preserve changes on both sides, but do not want to resolve the conflict immediately, you can rename the conflicted file on one endpoint. When you run the `async` session, both endpoints have the two versions of the conflicted file. You can then compare the differences between them and make edits to the original file later.

For example, rename `Document2` on computer A to `Document2_computerA`. When you run the `async` session, computer A and computer B both have the following files:

```
async -N my_bidi_sync -d /my_documents -r colleague@B:/home/my_documents -w
_pass -K bidi
/          SYNCHRONIZED
/Document1 SYNCHRONIZED
/Document2 SYNCHRONIZED
/Document2_computerA SYNCHRONIZED
/Document3 SYNCHRONIZED
```

# Appendix

---

## Hardlinks

On Unix-based systems, it's possible to encounter multiple files with the same inode. The most common case of this is a hardlink. Aspera Sync is agnostic as to whether two files with multiple inodes are hardlinks or if they are actually different. It assumes that directories have unique inodes.

### Handling Hardlinks

- One or more hardlinks at the source become regular files at the destination.
- In continuous mode, if a file with multiple links changes, only that file is replicated at the destination (even though all links at the source changed).
- In scan mode (one-time and continuous startup), all files for that link are replicated at the destination.

### Handling Moves in Scan Mode

- If a new file has only one link, Aspera Sync checks whether it is a move.
- If a new file has two or more links, Aspera Sync does not check whether it is a move (regardless of whether the other links are inside or outside the Aspera Sync directory).
- For directories, Aspera Sync checks whether or not it is a move.



## Handling Moves in Continuous Mode

For all files and directories, notifications tell Aspera Sync the old and new paths; thus, a move is recognized in all cases.

## Creating SSH Keys

Public key authentication (SSH Key) is a more secure alternative to password authentication that allows users to avoid entering or storing a password, or sending it over the network. Public key authentication uses the client computer to generate the key-pair (a public key and a private key). The public key is then provided to the remote computer's administrator to be installed on that machine.

1. Create a `.ssh` directory in your home directory if it does not already exist:

```
$ mkdir /home/username/.ssh
```

Go to the `.ssh` folder:

```
$ cd /home/username/.ssh
```

2. Run `ssh-keygen` to generate an SSH key-pair.

Run the following command in the `.ssh` folder. The program prompts you for the key-pair's filename. Press ENTER to use the default name `id_rsa`. For a passphrase, you can either enter a password, or press return twice to leave it blank:

```
# ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

3. Retrieve the public key file.

The key-pair is generated to your home directory's `.ssh` folder. For example, assuming you generated the key with the default name `id_rsa`:

```
/home/username/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
```

Provide the public key file (for example, `id_rsa.pub`) to your server administrator so that it can be set up for your server connection. The instructions for installing the public key on the server can be found in the [Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server](#) on page 38; however, the server may be installed on an operating system that is different from the one where your client has been installed.

4. Use the key in an `async` session.

Use the option `-i private_key_file`, instead of `-w password`, as in the following example:

```
$ async -N TestBackup -d /tmp/dir -r user@server:/tmp/dir -
i PATH_TO_THE_PRIVATE_KEY_FILE
```

**Note:** Your private key and public key must be located in the same directory.

## rsync vs. async Uni-directional Example

The `async` and `rsync` command-line options are similar for basic uni-direction synchronization.

Below are examples of `rsync` commands and their `async` equivalents for uni-directional synchronization.

### Example 1

Options:

- Recursively synchronize the contents of a directory, `/media/` to the remote system directory `/backups/media`
- Preserve access and modification time stamps on files
- Preserve the owner and group ID
- No encryption

- Transfer policy = fair
- Target rate = 100,000 Kbps (100 Mbps)
- One-time transfer (not continuous)

rsync command:

```
# rsync --stats -v -r -u -l -t -o -g -p /media/
editor@docserver:/backups/media
```

async equivalent:

```
# async -N Oneway -u -t -j -d /media/ -r editor@docserver:/backups/media -l
100M -w d0c5 -K push -c none
```

## Example 2

Options:

- Recursively synchronize the contents of the directory /media/wmv/
- Exclude "." files within the directory
- Exclude all other directories
- Preserve the owner and group ID
- Preserve access and modification time stamps on files
- No encryption
- Transfer policy = fair
- Target rate = 100,000 Kbps (100 Mbps)
- One-time transfer (not continuous)

rsync command:

```
# rsync --stats -v -r -u -l -t -o -g -p /media/ --include="/media" --
include="/media/wmv" --exclude="/media/.*" editor@docserver:/backups/media
```

async equivalent:

```
# async -N Oneway -u -t -j -d /media/ --include="/media"
--include="/media/wmv" --exclude="/media/.*" -r
editor@docserver:/backups/media -w d0c5 -K push -c none
```

## Options Comparison Table

rsync Option	async Option	Description
--stats	Enabled by default	Display file transfer status
-v, --verbose	Enabled by default	Increase verbosity
-q, --quiet	-q, --quiet	Disable progress display
-r, --recursive	Enabled by default	Recurse into directories
-u, --update	If a file exists at the destination with the same name, then the default behavior is to do nothing if the files are the same (size and checksum), and overwrite if the file is different.	Skip files that are newer on the receiver
-l, --links	Linux and macOS: -n copy, --symbolic-links=copy	Copy symbolic links as symbolic links (Linux and macOS only)

<b>rsync Option</b>	<b>async Option</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Symbolic links are skipped in Windows.	
-t, --times	-t, --preserve-time (must have HST Server or High-Speed Transfer Endpoint 3.1+)	Preserve modification times
-o, --owner	-u, --preserve-uid	Preserve owner
-g, --group	-j, --preserve-gid	Preserve group
-p, --perms	With regard to directory attributes, if the source mode doesn't have sufficient owner permissions, then the destination will add: owner rwx.	Preserve permissions
--version	-A, --version	Print version number
-h, --help	-h, --help	Show help
--include-from= <i>file</i>	-I, --include-from= <i>file</i>	Include filter (text file with paths for inclusion). See <a href="#">Include and Exclude Filtering Rules</a> on page 356.
--exclude-from= <i>file</i>	-E, --exclude-from= <i>file</i>	Exclude filter (text file with paths for exclusions). See <a href="#">Include and Exclude Filtering Rules</a> on page 356.
--include= <i>pattern</i>	--include= <i>pattern</i>	Include paths that match <i>pattern</i> . See <a href="#">Include and Exclude Filtering Rules</a> on page 356.
--exclude= <i>pattern</i>	--exclude= <i>pattern</i>	Skip paths that match <i>pattern</i> . See <a href="#">Include and Exclude Filtering Rules</a> on page 356.
	-c <i>none</i>	<i>rsync</i> , as a protocol, does not encrypt on its own; however, <i>rsync</i> can enable/disable the SSH encryption protocol (using option -e <i>ssh</i> ).

## Configuring for Other Aspera Products

---

HST Server can be configured as the transfer server for IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera Application for Microsoft SharePoint. It can also be configured and added as a node to Shares, IBM Aspera Console, and IBM Aspera on Cloud (AoC) as a "tethered node".

For instructions on how to configure HST Server for Aspera web applications, see:

- **Console:** [IBM Aspera Console Admin Guide](#)
- **Faspex:** [IBM Aspera Faspex Admin Guide](#)
- **Shares:** [IBM Aspera Shares Admin Guide](#)
- **Aspera for SharePoint:** [IBM Aspera Application for Microsoft SharePoint Admin Guide](#)
- **AoC:** <https://ibm.ibmaspera.com/help/admin/nodes>

# Configuring for Object Storage and HDFS

---

Learn how to set up an HST Server that is installed on a virtual machine in the cloud or HDFS.

## Getting Started with the Aspera Trapd Service

---

When HST Server is installed on a virtual machine in the cloud or other object storage, Trapd is the Aspera service that enables it to write to the object storage (including Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS)). Trapd is supported in HST Server for Linux 64-bit and Windows 64-bit. The HST Server should be in close proximity to the object storage to minimize latency.

### Requirements and Set Up

- Trapd is included with IBM Aspera On Demand applications and HST Server for Linux 64-bit and Windows 64-bit. Trapd is enabled in Aspera on Demand, but is disabled by default in HST Server. Trapd can be enabled by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

- HST Server must be configured to access the object storage. For stand-alone servers, this configuration is typically done when setting the docroot in `aspera.conf` (see [Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 381). The Aspera client may also specify the object storage path and credentials as part of the transfer command (see [Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 200). For multi-tenant use cases, such as the IBM Aspera Transfer Cluster Manager or IBM Aspera on Cloud (including IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service), configuration is done as part of creating an access key (see the documentation for those products for more information).

### Configuration

For information about configuring Trapd, see [General Trap Configuration Reference](#) on page 381.

Trapd works with many types of storage and comes packaged with templates of configuration files for all supported storage types. For more information, see the topics relevant to your storage type:

- [Setup and Configuration in Amazon S3](#) on page 392
- [Setup and Configuration in Alibaba Cloud](#) on page 405
- [Setup and Configuration in Google Cloud Storage](#) on page 406
- [Setup and Configuration in IBM Bluemix](#) on page 411
- [Setup and Configuration in Hadoop Distributed File System \(HDFS\)](#) on page 412

## General Trap Configuration Reference

When HST Server is installed in a cloud-based virtual machine, it must be configured to support transfers to object storage and for the specific type of storage. This section describes configuration settings that apply to all cloud storage types.

### Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS

Docroot path syntax for object-storage based HST Servers is typically a protocol prefix that is followed by URL-encoded storage account access credentials and a path in that storage. Some storage configuration properties can also be set in the docroot or set in the protocol-specific `Trapd.properties` configuration file.

#### General Docroot Syntax

```
protocol://user:password@object_storage_URL/path/[?storage_configuration]
```

Docroot paths may be set to cloud or on-premises object storage in the HST Server GUI or by editing `aspera.conf` using `asconfigurator`.

To set the docroot for a user with `asconfigurator`, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

The docroot can also be configured manually by adding the following text to `/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf`:

```
<user>
  <name>username</name>
  ...
  <file_system>
    <access><paths><path>
      <absolute>docroot</absolute>
    </path></paths></access>
  </file_system>
</user>
```

**Note:** After editing `aspera.conf`, you must restart `asperanoded`:

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

### Object Storage Docroot Formats

#### Docroot Formatting Requirements:

- The protocol prefixes for cloud-based docroot paths are case sensitive. For example, "s3://" is the correct prefix for S3 storage and "S3://" does not work.
- The variable components of URI docroots must be URL encoded, unless you are entering them in the HST Server GUI. For more information, see [URL Encoding](#) on page 383.

#### Alibaba Cloud

```
oss://access_key:secret_key@endpoint/path
```

## Amazon S3

Aspera recommends using IAM assumed roles, in which case the docroot has the format:

```
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/
```

For more information on the IAM roles required for Aspera, see the following knowledge base article:

<https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/iam-role-permissions-s3-buckets>

Without IAM roles, you must specify your *access\_id* and *secret\_key*. You can find these values in the AWS Management Console by clicking your login name and selecting **Security Credentials** from the drop-down menu. The docroot includes this information with the following format:

```
s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket
```

The docroot can also be used to set storage configuration properties including AWS storage class, infrequent access, server encryption, or AWS KMS encryption, by adding the appropriate option:

```
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?storage-class=REDUCED_REDUNDANCY
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?storage-class=INFREQUENT_ACCESS
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?server-side-encryption=AES256
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS
```

These options can be combined as in the following example, where the & that combines the queries must be URI encoded:

```
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?storage-
class=REDUCED_REDUNDANCY&amp;server-side-encryption=AES256
```

## Azure blob

```
azu://storage_account:storage_access_key@blob.core.windows.net/path_to_blob
```

## Azure Files

```
azure-
files://storage_account:storage_access_key@file.core.windows.net/share
```

## Azure Data Lake Storage

One one line:

```
adl://trap_stage.azuredatalakestore.net/folder/path?
dfs.adls.oauth2.access.token.provider.type=ClientCredential&amp;
dfs.adls.oauth2.client.id=client_application_id&amp;
dfs.adls.oauth2.refresh.url=https://login.windows.net/tenant_id/
oauth2/token&amp;
dfs.adls.oatuh2.credential=client_application_key
```

Where *trap\_stage* is the name of the Data Lake Store. The token credentials can be specified in the configuration file (`/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/adl.properties`) instead of the docroot.

## Google Cloud Storage

If the instance was set up with a Google service account, the docroot is set as:

```
gs:///my_bucket/my_path
```

Without a Google service account, obtain the .p12 private key for your storage. For instructions on generating a private key, see the Google Cloud Platform documentation:

<https://cloud.google.com/storage/docs/authentication#generating-a-private-key>

Save the .p12 file in /opt/aspera/etc/trapd. You can specify the project ID and path to the private key either as part of the docroot URI, as in the following example:

```
gs://email_address@storage.googleapis.com/my_bucket/?
aspera.gssession.projectId=project_ID&aspera.gssession.pk12=path_to_private_
absolute>
```

**Note:** The *email\_address* is the service account ID associated with the storage. You must URL encode the "@" when entering the email address in the docroot. For example, if the service account ID is test@developer.gserviceaccount.com, then it is entered in the docroot as:

```
test%40developer.gserviceaccount.com
```

### Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS)

```
hdfs://username@name_node_address:IPC_port/path_to_folder
```

Where *username* is that of an High-Speed Transfer Server transfer user. You can use any transfer user on the HST Server because the HDFS URI indicates which user is connecting to HDFS.

### IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) - S3

```
s3://access_id:secret_key@accessor_endpoint/vault_name
```

## URL Encoding

Docroots that point to object storage are written as URIs, in which the variable components such as access IDs, passwords and secret keys, bucket names, and paths to folders must be URL encoded.

For example, when setting a docroot for Amazon S3 with the following format:

```
s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket
```

The values for *access\_id*, *secret\_key*, *my\_bucket*, and *my\_path* must be URL encoded while preserving the separators (: and /).

### URL Encoding Characters

The following reserved characters are often included in passwords and secret keys:

<b>Character</b>	!	#	\$	&	'	(	)	*	+
<b>URL encoded</b>	%21	%23	%24	%26	%27	%28	%29	%2A	%2B
<b>Character</b>	.	/	:	;	=	?	@	[	]
<b>URL encoded</b>	%2C	%2F	%3A	%3B	%3D	%3F	%40	%5B	%5D

To URL encode other characters and to encode entire strings at once, you may use the online tool:

<http://www.url-encode-decode.com/>

Select **UTF-8** as the target.

## Examples

Amazon S3 docroot with the following inputs:

- `access_id = abc+d`
- `secret_key = ef/gh`
- `my_bucket/my_path = unicode文件夹/movies`

The encoded URI is:

```
s3://abc%2Bd:ef%2Fgh@s3.amazonaws.com/unicode%E6%96%87%E4%BB
%B6%E5%A4%B9%2Fmovies
```

**Note:** The forward slash between the bucket name and path is also encoded.

If the docroot also contains queries, for example if the following `aspera.conf` settings are specified as part of the docroot:

- `storage-class=REDUCED_REDUNDANCY`
- `server-side-encryption=AES256`

The "&" between the two settings must be encoded as `&amp;` because the URI is in an XML file, as follows:

```
s3://abc%2Bd:ef%2Fgh@s3.amazonaws.com/unicode%E6%96%87%E4%BB
%B6%E5%A4%B9%2Fmovies?storage-class=REDUCED_REDUNDANCY&amp;server-side-
encryption=AES256
```

## File Restrictions for URI Paths

Restrictions are similar to user docroots in that they restrict a client's access to the file system, but they are based on matching rather than a specific path. The primary purpose of restrictions is to allow access to certain storage (for example, Amazon S3) for clients that have their own storage credentials. A restriction limits the files a client is allowed to access for browsing and transfers. Files are rejected unless they match any restrictions that are present.

If you are using IBM Aspera on Cloud or IBM Aspera On Demand with IBM Aspera Console to transfer files to and from cloud storage, you must configure a file restriction on your cloud-based transfer server instead of a docroot absolute path. A configuration with both a docroot absolute path and a restriction is not supported.

### Restriction Syntax

Restrictions work for URI paths and are processed in the following order:

1. If a restriction starts with "!", any files that match are rejected.
2. If a restriction does not start with a "!", any files that match are kept.
3. If any restrictions other than "!" exist, and the file does not match any of them, the file is rejected.
4. Files that fail restrictions during directory iteration are ignored as if they do not exist.

Restriction syntax is specific to the storage:

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>



Storage Type	Format Example
Azure Files	azure-files://*
Azure Data Lake Storage	adl://*
Alibaba Cloud	oss://*
Google Cloud	gs://*
HDFS	hdfs://*

### Adding a restriction

#### 1. Add a restriction.

Restrictions can be added to specific users or to all users. In the `asconfigurator` command, the restriction must be preceded by a delimiter, preferably a "|". You can use the delimiter to set a series of restrictions.

**Note:** For Aspera on Demand, you can also enter these settings from Console.

To add a restriction for a user, for example the AoC system user `xfer` restricted to `s3://*` and not allowed access to key files, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;file_restriction,|s3://*|!*.key"
```

To add a restriction that applies to all users, such as `s3://*`, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_restriction,|s3://*"
```

#### 2. Validate your changes.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

You can also check your configuration by opening `/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf` in a text editor. A restriction configuration will look similar to the following, with a user-specific configuration in the `<user>` section and an all-users configuration in the `<default>` section:

```
<paths>
  <path>
    <restrictions>
      <restriction>s3://*</restriction>
      <restriction>!*.key</restriction>
    </restrictions>
  </path>
</paths>
```

## Configuring for Small File Uploads

If you need to upload many small files (100 Kb or less) to object storage, Aspera recommends updating your HST Server configuration to optimize transfer speed.

These instructions require you to configure settings on the server and the client, both of which must be running an Aspera product version 3.4.6 or higher. Check the version of your Aspera product by running the following command:

```
# ascp -A
```

### Configuring the Server

#### 1. Disable pre-calculating job size.

You can disable the pre-calculate job size option by editing `aspera.conf` or through IBM Aspera Console.

- **Editing `aspera.conf`:** Run the following command as root:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;pre_calculate_job_size,no"
```

This command adds the following text to the `<file_system>` section of `/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf`:

```
<file_system>
...
  <pre_calculate_job_size>no</pre_calculate_job_size>
</file_system>
```

- **Using Console:** Log into Console as admin and go to **Nodes > edit > Configuration > Advanced File Handling**. In the row for **Pre-Calculate Job Size**, select the **OVERRIDE** box, then select **no** from the drop-down menu.

	INHERITED VALUE	OVERRIDE	EFFECTIVE VALUE
File Create Mode	Undefined	<input type="checkbox"/>	Undefined
File Create Grant Mask	644	<input type="checkbox"/>	644
Directory Create Mode	Undefined	<input type="checkbox"/>	Undefined
Directory Create Grant Mask	755	<input type="checkbox"/>	755
Read Block Size (bytes)	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
Write Block Size (bytes)	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
Use File Cache	true	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> true <input type="radio"/> false
Max File Cache Buffer (bytes)	0	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
Resume Suffix	*.part	<input type="checkbox"/>	*.part
Preserve Attributes	use client setting	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> none <input type="radio"/> times
Overwrite	allow	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> allow <input type="radio"/> deny
File Manifest	disable	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> test <input checked="" type="radio"/> disable
File Manifest Path		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	/tmp/
<b>Pre-Calculate Job Size</b>	any	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<b>no</b>
Storage Rate Control	true	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/> true <input type="radio"/> false

2. Activate the Aspera Trap Service if it is not already running.

Run the Trapd setup script:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

3. Modify the Trapd configuration.

Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/trap.properties`. Locate the following line:

```
#aspera.session.upload.start-check-small-file.enabled=true
```

Uncomment the line and change the value to `false`:

```
aspera.session.upload.start-check-small-file.enabled=false
```

**Note:** After making this change, Trap does not check if a directory already exists in your object storage with the same name as a file you are transferring into the storage. For example, if you upload a file named "foo" and your object storage container already has a directory named "foo," your container will have both a file "foo" and a directory "foo."

4. Restart Trapd:

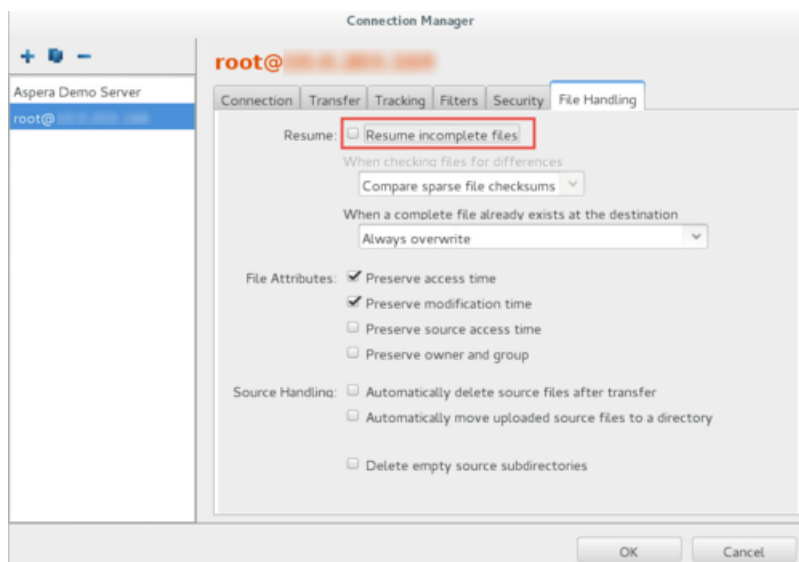
```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Configuring the Client

Transfers initiated by the client can be optimized for many small files to object storage from the Aspera GUI or by using `ascp` command options.

1. Disable resumming incomplete files. (Recommended)

In the GUI, click **Connections**. Select the connection you wish to modify then click **File Handling**. Clear **Resume incomplete files**. Click **OK** to apply this setting to all transfers with this connection.

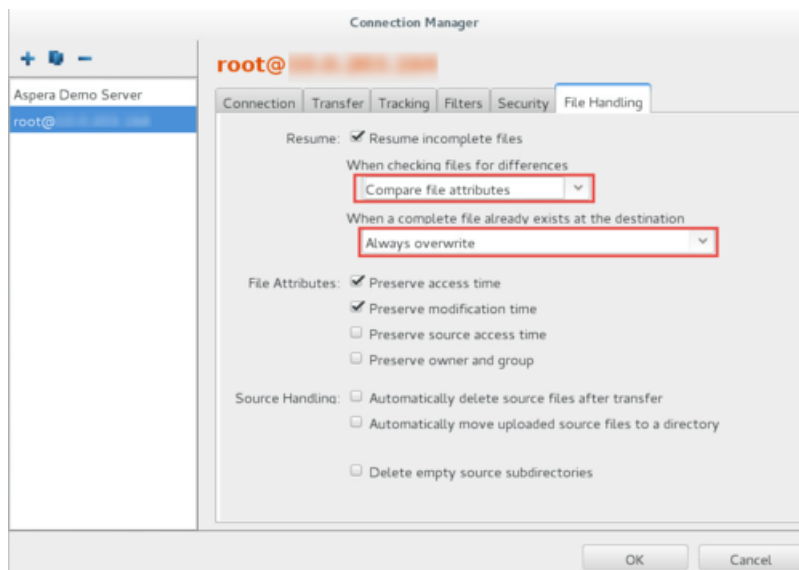


Transfers initiated from the command line automatically re-transfer the entire file by default (equivalent to `-k 0`), unless preceding transfers have specified a different value for `-k`. In this case, you must use the `-k 0` option.

## 2. Configure the resume options if resume must be used.

If you must have resume enabled, the following settings optimize resume for transfer speed.

In the GUI, click **Connections**. Select the connection you wish to modify then click **File Handling**. Under **When checking files for differences**, select **Compare file attributes** from the drop-down menu. Under **When a complete file already exists at the destination**, select **Always overwrite** from the drop-down menu. Click **OK** to apply these settings to all transfers with this connection.



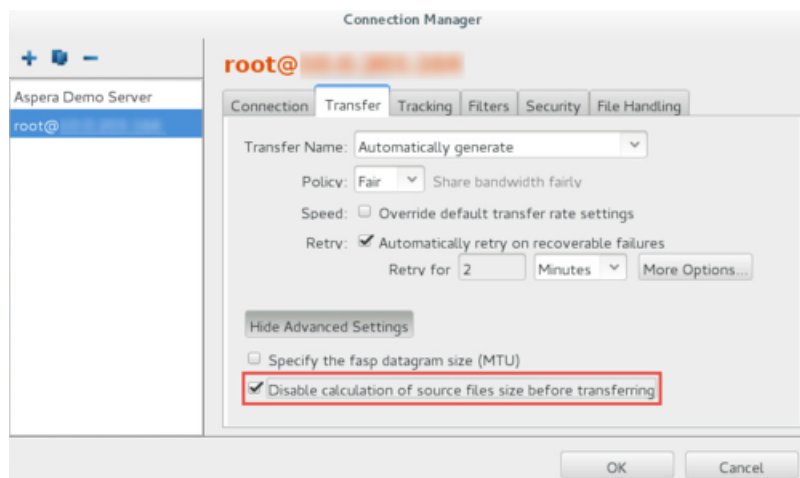
To specify the same settings in an `ascp` command line transfer, run `ascp` with the following option:

```
$> ascp -k 1 --overwrite=always ...
```

## 3. Disable calculation of source files size before transferring with the GUI.

This optional step makes the start of the transfer faster by avoiding the calculation before the transfer commences. Transfers initiated from the command line do not calculate source files size before transferring by default.

In the GUI, click **Connections**. Select the connection you wish to modify then click **Transfer**. Select **Disable calculation of source files size before transferring**. Click **OK** to apply this setting to all transfers with this connection. If you do not see this option, click **Show Advanced Settings** to make it visible.



## Resuming Transfers to Object Storage and HDFS

File transfer resume works differently when the target is object storage, and the process depends on the storage platform. Files are transferred to object storage in parts, which are finalized into a complete object once all parts have uploaded.

### Configuring File Resume:

You can configure file resume as for regular transfers using the GUI or command line. In the GUI, go to **Connections** > **File Handling** and select **Resume incomplete files**. Files in object or HDFS storage can be compared using timestamps but not checksums. Thus, in the server GUI, select **Compare file attributes** from the drop-down menu for **When checking files for differences**.

To specify the same resume policy in an `ascp` command, use the option `-k 1`.

### Resume Behavior:

- Resume does not occur if the file is smaller than one part.
- In general, a file resumes if at least one part has been transferred to the destination.
- During a transfer, browsing the storage through the GUI or Node API shows partial transfers as `filename.partial` files. These may be real files or placeholders, depending on the storage type. Real `.partial` files are visible with the storage's default browser whereas placeholder `.partial` files are not.
- When the upload is complete, real `.partial` files are deleted and placeholder `.partial` files are no longer produced.

## Naming Constraints

Object storage types vary in their support for characters and length of file and path names. Avoid transfer problems by correctly naming storage elements.

### Path names in Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS)

By default, each component of a path is limited to 255 bytes in UTF-8 encoding. This value can be configured in the Hadoop configuration file (`/etc/hadoop/conf/hdfs-default.xml`) by changing the value of `dfs.namenode.fs-limits.max-component-length`. A value of 0 disables the limit but may create incompatibilities with other file systems that do not support long paths.

## Bucket and Container Names

Many object storage platforms (including Amazon S3, Google Cloud Storage, Alibaba Cloud, and Azure, require DNS-compliant bucket names, with additional constraints specific to certain platforms.

### Rules for DNS-compliance:

- Names must be between three and 63 characters long.
- Names must be a series of one or more labels, with adjacent labels separated by a period (.).
- Labels can contain lowercase letters, numbers, and hyphens (-), but must start and end with a lowercase letter or a number (labels cannot start or end with a period). Periods may not be adjacent to another period or a hyphen and nor can a hyphen be adjacent to another hyphen. For example, "..", "--", "-.", and ".-" are not valid.
- Labels cannot be formatted as IP addresses (for example, 192.00.00.20).

### Additional Information:

Object Storage Platform	Additional Information on Bucket Names
Amazon S3	For more information, see: <a href="http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/BucketRestrictions.html">http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/BucketRestrictions.html</a>
Google Cloud Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Names containing periods may be up to 222 characters total, but each label must be no more than 63 characters.</li> <li>• Names may not begin with "goog", nor contain "google" or close misspellings of "google."</li> </ul> For more information, see: <a href="https://cloud.google.com/storage/docs/naming#requirements">https://cloud.google.com/storage/docs/naming#requirements</a>
Azure	For more information, see: <a href="https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/Naming-and-Referencing-Containers--Blobs--and-Metadata?redirectedfrom=MSDN">https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/Naming-and-Referencing-Containers--Blobs--and-Metadata?redirectedfrom=MSDN</a>

## Object Names, Key Names, and Blob Names

In general, object names, key names, and blob names must be a sequence of Unicode characters whose UTF-8 encoding is one to 1024 bytes long. This format applies to Amazon S3, Google Cloud Storage, and Azure.

The following character sets are generally safe:

- Alphanumeric characters: 0-9, a-z, A-Z
- ! - \_ . \* ' ( )

The following characters may require special handling, such as URL encoding or referencing as HEX:

- & \$ @ = ; : + , ?
- spaces
- ASCII character ranges 00-1F hex (0-31 decimal) and 7F (127 decimal).

Avoid the following characters:

- \ { } ^ % ` [ ] " < ~ # |
- Non-printable ASCII characters (128-255 decimal characters)

Object Storage Platform	Additional Information on Object Name, Key Name, or Blob Name Requirements
Amazon S3	For more information, see: <a href="http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UsingMetadata.html#object-keys">http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UsingMetadata.html#object-keys</a>

Object Storage Platform	Additional Information on Object Name, Key Name, or Blob Name Requirements
Google Cloud Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Names cannot contain Carriage Return or Line Feed characters</li> <li>Avoid control characters that are illegal in XML 1.0 (#x7F -#x84 and #x86-#x9F)</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:  <a href="https://cloud.google.com/storage/docs/naming#objectnames">https://cloud.google.com/storage/docs/naming#objectnames</a></p>
Azure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blob names are case sensitive.</li> <li>Avoid blob names that end with a period, a forward slash (/), or a sequence of the two.</li> <li>Blob names cannot contain more than 254 path segments, where a path segment is the string between delimiter characters (such as the forward slash) that correspond to the name of a virtual directory.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:  <a href="https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/naming-and-referencing-containers--blobs--and-metadata">https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/naming-and-referencing-containers--blobs--and-metadata</a></p>

### Object Metadata Names (Keys) and Values

Object metadata is a set of name-value pairs. Users can often add customized metadata names, within the constraints of the object storage platform.

Object Storage Platform	Object Metadata Name Requirements
Amazon S3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Name-value pairs must conform to US-ASCII when using REST, and to UTF-8 when using SOAP or browser-based uploads (POST requests).</li> <li>When using the REST API, user-defined metadata names must begin with "x-amz-meta-".</li> <li>PUT request headers are limited to 8 Kb, of which 2 Kb may be user-defined metadata. User-defined metadata is calculated as the total bytes of the UTF-8 encoded name and value.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:  <a href="http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UsingMetadata.html#object-metadata">http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UsingMetadata.html#object-metadata</a></p>
Google Cloud Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Custom metadata names must begin with "x-goog-meta-".</li> <li>Each individual metadata entry is limited to 32768 bytes, and 512 Kb for the total metadata server.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:  <a href="https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/storing-retrieving-metadata">https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/storing-retrieving-metadata</a></p>
Azure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Metadata names must follow the naming rules for C# identifiers.</li> <li>The combined size of the name-value pair may not exceed 8 Kb.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see:  <a href="https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/naming-and-referencing-containers--blobs--and-metadata">https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/rest/api/storageservices/fileservices/naming-and-referencing-containers--blobs--and-metadata</a></p>

## Troubleshooting Trap

If you have problems transferring to and from your cloud-based HST Server, you can review the Trap logs and edit the Trap configuration.

### Trap Log Location

If you have problems with transfers to cloud, object, or HDFS storage, Aspera Support may ask to view your logs.

The log files are found in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/var/log/trapd
```

This directory contains the following log files:

Log name	Description
aspera-trapd.log	Main log.
aspera-trapd-debug-log.log	Debug log.
aspeartrapd-start.log	Start/stop information and version.
buffer-pool.log	Shared memory.
example: gc-2014-01-23_15_52_32.log	Java VM garbage collector. The file name starts with gc- and is followed by a timestamp.
http-tx.log	HTTP requests (only appears when Trapd is run in debug mode).
std_out.log	Redirection of standard streams. File is usually empty.
storage-perf.log	HTTP connections performances (only appears when Trapd is run in debug mode).
trapd_stdout.log	Startup script and thread dump.
transfer-stats.log	Transfer statistics.
tx.log	Transfer logs.

You can also determine the version of Trapd by running the following command:

```
# systemctl --version asperatrapd
```

### Trapd Timeout

If your ascp transfer includes operations that take a long time on object storage, such as deleting a directory that contains millions of files (ascp --mode=recv --remove-after-transfer), the Trapd service can timeout before the session completes.

To increase the timeout from the default of 10 minutes (10m), run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;pvcl_cmd_timeout,timeout"
```

Restart asperanoded to activate your change:

Go to **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**, click **Aspera NodeD**, and click **Restart**.

```
# systemctl asperanoded restart
```

## Setup and Configuration in Amazon S3

---

### Server Setup in Amazon EC2/Amazon S3

With an Aspera entitlement, HST Server can be installed on an instance in Amazon EC2/Amazon S3 and run as a self-managed, cloud-based server that enables high-speed transfers with your Amazon S3 storage.

#### Prerequisites:

- You have Amazon EC2 and Amazon S3 subscriptions. Using the IAM service is optional but recommended.
- You can SSH into your Amazon EC2 instance as root. For instructions, see <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/AccessingInstances.html>.
- The Linux Kernel on your server is 2.6.34 or higher. Run the following command to confirm:

```
$ uname -a
```

#### Set up Amazon EC2 and Create an Instance

Use the AWS Management Console to prepare an instance to host your Aspera server.

1. Create an IAM role that has an EC2 Trust Relationship (recommended).

For more information, see [Using Amazon S3 IAM Roles](#) on page 394.

2. Create a key pair by using the EC2 Console.

For instructions, see:

<http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/get-set-up-for-amazon-ec2.html#create-a-key-pair>



**Warning:** You must save the private key file when it is created in the AWS management console; this is the only time it is available. If you lose your private key, you cannot access your instance.

3. Create a security group that allows inbound connections on TCP/22, TCP/33001, and UDP/33001.

For more information on managing security groups, see:

<http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/using-network-security.html>

4. Launch an EC2 instance.

For instructions, see:

[http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/EC2\\_GetStarted.html#ec2-launch-instance\\_linux](http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/EC2_GetStarted.html#ec2-launch-instance_linux)

On the **Configure Instance Details** page, specify the IAM role and security group you prepared.

5. Gather information for connecting to your instance.

To connect to your instance using any method other than the Amazon EC2 Console, retrieve the following information:

- Instance ID - See the Amazon EC2 Console **Instance ID** column.
- Public DNS name of the instance - See the Amazon EC2 Console **Public DNS (IPv4)** column. If this column is hidden, click the **Show/Hide** icon and select **Public DNS (IPv4)**.
- Fully qualified path of the `.pem` file (the private key) for the instance key pair.

6. Prepare to SSH into your instance.

From the command line, change directories to the one containing your private key file. Change permissions on the private key file to ensure that it is not publicly viewable. For example, if your private key file is `user1_key.pem`, run the following command:

```
# chmod 400 /filepath/user1_key.pem
```



If you are using a third party to access S3, you might want to verify your RSA key fingerprint when you SSH into your instance. Get the fingerprint from your machine by running the following command:

```
# ssh-keygen -lf /filepath/user1_key.pem
```

#### 7. SSH into your instance.

```
# ssh -i /filepath/private_key.pem ec2-user@public_DNS_name
```

If desired, confirm the RSA key fingerprint returned in the output matches that of your machine (see previous step), then enter *yes*. The output announces that the instance is now a known host.

Once connected, elevate to root privileges:

```
$ sudo -i
```

#### 8. Update `sshd_config` to enable port 33001 and password authentication.

Edit `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` and make the following changes:

- Enable TCP/33001 by adding the text `Port 33001`. For example,

```
...
Port 22
Port 33001
```

- Enable password authentication by uncommenting the line `#PasswordAuthentication no` and changing the value to `yes`. For example,

```
...
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

Save your changes.

#### 9. Restart the `sshd` service to activate the changes.

```
# systemctl sshd restart
```

#### 10. Configure the local firewall.

Ensure that the local firewall is configured to support Aspera. Allow inbound connections on TCP/22, TCP/33001, and UDP/33001.

#### 11. Verify that `/etc/hosts` contains an entry for `127.0.0.1 localhost`.

#### 12. Disable SELinux.

For instructions, see [Disabling SELinux](#) on page 478.



**Warning:** If this procedure is done incorrectly, your system might be unable to boot.

## Install, Configure, and Enable the Aspera Server

### 1. Install HST Server on your VMI.

Use your customer login credentials to download the Aspera installer and product guide from the Aspera website:

<https://downloads.asperasoftware.com/downloads>

If you need help with your credentials, contact your Aspera account manager. Follow the instructions in the product guide to install and set up the server.

### 2. Create Aspera system user accounts and set passwords.

HST Server uses the system accounts to authenticate connections and these must be in place before you can transfer.

### 3. Enable Entitlement and register by running the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asalee-config.sh enable
# systemctl asperanoded restart
# /opt/aspera/bin/alee-admin register customer_ID entitlement_ID
```

To entitle Faspex (v.3.7.8+), Shares (v.1.7.3+), or Console (v.2.3.2+), run the corresponding command.

- To entitle Faspex:

```
# export RAILS_ENV=production
# asctl faspex:rake entitlement:config_license_server
  EL_KEY="entitlement_id" EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```

- To entitle Shares:

```
# /opt/aspera/shares/bin/run bash -c 'cd /opt/aspera/
shares/u/shares && RAILS_ENV=production bundle exec rake
aspera:ami:entitlement:config_license_server EL_KEY="entitlement_id"
EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```

- To entitle Console:

```
# cd /opt/aspera/console/
# export RAILS_ENV=production # export PATH=/opt/aspera/common/
ruby/bin:$PATH # rake aspera:ami:entitlement:config_license_server
  EL_KEY="entitlement_id" EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```

### 4. Enable the Aspera Trapd service by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

### 5. Set the transfer user's docroot to S3 storage.

Run the following command, using this docroot syntax if you are using an IAM role.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,s3://
s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/"
```

Restart asperanoded to activate your changes:

### 6. Run a test transfer.

Use HST Server, IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Endpoint, or IBM Aspera Desktop Client (or IBM Aspera Connect if you install IBM Aspera Shares, IBM Aspera Faspex, or HST Server on your instance) to run test transfers with your Aspera server on Amazon S3. On your local machine, run the following command:

```
# ascp -P 33001 --policy=fair -l
10000 local_filepath username@gc_instance_ip_address:
```

Where *local\_filepath* is a directory on the local machine with the files you want to transfer to Amazon S3. If your set up and transfer command are successful, files appear in your Amazon S3 bucket .

## Using Amazon S3 IAM Roles

To avoid setting S3 storage credentials in a transfer user's docroot, you can use your AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) roles to set docroots to S3 storage.

### Prerequisites:

- You launched your IBM Aspera On Demand product or installed HST Server on an Amazon Machine Image (AMI).
- You have an S3 bucket.

- You have permissions to create IAM roles or change the policies of your IAM.

In the following steps, you create an IAM policy and an IAM role that is then assigned the IAM policy.

1. Log into AWS Management Console as `admin` and create an IAM role that has access to your S3 storage.
2. Go to **Services > IAM > Policies**. Click **Create Policy**.
3. Click **Select** for **Create Your Own Policy**.
4. Create the policy.

Name the policy: "s3\_node\_access". Enter the following policy into the Policy Document to allow all actions on all S3 resources:

```
{
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "Stmt1360956435483",
      "Action": [
        "s3:*"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": [
        "*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

5. Click **Create Policy**.
6. Go to **Services > IAM > Roles**. Click **Create New Role**.
7. Enter "s3\_access" and click **Next Step**.
8. On the Select Role Type panel, choose AWS Service Roles, and click **Select** for the **Amazon EC2** role type.
9. Select the "s3\_node\_access" policy. Click **Next Step**. Then click **Create Role**.
10. Launch an AMI using the IAM role that has access to S3 storage.
11. Set the transfer user's docroot.

Connect to your server through SSH, elevate to the root user, and set the S3 docroot by running the following commands:

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# sudo su -
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;absolute,s3://
s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/"
```

12. Restart the Aspera NodeD service.

```
# systemctl asperanoded restart
```

13. Test your configuration.

Perform a test transfer from an Aspera client to the S3 storage. For information on starting a transfer, see [Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 200.

## Enabling AWS KMS Encryption for Amazon S3 Cloud Storage

AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is an Amazon web service that uses customer master keys to encrypt objects in Amazon S3 cloud storage. You can configure S3 server-side encryption with KMS system-wide or on a user-by-user basis.

### Prerequisites:

- Aspera server version 3.6.1 or later.
- Your server is located in the same region as your S3 bucket.

- You have root access to your Aspera server, so that you can edit configurations and restart services.
- You know which KMS Key to use (the default key or a specific one).

**Note:** To use a specific KMS key, you must access your AWS console and create a key using the AWS IAM role console. For instructions on creating keys for KMS, see *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide: Creating Keys* at <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/kms/latest/developerguide/create-keys.html>.

The following instructions describe how to configure S3 server-side encryption with KMS and verify that objects uploaded to your bucket are encrypted.

## System-Wide Configuration

To enable system-wide S3 server-side encryption with KMS, configure the `s3.properties` file on the server.

1. Log in to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Open the `s3.properties` file with a text editor.

The file is located at `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties`.

3. Configure the system to use S3 SSE with KMS using either the default Amazon key or a specific key you generated.

- **Using the default AWS KMS key:** Locate the following line:

```
#server-side-encryption=NONE
```

Uncomment the line and set the value to `AWS_KMS`. For example:

```
server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS
```

- **Specify a KMS key:** Locate the following line:

```
#server-side-encryption-aws-kms-key-id
```

Uncomment the line and set the value to your key, using either the full `arn` of the AWS key or the ID. For example:

```
server-side-encryption-aws-kms-key-id = arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:289669785124:key/9120a367-8204-4752-8b0f-1ca9d90j8ec3
```

Setting a value for `server-side-encryption-aws-kms-key-id` automatically sets `server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS`.

4. Save and exit the configuration file.
5. Restart the Aspera Trapd service to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Individual Docroot Configuration

To enable S3 server-side encryption with KMS for specific users, append `?server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS` to the S3 docroot of the transfer users. You can do this in IBM Aspera Console or using the `asconfigurator` tool. The examples below use `asconfigurator`.

1. Log in to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

## 2. Configure the docroot.

Set the docroot by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

The docroot format depends on which KMS key you use:

- **Using the default AWS KMS key with IAM roles**

```
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS
```

For example, run the following command with the `asconfigurator` tool for a user with the username **xfer**:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;absolute,s3://s3.amazonaws.com/aspera_s3_bucket/aspera_bucket?server-side-encryption=AWS_KMS"
```

If you are not using IAM roles, you must specify the access ID and secret key in your docroot, as described in [Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 381.

- **Specifying a KMS key**

```
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/?server-side-encryption-aws-kms-key-id=your_aws_kms_key_id
```

For example, run the following command with the `asconfigurator` tool for a user with the username **xfer**:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;absolute,s3://s3.amazonaws.com/aspera_s3_bucket/aspera_bucket?server-side-encryption-aws-kms-key-id=9120a367-8204-4752-8b0f-1ca9d90j8ec3"
```

If you are not using IAM roles, you must specify the access ID and secret key in your docroot, as described in [Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 381.

## Verify KMS Encryption

Verify that encryption has been correctly set up for the IAM role.

1. Upload and download a package to the S3 bucket using an Aspera client.
2. Log in to the AWS Console.
3. View object properties.

Go to the S3 service and find the object you just uploaded. Go to **Properties > Details**. The **Server Side Encryption** option shows one of the following encryption modes:

- Default encryption (no KMS): **AES-256**
- Using the Amazon default master key: **Using AWS KMS master key: aws/s3 (default)**
- Using a specific master key: **Using AWS KMS master key: my-s3-kms-key**

The encryption mode should match the key you used to configure KMS.

## Setting Amazon S3 Storage Class Options

Amazon S3 offers several storage options, including Standard, Standard - Infrequent Access, and Reduced Redundancy Storage. Your Aspera transfer server is configured for Standard storage by default. You can configure your Aspera transfer server to work with other storage classes by editing `s3.properties`, which sets the default storage class for all transfers to S3.

You can also set the storage class in the docroot, as described in [Setting Docroots for Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 381.

To set the default storage class for all transfers, follow the instructions below.

1. Log in to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Open the `s3.properties` file with a text editor.

The file is located at `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties`.

3. Enable Reduced Redundancy or Infrequent Access Storage.

Locate the following section:

```
# Define storage class.
# This property overrides the legacy 's3service.default-storage-class'
# Valid values are STANDARD, REDUCED_REDUNDANCY, INFREQUENT_ACCESS
# Default value is STANDARD
#storage-class=STANDARD
```

Uncomment the last line and enter the desired storage type. For example, to set the default storage class as Reduced Redundancy, enter the following:

```
storage-class=REDUCED_REDUNDANCY
```

4. Save your changes then restart the Aspera Trapd service to activate them.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Using Amazon S3 Versioning with Aspera

The Amazon S3 bucket version feature enables you to retain multiple versions of an object in the same bucket. By default, Aspera uploads overwrite any object that has the same name as a source file. As of version 3.7.3, Aspera transfers can be configured to work more gracefully with S3 versioning.

### Prerequisites

- Versioning must be enabled on the Amazon S3 bucket. For instructions, see: <http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/Versioning.html>
- HST Server 3.7.3 or later. Before upgrading from a previous version, make a backup and then delete `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties`. After upgrading, copy your customizations from the backup into the new `s3.properties` file that was created during the installation process.

### Enabling S3 Versioning with Aspera Transfers

The configuration file `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties` contains the following properties that let Trapd detect if S3 versioning is enabled and change the default behavior of Aspera uploads:

```
# The period after which a bucket is checked again for cross-region
  transfers or
# bucket versioning.
# Default is 900000 (15 minutes)
#aspera.session.check-bucket.frequency=900000

# Whether to retrieve the bucket versioning status. To retrieving the bucket
# versioning status one must be the owner of the bucket and have the
  permission
# "s3:GetBucketVersioning"
# Default is false
#aspera.session.retrieve-bucket-versioning=false

# The assumed bucket versioning status when aspera.session.retrieve-bucket-
  versioning is false.
```

```
# Default is false (assume bucket is not versioned) .
#aspera.session.assumed-bucket-versioning=false
```

To enable S3 versioning:

- If the user is the owner of the bucket, uncomment `aspera.session.retrieve-bucket-versioning` and set it to `true`.
- If the user is not the owner of the bucket or does not have permission to check the bucket status, set or leave `aspera.session.retrieve-bucket-versioning` to `false`. Uncomment `aspera.session.assumed-bucket-versioning` and set it to `true`.

### Aspera Versioning Behavior

File handling in a versioning-enabled Amazon S3 bucket depends on if the S3 versioning feature in Aspera is enabled.

#### With Aspera S3 versioning enabled:

- When a file is first uploaded to the bucket, the object is created with a version ID.
- When a source file is skipped during an upload because it exists in the bucket, the existing object and its ID do not change.
- When an object is overwritten in the bucket, the new version of the object is created and assigned a version ID while the original object is left unmodified with the original ID.

**Note:** The HST Server GUI does not display all the versions of an object. To view all the versions, use the Amazon S3 console or AWS SDKs.

- When an object is deleted, the file initially disappears from the HST Server GUI; however, in the Amazon S3 console and AWS SDKs output, the object is replaced with a delete marker. This delete marker becomes the current object version. Previous versions are retained and, upon refresh, the original object reappears in the HST Server GUI.

#### With Aspera S3 versioning disabled:

- When a file is first uploaded to the bucket, the object is created with a version ID.
- When an object is overwritten, the object is replaced by a delete marker and then a new version ID, indicating that the object has been deleted and rewritten.

## Managing S3 Content Type Settings

When uploading content to AWS S3, the object can be assigned a MIME type that describes the format of the contents. HST Server automatically applies content types to objects uploaded by using FASP transfers, based on a list located in `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/mime-types.props`.

### Disabling Content Types

If you do not want content types to be automatically applied to your objects, you can disable it:

1. Open the Trapd configuration file: `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/trap.properties`.
2. Locate the following line:

```
aspera.mime-types.enabled=true
```

and change the value from `true` to `false`.

3. Save `trap.properties` then restart Trapd to activate your changes:

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

### Using a Different Content Type List

If you used the previous version of the Aspera content type list or want to create a custom list, you can configure Trapd to use the alternate file:

1. Open the Trapd configuration file: `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/trap.properties`.
2. Locate the following line:

```
#aspera.mime-types.file=mimes-types.props
```

To use the previous Aspera content type list, uncomment the line and change the value from `mimes-types.props` to `mime-types_v1.prop`. To use your own list, save the file in `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/` as `mimes-types.props` and uncomment the line.

3. Save `trap.properties` then restart Trapd to activate your changes:

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Enabling Cache-Control in Amazon S3

Use cache-control request headers in Amazon S3 to avoid repeatedly uploading or serving the same files on a per-bucket basis.

For more information on cache-control options in Amazon S3, see:

<http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/RESTObjectPUT.html#RESTObjectPUT-requests>

1. Login to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Create a mapping file to set cache directives.

The cache-control mapping file is a `.txt` file that contains the mapping between file extensions and cache directives. The following is sample mapping file content:

```
* no-cache
jpg public
zip
```

These lines set the following directives:

- `*` defines a default value, in this case setting cache-control to `no-cache` for all files
- files with the `.jpg` extension have cache-control set to `public`
- files ending with `.zip` have no cache control set

The file can have any name and be saved in any location. The path to the file is used to configure Trapd, and if the file is saved in `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/`, then in the next step you need to specify only the file name.

3. Enable cache-control in Trapd.

- a) Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties` and locate the following section:

```
# Path to a file defining a 'Cache-Control' mapping.
# The path can be an absolute path otherwise it's the name of a file
# expected to
# be in /opt/aspera/etc/trapd.
# The mapping defines 'Cache-Control' to be used based on the file
# extension:
# - the special extension '*' defines a default value
# - leaving the cache directive empty means that no 'Control-Cache'
# would be set.
# - a line starting with # is a comment and is ignored.
#
# Example
# * no-cache
# jpg public
# zip
```



```
# would by default set a 'Cache-Control' to 'no-cache'
# files ending with '.jpg' would have 'Cache-Control' set to 'public'
# files ending with '.zip' would have no 'Cache-Control' set
#
# Default is undefined (no Cache-Control is set)
#aspera.s3session.cache-control-map=
```

- b) Uncomment the last line and set the value as the path to your cache-control mapping file.

The path can be just the name of the file if you have saved it in `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd`, otherwise enter the full path to the file. For example, if the mapping file, `my-cache-control.txt`, is in `/trapd`, then the line is as follows:

```
aspera.s3session.cache-control-map=my-cache-control.txt
```

If the file has been saved elsewhere, use the full path:

```
aspera.s3session.cache-control-map=/user1/s3_settings/my-cache-control.txt
```

- c) Save your changes.

4. Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

5. Perform a test upload and confirm that the cache-control option is set according to the mapping file.

## File Time Stamp Preservation with Object Storage

Object storage platforms do not have native support for preserving the modification, access, or creation times of files that are transferred into object storage from traditional file systems. You can configure your Aspera server (version 3.5 or later) and client to preserve the original time stamps on the files and folders when they are transferred in and out of object storage. Time stamps are preserved as metadata associated with the uploaded object, and can be retrieved upon download.

1. Log in to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Configure the server to preserve file attributes.

Run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;preserve_attributes,times"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;preserve_attributes_pvcl_read,enable"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;preserve_attributes_pvcl_write,enable"
```

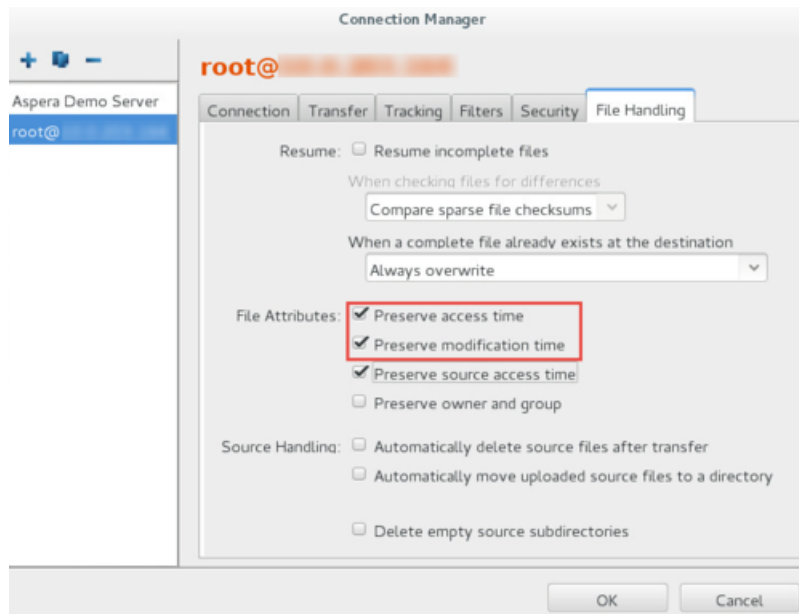
These commands add the following text to `/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf`:

```
<default>
  <file_system>
    ...
    <preserve_attributes_pvcl_read>enable</preserve_attributes_pvcl_read>
    <preserve_attributes_pvcl_write>enable</
preserve_attributes_pvcl_write>
    <preserve_attributes>times</preserve_attributes>
  </file_system>
</default>
```

3. Configure the client to preserve file attributes.

Set the preserve file attributes in the GUI or by using `ascp` command line options.

**GUI:** Click **Connections**. Select the connection you wish to modify then click **File Handling**. Select **Preserve access time** and **Preserve modification time**, as required. You can also select **Preserve source access time**. This option restores the access time on the source to the last access time before the transfer, which is considered an access. Click **OK** to apply these settings to all transfers with this connection.



**Command line:** `ascp` has four options for time stamp preservation that can be used individually or in combination:

ascp Option	Action
<code>-p</code>	Preserve all time stamps from the source. Equivalent to setting <code>--preserve-modification-time</code> and <code>--preserve-access-time</code> .
<code>--preserve-modification-time</code>	Preserve the time the object was last modified (write) on the source.
<code>--preserve-access-time</code>	Preserve the time the file was last accessed (read or write) on the source. This restores the access time of the cloud object to the last access of the file prior to transfer, which the source considers an access. Use with <code>--preserve-source-access-time</code> to have the access times of the cloud object and the source file match.
<code>--preserve-source-access-time</code>	Restore the access time of the source file to the last access prior to transfer, which the source considers an access.

## Parallel Transfers to Amazon S3 and Amazon EC2

Parallel transfers to cloud storage allow faster uploads by splitting large sets of files across multiple `ascp` sessions. They are currently supported only for command-line transfers to Amazon S3 and Amazon EC2.

**Note:** If you are uploading to a cluster, you must use access keys for authentication rather than IAM roles to run parallel transfers, unless you are using Assumed roles.

### Server Configuration to Support Parallel Transfers

SSH into your Aspera server:

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
```

```
# su -
```

Set a value for the chunk size that is greater than 5 Mb by running the following command (this example sets the chunk size to 64 Mb):

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_protocol_options_chunk_size,67108864"
```

Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties`. Set the upload part-size to the same value as the chunk size (the default is 64 Mb) and set the gathering policy to `ONE_TO_ONE`, as in the following example:

```
aspera.transfer.upload.part-size=64MB
aspera.transfer.gathering-policy=ONE_TO_ONE
```

## Ascp Command Syntax

```
ascp --tags={"aspera\":{\"xfer_id\":"transfer_id\"}} -
C nid:ncount [[user@]srcHost:]source_file1[,source_file2,...]
[[user@]destHost:]target_path
```

Notes on the command syntax:

- The `xfer_id` tag is required and identifies the upload across multiple `ascp` sessions. If an upload is restarted with the same `xfer_id` then the transfer is resumed, but if a different `xfer_id` is used then the upload is completely restarted.
- The `-C nid:ncount` option is used to specify the node ID (`nid`) and count (`ncount`) in the format 1:2, 2:2. The valid range of values for `nid` and `ncount` is 1 through 128, and `nid` must be less than or equal to `ncount`.

### Parallel transfer behavior:

- The `ascp` session for the first chunk creates the AWS upload and the `ascp` sessions for the other chunks might wait until the AWS upload exists.
- When a chunk is uploaded, the `ascp` session evaluates if all parallel transfers are complete. If more than four chunks are pending, the chunk is finished and the `ascp` session terminates. If four or fewer chunks are pending, the chunk waits for the remaining chunks to upload, then the upload is finalized.
- If the source content is smaller than the chunk size, only one `ascp` session is launched.

## Using Trap Links

Trap links are small text files that reference a single target object in your Amazon S3 storage. With a Trap link, you can save an object in a different location and with a different name without actually duplicating the object. For use cases, see the examples following the configuration instructions.

### Limitations:

- The target and link file must be accessible with the same storage credentials.
- When uploading a link file, Aspera does not check if an object with the trap link file name exists at the destination. For example, if you create the object `test` and upload a link file `.test.asp-trapd-lnk` to the same folder, the Aspera client file browser (such as a HST Server GUI) shows two objects with the name `test`. Any file operations on `test` are performed on the real object, not the link file.

Configure your Aspera server and create Trap links:

1. Log in to your Aspera server as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Enable symbolic link support in `s3.properties` or the docroot.

**In s3.properties:** Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties`. Locate the following line:

```
#aspera.session.support.symlink = false
```

Uncomment the line and change the value to `true`:

```
aspera.session.support.symlink = true
```

Save your changes.

**In the docroot:** Set symbolic link support in the docroot as a query, for example:

```
s3://user1:password@s3.amazonaws.com/path?
aspera.session.support.symlink=true
```

- Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

- Create a trap link file.

On a computer from which you can upload to your object storage, create a text file with a name that follows the format:

```
.name.asp-trapd-lnk
```

The file name must start with a dot (.) and end with the `asp-trapd-lnk` suffix. The *name* is the object name that is returned when browsing the object storage with an Aspera client; browsing an object store with the storage's default browser, such as AWS Console for S3, shows the link file as is.

The content of the object is the complete path to the target object, including the bucket or container name. The path should not be URL encoded.

- Upload the trap link file to the desired location in object storage.

#### Example 1: Providing a descriptive filename

You have an object in Amazon S3 with the following path:

```
/mybucket/production/content/29837987350097234987.mpeg
```

To rename it for your Aspera clients as `World-Cup Best-of-day 1.mpeg`, create a link file with the following properties:

- **name:** `.World-Cup Best-of-day 1.mpeg.asp-trapd.lnk`
- **content:** `/mybucket/production/content/29837987350097234987.mpeg`

Upload the link file to the shared bucket. Now when Aspera clients browse the bucket, they see the `World-Cup Best-of-day 1.mpeg` object.

#### Example 2: Accessing content between buckets

You have uploaded a 200 MB file with the following path:

```
/mybucket/music/album2/200MB
```

On the client you create a link file with the following properties:

- **name:** `.Awesome.mp4.asp-trapd-lnk`
- **content:** `/mybucket/music/album2/200MB`

Upload the link file to the desired location, for example `/mybucket/transfer`. Now when browsing `/mybucket/transfer` through the Aspera client, you see a file called `Awesome.mp4` that is 200 MB. When you download it, it has the same content as the `/mybucket/music/album2/200MB` file.

#### Example 3: Creating a Faspex package with existing files in cloud storage

Using the link file from example 1, `.World-Cup_Best-of-day_1.mpeg.asp-trapd.lnk`, you upload the link file to the Faspex internal storage location. The target file is not copied nor renamed, but when the package is downloaded, the file is received as `World-Cup_Best-of-day_1.mpeg`.

## Disabling the Creation of 0 Byte Folder Objects in Amazon S3 Storage on Upload

When you upload files located in folders to S3 storage, Aspera creates a 0 byte folder object to represent the folder. These objects enable Aspera clients, such as IBM Aspera Desktop Client and IBM Aspera Shares, to represent the folders in their user interfaces. If you programmatically upload many (millions) of objects and folders to S3 storage, disabling this feature decreases the number of objects that are created.



**Warning:** Disabling this option also disables browsing folders in your object storage using Aspera clients.

1. SSH to your S3 instance as root.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 ec2-user@ec2_host_ip
# su -
```

2. Disable the creation of folder objects.

Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties` and locate the following line:

```
#aspera.session.browse.mkdir.allowed = true
```

Uncomment the line and set the value to `false`, as follows:

```
aspera.session.browse.mkdir.allowed = false
```

3. Restart Trapd.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Setup and Configuration in Alibaba Cloud

---

### Server Setup in Alibaba Cloud

With an Aspera entitlement, an Aspera server can be installed on an instance in Alibaba Cloud Object Storage Service and run as a self-managed, cloud-based server that enables high-speed transfers with your Alibaba Cloud storage.

#### Prerequisites:

- You have an Alibaba Cloud account.
- You have a vault and know your access id and password.
- HST Server is installed on a VM instance in Alibaba Cloud.
- You can log in to your VM instance with root privileges.
- Your instance's Linux Kernel is 2.6.34 or higher. Run the following command to confirm:

```
$ uname -a
```

- Your local and cloud firewalls allow FASP-required connections (TCP/22, TCP/33001, UDP/33001).

1. Login to your instance.

Connect to a Linux instance using SSH and elevate to root privileges:

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 user@host_ip_address
# sudo su -
```

2. Set the transfer user's docroot.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Where *docroot* has the following syntax:

```
oss://access_key:secret_key@endpoint/path
```

3. Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/oss.properties` for editing.

- a) Disable retrieving the vault location.

Alibaba Cloud does not support retrieving vault location, so this feature must be disabled. Find the line `#aspera.session.check-bucket.transfer=true`, uncomment it, and change the value to `false`. For example:

```
#Whether to check against cross-region transfers
#Default is true
aspera.session.check-bucket.transfer=false
```

- b) Disable vault names.

Using vault names in requests does not work if DNS is not configured. To disable the use of vault names in the request hostname, find the line `#s3service.disable-dns-buckets=false`, uncomment the line, and change the value to `true`. For example:

```
#Disable use of bucket name in request hostname.
#Default (and recommended) is false
s3service.disable-dns-buckets=true
```

- c) Save your changes and close the file.

4. Enable the Trapd service.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

5. Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Setup and Configuration in Google Cloud Storage

---

### Server Setup in Google Cloud Storage

With an Aspera entitlement, HST Server can be installed on an instance in Google Cloud Storage and run as a self-managed, cloud-based server that enables high-speed transfers with your Google Cloud Storage.

#### Prerequisites:

- You have a Google Cloud account.
- You have a bucket in Google Cloud Storage.
- You can SSH into your Google instance as root. For instructions, see <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/instances/connecting-to-instance>.
- Your Linux Kernel is 2.6.34 or higher. Run the following command to confirm:

```
$ uname -a
```

#### Create a VM Instance

1. Log in to Google Developers Console.  
<https://cloud.google.com/console/project>

2. Select the relevant project or create a new one.
3. Generate an SSH key pair on the remote computer that will be used to connect to the instance.

```
# ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

4. Create a new instance.  
Click **Compute Engine** > **VM Instances** > **Create Instance**. For more details, see <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/instances/creating-and-starting-an-instance>.
5. In the **VM instances** dialog, enter the details of your instance.  
Enter the name, zone, machine type, boot disk, and firewall, and select the HTTP or HTTPS boxes. Select a **Service account** from the dropdown menu.
6. Click **Identity and API access**.  
Select **Set access for each API**, scroll down to **Storage**, and select **Full**.
7. Click **Management, disk, networking, SSH keys**.
  - a) Click **SSH Keys** and add the SSH key that you created.
  - b) Click **Create** to create your instance.

### Configure the Instance to Support Aspera

1. SSH into your instance as root.

```
# ssh username@gc_instance_ip_address
```

When the connection is established, elevate to root privileges:

```
$ sudo -i
```

2. Connect to your instance as an administrator by using Remote Desktop Protocol or Powershell.  
For instructions, see <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/instances/windows/connecting-to-windows-instance>.
3. Update `sshd_config` to enable port 33001 and password authentication.  
Edit `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` and make the following changes:
  - Enable TCP/33001 by adding the text `Port 33001`. For example,

```
...
Port 22
Port 33001
```

- Enable password authentication by uncommenting the line `#PasswordAuthentication no` and changing the value to `yes`. For example,

```
...
PasswordAuthentication yes
```

Save your changes.

4. Restart the `sshd` service to activate the changes.

```
# systemctl sshd restart
```

5. Configure the local firewall.  
Ensure that the local firewall is configured to support Aspera. Allow inbound connections on TCP/22, TCP/33001, and UDP/33001.
6. Verify that `/etc/hosts` contains an entry for `127.0.0.1 localhost`.
7. Disable SELinux.  
For instructions, see [Disabling SELinux](#) on page 478.



**Warning:** If this procedure is done incorrectly, your system might be unable to boot.

8. Confirm that the Google firewall allows connections on the ports used by Aspera FASP (TCP/22, TCP/33001, and UDP/33001).

If the ports are not open, you can create firewall rules in the **Google Cloud Platform** console by going to **App Engine > Firewall Rules**. Allow TCP/33001, UDP/33001, and, if you need access to the Node API, TCP/9092.

You can also use `gcloud`, an internal tool built into the CentOS image, to configure the firewall. For more information on using `gcloud`, see <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/gcloud-compute/>. For more information on configuring Google firewall, see <https://cloud.google.com/compute/docs/networking#firewalls>.

To open TCP/33001 for SSH connections, run the following command:

```
# gcloud compute firewall-rules create allow-fasp-ssh --description "fasp
ssh channel" --allow tcp:33001
```

To open UDP/33001 for FASP transfers, run the following command:

```
# gcloud compute firewall-rules create allow-fasp-data --description "fasp
data channel" --allow udp:33001
```

If you need to access the Node API, you need to open TCP/9092 by running:

```
# gcloud compute firewall-rules create allow-node-api --description "node
api channel" --allow tcp:9092
```

## Install, Configure, and Enable the Aspera Server

1. Install HST Server on your VMI.

Use your customer login credentials to download the Aspera installer and product guide from the Aspera website:

<https://downloads.asperasoft.com/downloads>

If you need help with your credentials, contact your Aspera account manager. Follow the instructions in the product guide to install and set up the server.

2. Create Aspera system user accounts and set passwords.

HST Server uses the system accounts to authenticate connections and these must be in place before you can transfer.

3. Set the MTU size on the instance to 1460.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_protocol_options_datagram_size,1460"
```

4. Enable Entitlement and register by running the following commands:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asalee-config.sh enable
# systemctl asperanoded restart
# /opt/aspera/bin/alee-admin register customer_ID entitlement_ID
```

To entitle Faspex (v.3.7.8+), Shares (v.1.7.3+), or Console (v.2.3.2+), run the corresponding command.

- To entitle Faspex:

```
# export RAILS_ENV=production
# asctl faspex:rake entitlement:config_license_server
EL_KEY="entitlement_id" EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```



- To entitle Shares:

```
# /opt/aspera/shares/bin/run bash -c 'cd /opt/aspera/
shares/u/shares && RAILS_ENV=production bundle exec rake
aspera:ami:entitlement:config_license_server EL_KEY="entitlement_id"
EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```

- To entitle Console:

```
# cd /opt/aspera/console/
# export RAILS_ENV=production # export PATH=/opt/aspera/common/
ruby/bin:$PATH # rake aspera:ami:entitlement:config_license_server
EL_KEY="entitlement_id" EL_CUSTOMER_ID="customer_id"
```

5. Enable the Aspera Trapd service by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

6. Set the transfer user's docroot to Google Cloud Storage.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,gs:///my_bucket/my_path"
```

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

7. Verify the docroot for the transfer user.

Run the following command to view the settings associated with the transfer user:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -u username
```

The output for docroot option set should be:

```
...
docroot option set:
  canonical_absolute=gs:///my_bucket/my_path/
  canonical_show_as=/
  absolute: "gs:///my_bucket/my_path/"
```

8. Run a test transfer.

- a) Install a free Aspera client application if you do not have one on your local computer.

Install one of the following:

- IBM Aspera Desktop Client: <https://downloads.asperasoft.com/en/downloads/2>
- IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface: <https://downloads.asperasoft.com/en/downloads/62>

- b) Run a test transfer:

```
# ascp -P 33001 --policy=fair -l
10000 local_filepath username@gc_instance_ip_address:/
```

Where *local\_filepath* is a directory on the local machine with the files you want to transfer to Google Cloud. If your set up and transfer command are successful, files appear in your Google Cloud Storage bucket.

## Transferring Data between Google Cloud Storages that Belong to Different Projects

If Google Cloud Storages belongs to different projects but are under the same account, you can transfer content between them.

For example, if an Aspera client has access to Project A but not Project B, that client can transfer content between storage in Project A and storage in Project B by creating a private key in Project B and configuring it on the transfer server in Project A.



### Prerequisites:

- You can create or access a service account (IAM and Admin) in the target project
- You can create a private key in the target project
- Both projects have Aspera transfer servers installed on virtual machines

#### 1. Open the service accounts manager for the target project.

In the Google Cloud Platform Console, click **Service accounts** then **Select a project** and select the target project. Click **Open**.

#### 2. Create a dedicated service account and private key in .p12 format.

Click **Create Service Account**. In the pop-up window that appears, take the following steps:

- Enter a service account name
- Select a role you wish to grant to the service account
- Select **Furnish a new private key** and **P12** key type
- Click **Create**



**Warning:** Save the private key to a secure location and record the private key's password. This is the only opportunity you have to view the password.

For more information on Google Cloud service accounts, see:

[https://cloud.google.com/iam/docs/creating-managing-service-accounts#creating\\_a\\_service\\_account](https://cloud.google.com/iam/docs/creating-managing-service-accounts#creating_a_service_account)

#### 3. On the transfer server in the client-accessible project, add the private key to Trapd.

Copy the private key file into the following directory on the Aspera transfer server in the client-accessible project:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/trapd
```

For example:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/999996a12345678b2e4aef12345e1117777d800e-privatekey.p12
```

#### 4. Modify the docroot of the transfer user to point to the project and specify the private key file.

On the Aspera transfer server in the client-accessible project, set the docroot by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Where *docroot* has the format shown below:

```
gs://email_address@storage.googleapis.com/my_bucket/?
aspera.gssession.projectId=project_ID&aspera.gssession.pk12=path_to_private_key_p
```

The *email\_address* is that of the service account and must be URL encoded. For example,

```
gs://service-account%40demo-
resource-1234.gserviceaccount.com@storage.googleapis.com/
bucket1/2017files/?
aspera.gssession.projectId=1021234564321&aspera.gssession.pk12=/opt/
aspera/etc/trapd/999996a12345678b2e4aef12345e1117777d800e-privatekey-
privatekey.p12
```

- Restart asperanoded to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperanoded restart
```

- Transfer content between projects.

## Setup and Configuration in IBM Bluemix

---

### Server Setup in IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) - S3

With an Aspera entitlement, an Aspera server can be installed on an instance in IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) - S3 and run as a self-managed server that enables high-speed transfers with your IBM COS - S3 storage.

#### Deployment considerations

- If IBM COS - S3 is on-premises, the Aspera transfer server must also be on-premises. If IBM COS - S3 is in the cloud, the Aspera transfer server must be in the same region.
- On-premises, IBM COS - S3-based HST Server does not have a direct connection to cloud-based IBM COS - S3 storage. Use the IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service to connect on-premises storage with cloud storage.

#### Note:

#### Prerequisites:

- You have an IBM Cloud account.
- You have a vault and know your access id and password.
- You have installed an Aspera transfer server on a VM instance in IBM Cloud.
- You can log into your VM instance with root privileges.
- Your instance's Linux Kernel is 2.6.34 or higher. Run the following command to confirm:

```
$ uname -a
```

- Your local and cloud firewalls allow FASP-required connections (TCP/22, TCP/33001, UDP/33001).

1. If IBM COS - S3 is in the Cloud, connect to your server through SSH and elevate to the root user.

```
# ssh -i identity_file -p 33001 user@host_ip_address
# su -
```

2. Set the transfer user's docroot.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Where docroot has the following syntax:

```
s3://access_id:secret_key@accessor_endpoint/vault_name
```

3. Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/s3.properties` for editing.

a) Disable retrieving the vault location.

IBM COS - S3 does not support retrieving the vault location, so this feature must be disabled. Find the line `#aspera.session.check-bucket.transfer=true`, uncomment it, and change the value to `false`. For example:

```
#Whether to check against cross-region transfers
#Default is true
aspera.session.check-bucket.transfer=false
```

b) Disable using vault names in request hostnames.

Using vault names in requests does not work if DNS is not configured. To disable the use of vault names in the request hostname, find the line `#s3service.disable-dns-buckets=false`, uncomment the line, and change the value to `true`. For example:

```
#Disable use of bucket name in request hostname.
#Default (and recommended) is false
s3service.disable-dns-buckets=true
```

c) Disable the unsupported `x-amz-acl` header.

Find the line `#aspera.s3session.x-amz-acl.enabled=true`, uncomment the line, and change the value to `false`. For example:

```
#Enable/disable setting the header "x-amz-acl: private".
...
aspera.s3session.x-amz-acl.enabled=false
```

d) Save your changes and close the file.

4. Enable the Trapd service.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/astrap-config.sh enable
```

5. Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Setup and Configuration in Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS)

---

### Server Set up in Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) Storage

An Aspera server can be installed on an instance in HDFS and run as a self-managed server that enables high-speed transfers with your HDFS. Settings must be changed in both the HDFS and High-Speed Transfer Server configuration files.

1. Login to any HDFS node.

2. Record the NameNode address and IPC port to use in configuring HST Server.

Open `/etc/hadoop/conf/core-site.xml` and look for the line `<name>fs.defaultFS</name>`. The `<value>` setting below it specifies the NameNode address and IPC port. For example, if the NameNode address is **hadoop-node.aspera.us** and the IPC port is **8020**, then the entry looks like the following:

```
<property>
  <name>fs.defaultFS</name>
```

```
<value>hdfs://hadoop-node.aspera.us:8020</value>
</property>
```

Keep the file open for the next step.

### 3. Configure HDFS to allow HST Server to connect to it.

Open `/etc/hadoop/conf/core-site.xml` if it is not already open. Enable the **hdfs** superuser to impersonate users and add the HST Server host, or hosts in the case of clusters, to the list of hosts allowed to connect to the NameNode. The `host` value can be a comma-delimited list of IP addresses, IP address ranges in CIDR format, or host names:

```
<property>
  <name>hadoop.proxyuser.hdfs.groups</name>
  <value>*</value>
</property>

<property>
  <name>hadoop.proxyuser.hdfs.hosts</name>
  <value>host</value>
</property>
```

**Note:** If you are using Kerberos, Aspera recommends specifying a user other than the superuser as the user allowed to impersonate other users. For more information, see [Configuring Kerberos for Hadoop Distributed File System \(HDFS\) Transfers](#) on page 414.

Save and close the file.

### 4. Restart HDFS to activate your changes.

If you are using an Amazon EMR cluster, run the following commands:

```
# stop hadoop-hdfs-namenode
# start hadoop-hdfs-namenode
```

### 5. Configure the docroot in HST Server's `aspera.conf`.

Run the following `asconfigurator` command to set the HDFS docroot for the HDFS user:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,hdfs://username@name_node_address:IPC_port"
```

Where *username* is that of an High-Speed Transfer Server transfer user. You can use any transfer user on the HST Server because the HDFS URI indicates which user is connecting to HDFS.

For example, if the HDFS user is **xfer**, the NameNode address is `hadoop-node.aspera.us`, and the IPC port is 8020, then the command is the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;absolute,hdfs://
xfer@hadoop-node.aspera.us:8020/user/xfer"
```

### 6. Ensure that the HDFS super user matches the name of the user running the NameNode service.

The HDFS super user is specified in `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/hdfs.properties` in the following line, in which `hdfs` is the default:

```
#aspera.hdfs.superuser.name = hdfs
```

The HDFS super user specified in `hdfs.properties` must match the name of the actual user who runs the NameNode service on the NameNode node. If the user running the NameNode service is not `hdfs`, uncomment the line and enter the correct super username. Save and close the file.

- Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

HST Server can be configured to use Kerberos for HDFS transfers. For more instructions, see [Configuring Kerberos for Hadoop Distributed File System \(HDFS\) Transfers](#) on page 414.

## Configuring Kerberos for Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) Transfers

HST Server can be configured to use Kerberos for Hadoop Distributed File System (HDFS) transfers by creating a new Kerberos principal and editing the `hdfs.properties` configuration file.

- On the Kerberos key distribution center (KDC), create a new principal.

The principal must have a name with the pattern: *name/host@domain*. For example, if the user is **trap**, the host is `hadoop-node.aspera.us`, and the domain is `ASPERA.US`, then the principal name is: `trap/hadoop-node.aspera.us@ASPERA.US`.

- Configure HDFS for the user.

Open `/etc/hadoop/conf/core-site.xml`. Enable the principal to impersonate users and add the HST Server IP address to the list of hosts allowed to connect to the NameNode. If the user is **trap** and the host is **hadoop-node.aspera.us**, the configuration is as follows:

```
<property>
  <name>hadoop.proxyuser.trap.groups</name>
  <value>*</value>
</property>

<property>
  <name>hadoop.proxyuser.trap.hosts</name>
  <value>hadoop-node.aspera.us, ip_address</value>
</property>
```

Save your changes and close the file.

- Restart HDFS to activate your changes.
- Export a keytab file for this principal and copy it to:
 

```
/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/hdfs.keytab
```
- Configure Trapd for Kerberos in `hdfs.properties`.

Open `/opt/aspera/etc/trapd/hdfs.properties` and find the following section:

```
# The authentication method to use. Valid values are SIMPLE | KERBEROS
# Default is 'SIMPLE'
#aspera.hdfs.security.method = SIMPLE

# The path to the keytab file to use when Kerberos is enabled.
# Default: /opt/aspera/etc/trapd/hdfs.keytab
#aspera.hdfs.security.key-tab.file = /opt/aspera/etc/trapd/hdfs.keytab

# The Kerberos principal to use to access the name node.
# Example: trap/hadoop-node.aspera.us@ASPERA.US
# Default: none.
#aspera.hdfs.security.principal =
```

To enable Kerberos,

- Uncomment the line `#aspera.hdfs.security.method = SIMPLE` and change the value to `KERBEROS`:

```
aspera.hdfs.security.method = KERBEROS
```

- Uncomment the line `#aspera.hdfs.security.principal =` and enter the name of the principle. Using the example principal, `trap/hadoop-node.aspera.us@ASPERA.US`:

```
aspera.hdfs.security.principal = trap/hadoop-node.aspera.us@ASPERA.US
```

#### 6. Configure Kerberos.

Open `/etc/krb5.conf` and edit as necessary with the principal and domain set in `hdfs.properties`.

#### 7. Restart Trapd to activate your changes.

```
# systemctl asperatrapd restart
```

## Set up HST Server for Node API

---

HST Server must be configured in order to use the Aspera Node API. You can use the `asnodeadmin` tool to set up the server and manage the Node API. The Node API uses a Redis database, which can be backed up and restored in different ways, depending on what information you need to preserve.

### Overview: Aspera Node API

---

The Aspera Node API is a feature of HST Server that provides a REST API for full programmatic control of the Aspera transfer server environment. A daemon, `asperanoded`, provides node-specific services such as browsing, searching, creating and deleting files and directories, and setting up transfers over HTTP or HTTPS.

The Node API allows you to connect nodes to Aspera web applications, such as IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera on Cloud, as well as integrate Aspera applications with your web application. It is supported by all Aspera server products and across multi-cloud and hybrid storage systems.

The Node API includes the following features and functionality:

- An HTTPS (by default port 9092) and HTTP (by default port 9091) interface.
- An API that uses JSON data format.
- The API is authenticated and the node daemon uses its own application-level users (*node users*).
- A node admin utility, `asnodeadmin`, for adding and managing Node API users and passwords. For more information, see [Node Admin Tool](#) on page 418.
- It logs to `syslog`, akin to `asperacentral`, except for RedHat which logs to `/var/log/messages`.

#### Requirements for Node API Use

- The line `127.0.0.1 localhost` must appear in the `hosts` file:

```
/etc/hosts
```

- For UNIX-based nodes, SELinux must be set to `permissive` or `disabled`, not `enforced`. Check the status of SELinux with the following command:

```
# sestatus
```

If SELinux is set to `enforced`, see [Disabling SELinux](#) on page 478. If SELinux is set to `disabled` or `enforced`, or if `sestatus` reports that SELinux is not installed on your system, you do not need to take further action.

- To run node-to-node transfers, the remote node must have version 3.7.4 or later. Earlier versions use an SSH key type that is no longer accepted by servers as of version 3.7.4.

## Node API Setup

The Aspera Node API comes with your installation of HST Server. To use it, you must configure your system and create Node API credentials.

1. Select or create a system user to associate with the Node API credentials.

Aspera uses a specially configured system user for SSH authentication when starting transfers.

**Note:** If this user will be associated with Node API credentials that will be used to create access keys or bearer tokens, either do not set a password for the user or create a very large password.

Create a user account—for example, `aspera_user_1`—by running the following command:

```
# useradd aspera_user_1
```

2. Restrict the system user's access to the server's file system.

If the Node API user will use access key or bearer token authentication to authenticate to the Node API, configure a restriction for the system user. If the Node API user will use Node API credentials to authenticate to the Node API, configure a docroot for the system user.

- **To configure a restriction:**

Run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|restriction"
```

Where *username* is the system user's username, `|` is a delimiter, and *restriction* is specific to the storage type and path:

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	For Unix-like OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> For Windows OS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>
Azure Data Lake Storage	<code>adl://*</code>
Alibaba Cloud	<code>oss://*</code>
Google Cloud	<code>gs://*</code>
HDFS	<code>hdfs://*</code>

- **To configure a docroot:**

Run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```



Where *username* is the system user's username and *docroot* is the absolute path to which the system user has access.

### 3. Restrict user permissions with `aspsshell`.

By default, all system users can establish a FASP connection and are only restricted by file permissions. Restrict the user's file operations by assigning them to use `aspsshell`, which permits only the following operations:

- Running Aspera uploads and downloads to or from this computer.
- Establishing connections in the application.
- Browsing, listing, creating, renaming, or deleting contents.

These instructions explain one way to change a user account or active directory user account so that it uses the `aspsshell`; there may be other ways to do so on your system.

Run the following command to change the user login shell to `aspsshell`:

```
# sudo usermod -s /bin/aspsshell username
```

Confirm that the user's shell updated by running the following command and looking for `/bin/aspsshell` at the end of the output:

```
# grep username /etc/passwd
username:x:501:501:...:/home/username:/bin/aspsshell
```

**Note: If you use OpenSSH, sssd, and Active Directory for authentication:** To make `aspsshell` the default shell for all domain users, first set up a local account for server administration because this change affects all domain users. Then open `/etc/sss/sss.conf` and change `default_shell` from `/bin/bash` to `/bin/aspsshell`.

### 4. Set the IBM Aspera Connect public SSH key as an authorized key for the transfer user and ensure that they own the file.

a) Create the `.ssh` directory in the user's home folder.

```
# mkdir /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/
```

b) Copy the Connect public SSH key into `.ssh` and rename it `authorized_keys` (or append the public key to `authorized_keys` if the file already exists).

```
# cp /opt/aspera/var/aspera_tokenauth_id_rsa.pub /home/
aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

c) Ensure that `.ssh` and `.ssh/authorized_keys` are owned by the user.

```
# chown -R aspera_user_1:aspera_user_1 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 600 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1

# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
```

### 5. Associate the Aspera transfer user with a Node API username and password.

For example, to assign Node API credentials to user `aspera_user_1`, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -a -u node_api_username -p node_api_passwd -
x aspera_user_1
```

### 6. (Optional) Change HTTPS port and/or SSL certificate.

The Aspera Node API provides an HTTPS interface for encrypted communication between node machines (on port 9092, by default). To modify the HTTPS port, see [Configuring the IBM Aspera NodeD Service](#) on page 420. For information on maintaining and generating a new SSL certificate, see [Setting up SSL for your Nodes](#) on page 428.

## 7. Configure other Node API settings.

- If you want to query transfers by using GET /ops/transfers or to retrieve usage data by using GET /usage, enable activity logging on the node by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;activity_logging,true"
```

- If you want to query events by using GET /events, enable activity event logging on the node by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;activity_event_logging,true"
```

As of version 3.8.0, `activity_event_logging` can be configured in individual access keys and overrides the setting on the node. If `activity_event_logging` is enabled for the access key, any Node API events associated with that access key are logged even if the node setting is false. If it is disabled for the access key, events are not logged for the access key even if `activity_event_logging` is enabled on the node.

- For a description of other settings, see [Configuring the IBM Aspera NodeD Service](#) on page 420.

## 8. Restart asperanoded to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## Node Admin Tool

---

Use the `asnodeadmin` tool to manage (add, modify, delete, and list) Node API users. Root privileges are required.

### Syntax:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin [options]
```

### Usage Examples

These examples use short options; run `asnodeadmin -h` to see the corresponding long options.

1. Add Node API username **usr1** with the Node API password **pass1** (you are prompted to enter if the `-p` option is not given) and associate them with the transfer user **aspera**:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -au usr1 -x aspera [-p pass1]
```

2. Add Node API username **usr2** with Node API password **pass2** and associate them with transfer user **root**:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -au usr2 -p pass2 -x root
```

3. Modify Node API username **usr1** by assigning a different password, **pass1.1**:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -mu usr1 -p pass1.1
```

4. List Node API usernames in the current user database:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -l
```

5. Delete Node API username **usr1**:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -du usr1
```

6. Create a bearer token: See [Bearer Tokens](#) on page 450.**All Options**

```
-h,--help                Display usage.
-A,--version             Display version.
-a,--add                Add a user (also reloads configuration).
--access-key access_key Specify the access_key. Use with --transfer
options, --bearer-create, --bearer-verify,
and --access-key-backup.
--access-key-backup filename Backup tenant data to an AOF file. Use with
--access-key.
--access-key-restore filename Restore tenant data from an AOF file. Use
with -u to change the Node API user (and
system user associated with the access key).
--acl-add              Add new ACLs for a user. May be used with -m
or -a.
--acl-set             Sets ACLs (clears old ACLs) for a user. May
be used with -m or -a.
--acl-del            Deletes ACLs for a user. May be used with -m.
--acl-list           Lists all current ACLs for a user.
-b,--backup=filename Backup user data to a file.
--bearer-create       Generate bearer token.
--expires-at utc_date Specify the expiration date for --bearer-
create.
--group-ids id1,id2,... Specify the group-id for --bearer-create.
--key-file-path dir Specify the key file directory for --
bearer-create.
--scope-role role Specify the scope role for --bearer-
create.
--token-key-length   Specify the RSA key length for --bearer-
create.
--user-id user_id Specify the user-id for --bearer-create.

--bearer-verify       Verify bearer token.
-f conf_filename Specify the configuration file (default:
aspera.conf).
-D...                Debug level (default: no debug output).
-d,--del[ete]        Delete an existing user (also reloads
configuration).
--db-status          Display the database status.
--db-startup         Start up the database.
--db-shutdown        Shut down the database.
--db-cleanup         Clean up the database.
--db-update          Update KV store keys format to the latest
version.
--db-update-local    Update KV store keys format to the latest
version, only if using the local redis.
--internal           Required for adding, modifying, or deleting
internal users.
-L local_log_dir Local logging directory (default: no
logging).
-l,--list            List users.
-m,--mod[ify]        Modify an existing user (also reloads
configuration).
-P                  Display hashed passwords when listing users
(with -l).
-p,--{pwd|password}=passwd Specify Node API user password.
-r,--restore=filename Restore user data from a file.
```

```

--reload conf file Reload configuration settings, including the
                    (also done implicitly upon user add, modify
                    and delete).
--show-transfer-queue Displays the current transfer queue.
--show-transfer-log Displays the output of data.
--transfer-bandwidth-cleanup Removes invalid bandwidth data.
--transfer-bandwidth-del-all Deletes all bandwidth counter data.
    --interruptible Allow bandwidth-del-all to be stopped
    while running.
--transfer-log-cleanup Delete all transfers from the activity log
older than activity_retention_hrs.
--transfer-log-list List transfers from the transfer log.
--transfer-log-del xnid Delete an individual transfer from the
activity log.
--transfer-queue Display the transfer queue.
-u, --user=username Specify Node API username (use with -a, -m, -
d, --access-key-restore).
-x, --xuser=xfer_username Specify system transfer user.

```

## Configuring the IBM Aspera NodeD Service

The IBM Aspera NodeD Service handles HTTP/HTTPS requests to HST Server. You can configure server settings including the hostname, HTTP/HTTPS ports, the address and port of the Redis database, and SSL certificates.

### Configuration Methods

The server can be configured for the Node API by using the `asconfigurator` command-line tool or by editing the `<server>` section of `aspera.conf`:

- **Asconfigurator:** Use the following syntax, substituting *option* with the option from the following table and *value* with the desired value:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;option,value"
```

To view the current settings, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -a
```

- **Aspera.conf:** Open it in a text editor with administrative privileges from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

See the sample `aspera.conf` following the table.

After manually editing `aspera.conf`, validate your XML by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

### Node API Configuration Options

Important configuration considerations:

- Certain services must be restarted for changes in the settings to take effect, as described in the **To Activate Changes** column. The commands to restart these services are given following the table.
- In addition to the Aspera server configuration, if you plan to transfer many small files with the Node API, you might need to increase the number of file descriptors available on your system. If too few descriptors are available, the Redis database and the transfer fail. For instructions, see [Node API Transfers of Many Small Files Fails](#) on page 477.

<b>asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting</b>	<b>Description and Values</b>	<b>To Activate Changes...</b>
server_name <server_name>	Hostname or IP address. Default: <i>hostname</i>	Restart asperanoded
http_port <http_port>	HTTP service port. Value is an integer 1 - 65535, default 9091. This setting is overridden by <listen>.	Restart asperanoded
https_port <https_port>	HTTPS service port. Value is an integer 1 - 65535, default 9092. This setting is overridden by <listen>.	Restart asperanoded
enable_http <enable_http>	Enable HTTP for the Node API services by setting to <code>true</code> . Default: <code>false</code> . This setting is overridden by <listen>.	Restart asperanoded
enable_https <enable_https>	Enable HTTPS for the Node API services by setting to <code>true</code> (default). This setting is overridden by <listen>.	Restart asperanoded
workers <workers>	Number of worker threads. Default: 20.	Restart asperanoded
transfers_multi_session_default <transfers_multi_session_default>	Number of <code>ascp</code> workers per transfer. Default: 1.	Restart asperanoded
transfers_retry_duration <transfers_retry_duration>	If a transfer fails, node will try to restart it for the specified time, default 20m. If a transfer restarts and makes some progress, then the retry timer is reset and the next time if fails, it will again try to restart it for 'retry_duration'. The backoff interval for retrying within this duration is internal to the application, and the number of retries may vary depending on the transfer queue.	Restart asperanoded
transfers_retry_all_failures <transfers_retry_all_failures>	Setting to <code>true</code> will retry all transfers, including transfers otherwise considered unretriable. Default: <code>false</code> .	Restart asperanoded
listen <listen>	To bind <code>asperanoded</code> on a specific address (or addresses), specify a comma-delimited list of listening ports. Ports have the format <code>[ip_address:]port[s]</code> . To specify a secure port, add 's' to the end of the port number, for example <code>127.0.0.1:9092s</code> .  The IP address is optional; however, if no IP address is specified then the port binds to all network interfaces on the server, rather than to the single address.  Setting this option overrides <code>&lt;http_port&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;https_port&gt;</code> , <code>&lt;enable_http&gt;</code> , and <code>&lt;enable_https&gt;</code> .	Restart asperanoded

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description and Values	To Activate Changes...
cert_file <cert_file>	Full pathname of the SSL certificate, which must be in .pem format.  Default: /opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_cert.pem	Restart asperanoded
max_response_entries <max_response_entries>	Maximum number of entries to return in a response. Default: 1000.	Reload node configuration.
max_response_time <max_response_time>	Maximum amount of time to wait for a long-running operation. Default: 10.	Reload node configuration.
db_dir <db_dir>	Path to the directory where the database file is saved. Before changing this value, you should back up your database. See <a href="#">Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records</a> on page 426.  Default: /opt/aspera/var	Restart asperanoded and the Redis database
db_port <db_port>	Database service port. Value is an integer 1 - 65535, default: 31415. Before changing this value, you should back up your database. See <a href="#">Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records</a> on page 426.	Restart asperanoded and the Redis database
ssl_ciphers <ssl_ciphers>	<p>The SSL encryption ciphers that the server will allow, each separated by a colon (:). Default: all of the following:</p> <pre> TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA AES256-SHA AES128-SHA256 DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA RC2-CBC-MD5 </pre> <p>This option may also be set in the &lt;client&gt; section, in which case, when this machine functions as a client, the specified ciphers are requests to the server. If any of the ciphers in the server's allow list coincide with those in the client's request list, communication is allowed; otherwise it is denied.</p> <p>If you override this setting, the override is always used. However, if you do not override it, the default setting depends on the settings for &lt;ssl_protocol&gt;. If &lt;ssl_protocol&gt; is set to sslv23, then a large, relatively weak</p>	Restart asperanoded

asconfigurator option aspera.conf setting	Description and Values	To Activate Changes...
	selection of suites is allowed. If the protocol is anything else, then a smaller, stronger selection of suites is allowed. Many older web browsers cannot handle the stronger set of suites, in which case you may encounter compatibility issues.	
ssl_protocol <ssl_protocol>	The SSL protocol versions that the server will allow. This option may also be set in the <client> section, in which case, when this machine is a client, the specified protocols function as requests to the server. If any of the protocols in the server's allow list coincide with those in the client's request list, communication is allowed; otherwise it is denied.  Supported values: tlsv1, tlsv1.1, and tlsv1.2. Default: tlsv1.	Restart asperanoded
activity_logging <activity_logging>	If true, enable querying transfers by using GET /ops/transfers or to retrieve usage data by using GET /usage. Default is false.	Restart asperanoded
activity_event_logging <activity_event_logging>	If true, allow the Node API to query transfers that are associated with this access key through the /events endpoint. The server configuration can be overridden by the access key configuration. This option must be enabled for event reporting to IBM Aspera on Cloud. Default is false.	Restart asperanoded
files_recursive_counts_enabled <files_recursive_counts_enabled>	If true, enable recursive counts. This option must be enabled for event reporting to IBM Aspera on Cloud. The server configuration can be overridden by the access key configuration. Default is false.	Restart asperanoded

### Example Node API Configuration in aspera.conf

```

<server>
  <server_name>your_hostname</server_name>
  <http_port>9091</http_port>
  <https_port>9092</https_port>
  <enable_http>>false</enable_http>
  <enable_https>>true</enable_https>
  <workers>20</workers>
  <transfers_multi_session_default>1</transfers_multi_session_default>
  <transfers_retry_all_failures>>false</transfers_retry_all_failures>
  <transfers_retry_duration>20m</transfers_retry_duration>
  <listen> </listen>
  <cert_file>/opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_cert.pem</cert_file>
  <max_response_entries>1000</max_response_entries>
  <max_response_time_sec>10</max_response_time_sec>
  <db_dir>/opt/aspera/var</db_dir>
  <db_port>31415</db_port>   <proxy>
  ...
</proxy>

```

```
<ssl_ciphers>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA:~:RC2-CBC-MD5</
ssl_ciphers>
<ssl_protocol>tlsv1</ssl_protocol>
<activity_logging>true</activity_logging>
<activity_event_logging>true</activity_event_logging>
<files_recursive_counts_enabled>true</files_recursive_counts_enabled>
</server>
```

## Restarting and Reloading Services

**Note:** Running the commands below requires root privileges.

Restart asperanoded:

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

Reload the Node Configuration:

```
# sudo /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --reload
```

Restart asperanoded and the Redis database:

1. Stop asperanoded:

```
# systemctl stop asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded stop
```

2. Shutdown the database:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --db-shutdown
```

3. Start asperanoded:

```
# systemctl start asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded start
```

**Note:** The database service is started automatically when you restart the node service.

## Securing the Node Service Behind a Proxy

If your HST Server must expose asperanoded to the internet, such as when setting it up as an IBM Aspera on Cloud (AoC) node, Aspera strongly recommends protecting it with a reverse proxy and keeping the SSL ciphers up-to-date (see <https://cipherli.st/> for examples). (CIM-1694). Normally, asperanoded runs on port 9092, but nodes that are added to AoC must have asperanoded run on port 443, the standard HTTPS port for secure browser access. Configuring a reverse proxy in front of asperanoded provides additional protection (such as against DOS attacks) and resource handling for requests to the node's 443 port.



## Set up Nginx

The following instructions describe how to set up Nginx as a reverse proxy and require that you have valid, CA-signed SSL certificates in .pem format for the server. Other reverse proxies might be supported on your server.

1. Set up a system user with Node API credentials on your server.

For instructions, see [Node API Setup](#) on page 416.

2. Download and install Nginx.
3. Configure the HTTPS port for asperanoded.

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_server_data;listen,127.0.0.1:9092;https_port,9092"
```

4. Open the Nginx configuration file in a text editor.

Open `/etc/nginx/nginx.conf` and ensure the following `include` directive is present in the `http` section. If it is not present, add it to the file:

```
http {
...
include /etc/nginx/conf.d/*.conf;
}
```

5. Create a file named `aspera_node_proxy.conf` and save it in the following location:

`/etc/nginx/conf.d/aspera_node_proxy.conf`

6. Paste the following content into `aspera_node_proxy.conf`:

```
#
# Aspera configuration - reverse proxy for asperanoded
#
server {
    listen 443;
    server_name your.servername.com;
    ssl_certificate /opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_cert.pem;
    ssl_certificate_key /opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_key.pem;

    ssl on;
    ssl_session_cache builtin:1000 shared:SSL:10m;
    ssl_protocols TLSv1.2;
    ssl_ciphers EECDH+AESGCM:EDH+AESGCM:AES256+EECDH:AES256+EDH;
    ssl_prefer_server_ciphers on;

    access_log /var/log/nginx/node-api.access.log;

    location / {
        proxy_pass https://127.0.0.1:9092;
        proxy_read_timeout 60;
        proxy_redirect https://127.0.0.1:9092 https://your.servername.com;

        proxy_set_header Host $host:$server_port;
        proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Proto $scheme;
    }
}
```

**Note:** Configure SSL ciphers as required. The preceding sample is not configured for backwards compatibility, and the recommended list of secure ciphers might change. Aspera recommends reviewing and staying current with the list provided in <https://cipherli.st/>.

Replace `your.servername.com` with your server's domain name. The SSL certificate must include any intermediate certificates, as described in [Installing SSL Certificates](#) on page 430.

7. Restart asperanoded.

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

#### 8. Restart Nginx.

```
# service nginx restart
```

## Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records

---

These instructions describe how to back up and restore your Node API user data up to the time of the backup operation. To backup the entire database, see [Backing up and Restoring a Node Database](#) on page 427.

#### 1. Back up the Node API user data from the Redis database:

```
# sudo /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -b /filepath/database.backup
```

**Important:** When backing up the Redis database, all user data up to that point in time will be saved to the backup file. *Restoring the database (see Step 2, below) does not delete users added after this snapshot was taken.* Thus, if you added any users after backing up the database, they still exist in the system and are not affected by the restore operation.

#### 2. Restore the Node API user data to the Redis database:

```
# sudo /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -r /filepath/database.backup
```

**Note:** If you do not want to keep users that have been added since the last backup operation, delete them after performing the restore with the following command:

```
# sudo /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -du username
```

#### 3. Restart asperanoded:

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## Backing up and Restoring Access Keys (Tenant Data)

---

Access keys can be backed up and restored by using the `asnodeadmin` tool. Only master access keys can be directly backed up, not sub-access keys, but backing up a master access key backs up all associated sub-access keys, too.

Access keys are not backed up when you back up the Node API user database ([Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records](#) on page 426), but they are if you back up the entire Redis database ([Backing up and Restoring a Node Database](#) on page 427).

## Back up Access Keys

Run the following command for each access key:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin --access-key access_key_id --access-key-backup filename
```

Where *filename* is the AOF file to which the access key data is saved.

## Restore Access Keys

Run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin [-u username] --access-key-restore filename
```

Use the `-u username` option to change the Node API user (and system user) associated with the restored access key.

## Backing up and Restoring a Node Database

---

These instructions describe how to back up and restore the entire Redis database of a node, which includes Node API users, their access keys, and transfer history. If your transfer server is an IBM Aspera on Cloud (AoC) node, migrate AoC data from one node to another by backing up the Redis database on the original node and restoring the database on a new node.

If you only need to back up and restore Node API usernames and passwords (the Node API user database), use `asnodeadmin` commands; see [Backing up and Restoring the Node User Database Records](#) on page 426. If you also want to back up and restore access keys, see [Backing up and Restoring Access Keys \(Tenant Data\)](#) on page 426.

These instructions assume that the node is using the default port for the Redis database, port 31415. If your deployment uses a different port for Redis, substitute it in the commands accordingly.

1. Verify that the original node and new node are running the same version of Aspera software.

Run `ascp -A` on a command line to view the Aspera product and version.

2. On the original node, back up the database.

Stop `asperanoded` and create the backup file by running the following commands:

```
# systemctl stop asperanoded
# /opt/aspera/bin/asredis -p 31415 BGREWRITEAOF
```

The backup is stored as `appendonly.aof` in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/var/appendonly.aof
```

3. If migrating the database, move the `appendonly.aof` to the same location on the new node.
4. On the new node, stop `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl stop asperanoded
```

5. Flush existing data from the Redis database on the new node.

```
#/opt/aspera/bin/asredis -p 31415 FLUSHALL
```

6. Load the backup database file into the new node database.

```
# cat appendonly.aof | /opt/aspera/bin/asredis --pipe -p 31415
```

- On both nodes, restart asperanoded.

```
# systemctl start asperanoded
```

- In AoC, confirm that the hostname matches the DNS entry for the new node.

To view the node URL, go to **Admin View > Nodes & Storage**.

- Confirm the database restoration succeeded.

Run the following command to the original and new nodes. If the database restoration succeeded, the output from each is identical.

```
# curl -ki -u {node_username:node_password} http[s]://{hostname}:
{http_port}access_keys
```

**Note:** Curl is included in many Unix-based operating systems. To check if it is installed, enter `curl` on the command line. If it is not installed, download it from the Curl website: <https://curl.haxx.se/download.html>.

## Setting up SSL for your Nodes

The Aspera Node API provides an HTTPS interface for encrypted communication between nodes (on port 9092, by default). For example, if you are running the IBM Aspera Faspex web UI or the IBM Aspera Shares web UI on one computer, you can encrypt the connection (using SSL) with your transfer server or file-storage node on another computer. HST Server nodes are preconfigured to use Aspera's default, self-signed certificate (`aspera_server_cert.pem`). You might need to create a new certificate or install a valid, signed certificate, such as when you are configuring HST Server as a IBM Aspera on Cloud node.

The self-signed Aspera certificate is located in the following directory:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/
```

**About PEM Files:** The PEM certificate format is commonly issued by Certificate Authorities. PEM certificates have extensions that include `.pem`, `.crt`, `.cer`, and `.key`, and are Base-64 encoded ASCII files containing "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----" and "-----END CERTIFICATE-----" statements. Server certificates, intermediate certificates, and private keys can all be put into the PEM format.


To generate a new certificate:

- Generate a Private Key and Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using OpenSSL.

In a Terminal window, run the following command (where `my_key_name.key` is the name of the unique key that you are creating and `my_csr_name.csr` is the name of your CSR):

```
# openssl req -new -nodes -keyout my_key_name.key -out my_csr_name.csr
```

- At the prompt, enter your X.509 certificate attributes.

**Important:** The Common Name field must be filled in with the fully qualified domain name of the server to be protected by SSL. If you are generating a certificate for an organization outside the U.S., go to <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/>, select **Country codes**, and click  to view a list of two-letter ISO country codes.

```
Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
.....++++++
.....++++++
writing new private key to 'my_key_name.key'
-----
```

```
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a
DN.
```

```

There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
-----
Country Name (2 letter code) [US]:Your_2_letter_ISO_country_code
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-
State]:Your_State_Province_or_County
Locality Name (eg, city) []:Your_City
Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:Your_Company
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Your_Department
Common Name (i.e., your server's hostname) []:secure.yourwebsite.com
Email Address []:johndoe@yourwebsite.com

```

You are also prompted to input "extra" attributes, including an optional *challenge password*.

**Note:** Manually entering a challenge password when starting the server can be problematic in some situations, for example, when starting the server from the system boot scripts. Skip entering a challenge password by pressing **Enter**.

```

...
Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
to be sent with your certificate request
A challenge password []:
An optional company name []:

```

After finalizing the attributes, the private key and CSR are saved to your root directory.

**Important:** If you make a mistake when running the OpenSSL command, you may discard the generated files and run the command again. After successfully generating your key and CSR, be sure to guard your private key, as it cannot be re-generated.

### 3. If required, send the CSR to your Certifying Authority (CA).

Once completed, you have a valid, signed certificate.

**Note:** Some certificate authorities provide a CSR generation tool on their website. For additional information, check with your CA.

### 4. If required, generate a self-signed certificate.

You may need to generate a self-signed certificate for the following reasons:

- You don't plan on having your certificate signed by a CA.
- You plan to test your new SSL implementation while the CA is signing your certificate.

To generate a self-signed certificate through OpenSSL, run the following command:

```

# openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in my_csr_name.csr -signkey my_key_name.key
-out my_cert_name.crt

```

This creates a certificate that is valid for 365 days.

### 5. Create the .pem file.

**Note:** Before overwriting the existing .pem file, be sure to back up this file as `aspera_server_cert.old`, in the following directory:

```

/opt/aspera/etc/

```

Copy and paste the entire body of the key and cert files into a single text file and save the file as `aspera_server_cert.pem`. The order of the text in the new .pem file depends on if you have individual certificate files or a bundle of certificates.

#### Individual certificate files:

- a. The private key.

- b. The primary server's certificate.
- c. The intermediate certificates, if any (if more than one, begin with the least authoritative and proceed in ascending order).
- d. The root certificate.

**Bundle of certificates:**

- a. The private key.
- b. The primary server's certificate.
- c. The entire bundle (as one file).

For a certificate bundle, create a new file named `aspera_server_cert.chain` in the same directory as the `.pem` files. Copy and paste the root certificate into this file, followed by the bundle.

**6. Enable SSL options in `aspera.conf`.**

For information about enabling specific SSL protocols with `<ssl_protocol>` and enabling specific encryption ciphers with `<ssl_ciphers>`, see [Configuring the IBM Aspera NodeD Service](#) on page 420.

**7. Restart asperanoded by running the following command:**

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## Installing SSL Certificates

---

Aspera strongly recommends installing valid, signed SSL certificates on your HST Server. The SSL certificates are `uasperanoded` and `asperahttpd`.

**Requirements:**

- A signed root certificate or certificate bundle (root certificate with chained or intermediary certificates) from an authorized Certificate Authority. For instructions on generating an SSL certificate, see [Setting up SSL for your Nodes](#) on page 428.
- The certificate is in `.pem` format. Other formats are not supported.

**Procedure Overview:**

The procedure modifies or creates three files:

**`aspera_server_key.pem`**

- Created automatically during transfer server installation.
- Found in the default Aspera installation directory: `/opt/aspera/etc`
- Contains the default private key.
- In this procedure, you replace the default private key with the new private key generated with the certificate signing request (CSR).

**`aspera_server_cert.pem`**

- Created automatically during transfer server installation.
- Found in the default Aspera installation directory: `/opt/aspera/etc`
- Contains the default self-signed certificate.

**aspera\_server\_cert.chain**

- In this procedure, you replace the default self-signed certificate with the content described in step 3.
- You create this file, as described below.
- You place the file in the same directory as `aspera_server_key.pem` and `aspera_server_cert.pem`.
- You place the certificate bundle (chained or intermediary certificates) from the CA in this file.

**Changing Filenames and Locations:**

If desired, the default filenames and locations of the certificate files and chain files can be changed by configuring settings in the transfer server's `aspera.conf` file, using `asconfigurator` commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;cert_file,path/certfile.pem"
# asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;key_file,path/keyfile.pem"
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;cert_file,path/certfile.pem"
```

**Note:** The chain file for `asperanoded` must match the location and name of the `asperanoded` certificate file, but with the `.chain` extension.

The commands add the following text to `aspera.conf`:

```
<http_server>
  ...
  <key_file>path/keyfile.pem</key_file>    <!-- key file for asperahttpd
-->
  <cert_file>path/certfile.pem</cert_file>  <!-- cert file for asperahttpd
-->
  ...
</http_server>

<server>
  ...
  <cert_file>path/certfile.pem</cert_file> <!-- cert file for asperanoded
-->
  ...
</server>
```

**Installing the SSL Certificates:**

1. Back up the default private key and self-signed certificate, using the following commands:

```
# cd /opt/aspera/etc
# cp aspera_server_key.pem aspera_server_key.pem.bak
# cp aspera_server_cert.pem aspera_server_cert.pem.bak
```

2. Open `aspera_server_key.pem` and replace the existing content with the new private key generated with the certificate signing request (CSR). Save and close the file.
3. In `aspera_server_cert.pem`, replace the existing content with the following, in the order shown:
  - a. the new private key
  - b. the server certificate
  - c. any chained or intermediary certificates from the CA in order of ascending authority, for example:

```
intermediary certificate 1
intermediary certificate 2
intermediary certificate 3
```
  - d. the root certificate from the CA

Save and close the file.

4. Create a new file named `aspera_server_cert.chain`. This file must reside in the same directory as the `.pem` files.

If you *have* a certificates bundle from the CA, the contents of `aspera_server_cert.chain` must consist of the following, in the order shown:

- a. the server certificate
- b. the certificates bundle, which includes the root certificate

If you do not have a certificates bundle from the CA, the contents of `aspera_server_cert.chain` must consist of the following, in the order shown:

- a. the server certificate
- b. any chained or intermediary certificates from the CA in order of ascending authority, for example:

```
intermediary certificate 1
intermediary certificate 2
intermediary certificate 3
```

- c. the root certificate from the CA

5. Restart `asperacentral`, `asperanoded`, and `asperahttpd`:

```
# service asperacentral restart
# service asperahttpd restart
# service asperanoded restart
```

6. Verify the certificates by using OpenSSL.

- a) Test that you can connect to `asperanoded` by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/openssl s_client -connect myserver:9092
```

This example assumes that you are using the default node port (HTTPS 9092). Replace *myserver* with the IP address or hostname of your server.

The command returns 0 for success or 1 for failure.

#### Output examples:

**Success:** The following sample output shows that verification was successful because `verify` return is 0.

```
depth=2 C = US, O = "VeriSign, Inc.", OU = VeriSign Trust Network, OU =
"(c) 2006 VeriSign, Inc. -
For authorized use only", CN = VeriSign Class 3Public Primary
Certification Authority - G5
verify error:num=20:unable to get local issuer certificate
verify return:0
```

**Failure:** The following sample output shows that verification failed because `verify` return is 1.

```
depth=0 C = US, ST = California, L = Emeryville, O = IBM, OU = Aspera
Inc IT Department, CN = *.asperafiles.com
verify error:num=20:unable to get local issuer certificate
verify return:1
depth=0 C = US, ST = California, L = Emeryville, O = IBM, OU = Aspera
Inc IT Department, CN = *.asperafiles.com
verify error:num=27:certificate not trusted
verify return:1
depth=0 C = US, ST = California, L = Emeryville, O = IBM, OU = Aspera
Inc IT Department, CN = *.asperafiles.com
verify error:num=21:unable to verify the first certificate
verify return:1
```



**Note:** You must see as many elements in the output as there are certificates in the chain. In the following examples there is one root certificate and two chained certificates, so the output must show three elements to prove the installation was successful.

**Success:** The following example shows a successful verification for one root certificate and two intermediary certificates in the chain:

```
Certificate chain
 0 s:/C=US/ST=California/L=Emeryville/O=IBM/OU=Aspera Inc IT Department/
CN=*.asperafiles.com
  i:/C=US/O=Symantec Corporation/OU=Symantec Trust Network/CN=Symantec
Class 3 Secure Server CA - G4
 1 s:/C=US/O=Symantec Corporation/OU=Symantec Trust Network/CN=Symantec
Class 3 Secure Server CA - G4
  i:/C=US/O=VeriSign, Inc./OU=VeriSign Trust Network/OU=(c) 2006
VeriSign, Inc. - For authorized use only/CN=VeriSign Class 3 Public
Primary Certification Authority - G5
 2 s:/C=US/O=VeriSign, Inc./OU=VeriSign Trust Network/OU=(c) 2006
VeriSign, Inc. - For authorized use only/CN=VeriSign Class 3 Public
Primary Certification Authority - G5
  i:/C=US/O=VeriSign, Inc./OU=Class 3 Public Primary Certification
Authority
```

**Failure:** The following example shows an unsuccessful verification, since only the root certificate is displayed.

```
Certificate chain
 0 s:/C=US/ST=California/L=Emeryville/O=IBM/OU=Aspera Inc IT Department/
CN=*.asperafiles.com
  i:/C=US/O=Symantec Corporation/OU=Symantec Trust Network/CN=Symantec
Class 3 Secure Server CA - G4
```

b) If verification fails, inspect your certificate content by running the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/openssl x509 -in certificate.crt -text -noout
```

## Authentication and Authorization

---

### Introduction to Aspera Authentication and Authorization

---

HST Server can be configured to support SSH or HTTPS authentication and authorization for browsing and transfers. For both methods, the client `ascp` process connects to the server by using the SSH protocol and initiates the server-side `ascp` process. Therefore, SSH connectivity and authentication to the server is always used.

**SSH:** SSH authentication is the original method for authentication, and is typically used for transfers between Aspera clients and servers. SSH authentication requires a system user account that is configured with a `docroot` or restriction in `aspera.conf`. The user can authenticate by providing a system password or SSH key.

**HTTPS:** HTTPS (Node API) authentication was introduced to support browsing and transfers that are initiated through Aspera web applications (IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera on Cloud), and uses a token-based authorization security layer in addition to SSH.

**Authorization Tokens:** When the server is configured for token authorization, the server-side `ascp` process requires a valid token from the client before it can start. It is the responsibility of the client to provide this token. The Aspera web applications do this automatically through HTTPS (Node API). The IBM Aspera Desktop Client GUI and IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface do this automatically when connecting to Aspera web applications.

## Types of Tokens

Aspera uses three types of tokens: transfer tokens, basic tokens, and bearer tokens.

- **Transfer Tokens:** A transfer token authorizes specific content uploads to a destination or content downloads from a remote source. Transfer-token-based authorization is generally used for FASP transfers initiated through Aspera web applications, such as IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera Application for Microsoft SharePoint, but can be used in place of SSH authentication for other types of Aspera products. For more information, see [Transfer Token Creation \(Node API\)](#) on page 436 and [Transfer Token Generation \(astoken\)](#) on page 438.
- **Basic Tokens:** An Aspera basic token is created from an access key ID and secret, which authorizes a transfer user access to a specific area of a storage and authenticates that user to the storage. Basic tokens are less restrictive than transfer tokens. They can be used to transfer with any Aspera server that supports access keys (all but IBM Aspera on Cloud). For more information, see [Basic Tokens](#) on page 449.
- **Bearer Tokens:** A bearer token is created from an access key ID, access key secret, and an SSL private-public key pair. Bearer token authentication is required for transfers to and from IBM Aspera on Cloud, but can be used for transfers with all other Aspera servers, too. For more information, see [Bearer Tokens](#) on page 450.

## Require Token Authorization: Set in the GUI

---

When transfer users or groups are configured to require token authorization, only transfers initiated with a valid token (transfer token, basic token, or bearer token) are allowed to transfer to or from the server. Token authorization can be set independently for incoming transfers and outgoing transfers.

1. Choose or create the transfer user on the server.

The user should not have a password. If the system does not allow this, create a very large password.

2. Set the IBM Aspera Connect public SSH key as an authorized key for the transfer user and ensure that they own the file.

- a) Create the `.ssh` directory in the user's home folder.

```
# mkdir /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/
```

- b) Copy the Connect public SSH key into `.ssh` and rename it `authorized_keys` (or append the public key to `authorized_keys` if the file already exists).

```
# cp /opt/aspera/var/aspera_tokenauth_id_rsa.pub /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

- c) Ensure that `.ssh` and `.ssh/authorized_keys` are owned by the user.

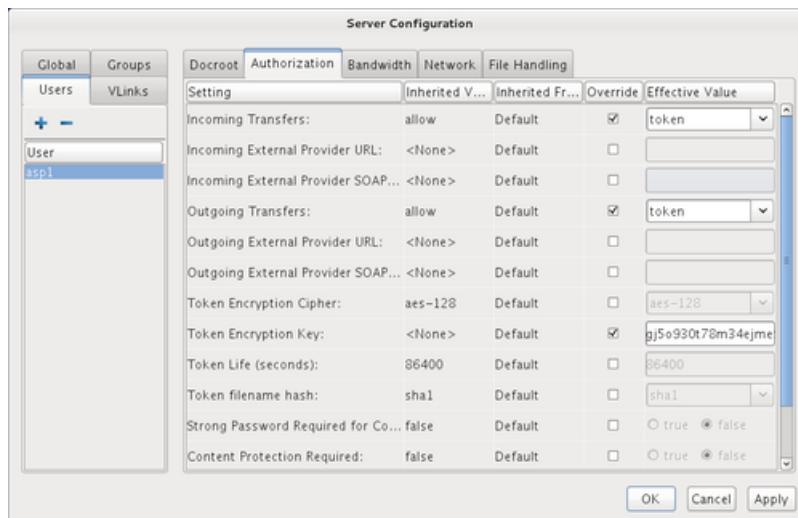
```
# chown -R aspera_user_1:aspera_user_1 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 600 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1

# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
```

3. Launch HST Server and click **Configuration**.

4. Click **Users** and choose a user to configure.

Alternatively, click **Groups** and choose a group to configure, or click **Global** to configure options for all users.



5. Click **Authorization**.
6. Set token authorization for incoming and outgoing transfers.  
Select the override boxes for **Incoming Transfers** and **Outgoing Transfers**. Under **Effective Value**, select **token** from the drop-down menu.
7. Set the token encryption key.  
Select the override box for **Token Encryption Key** and enter the token encryption key. The encryption key should be a string of random characters (at least 20 recommended).
8. Click **Apply** to save the changes, or click **OK** to save the changes and close the dialog.

## Require Token Authorization: Set from the Command Line

When transfer users or groups are configured to require token authorization, only transfers initiated with a valid token (transfer token, basic token, or bearer token) are allowed to transfer to or from the server. Token authorization can be set independently for incoming transfers and outgoing transfers.

The following examples use a transfer user called `aspera_user_1`.

1. Choose or create the transfer user on the server.  
The user should not have a password. If the system does not allow this, create a very large password.
2. Set the IBM Aspera Connect public SSH key as an authorized key for the transfer user and ensure that they own the file.
  - a) Create the `.ssh` directory in the user's home folder.

```
# mkdir /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/
```

- b) Copy the Connect public SSH key into `.ssh` and rename it `authorized_keys` (or append the public key to `authorized_keys` if the file already exists).

```
# cp /opt/aspera/var/aspera_tokenauth_id_rsa.pub /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

- c) Ensure that `.ssh` and `.ssh/authorized_keys` are owned by the user.

```
# chown -R aspera_user_1:aspera_user_1 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
# chmod 600 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh/authorized_keys
# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh

# chmod 700 /home/aspera_user_1/.ssh
```

- To require token authorization for uploads and downloads, and to set the token encryption key, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,aspera_user_1;authorization_transfer_in_value,token;authori
```

Aspera recommends that the *key* be a random string of at least 20 characters. This command creates the following text in `aspera.conf`:

```
<user>
  <name>aspera_user_1</name>
  <authorization>
    <transfer>
      <in>
        <value>token</value>
      </in>
      <out>
        <value>token</value>
      </out>
    </transfer>
    <token>
      <encryption_key>gj5o930t78m34ejme9dx</encryption_key>
    </token>
  </authorization>
  <file_system>
    ...
  </file_system>
</user>
```

You can also configure token-authorization settings in a `<group>` section to be applied to all users in the group or in the `<default>` section to apply them globally for all users. For instructions on how to run `asconfigurator` commands to do so, as well as to view other token configuration options, see [User, Group and Default Configurations](#) on page 460.

## Transfer Token Creation (Node API)

Aspera recommends using the Node API tool to generate transfer tokens, though they can be generated using the `astokengen` tool. Using the Node API tool enables greater flexibility and functionality because `astokengen` creates tokens constrained by the settings in `aspera.conf`.

**Note:** Transfer tokens for use with Ascp 4 must be created with `astokengen`. Otherwise, `astokengen` is most useful for decoding tokens during application development for debugging purposes. For more information on `astokengen`, see [Transfer Token Generation \(astokengen\)](#) on page 438.

### Prerequisites:

In order to create transfer tokens with the Node API, you must set up HST Server for the Node API. For instructions, see [Node API Setup](#) on page 416.

### Creating Transfer Tokens with Node API Calls

Curl is used to call the API, and is freely available for download for all operating systems supported by Aspera:

<https://curl.haxx.se/>

To generate a token, run a `curl` command to the `/files/upload_setup` or `/files/download_setup` endpoint (depending on what kind of token you want to generate). The request body includes a JSON object called the `transfer_requests`. The Node API output response, a `transfer_specs` JSON object, includes a token,

as well as a description of who is authorized to transfer using the token, what files can be transferred, and transfer properties.

**Note:** When generating tokens with an IBM Aspera Shares server, the endpoints are `/node_api/files/upload_setup` and `/node_api/files/download_setup`.

## Upload token

General syntax:

```
# curl -i -X POST -u node_username:node_user_password -d
'{"transfer_requests": [{"transfer_request": { "paths" : [{}],
"destination_root" : "/" } } ] }";' http(s)://node_server:node_port/files/
upload_setup
```

This command specifies the following:

- i Include the HTTP header in the output.
- X POST Specify a POST request to the HTTP server, rather than the default GET request. (This option is not required when -d is used, but is included here for completeness).
- u `node_username:node_user_password` Authenticate using the Node API username and password that are associated with the transfer user who has been configured for token authorization.
- d Send the specified data payload to the HTTP server. The payload can be entered in the command line, as it is here, or stored in a file, as described below.
- `http(s)://...` The endpoint URL.

For example, the following request allows the user, `lion`, who is associated with the Node API username, `nodeuser`, and Node API password, `nodepassword`, to upload any files from the source to any location on the destination, `serengeti.com`:

```
# curl -i -v -X POST -u nodeuser:nodepassword -d '{ "transfer_requests" :
[ { "transfer_request" : { "paths" : [{}], "destination_root" :
"/" } } ] }';' http://serengeti.com:9091/files/upload_setup
```

The response output is the following, from which you extract the token string `ATV7_HtfhDa-JwWfc6RkTwhkDUqjHeLQePiOHjIS254_LJ14_7VTA`:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Cache: no-cache
Connection: close
Content-Type: application/x-javascript
{
  "transfer_specs" : [{
    "transfer_spec" : {
      "paths" : [{}],
      "source_root" : "",
      "destination_root" : "/",
      "token" : "ATV7_HtfhDa-JwWfc6RkTwhkDUqjHeLQePiOHjIS254_LJ14_7VTA",
      "direction" : "send",
      "target_rate_cap_kbps" : 100000,
      "cipher" : "none",
      "rate_policy_allowed" : "fair",
      "rate_policy" : "fair",
      "target_rate_kbps" : 45000,
      "min_rate_kbps" : 0,
      "remote_host" : "serengeti.com",
      "remote_user" : "lion",
      "ssh_port" : 22,
      "fasp_port" : 33001,
      "http_fallback" : true,
      "http_fallback_port" : 8080
    }
  ]
}
```

```
  ]
}
```

You can also specify the transfer request parameters in a file and refer to it in the curl command, which is particularly useful for transfer requests that list many items for source content and destination. For example, the transfer request file, `upload_setup.json`, could contain the following information for a file pair list:

```
{
  "transfer_requests" : [
    {
      "transfer_request" : {
        "destination_root" : "/",
        "paths" : [
          {
            "destination" : "/archive/monday/texts/first_thing",
            "source" : "/monday/first_thing.txt"
          },
          {
            "destination" : "/archive/monday/texts/next_thing"
            "source" : "/monday/next_thing.txt",
          },
          {
            "destination" : "/archive/monday/texts/last_thing",
            "source" : "/monday/last_thing.txt"
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

To use this file in the curl command, specify the path to the file in the `-d` option, as follows:

```
-d @upload_setup.json
```

### Download token

The method for generating a download token is the same as for an upload token, except that you use the `/files/download_setup` (or `/node_api/files/download_setup` in the case of Shares) endpoint.

### Using Transfer Tokens in the Command Line

Once the token is generated, it can be used to authorize FASP transfers by setting the `ASPERA_SCP_TOKEN` environment variable or using the `-W` option for `ascp` and `async` sessions.

## Transfer Token Generation (astokengen)

The `astokengen` command line tool enables users to generate and decode transfer tokens. Unless you are creating a transfer token for an Ascp 4 session, which requires that you use `astokengen` with the `--full-paths` option, Aspera recommends using the Node API tool to work with transfer tokens as it provides more functionality. For instructions see [Transfer Token Creation \(Node API\)](#) on page 436. The Node API response includes FASP transfer parameters and the token string, whereas `astokengen` generates only a specific type of token. `astokengen` is most useful for decoding tokens during application development for debugging purposes.

### Syntax and Options

```
# astokengen [options]
```

Option (short form)	Option (long form)	Description
-A	--version	Print version information.
	--mode= <i>mode</i>	Direction of the transfer mode ( <i>send</i>   <i>recv</i> )
-p	--path= <i>path</i>	Source path
	--dest= <i>destination</i>	Destination path
-u	--user= <i>user</i>	Generate the token for this user name. This name is embedded in the token and also used to retrieve further information from <code>aspera.conf</code> ( <code>user_value</code> and <code>token_life_seconds</code> ).
	--source-prefix= <i>prefix</i>	Prepend the given path to each source path.
	--full-paths	Store the entire path set in the token. <b>Note:</b> This option is required when creating tokens for A4 transfers.
	--file-list= <i>filename</i>	Specifies a file name that contains a list of sources for a download token. Each line of the file contains a single source and blank lines are ignored. For example: <pre>/monday/first_thing.txt /monday/next_thing.txt /monday/last_thing.txt</pre>
	--file-pair-list= <i>filename</i>	Specifies a file name that contains a multiplexed list of source and destination pairs for an upload or download token. Each pair of lines encodes one source and one destination and blank lines are ignored. For example <pre>/monday/first_thing.txt /archive/monday/texts/ first_thing /monday/next_thing.txt /archive/monday/texts/ next_thing /monday/last_thing.txt /archive/monday/texts/ last_thing</pre>
-v <i>token</i>		Verify token against user and path parameters.
-t <i>token</i>		Display the contents of the token.
-k <i>passphrase</i>		Passphrase to decrypt token. For use with -t.
-b		Assume user name and paths are encoded in base64.

## General Usage Examples

- Display the contents of the token:

```
# astokengen -t token [options]
```

- Authorize uploads to a specific destination:

```
# astokengen --mode=send [options] -u user --dest=path [-v token]
```

- Authorize uploads of one or more files as source/destination pairs to a specific destination:

```
# astokengen --mode=send [options] -u user --file-pair-list=filename --dest=destination [-v token]
```

- Authorize downloads of one or more files or directories from a specific destination:

```
# astokengen --mode=recv [options] -u user -p path [-p path ...] [-v token]
```

- Authorize downloads of files specified in a file list:

```
# astokengen --mode=recv [options] -u user --file-list=filename [-v token]
```

- Authorize downloads of one or more files as source/destination pairs:

```
# astokengen --mode=recv [options] -u user --file-pair-list=filename [-v token]
```

## Usage Examples

Description	Example
Common upload	<p>In a common upload, only the destination is encoded into the token.</p> <pre># astokengen --user=<i>user</i> --dest=<i>path</i> --mode=send</pre> <p>Source paths and file lists (<code>--path</code> and <code>--file-list</code>) are not allowed and will cause <code>astokengen</code> to fail.</p>
Paired upload	<p>The destination is prepended to the destinations in the paired list file and they are encoded into the token. The destinations are in the odd numbered lines of the file (1, 3, 5, 7, and so on).</p> <pre># astokengen --user=<i>user</i> --dest=<i>path</i> --file-pair-list=<i>filename</i> --mode=send</pre> <p>Source paths and file lists (<code>--path</code> and <code>--file-list</code>) are not allowed and will cause <code>astokengen</code> to fail.</p>
Common download	<p>The specified paths are encoded into the token.</p> <pre># astokengen --user=<i>user</i> --path=<i>filepath1</i> --path=<i>filepath2</i> --mode=recv</pre>



Description	Example
	<pre># astokengen --user=user --file-list=filename --mode=recv</pre> <p>In this case, <code>--dest</code> and <code>--file-pair-list</code> are illegal.</p>
Paired download	<p>The source files from the file pair list are encoded in the token. The sources are in the even numbered lines of the file (0, 2, 4, 6, 8, etc.).</p> <pre># astokengen --user=user --file-pair-list=filename --mode=recv</pre> <p>In this case, <code>--dest</code>, <code>--path</code> and <code>--file-list</code> are illegal.</p>

## Access Key Authentication

Access key authentication provides an alternative to entering the security credentials of a Node API user or system user. Because an access key is restricted to its own storage (local or cloud), it allows access control and usage reporting to be segregated by storage. This offers significant benefits to multi-tenant service providers and enterprise installations with multiple departments.

### Access Key Support:

Access key authentication can be used by Aspera client products such as IBM Aspera Desktop Client, HST Server, HST Endpoint, and IBM Aspera Drive. It can also be used by IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera on Cloud transfer service. For details about using access key authentication with these products, see their documentation.

### Access Key Restrictions:

- The transfer user must have a file restriction configured in `aspera.conf`, rather than a docroot. If a docroot is configured, access key creation and use fails.
- Access keys must specify the storage path. Although they can be created with no storage specified, transfers using these keys fail.

### Access Key Creation:

1. Configure the system user with a restriction and ensure that no docroot is configured:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,AS_NULL;file_restriction,|restriction"
```

The format of the restriction depends on the storage type (these examples allow access to the entire storage):

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	<p>For Unix-like OS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///*</code></li> </ul> <p>For Windows OS:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• specific folder: <code>file:///c%3A/folder/*</code></li> <li>• drive root: <code>file:///c*</code></li> </ul>
Amazon S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage - S3	<code>s3://*</code>
Azure	<code>azu://*</code>
Azure Files	<code>azure-files://*</code>

Storage Type	Format Example
Azure Data Lake Storage	adl://*
Alibaba Cloud	oss://*
Google Cloud	gs://*
HDFS	hdfs://*

For example, to configure the system user `xfer` with a restriction that allows full access to local storage:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;absolute,AS_NULL;file_restriction,|
file:7///*"
```

2. Assign a Node API username and password to the system user. This command requires admin permissions.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -au node_username -p node_password -
x system_user
```

For example, to assign the Node API username `nodeuser` to the system user `xfer`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -au nodeuser -p asperaissofast -x xfer
```

This command automatically reloads the node configuration.

3. To create access keys, send a request to the Node API `/access_keys` endpoint by using `curl` command.

`Curl` is included in many Unix-based operating systems. To determine if it is installed, run `curl` on the command line. If it is not installed, download it from the `Curl` website: <https://curl.haxx.se/download.html>.

To create an access key, run the following command on the server:

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X POST https://localhost:9092/
access_keys -d @access_key_config.json
```

where `access_key_config.json` is the access key configuration file.

For example,

```
# curl -ki -u nodeadmin:superP@55wOrD -X POST https://localhost:9092/
access_keys -d @/nodeadmin/ak_client1.json
```

### Access Key Configuration

The access key configuration is specified in JSON. Only the "storage" object is required; the Node API creates an access key ID and secret if they are not provided.

**Note:** If your access key configuration is simple, you can specify it on the command line, replacing `-d @ access_key_config.json` with an argument like `-d '{"storage": {"type":"local","path":"/projects/project1"}}'`.

```
{
  "id" : "access_key_id",
  "secret" : "access_key_secret",
  "token_verification_key" : "token_key",
  "storage" : {
    storage_configuration
  },
  "license" : {
    "customer_id" : "customer_id",
    "entitlement_id" : "entitlement_id"
  }
}
```

```

},
"configuration" : {
  "transfer" : {
    "cipher" : "cipher",
    "policy" : "policy",
    "target_rate_kbps" : target_rate,
    "target_rate_cap_kbps" : target_rate_cap,
    "content_protection_secret" : "secret",
    "preserve_timestamps" : true|false,
    "aggressiveness" : "aggressiveness",
  },
  "server" : {
    "activity_event_logging" : true|false,
    "recursive_counts" : true|false,
  }
},
"files_filelock_enabled" : true|false,
"files_filelock_restriction" : "restriction"
}

```

Element	Required	Type	Description
id	Optional	String	ID of the access key. Returns 209 ( <i>conflict</i> ) if it already exists. If it is not provided, the Node API creates an ID and returns the value in the response.
secret	Optional	String	Access key secret. If it is not provided, the Node API creates a secret and returns the value in the response.
token_verification_key	Optional	String	Required when the access key is used to create a bearer token, the public key corresponding to the private key that is used to create the bearer token.
storage	<b>Required</b>	JSON	Storage specification object. See examples following this table.
license	Optional	JSON object	Entitlement information, similar to regular Aspera on Demand. This is needed when the access key logs against SafeNet.
customer_id	Optional	String	Customer ID
entitlement_id	Optional	String	ID of the entitlement
configuration	Optional	JSON object	The transfer and server configuration object.
transfer	Optional	JSON object	The transfer configuration object. Available as of 3.8.0.
cipher	Optional	String	<p>The encryption mode and minimum cipher key length allowed by the server for transfers that are authorized by this access key. Default is unset, such that the transfer authorized by the access key must respect the server configuration.</p> <p>Aspera supports three sizes of AES cipher keys (128, 192, and 256 bits) and supports two encryption modes, cipher feedback mode (CFB) and Galois/counter mode (GCM). The GCM mode encrypts data faster and increases transfer speeds compared to the CFB mode, but the server must support and permit it.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> To ensure client compatibility when requiring encryption, use a cipher with the form <code>aes-XXX</code>,</p>

Element	Required	Type	Description
			<p>which is supported by all clients and servers. Requiring GCM causes the server to reject transfers from clients that are running a version of Ascp 3.8.1 or older. When a client requests a shorter cipher key than is configured on the server (or in an access key that authorizes the transfer), the transfer is automatically upgraded to the server setting. For more information about how the server and client negotiate the transfer cipher, see the description of <code>-c</code> in the <a href="#">Ascp Command Reference</a> on page 181.</p> <p><b>Cipher values</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>none</code> - require unencrypted transfers (not recommended).</li> <li><code>aes-128</code>, <code>aes-192</code>, or <code>aes-256</code> - allow transfers that use an encryption cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. These settings use the CFB or GCM mode depending on the client version and cipher requested. Supports all client versions.</li> <li><code>aes-128-cfb</code>, <code>aes-192-cfb</code>, or <code>aes-256-cfb</code> - require that transfers use the CFB encryption mode and a cipher key that is as long or longer than the setting. Supports all client versions.</li> <li><code>aes-128-gcm</code>, <code>aes-192-gcm</code>, or <code>aes-256-gcm</code> - require that transfers use the GCM encryption mode introduced in version 3.9.0 and a cipher that is as long or longer than the setting.</li> </ul> <p>For more information about server cipher configuration, see <a href="#">aspera.conf - Authorization Configuration</a> on page 85.</p>
<code>policy</code>	Optional	String	The policy allowed for transfers that are authorized by this access key. Value can be <code>high</code> , <code>regular</code> , <code>fair</code> , <code>low</code> , <code>trickle</code> , or <code>fixed</code> . Aspera recommends against setting the policy to <code>fixed</code> , which can result in the transfer rate exceeding network or storage capacity if the client also requests a high minimum transfer rate that is not capped by the server. This can decrease transfer performance and cause problems on the target storage. To avoid these problems, set the allowed policy to <code>fair</code> . Available as of 3.8.0.
<code>target_rate_kbps</code>	Optional	Integer	The default initial rate for transfers that are authorized by this access key, in kilobits per second. Available as of 3.8.0.
<code>target_rate_cap_kbps</code>	Optional	Integer	The maximum target rate for transfers that are authorized by this access key, in kilobits per second. Available as of 3.8.0.
<code>content_protection_password</code>	Optional	String	Provide a password to require that content be encrypted by the client (enforce client-side encryption-at-rest) for transfers that are authorized by this access key. Available as of 3.8.0.

Element	Required	Type	Description
preserve_timestamps	Optional	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> to preserve file access and modification timestamps for transfers that are authorized by this access key. The server configuration overrides the access key configuration. Timestamp support in object storage varies by provider; consult your object storage documentation to determine which settings are supported. Default is unset, such that the access key inherits the server configuration. Available as of 3.8.0.
aggressiveness	Optional	Float	The aggressiveness of transfers that are authorized by this access key in claiming available bandwidth. Value can be 0.00-1.00. Available as of 3.8.0.
server	Optional	JSON object	The server configuration object. Available as of 3.8.0.
activity_event_logging	Optional	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> to allow the Node API to query transfers that are associated with this access key through the <code>/events</code> endpoint. The access key configuration overrides the server configuration. This option must be enabled for event reporting to IBM Aspera on Cloud. Default is unset, such that the access key inherits the server configuration. Available as of 3.8.0.
recursive_counts	Optional	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> to enable recursive counts. The access key configuration overrides the server configuration. This option must be enabled for event reporting to IBM Aspera on Cloud. Default is unset, such that the access key inherits the server configuration. Available as of 3.8.0.
files_filelock_enabled	Optional	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> to allow the access key user to create filelocks. Filelocks cannot be set if filelocks are disabled on the server ( <code>files_filelock_enabled</code> is set to <code>false</code> in <code>aspera.conf</code> ). Available as of 3.8.0.
files_filelock_restrictions	Optional	String	Set to <code>none</code> to allow the access key user to write, delete, or rename files if they are not locked or if the filelock was applied by the user. Set to <code>write</code> to allow the access key user to write, delete, or rename files only if the filelock was applied by the user. Available as of 3.8.0.

### Minimum Access Key Configuration - The Storage Object

The "storage" section requires different values, depending on the storage type. The following examples contain the minimum information required to create an access key, and can be cut and pasted into a text file for editing.

#### Local storage

```
{ "storage" : {
  "type" : "local",
  "path" : "path"
}}
```

Because local storage objects are simple, you can create your access key by specifying the storage in the command line:

```
# curl -ki -u nodeadmin:superP@55wOrD -X POST
https://localhost:9092/access_keys -d '{"storage":
{"type":"local","path":"/projects/project1"}}
```

### Amazon S3

```
{"storage" : {
  "type" : "aws_s3",
  "endpoint" : "s3.amazonaws.com",
  "bucket": "bucket",
  "path" : "/path",
  "storage_class" : "STANDARD|REDUCED_REDUNDANCY|
INFREQUENT_ACCESS",
  "server_side_encryption" : "AES256|AWS_KMS",
  "server_side_encryption_aws_kms_key_id" =
  "arn_encryption_key",
  "credentials" : {
    "type" : "key|iam-role|assume-role",
    "access_key_id" : "aws_access_key",
    "secret_access_key" : "secret_access_key",
    "iam_role_name" : "iam_role",
    "assume_role_arn":
    "arn:aws:iam::your_aws_account_id:role/role_name",
    "assume_role_external_id" : "external_id",
    "assume_role_session_name" : "session_name"
  }
}}
```

Where:

- If server side encryption is set to "AWS\_KMS", then "server\_side\_encryption\_aws\_kms\_key\_id" is required and is set to the ARN of the encryption key (for example, "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:648543846928:key/er23525-8754-84g4-8sf7-4834ngigfre45").
- Values for credentials depend on the type of authentication you use. To authenticate with your storage access key ID and secret, only specify "access\_key\_id" and "secret\_access\_key". To authenticate with an IAM role, only specify "iam\_role\_name". To authenticate with an assumed IAM role, only specify "assume\_role\_arn", "assume\_role\_external\_id", and "assume\_role\_session\_name".

### Azure (Block and Page Storage)

```
{"storage" : {
  "type" : "azure",
  "api" : "PAGE | BLOCK",
  "container" : "container",
  "path" : "path",
  "credentials" : {
    "storage_endpoint" : "blob.core.windows.net",
    "type": "key",
    "account" : "account_name",
    "key" : "storage_access_key"
  }
}}
```

### Azure Data Lake Storage

```
"storage" : {
```

```

    "type" : "azure-datalake",
    "path" : "container/path",
    "storage_endpoint" :
    "data_lake_store_name.azuredatalakestore.net",
    "credentials" : {
        "type" : "ClientCredential",
        "client_id" : "client_application_id",
        "refresh_url" : "https://login.windows.net/directory_id/
oauth2/token",
        "client_secret" : "secret"
    }
}

```

### Azure SAS

```

{"storage" : {
    "type" : "azure_sas",
    "container" : "container",
    "path" : "path",
    "api": "BLOCK|PAGE"
    "credentials" : {
        "shared_access_signature" : "shared_url"
    }
}}

```

Where the "shared\_access\_signature" is the shared URL, such as `https://company.blob.core.windows.net/temp?sv=2014-02-14&sr=c&sig=yfew...79uXE%3D&st=2015-07-29T07%3A00%3A00Z&se=2018-08-06T07%3A00%3A00Z&sp=rwdl`.

### Azure Files

```

{"storage" : {
    "type" : "azure-files",
    "path" : "share/path",
    "credentials" : {
        "file_service_endpoint" :
        "https://account.file.core.windows.net/",
        "password" : "password"
    }
}}

```

### Google Cloud Storage

Authenticated by a service account with a private key:

```

{"storage": {
    "type" : "google-gcs",
    "storage_endpoint" : "storage.googleapis.com",
    "bucket" : "bucket",
    "path" : "/path",
    "max_segments_per_compose" : 10000,
    "credentials": {
        "type": "service_account",
        "project_id": "project_id",
        "private_key_id": "key_id",
        "private_key": "-----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----key_string-----
END PRIVATE KEY-----\n",
        "client_email": "client_id@developer.gserviceaccount.com",
    }
}}

```

Authenticated by an OAuth token:

```
{
  "storage" : {
    "type" : "google-gcs",
    "storage_endpoint" : "storage.googleapis.com",
    "bucket" : "bucket",
    "path" : "/path",
    "max_segments_per_compose" : 1024,
    "credentials" : {
      "type" : "oauth",
      "client_id" : "client_id",
      "client_secret" : "secret",
      "project_id" : "project_id",
      "access_token" : "access_token",
      "refresh_token" : "refresh_token",
      "token_expiration" : "token_lifetime_seconds",
      "auth_uri" : "https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/auth",
      "token_uri" : "https://accounts.google.com/o/oauth2/token",
      "auth_provider_x509_cert_url" : "https://www.googleapis.com/oauth2/v1/certs",
      "client_x509_cert_url" : "https://www.googleapis.com/robot/v1/metadata/x509/client_id%40developer.gserviceaccount.com"
    }
  }
}
```

### IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) - S3

```
{
  "storage" : {
    "type" : "ibm-s3",
    "bucket" : "bucket",
    "path" : "/path",
    "endpoint" : "s3-api.us-east-1.objectstorage.service.networklayer.com",
    "credentials" : {
      "type" : "key",
      "access_key_id" : "key_id",
      "secret_access_key" : "key_secret"
    }
  }
}
```

4. Confirm that your access key was created and retrieve its ID by running the following command:

```
# curl -ki -u node_username:node_password -X GET https://localhost:9092/access_keys
```

The output includes the ID and configuration of all access keys. For example, the following output lists an access key is for local storage:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Cache: no-cache
Connection: close
Content-Type: application/json; charset=utf-8

[
  {
    "id" : "ak_1234",
    "secret" : "j3489t42o8y32unifhkfw38ty238h3rih",
    "token_verification_key" : "9mgr3wtl4utmf394ur2ur52jggj934864ginsrh",
    "storage" : {
      "type" : "local",
      "path" : "/"
    }
  },
]
```



```

    "license" : {
      "customer_id" : "customer1",
      "entitlement_id" : "43gsdi459-23r3r-w38ron-23523ro-sr82h3r8h3r"
    },
    "configuration" : {
      "transfer" : {
        "cipher" : "aes-128",
        "policy" : "fair",
        "target_rate_kbps" : 10000,
        "target_rate_cap_kbps" : 20000,
        "content_protection_secret" : "secretsecret",
        "preserve_timestamps" : false,
        "aggressiveness" : "0.00",
      },
      "server" : {
        "activity_event_logging" : true,
        "recursive_counts" : true,
      }
    },
    "files_filelock_enabled" : true,
    "files_filelock_restriction" : "none"
  }
]

```

##### 5. Test the access key.

If your access key is configured correctly, the following command returns the files in the path that was specified in the access key configuration:

```
# curl -ki -u access_key_id:access_key_secret https://localhost:9092/files/1/files
```

## Basic Tokens

An Aspera basic token is created from an access key ID and secret, which authorizes a transfer user access to a specific area of a storage and authenticates that user to the storage. Basic tokens are less restrictive than transfer tokens. They can be used to transfer with any Aspera server that supports access keys (all but IBM Aspera on Cloud).

1. Create an access key for the storage and retrieve its ID and secret, as described in [Access Key Authentication](#) on page 441.
2. Create a basic token by encoding the `access_key_id:secret` in base64.

```
# echo -n access_key_id:access_key_secret | base64
```

For example:

```
# echo -n diDeuFLcpG9IYdsvxj0SCq4mOohNJTKvp5Q2nRWjDgIA:aspera | base64
```

The basic token looks similar to the following:

```
ZG1eZXVGTGNwRz1JWWRzdnhqMFNDcTRtT29oTkpUS3ZwNVEyblJXakRnSUE6YXNwZXJh
```

If the basic token breaks across lines in the output, rerun the command using the `-w0` option to remove the line break. For example:

```
# echo -n access_key_id:access_key_secret | base64 -w0
```

3. Set the basic token as an environment variable by running the following command:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_TOKEN="Basic token_string"
```

You can also specify the basic token on the command line by using the `-W "Basic token_string"`.

4. Transfer content.

To upload a file, use the following syntax:

```
# ascp -i path/to/private_key_file -
d source_path username@hostname:destination_path
```

Where the path to the private key file is:

```
/opt/aspera/var/aspera_tokenauth_id_rsa
```

The *destination\_path* can be `/` to indicate the top of the access key storage, or `/path` to indicate a subdirectory.

For example:

```
# ascp -i /opt/aspera/var/aspera_tokenauth_id_rsa -d testfile03
xfer@10.0.3.4/tmp
```

## Bearer Tokens

A bearer token is created from an access key ID, access key secret, and an SSL private-public key pair. Bearer token authentication is required for transfers to and from IBM Aspera on Cloud, but can be used for transfers with all other Aspera servers, too.

To create a bearer token with `asnodeadmin`, run the following command as a user with admin/root permissions. If you do not specify an SSL key file or directory, you are asked if you want to create one and the filename for the private key. The bearer token is returned in standard out.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asnodeadmin -u node_username -p node_user_password \
  --bearer-create \
  --access-key access_key_id \
  --user-id user_id \
  --expires-at UTC_date \
  --group-ids id1,id2,... \
  --scope-role {user|admin} \
  --token-key-length length
```

Option	Required	Type	Description
<code>-u, --user</code>	<b>Required</b>	String	The Node API username.
<code>-p, --pwd, --password</code>	<b>Required</b>	String	The Node API user's password.
<code>--bearer-create</code>	<b>Required</b>		
<code>--access-key</code>	<b>Required</b>	String	The ID of the access key that is used to create the bearer token
<code>--user-id</code>	<b>Required</b>	String	The ID of the user who is granted permissions to content in the storage by / permissions.

Option	Required	Type	Description
--group-ids	Optional	String	The ID of the group that is granted permissions to content in the storage by / permissions.
--expires-at	Optional	UTC time	The expiration date of the bearer token in UTC format. For example, 2016-06-23T13:21:58.453Z. Default expiration is 1 hour after token creation time.
--scope-role	Optional	String	The access level of the bearer token. Value can be <b>admin</b> (default) or <b>user</b> . <b>admin</b> can change the access key configuration, <b>user</b> cannot.
--token-key-length	Optional	Double	The length of the RSA key. Must be a power of 2 between 1024 bits (128 bytes) and 16384 bits (2048 bytes). Default key length is 4096 bits.

## Highly-Available Redis Backend for an HST Server Cluster

A guide to configuring a highly-available Redis database that is used by all HST Servers in a cluster.

### Introduction

HST Server can be deployed as a high-availability cluster. This is done by configuring a Redis database cluster and using HAProxy to connect the HST Servers to the Redis database. The Redis and HAProxy applications are included in your HST Server installation.

#### Overview

Deploying HST Server as a high-availability cluster enables you to leverage the high-speed transfer capabilities of Aspera with continuous availability and automatic failover if one node goes down.

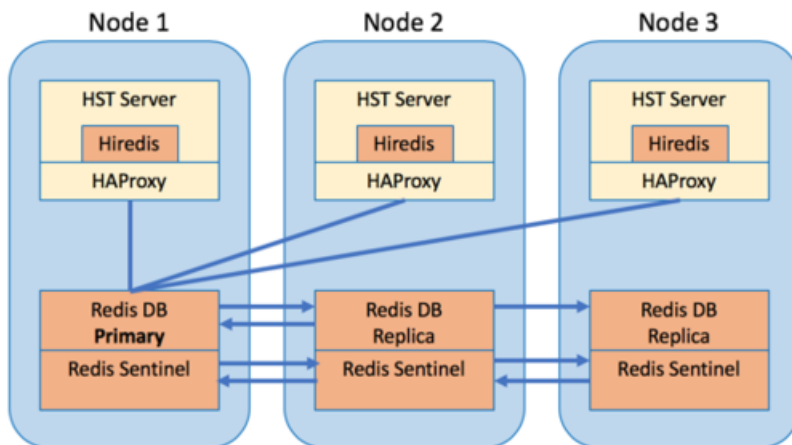
A cluster consists of *nodes*. A node is a machine (physical, virtual, or container) on which IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server and Redis are installed. A Redis node can be a primary (also called a "master") or replica ("slave").

#### Cluster Architecture

In an HST Server cluster with a highly-available Redis backend:

- Each node has HST Server, Redis, and HAProxy. HST Server uses the **Redis database** to manage security and transfers. In a cluster configuration, all HST Servers use the Redis database on the primary node, which is cloned to the replica nodes.
- HST Server uses **Hiredis**, a Redis client, to interact with the Redis database.

- To direct Hiredis requests from all the HST Servers to the primary Redis node, the cluster uses **HAProxy**, a TCP proxy, to identify which Redis nodes are running and which is the master.
- **Redis Sentinel** monitors the status of the Redis databases, communicates between Redis nodes, and automatically promotes a replica to primary if the primary is failing.



### Features and Limitations

Features:

- Robust, reliable database software that is included as part of your HST Server installation.
- Automatic failover from primary to replica.
- Eventual consistency.

Limitations:

- Requires at least three nodes.
- Does not load-balance transfers between HST Servers.
- Does not shard data between Redis nodes.
- Does not support bi-directional replication with conflict resolution.

## Requirements

To successfully deploy a highly-available HST Server cluster, your system must meet the following requirements:

- At least three nodes, preferably an odd number. A node is a machine (physical, virtual, or container) on which IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server is installed.
- Glibc 2.5 or higher.
- SSH Server. If you are using OpenSSH, version 5.2 or higher is recommended.

These instructions were developed and tested CentOS 7. Support for other Linux operating systems has not been tested.

## Setup and Configuration

To set up a highly-available HST Server cluster, you configure HST Server, the Redis database, Redis Sentinel, HAProxy, and syslog on each node. Select one node as the Redis "primary" node and the others are Redis "replica" nodes.

1. On each node, run the following commands to configure HST Server to connect the Redis Client to HAProxy:

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;db_type,ha_redis"
$ asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;db_host,127.0.0.1"
```

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;db_port,31414"
```

Where 31414 is the port on which HAProxy listens.

2. On the Redis primary node, create (or edit an existing) `/opt/aspera/etc/redis.conf` with the following values:

```
bind private_ip_address
port 31415
daemonize yes
pidfile /opt/aspera/var/run/redis.31415.pid
logfile /opt/aspera/var/run/redis_31415.log
tcp-keepalive 300
dbfilename redis.31415.rdb
dir /opt/aspera/var
save 900 1
protected-mode no
```

Where *private\_ip\_address* is the private IP address of the node.

**Note:** If you want Redis to use the system logger, comment out the logfile `/opt/aspera/var/run/redis_31415.log` and set `syslog-enabled` to `yes`. For example:

```
#!/opt/aspera/var/run/redis_31415.log
syslog-enabled yes
```

Configure other syslog parameters, if desired.

Save your changes and close the file.

3. On the Redis replica nodes, create (or edit an existing) `/opt/aspera/etc/redis.conf` with the following values:

```
slaveof primary_ip_address 31415
bind private_ip_address
port 31415
daemonize yes
pidfile /opt/aspera/var/run/redis.31415.pid
logfile /opt/aspera/var/run/redis_31415.log
tcp-keepalive 300
dbfilename redis.31415.rdb
dir /opt/aspera/var
save 900 1
protected-mode no
```

Where:

- *primary\_ip\_address* is the private IP address of the primary node
- *private\_ip\_address* is the private IP address of the local replica node

Configure logging as you did on the primary node.

Save your changes and close the file.

4. On each node, configure Redis Sentinel.
  - a) Open port 26379 in iptables.
  - b) Open `/opt/aspera/etc/sentinel.conf` and add or edit the following lines:

```
port 26379
bind private_ip_address
sentinel monitor primary_name primary_ip_address 31415 quorum
sentinel down-after-milliseconds primary_name down_time
sentinel failover-timeout primary_name timeout
```

```
logfile "/opt/aspera/etc/redis-sentinel.log"
```

Where:

- *private\_ip\_address* is the private IP address of the local node.
- *primary\_name* is a name of the primary node. The name can include A-z, 0-9, and ".", "-", or "\_"; the name cannot include special characters or spaces.
- *primary\_ip\_address* is the private IP address of the primary node. On the primary node, *private\_ip\_address* and *primary\_ip\_address* are the same.
- *quorum* is the number of Redis Sentinels that must agree that the primary is not reachable.
- *down\_time* is the number of milliseconds after which a node is reported as failing.
- *timeout* is the number of seconds after which a failover process is started.

Redis Sentinel does not support logging to syslog; it must use a separate file.

For example:

```
port 26379
bind 10.0.213.131
sentinel monitor myprimary 10.0.114.111 31415 2
sentinel down-after-milliseconds myprimary 300
sentinel failover-timeout myprimary 1000
logfile "/opt/aspera/etc/redis-sentinel.log"
```

Save your changes and close the file.

## 5. On each node, configure HAProxy.

a) Open `/opt/aspera/etc/haproxy/haproxy.cfg.template`:

```
...
# http://haproxy.1wt.eu/download/1.4/doc/configuration.txt
# log is set for syslog configuration https://cbonte.github.io/haproxy-
dconv/1.7/configuration.html#log
global
    log          127.0.0.1 local2 info
    chroot      /var/lib/haproxy
    pidfile     /var/run/haproxy.pid
    maxconn    4000
    user        haproxy
    group       haproxy
    daemon

# Specifies TCP timeout on connect for use by the frontend ft_redis
# Set the max time to wait for a connection attempt to a server to
succeed
# The server and client side expected to acknowledge or send data.
defaults REDIS
    mode tcp
    option tcplog
    timeout connect 3s
    timeout server 4s
    timeout client 4s

# Specifies listening socket for accepting client connections using the
default
# REDIS TCP timeout and backend bk_redis TCP health check.
frontend ft_redis
    bind *:31414 name redisft
    default_backend bk_redis

# Specifies the backend Redis proxy server TCP health settings
# Ensure it only forward incoming connections to reach a master.
```

```

backend bk_redis
  option tcp-check
  tcp-check comment PING\ phase
  tcp-check send PING\r\n
  tcp-check expect string +PONG
  tcp-check comment role\ check
  tcp-check send info\ replication\r\n
  tcp-check expect string role:master
  tcp-check comment QUIT\ phase
  tcp-check send QUIT\r\n
  tcp-check expect string +OK
  server redis-1 primary_ip_address:31415 maxconn 1024 check inter 1s
  server redis-2 replica1_ip_address:31415 maxconn 1024 check inter 1s
  server redis-3 replica2_ip_address:31415 maxconn 1024 check inter 1s

```

- b) Edit the last lines in the file, which specify the private IP addresses of the cluster nodes.  
The template shows the configuration for three cluster nodes; add similar lines for additional nodes.
- c) Save the file as `/opt/aspera/etc/haproxy/haproxy.cfg` and close it.
- d) Verify the configuration:

```
$ /opt/aspera/sbin/haproxy -f /opt/aspera/etc/haproxy/haproxy.cfg -c
```

- e) Configure iptables to ACCEPT the Redis IP addresses.

Your cluster is now configured. You can now launch and test it.

## Start and Test the Cluster

---

Once HST Server, Redis database, Redis Sentinel, and HAProxy are configured on each node, you can start the cluster and test that it is working.

1. Restart the Redis database, first on the primary node, then the replica nodes:

```
$ /opt/aspera/sbin/asperaredisd /opt/aspera/etc/redis.conf
```

2. On each node, start Redis Sentinel:

```
$ /opt/aspera/sbin/asperaredisd /opt/aspera/etc/sentinel.conf --sentinel
```

3. On each node, start HAProxy:

```
$ /opt/aspera/sbin/haproxy -f /opt/aspera/etc/haproxy/haproxy.cfg
```

4. On each node, restart HST Server:

```
$ systemctl restart asperanoded.service
```

5. On each node, confirm that asperanoded is running:

```
$ systemctl status asperanoded.service
```

6. On each node, confirm that HAProxy is running:

```
$ ps -ef | grep "aspera\|proxy"
$ lsof -ni:1024-65536 -P | grep "aspera\|proxy\|COMMAND"
```

## Redis Sentinel Operation

---

Use the Redis Sentinel API to get information about the Redis nodes, test failover, and reconfigure Sentinel at runtime, among other tasks. For more information, see <https://redis.io/topics/sentinel>.

## Logging

---

Logs for Redis, HAProxy, and HST Server are found in the following locations:

**Redis database:** `/opt/aspera/etc/redis_31415.log` or `syslog`, depending on the Redis configuration.

**Redis Sentinel:** `/opt/aspera/etc/redis_sentinel.log`

**HAProxy and HST Server:** `/var/log/haproxy.log`

## Asconfigurator Reference

---

### The asconfigurator Utility

---

The `asconfigurator` utility is a command-line tool for interacting with `aspera.conf`, the file that holds most configuration settings for your Aspera transfer server. `asconfigurator` comes bundled with your installation of Enterprise Server, Connect Server, and Point-to-Point Client.

#### Why Use `asconfigurator`?

Because `aspera.conf` is an XML file, users can configure their transfer server by editing the file directly. However, editing the file manually can be cumbersome and error-prone because correct syntax and structure are strictly enforced. The `asconfigurator` utility enables you to edit `aspera.conf` through commands and parses, validates and writes well-formed XML while also confirming that the values entered for parameters are valid.

With `asconfigurator`, you can edit `aspera.conf` quickly and safely, with one or two commands.

#### After Editing `aspera.conf`

Whether you use `asconfigurator` or manually edit `aspera.conf`, the file must be re-read and certain services restarted in order for the changes to take effect. For detailed information, see the *Administrator's Guide: Restarting Aspera Services* for your Aspera transfer server.

## Syntax and Usage

---

### General Syntax

```
# asconfigurator -x "command[;parameter,value;parameter,value]"
```

The `command` is either a `set` command for setting a configuration or a `delete` command for removing a configuration. For any `command` you may enter one or more set of parameters and values separated by semicolons.

**Note:** The user executing `asconfigurator` commands must meet the following requirements:

- Have write access to `aspera.conf`.
- Not be configured to use a shell that restricts command usage (`aspsell` does not allow the use of `asconfigurator`).



## Commands for Setting Parameter Values

Command	Description
<code>set_user_data</code>	Sets data in the user section. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">User, Group and Default Configurations</a> on page 460.
<code>set_group_data</code>	Sets data in the group section. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">User, Group and Default Configurations</a> on page 460.
<code>set_trunk_data</code>	Sets data in the trunk section, which contains Vlink settings. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">Trunk (Vlink) Configurations</a> on page 466.
<code>set_central_server_data</code>	Sets data in the central server section, which contains Aspera Central and SOAP settings. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">Central Server Configurations</a> on page 466.
<code>set_database_data</code>	Sets data in the database section, which contains settings for use with Aspera Console (earlier than 3.0). For parameters and values, see <a href="#">Database Configurations</a> on page 469.
<code>set_server_data</code>	Sets data in the server section, which contains transfer server feature settings for use with the Node API. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">Server Configurations</a> on page 470.
<code>set_http_server_data</code>	Sets data in the HTTP fallback server section. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">HTTP Server Configurations</a> on page 467.
<code>set_client_data</code>	Sets data from the client section, which holds client transfer settings. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">Client Configurations</a> on page 474.
<code>set_node_data</code>	Sets data in the default section, which holds the "global" node settings. For parameters and values, see <a href="#">User, Group and Default Configurations</a> on page 460.

**Note:** To reset a parameter to its default value, you can use a `set` command for the parameter with a value of `AS_NULL`.

## Commands for Deleting Configurations

Delete commands can be used for removing a user, group or Vlink configuration.

Command	Description
<code>delete_user</code>	Deletes a user's configurations.
<code>delete_group</code>	Deletes a group's configurations.
<code>delete_trunk</code>	Deletes a Vlink's configurations.

## Modifying Files other than `aspera.conf`

The general syntax above modifies the default `aspera.conf`. You can also run `asconfigurator` to modify an XML file of your choice instead of `aspera.conf`.

The command below takes a path to a file to modify. If the file does not exist, it is created.

```
# asconfigurator -x "command[;parameter,value;parameter,value]" /path/to/
file
```

The command below takes paths to two files. The first file is used as a base, and the modifications are written to the second file.

```
# asconfigurator -x "command[;parameter,value;parameter,value]" /path/to/
file /path/to/file1
```

## Using Fitness Rules

Fitness rules allow you to apply configuration settings conditionally when specified rules are met. Fitness rules are added to `aspera.conf` configurations as attributes within XML tags, such as the following:

```
<value fitness="peer_ip"(192.168.15.81)>allow</value>
```

In the example above, the parameter is set to allow if the peer IP address is 192.168.15.81.

### Fitness Rule Syntax:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"command;parameter,value,fitness,fitness_rule(fitness_template)"
```

Fitness Rule	Example	Description
cookie()	cookie(wilcard_template)	The parameter value is applied if the cookie passed from the application matches the specified template.
peer_ip()	peer_ip(ip_address/netmask)	The parameter value is applied if the IP address of the peer (the client) matches the specified IP address and optionally, its netmask.
peer_domain()	peer_domain(wilcard_template)	The parameter value is applied if the domain of the peer (the client) matches the specified template.

For example, to set a `peer_ip` fitness rule on the `authorization_transfer_in_value` configuration so that incoming transfers from 192.168.16.70 are denied, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;authorization_transfer_in_value,deny,fitness,peer_ip(192.168.16.70)"
```

## Examples

Below are some example commands and usage tips.

**Note:** You can also see sample commands for nearly all configurations by running the following `asuser` command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

- Setting the docroot of your transfer user

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,transferuser;absolute,/path/to/docroot"
```

- Enabling HTTP Fallback using HTTPS on port 8444.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;enable_https,true"
# asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;https_port,8444"
```

**Note:** You can also chain two or more parameters to set within the same command. The two commands above can be combined as follows (separated by semi-colons):

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_http_server_data;enable_https,true;https_port,8444"
```

- Setting the global inbound target transfer rate to 80Mb/s

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_in_bandwidth_flow_target_rate_default,80000"
```

- Getting all the configurations set on the group `aspera_group`

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -g aspera_group
```

- Creating and enabling a Vlink with an ID of 101 and a capacity of 100Mb/s

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_trunk_data;id,101;trunk_on,true;trunk_capacity,100000"
```

- Allowing only encrypted transfers

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_node_data;transfer_encryption_allowed_cipher,aes-128"
```

- Setting the hostname of the Aspera server to `example.com`

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;server_name,example.com"
```

- Setting the global token life back to the default value of 24 hours (86400 seconds)

**Note:** You can reset any setting to its default value by setting it to `AS_NULL`

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;token_life_seconds,AS_NULL"
```

## Reading Output

---

The output for `asconfigurator` commands are structured and display feedback about the success or failure of each command.

### Set commands

When successful, set commands print `success` to standard out:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;enable_http,true"
success
```

When unsuccessful, set commands print `failure` to standard out, and an explanation of why they failed:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;enable_http,true"
failure
```

```
Syntax Error: Syntax error. Valid values are "assert_current", "server"
or "option_mask", got "enable_htt"
```

### Reading `aspera.conf` configuration settings with `asuserdata`

You can view the current configuration settings by section and all the possible parameters with their default values and corresponding `asconfigurator` syntax by running `asuserdata`.

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata [options] [commands]
```

The `asuserdata` command must be run either from within the Aspera `bin` directory, or with the full path in front of it.

Multiple command flags can be specified per call. The option flags modify the output of command flags that follow them (but not command flags that precede them).

### Command Flags

Command Flag	Description
<code>-u user</code>	Outputs configurations set in the user section for the specified user.
<code>-g group</code>	Outputs configurations set in the group section for the specified group.
<code>-d</code>	Outputs configurations set in the database section.
<code>-c</code>	Outputs configurations set in the central server section.
<code>-t</code>	Outputs configurations set in the HTTP server section.
<code>-a</code>	Outputs configurations set in all sections except the user and group section.
<code>-s</code>	Outputs the default specification for <code>aspera.conf</code> configurations. Similar to <code>-+</code> but does not show <code>asconfigurator</code> commands.
<code>-+</code>	Outputs the default specification for <code>aspera.conf</code> configurations and corresponding <code>asconfigurator</code> commands for each parameter.

### Option Flags

Option Flag	Description
<code>-x</code>	Formats output as XML.
<code>-b</code>	Formats output in human readable language.

**Note:** To see all `asuserdata` command options, run `asuserdata -h`.

## User, Group and Default Configurations

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings for transfer authorization, bandwidth, and encryption. These settings can apply to particular users, users in particular groups, or globally to all users.

The syntax of set commands for users, groups and global settings are:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;parameter,value"
# asconfigurator -x "set_group_data;group_name,groupname;parameter,value"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;parameter,value"
```

Setting or getting user/group data requires you to specify the username or group name as the first parameter of the `asconfigurator` command.

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

## Transfer Authorizations

### **absolute**

The docroot path of a user.

Values: (String)

### **authorization\_transfer\_in\_value**

Incoming transfer authorization. The `token` value only allows transfers initiated with valid tokens.

Values: `allow` (default), `deny`, `token`

### **authorization\_transfer\_out\_value**

Outgoing transfer authorization. The `token` value only allows transfers initiated with valid tokens.

Values: `allow` (default), `deny`, `token`

### **authorization\_transfer\_in\_external\_provider\_url**

The URL of the external authorization provider for incoming transfers.

Values: (String)

### **authorization\_transfer\_out\_external\_provider\_url**

The URL of the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers.

Values: (String)

### **authorization\_transfer\_in\_external\_provider\_soap\_action**

The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for incoming transfers.

Values: (String)

### **authorization\_transfer\_out\_external\_provider\_soap\_action**

The SOAP action required by the external authorization provider for outgoing transfers.

Values: (String)

### **token\_encryption\_type**

The cipher used to generate encrypted authorization tokens.

Values: `aes-128` (default), `aes-192`, `aes-256`

### **token\_encryption\_key**

The secret passphrase used to generate encrypted authorization tokens. Use instead of `token_encryption_keyfile`.

Values: (String)

### **token\_life\_seconds**

The length of time a token is valid in seconds. The default value is 86400 seconds (24 hours).

Values: (Number)

## Transfer Bandwidth Policies

### **transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_aggregate\_trunk\_id**

The ID of the Vlink to apply to incoming transfers. A value of 0 disables the Vlink.

Values: (Number 0-255)

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_aggregate\_trunk\_id**

The ID of the VLink to apply to outgoing transfers. A value of 0 disables the VLink.

Values: (Number 0-255)

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_cap**

The maximum value to which the target rate for incoming transfers can be set.

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_cap**

The maximum value to which the target rate for outgoing transfers can be set (in Kbps).

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_default**

The default value to which the target rate for incoming transfers is set (in Kbps).

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_default**

The default value to which the target rate for outgoing transfers is set (in Kbps).

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_lock**

A value of false allows users to adjust the transfer rate for incoming transfers. A value of true prevents users from adjusting the transfer rate for incoming transfers.

Values: false (default), true

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_target\_rate\_lock**

A value of false allows users to adjust the transfer rate for outgoing transfers. A value of true prevents users from adjusting the transfer rate for outgoing transfers.

Values: false (default), true

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_cap**

The maximum value to which the minimum rate for incoming transfers can be set (in Kbps). Transfers cannot go slower than the minimum rate.

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_cap**

The maximum value to which the minimum rate for outgoing transfers can be set (in Kbps). Transfers cannot go slower than the minimum rate.

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_default**

The default value to which the minimum rate for incoming transfers is set (in Kbps). Transfers cannot go slower than the minimum rate.

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_default**

The default value to which the minimum rate for outgoing transfers is set (in Kbps). Transfers cannot go slower than the minimum rate.

Values: (Number)

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_lock**

A value of false allows users to adjust the minimum rate for incoming transfers. A value of true prevents users from adjusting the minimum rate for incoming transfers.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_min\_rate\_lock**

A value of `false` allows users to adjust the minimum rate for outgoing transfers. A value of `true` prevents users from adjusting the minimum rate for outgoing transfers.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_default**

The default bandwidth policy for incoming transfers. The bandwidth policy determines how transfers adjust their rates according to network conditions.

Values: `fair` (default), `fixed`, `high`, `low`

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_default**

The default bandwidth policy for outgoing transfers. The bandwidth policy determines how transfers adjust their rates according to network conditions.

Values: `fair` (default), `fixed`, `high`, `low`

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_lock**

A value of `false` allows users to adjust the bandwidth policy for incoming transfers. A value of `true` prevents users from adjusting the bandwidth policy for incoming transfers.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_lock**

A value of `false` allows users to adjust the bandwidth policy for outgoing transfers. A value of `true` prevents users from adjusting the bandwidth policy for outgoing transfers.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**transfer\_in\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_allowed**

The allowed bandwidth policies for incoming transfers. The chosen value and any policy less aggressive will be allowed. In order from most to least aggressive the policies are `fixed`, `high`, `fair` and `low`.

Values: `any` (default), `high`, `fair`, `low`

**transfer\_out\_bandwidth\_flow\_policy\_allowed**

The allowed bandwidth policies for outgoing transfers. The chosen value and any policy less aggressive will be allowed. In order from most to least aggressive the policies are `fixed`, `high`, `fair` and `low`.

Values: `any` (default), `high`, `fair`, `low`

## Transfer Encryption

**transfer\_encryption\_allowed\_cipher**

The type of transfer encryption accepted. When set to `'any'` both encrypted and unencrypted transfers are allowed.

Values: `any` (default), `aes-128`, `aes-192`, `aes-256`, `none`

**transfer\_encryption\_fips\_mode**

Whether transfers should be encrypted with a FIPS 140-2 certified encryption module.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**content\_protection\_required**

Whether transferred content should be left encrypted at the destination.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**content\_protection\_strong\_pass\_required**

Whether a strong passphrase is required for content protection (6 characters long, at least one letter, number and special symbol).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

## Transfer File System Options

### **resume\_suffix**

The extension of files used to store metadata and enable resumption of partially completed transfers. Include a '!' in the suffix, such as: `.aspera`

Values: (String), default `.aspx`

### **preserve\_attributes**

The file creation policy. When set to `none` the timestamps of source files are not preserved. When set to `times` the timestamps of source files are preserved at the destination.

Values: `use client setting` (default), `none`, `times`

### **overwrite**

Whether Aspera clients are allowed to overwrite existing files on the server.

Values: `allow` (default), `deny`

### **file\_manifest**

A file manifest is a file containing a list of everything transferred in a given transfer session. When set to `text` file manifests are generated.

Values: `none` (default), `text`, `disable`

### **file\_manifest\_path**

The location (path) where file manifests are created.

Values: (Absolute path)

### **pre\_calculate\_job\_size**

The policy of calculating total job size before a transfer. If set to `any`, the client configuration is followed. If set to `no`, job size calculation is disabled before transferring.

Values: `any` (default), `no`, `yes`

### **replace\_illegal\_chars**

Convert restricted Windows characters in file and directory names to a non-reserved character of your choice.

Values: (Non-reserved character)

### **file\_filters**

Exclude and include files or directories with the specified pattern in the transfer. Each entry starts with a separator, preferably "|". Add multiple entries for more inclusion and exclusion patterns. To specify an exclusion, add '-' (- and whitespace) at the beginning of the pattern, such as `|-*2016*`. To specify an inclusion, add '+' (+ and whitespace) at the beginning of the pattern, such as `|+*.jpg`.

Two symbols can be used in the setting of patterns:

\* (Asterisk) Represents zero to many characters in a string, for example, `*.tmp` matches `.tmp` and `abcde.tmp`.

? (Question Mark) Represents one character, for example, `t?p` matches `tmp` but not `temp`.

Specify multiple filters as a delimited list: `|+*.jpg|-2016*`.

Values: (String)

### **partial\_file\_suffix**



Extension to be added to the names of files that are currently only partially transferred. Include a '.' in the suffix, such as: `.aspera`

Values: (String)

#### **file\_checksum**

Type of checksum to compute while reading a file. Checksums are used to verify that file contents on the destination match what was read on the destination.

Values: `any` (default), `md5`, `sha1`, `sha256`, `sha384`, or `sha512`

#### **async\_enabled**

Whether `async` is enabled on the server.

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **async\_connection\_timeout**

The time period `async` waits to establish a connection, in seconds.

Values: (Number)

#### **async\_session\_timeout**

The time period `async` waits for an unresponsive session, in seconds.

Values: (Number)

### **Document Root Options**

#### **absolute**

The absolute path of the document root (docroot), which is the area of the file system that is accessible by Aspera users.

Values: (Absolute path)

#### **read\_allowed**

Whether users are allowed to transfer files from the docroot (in other words, download from the docroot).

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **write\_allowed**

Whether users are allowed to transfer files to the docroot (in other words, upload to the docroot).

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **dir\_allowed**

Whether users are allowed to browse files in the docroot.

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **file\_restriction**

Restrict the files that are allowed for transfers. Restrictions are set as wildcard templates. The first character is a separator (preferably a "|") which can be used to set multiple restrictions. Restrictions are processed in order and according to the following rules:

- If a restriction starts with a "|", any files that match the rest of the wildcard template are rejected.
- If a restriction does not start with a "|", then any file that matches is allowed
- Any other files are rejected

For example: `|/home/aspera/*|home/janedoe/*`

Values: (Character separator)(Wildcard template)[(Character separator)(Wildcard template)]

## Trunk (Vlink) Configurations

---

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings related to Vlinks, which are aggregate bandwidth caps applied to transfer sessions.

The syntax for setting trunk configurations is the following :

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_trunk_data;id, trunk_id;parameter,value"
```

Setting or getting trunk data requires you to specify the ID number of the Vlink as the first parameter of the asconfigurator command.

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

### Vlink Configurations

#### trunk\_id

The ID of the Vlink.

Values: (Number 1-255)

#### trunk\_on

Whether the Vlink is enabled (`true`) or disabled (`false`).

Values: `true`, `false`

#### trunk\_capacity

The bandwidth capacity of the Vlink (in Kbps).

Values: (Number)

## Central Server Configurations

---

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings related to Aspera Central, which is a service that manages transfer server SOAP features and historical transfer data.

The syntax for setting central server parameters is the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_central_server_data;parameter,value"
```

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

### Central Server Configurations

#### address

The network interface address on which the Aspera Central listens. The default 127.0.0.1 enables the transfer server to accept transfer requests from the local computer. Setting the value to 0.0.0.0 allows the transfer server to accept transfer requests on all network interfaces.

Values: (Network interface address, default 127.0.0.1)

#### **port**

The port on which the Aspera Central service listens.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 40001)

#### **persistent\_store**

Whether to store transfer history locally. This should be enabled if the transfer server will be used with Faspex or Shares.

Values: *enable* (default), *disable*

#### **persistent\_store\_max\_age**

The time in seconds to retain local transfer history data.

Values: (Number, default 86400)

#### **persistent\_store\_on\_error**

Whether the Central server should terminate (*exit*) when an error occurs while writing to the local transfer history database, or ignore the error.

Values: *ignore* (default), *exit*

#### **compact\_on\_startup**

Whether to compact the local transfer history database on startup (note that this may take awhile).

Values: *ignore* (default), *exit*

#### **files\_per\_session**

The number of file names to be recorded for any transfer session. For example, if the value is set to 50 the first 50 filenames will be recorded for any session. A setting of 0 logs all filenames. The session will still record the number of files transferred, and the number of files completed, failed or skipped.

Values: (Number, default 1000000)

#### **ignore\_empty\_files**

Whether to block the logging of zero byte files (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

#### **ignore\_skipped\_files**

Whether to block the logging of skipped files (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

#### **ignore\_no\_transfer\_files**

Whether to block the logging of files that were not transferred because they already exist at the destination (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

## HTTP Server Configurations

---

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings related to the Aspera HTTP server, which enables the HTTP Fallback feature.

The syntax for setting HTTP server parameters is the following :

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;parameter,value"
```

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata --+
```

## HTTP Server Configurations

### **cert\_file**

The absolute path to an SSL certificate file to use for HTTP Fallback. If left blank the default certificate that came with your transfer server installation will be used.

Values: (Absolute path)

### **key\_file**

The absolute path to an SSL key file to use for HTTP Fallback. If left blank the default key file that came with your transfer server installation will be used.

Values: (Absolute path)

### **bind\_address**

The network interface on which the HTTP Fallback server listens. The default value 0.0.0.0 allows the HTTP Fallback server to accept transfer requests on all network interfaces.

Values: (Network interface address, default 0.0.0.0)

### **restartable\_transfers**

Whether interrupted transfers should resume at the point of interruption (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

### **session\_activity\_timeout**

The amount of time in seconds that the HTTP Fallback server will wait before canceling a transfer session that can't communicate with the client. A value of 0 means the HTTP Fallback server will never timeout due to lack of communication from the client.

Values: (Number, default 20)

### **http\_port**

The port on which the HTTP server listens.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 8080)

### **https\_port**

The port on which the HTTPS server listens.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 8443)

### **enable\_http**

Whether HTTP Fallback is enabled for failed UDP transfers to continue over HTTP (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

### **enable\_https**

Whether HTTP Fallback is enabled for failed UDP transfers to continue over HTTPS (*true*) or not (*false*).

Values: *true* (default), *false*

## Database Configurations

---

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings related to the MySQL database that stores transfer data (for use with Aspera Console before version 3.0).

The syntax for setting database parameters is the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_database_data;parameter,value"
```

### Database Configurations

#### **server**

The IP address of the database server (or the IP address of the Aspera Console server).

Values: (IP address, default 127.0.0.1)

#### **port**

The port that the database server listens on. The default value for an Aspera Console installation is 4406.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 4406)

#### **user**

The user login for the database server.

Values: (String)

#### **password**

The password for the database server.

Values: (String)

#### **database\_name**

The name of the database used to store Aspera transfer data.

Values: (String)

#### **threads**

The number of parallel connections used for database logging.

Values: (Number, default 1)

#### **exit\_on\_database\_error**

Whether all transfers are stopped on a database error (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

#### **session\_progress**

Whether transfer status should be logged at a given interval (`true`) or not (`false`). Transfer status includes number of files transferred, bytes transferred, among other stats.

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **session\_progress\_interval**

The frequency at which an Aspera node logs transfer session data, in seconds.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 1)

#### **file\_events**

Whether complete file paths and file names should be logged (`true`) or not (`false`). Performance may be impacted when setting this to `true` for transfers of thousands of files.

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **file\_progress**

Whether file status, such as bytes transferred, should be logged (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **file\_progress\_interval**

The frequency with which an Aspera node logs file transfer data, in seconds.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 1)

#### **files\_per\_session**

The number of file names to be recorded for any transfer session. For example, if the value is set to 50 the first 50 filenames will be recorded for any session. A setting of 0 logs all filenames. The session will still record the number of files transferred, and the number of files completed, failed or skipped.

Values: (Number, default 0)

#### **file\_progress\_interval**

The frequency at which an Aspera node logs file transfer data, in seconds.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 1)

#### **ignore\_empty\_files**

Whether to block the logging of zero byte files (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

#### **ignore\_skipped\_files**

Whether to block the logging of skipped files (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

#### **ignore\_no\_transfer\_files**

Whether to block the logging of files that were not transferred because they already exist at the destination (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

## Server Configurations

---

### General Syntax

This collection of commands configures settings related to transfer server features such as the Aspera Node API service (`asperanoded`), Aspera Watch Service, Aspera Watchfolders, and Aspera Proxy.

The syntax for setting server parameters is the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;parameter,value"
```

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata --
```

### Transfer Server

#### **server\_name**

The hostname or IP address of this Aspera transfer server.

Values: (String)

**transfers\_multi\_session\_default**

The default value for the number of sessions in a multi-session transfer.

Values: (Number, default 1)

**transfers\_retry\_duration**

The time duration during which transfer retries are attempted.

Values: (Time value, default 20m)

**transfers\_retry\_all\_failures**

Whether a transfer should be retried after all failures (`true`) or not (`false`). If set to `false`, transfers won't be retried for failed deemed unretryable, such as for permission failures.

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**http\_port**

The HTTP port on which the asperanoded service listens.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 9091)

**https\_port**

The HTTPS port on which the asperanoded service listens.

Values: (Number 1-65535, default 9092)

**enable\_http**

Whether HTTP is enabled for asperanoded on the port configured for `http_port` (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**enable\_https**

Whether HTTPS is enabled for asperanoded on the port configured for `https_port` (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `true` (default), `false`

**cert\_file**

The full path of the SSL certificate file for asperanoded.

Values: (Absolute file path)

**ssh\_host\_key\_fingerprint**

The SSH key fingerprint used by Aspera clients to determine the server's authenticity. The client confirms a server's authenticity by comparing the server's fingerprint with the trusted fingerprint.

Values: (String)

**ssh\_host\_key\_path**

The path to the transfer server's public or private key file, from which the fingerprint is extracted automatically.

Values: (Absolute file path)

**ssh\_port**

The port to use for SSH authentication of transfer users.

Values: (Number, default 33001)

**max\_response\_entries**

The maximum number of items the Node API will return on calls.

Values: (Number, default 1000)

**max\_response\_time\_sec**

The time limit in seconds before an unresponsive Node API response times out.

Values: (Number, default 10)

**db\_dir**

The path to the directory where the redis database file for the Node API is saved.

Values: (Absolute path)

**db\_port**

The port on which the redis database for the Node API listens.

Values: (Number, default 31415)

**activity\_logging**

Whether transfer logs should be queriable via the Node API (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**watchd\_enabled**

Whether the Watchfolder (`asperawatchd`) service is enabled (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**ssl\_ciphers**

The list of SSL encryption ciphers that the server will allow. Each cipher is separated by a colon (:). See the server documentation for the default list of ciphers.

Values: (Colon-delimited list)

**ssl\_protocol**

The minimum allowed SSL protocol. Higher security protocols are always allowed.

`tlsv1` (default), `tlsv1.1`, `tlsv1.2`

**Aspera Proxy****proxy\_enabled**

Whether forward proxy is on (`true`) or off (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**proxy\_authentication**

Whether to enable the authentication requirement for the forward proxy server (`true`) or not (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

**proxy\_bind\_ip\_address**

The IP address that the forward proxy server binds to (also the IP address that the client connects to). `0.0.0.0` allows the proxy server to bind to all available interfaces.

Values: (IP address, default `0.0.0.0`)

**proxy\_bind\_ip\_netmask**

The netmask that the forward proxy server binds to (also the netmask that the client connects to).

Values: (String)

**proxy\_port\_range\_low**

The lower bound of the port range for the forward proxy.

Values: (Number, default `5000`)

**proxy\_port\_range\_high**



The upper bound of the port range for the forward proxy.

Values: (Number, default 10000)

#### **proxy\_cleanup\_interval**

The interval in seconds at which the forward proxy server scans and cleans up expired sessions.

Values: (Number, default 0)

#### **proxy\_keepalive\_internal**

The interval in seconds at which the ascp client sends keep-alive requests. This option is propagated to the client.

Values: (Number, default 0)

#### **proxy\_session\_timeout**

The interval in seconds after which a session times out if no keep-alive updates have been received.

Values: (Number, default 0)

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_proxy\_port**

The reverse proxy server port that receives UDP traffic.

Values: (Number, default 33001)

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_host**

The IP address and SSH port of the internal destination. If unspecified the default port is 22.

Values: (IP address and port)

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_hosts**

The list of IP addresses and SSH ports for the load-balancing feature. The first character is a separator (preferably a "|") which can be used to set multiple hosts. For example: | 10.0.23.123:33001|10.0.23.124:33001|10.0.23.125:33001

Values: (Character separator)(IP address)[(Character separator)(IP address)]

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_squash\_user**

The account name used for authenticating with the internal server.

Values: (String)

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_key\_file**

The path to the SSH private key for authenticating with the internal server.

Values: (Absolute path)

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_udp\_port\_reuse**

Whether the reverse proxy should reuse the UDP port (`true`) or not (`false`). Setting this to `false` enables reverse proxy to create iptables rules that increment the UDP port number that clients connect to, and the internal server's UDP port to which transfers are routed to.

Values: `true` (default), `false`

#### **rproxy\_rules\_rule\_balancing**

The method for distributing transfers as part of the load balancing feature. Currently `round-robin` is the only supported method.

Values: `round-robin` (default)

#### **rproxy\_enabled**

Whether reverse proxy is on (`true`) or off (`false`).

Values: `false` (default), `true`

#### **rproxy\_log\_level**

The level of debug messages to log for reverse proxy.

Values: 0 (default), 1, 2

### **rproxy\_log\_directory**

The reverse proxy server log file location. If no value is set, the proxy logs to syslog.

Values: (Absolute path)

## Client Configurations

---

### General Syntax Guidelines

This collection of commands configures settings related to client transfers, which are transfers you initiate with `ascp` on the command line or the GUI of your product.

The syntax for setting client parameters is the following:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_client_data;parameter,value"
```

**Note:** Not all available parameters are listed below, only the most commonly used. To view a complete list, run the following command:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -+
```

### Parameters and Values

#### **transport\_cipher**

The encryption cipher to use for transfers.

Values: aes-128 (default), aes-192, aes-256, none

#### **ssl\_ciphers**

The list of SSL encryption ciphers that the server will allow. Each cipher is separated by a colon (:). See the server documentation for the default list of ciphers.

Values: (Colon-delimited list)

#### **ssl\_protocol**

The minimum allowed SSL protocol. Higher security protocols are always allowed.

Values: tlsv1 (default), tlsv1.1, tlsv1.2

#### **default\_ssh\_key**

The path to the default SSH key that should be used in command line transfers.

Values: (Absolute path)

## Troubleshooting

---

Solutions to common problems.

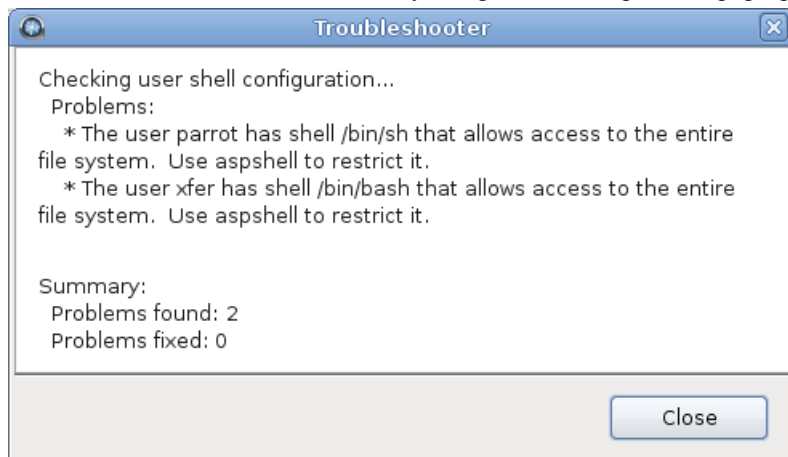
### Using the Troubleshooter

---

The built-in troubleshooter tool can identify potential problems with your HST Server configuration that can prevent client connections, as well as verify user account security configurations.

1. Launch the application if it is not already running.
2. Click **Help > Troubleshoot**.

The troubleshooter starts automatically and generates a report in a pop-up window.



## Clients Can't Establish Connection

Learn how to troubleshoot client issues with connecting to HST Server.

1. Test SSH ports and HTTP/HTTPS ports.
  - a) On the client computer, run the following command:

```
# telnet server_ip_address port
```

For example, to test connection to 10.0.1.1 through TCP/33001, you run the following command:

```
# telnet 10.0.1.1 33001
```

- b) If the client cannot establish connections to the ports, verify the port number and the firewall configuration of HST Server. Also make sure that the client firewall allows outbound connections.
2. Test UDP ports.

If you can establish an SSH connection but not run a FASP file transfer, there might be a firewall blockage of FASP's UDP port.

3. Verify SSH service status

If there is no firewall blockage between the client and your HST Server, on the client machine, try establishing a SSH connection: (HST Server address: 10.0.1.1, TCP/33001)

```
# ssh aspera_user_1@10.0.1.1 -p 33001
```

If the SSH service runs normally, the client should see a message prompting to continue the connection or for a password. However, if you see a "Connection Refused" message, which indicates that the SSH service isn't running, review your SSH service status. Ignore the "permission denied" message after entering the password, which is discussed in next steps.

4. Applied authentication method is enabled in SSH

If you can establish a SSH connection, but it returns "permission denied" message, the SSH Server on your HST Server might have password authentication disabled:

```
Permission denied (publickey,keyboard-interactive).
```

Open your SSH Server configuration file with a text editor:

```
/etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

To allow public key authentication, add or uncomment the *PubkeyAuthentication yes*. To allow password authentication, add or uncomment *PasswordAuthentication yes*. Here is a configuration example:

```
...
PubkeyAuthentication yes
PasswordAuthentication yes
...
```

To activate your changes, restart the SSH server.

5. Restart the SSH server to apply new settings.

*Restarting your SSH server does not affect currently connected users.*

```
# systemctl restart sshd.service
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service sshd restart
```

6. Verify the Apache configuration.

If the client can access your HST Server through the HTTP or HTTPS port, but the client's browser cannot open the HST Server web UI (deprecated), there may be configuration problems. See [Configuring the Apache Server to Host the HST Server Web UI](#) on page 507 and review the configuration.

7. Verify that the user credentials are correct, and the user has sufficient access permissions to their docroot

a) Attempt to establish an SSH connection:

```
# ssh username@server_ip_address -p port
```

For example:

```
$ ssh aspera_user_1@10.0.1.1 -p 33001
```

b) Enter the user's password.

If you see "Permission denied" message, you may have a wrong user credentials, or the user doesn't have sufficient access permissions to its docroot.

8. Verify that the user is set up for web UI (deprecated) authentication

HST Server uses Apache's authentication to authorize web UI access. If the client can establish SSH connections, but cannot authenticate to the web UI, the user account might not be configured for web UI correctly. To do so, run the following command:

```
$ htpasswd /opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd username
```

**Important:** Use the `-c` option ONLY if this is the first time running `htpasswd` to create the `webpasswd` file. Do not use the `-c` option otherwise.

If you still encounter connection problems after going through these steps, contact [Technical Support](#) on page 521.

## Error: Session Timeout During Ascp Transfers

If you attempt an Ascp transfer over a network with high latency or to/from storage with slow read/write, you might receive a timeout error message. You can increase the timeout to allow your transfers to complete.

The message is similar to the following:

```
ERR Failed to receive Close Session, read timed out (errno=110) timeout:120,
  rsize=0
```

To increase the timeout, follow these steps:

1. Run the following `asconfigurator` command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;session_timeout_sec,time"
```

where *time* is the desired time in seconds before timeout. This creates the following text in `aspera.conf`:

```
<default>
  <session_timeout_sec>time</session_timeout_sec>
</default>
```

2. Alternatively, manually edit `aspera.conf`.

The `aspera.conf` configuration file is in the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

## Node API Transfers of Many Small Files Fails

---

Ascp transfers that are started through the Node API or Watch Folders to or from servers that have Unix-like OS can fail when transferring many (millions) of small files because the Redis database exceeds available number of file descriptors.

To increase the maximum number of file descriptors from the default of 1024 to a larger value, such as 1,000,000, run the following command:

```
$ ulimit -Sn 10000000
```

## Logs Overwritten Before Transfer Completes

---

The logs of long transfers of many (millions) of files can be overwritten before the session completes, potentially deleting useful troubleshooting information if an error or failure occurs. To avoid this problem, set the log size to a larger value than the default of 10 MB. For information on other logging configuration options, see [Server Logging Configuration for Ascp and Ascp 4](#) on page 125.

Logging settings are configured by running `asconfigurator` commands (recommended) or by manually editing `aspera.conf`.

### To increase log size by using `asconfigurator`:

Run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_logging_data;log_size,size_mb"
```

### To increase log size by manually editing `aspera.conf`:

1. Open `aspera.conf` in a text editor run with administrator privileges.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

2. Add the `<logging>` section to the `<default>` section:

```
...
<default>
  <file_system>...</file_system>
  <logging>
    <log_size>size</log_size>
  </logging>
</default>
```

```
...
```

Where *size* is the log size in MB.

3. Save your changes.
4. Validate the XML form of `aspera.conf`:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

## Disabling SELinux

---

SELinux (Security-Enhanced Linux), an access-control implementation, can prevent web UI access.

To disable SELinux:

1. Open the SELinux configuration file: `/etc/selinux/config`.
2. Locate the following line:

```
SELINUX=enforcing
```

3. Change the value to **disabled**:

```
SELINUX=disabled
```

Save your changes and close the file.

4. On the next reboot, SELinux is permanently disabled. To dynamically disable it before the reboot, run the following command:

```
# setenforce 0
```

## Appendix

---

### Restarting Aspera Services

---

When you change product settings, you might need to restart certain Aspera services in order for the new values to take effect.

#### IBM Aspera Central

If `asperacentral` is stopped, or if you have modified the `<central_server>` or `<database>` sections in `aspera.conf`, then you need to restart the service.

Run the following command in a Terminal window to restart `asperacentral`:

```
# systemctl restart asperacentral
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperacentral restart
```

#### IBM Aspera NodeD

Restart `asperanoded` if you have modified any setting in `aspera.conf`.

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

### IBM Aspera HTTPD

Restart `asperahttpd` if you have modified any setting in `aspera.conf`.

Run the following commands to restart `asperahttpd`:

```
# systemctl restart asperahttpd
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperahttpd restart
```

## Docroot vs. File Restriction

A transfer user's access to the server's file system can be restricted by configuring a docroot or a file restriction. Though similar, certain Aspera features require that the transfer user have a file restriction rather than a docroot.

**Note:** A configuration (global, group, or user) can have a docroot or a file restriction; configurations with both are not supported.

	Docroot	File Restriction
Required for	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Server-side encryption-at-rest (docroot in URI format)</li> <li>Connecting the node to IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, IBM Aspera Console, or IBM Aspera Application for Microsoft SharePoint</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complex file-system access rules</li> <li>Creating access keys with the Node API</li> <li>Connecting the node to IBM Aspera on Cloud</li> </ul>
Syntax	<p>An absolute pathname that can include a substitutional string. Supported strings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>\$(name)</code></li> <li><code>\$(home)</code></li> </ul> <p>The pathname can be in URI format; special characters must be URL-encoded.</p>	<p>A set of file system filters that use "*" as a wildcard and "!" to indicate "exclude". Paths are in URI format; special characters in a URI must be URL-encoded.</p> <p>Access to a file is rejected unless the file matches the restrictions, which are processed in the following order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a restriction starts with "!", the user is not allowed to access any files that match the rest of the restriction.</li> <li>If a restriction does not start with "!", the user can access any file that matches the filter.</li> <li>If one or more restrictions do not start with "!", the user can access</li> </ul>

	Docroot	File Restriction
		any file that matches any one of the no-"!" restrictions.
Examples	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As an absolute path: /docs</li> <li>With a substitutional string: /users/\$(name)</li> <li>As a URI: s3://s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket or file:///docs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For a specific folder: file:///docs/*</li> <li>For the drive root: file:///c*</li> <li>For ICOS-S3 storage: s3://my_vault/*</li> <li>To exclude access to key files: !*key</li> </ul> <p>For more examples, see <a href="#">Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line</a> on page 271</p>
How to set	See <a href="#">Setting Up Users</a> on page 32 (GUI) or <a href="#">Setting Up Transfer Users (Terminal)</a> on page 77.	See <a href="#">Getting Started with Watch Folders in the GUI</a> on page 247 or <a href="#">Getting Started with Watch Folders in the Command Line</a> on page 271.

## URL Encoding Characters

The following reserved characters are often included in passwords and secret keys:

Character	!	#	\$	&	'	(	)	*	+
URL encoded	%21	%23	%24	%26	%27	%28	%29	%2A	%2B

Character	.	/	:	;	=	?	@	[	]
URL encoded	%2C	%2F	%3A	%3B	%3D	%3F	%40	%5B	%5D

To URL encode other characters and to encode entire strings at once, you may use the online tool:

<http://www.url-encode-decode.com/>

Select **UTF-8** as the target.

## Aspera Ecosystem Security Best Practices

Your Aspera applications can be configured to maximize system and content security. The following sections describe the recommended settings and practices that best protect your content when using IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server and IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Endpoint, IBM Aspera Faspex, IBM Aspera Shares, and IBM Aspera Console.

### Contents

Securing the Systems that Run Aspera Software

HST Server



Faspex and Shares

Console

Securing the Aspera Application

HST Server

Faspex

Shares 1.9.x

Shares 2

Console

Securing Content in your Workflow

## Securing the Systems that Run Aspera Software

The systems that run Aspera software can be secured by keeping them up to date, by applying security fixes, and by configuring them using the recommended settings.

### Updates

Aspera continually improves the built-in security of its products, as do the producers of third-party components used by Aspera, such as Apache, Nginx, and OpenSSH. One of the first lines of defense is keeping your products up to date to ensure that you are using versions with the latest security upgrades:

- Keep your operating system up to date.
- Keep your Aspera products up to date.
- If using, keep OpenSSH up to date. The server security instructions require that OpenSSH 4.4 or newer (Aspera recommends 5.2 or newer) is installed on your system in order to use the `Match` directive. `Match` allows you to selectively override certain configuration options when specific criteria (based on user, group, hostname, or address) are met.
- If you are using the HST Server web UI, keep Apache server up to date.

### Security Fixes

Rarely, security vulnerabilities are detected in the operating systems and third-party components that are used by Aspera. Aspera publishes security bulletins immediately that describe the affected products and recommended remediation steps.

### Security Configuration

Recommended security settings vary depending on the products you are using and how they interact. See the following subsections for your Aspera products.

#### HST Server

##### 1. Configure your SSH Server.

Aspera recommends that you:

- Open TCP/33001 and keep TCP/22 open until users are notified that they should switch to TCP/33001.
- Once users are notified, block TCP/22 and allow traffic only on TCP/33001.

The following steps open TCP/33001 and block TCP/22.

##### a) Open the SSH configuration file.

```
/etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

If you do not have an existing configuration for OpenSSH, or need to update an existing one, Aspera recommends the following reference: <https://wiki.mozilla.org/Security/Guidelines/OpenSSH>.

##### b) Change the SSH port from TCP/22 to TCP/33001.

Add TCP/33001 and comment out TCP/22 to match the following example:

```
#Port 22
Port 33001
```

HST Server admins must also update the `SshPort` value in the `<WEB...>` section of `aspera.conf`.

**Note:** If you are using the HST Server web UI, you must also update the `SshPort` value in the `<WEB...>` section of `aspera.conf`. For details, see [Configuring your Web UI Settings](#) on page 510.

Once this setting takes effect:

- Aspera clients must set the TCP port to 33001 when creating connections in the GUI or specify `-P 33001` for command line transfers.
  - Server administrators should use `ssh -p 33001` to access the server through SSH.
- c) Disable non-admin SSH tunneling.

SSH tunneling can be used to circumvent firewalls and access sensitive areas of your company's network. Add the following lines to the end of `sshd_config` (or modify them if they already exist) to disable SSH tunneling:

```
AllowTcpForwarding no
Match Group root
AllowTcpForwarding yes
```

Depending on your `sshd_config` file, you might have additional instances of `AllowTCPForwarding` that are set to the default `Yes`. Review your `sshd_config` file for other instances and disable if necessary.

Disabling TCP forwarding does not improve security unless users are also denied shell access, because with shell access they can still install their own forwarders. Aspera recommends assigning users to `aspsell`, described in the following section.

- d) Disable password authentication and enable public key authentication.

Public key authentication provides a stronger authentication method than passwords, and can prevent brute-force SSH attacks if all password-based authentication methods are disabled.

**Important:** Before proceeding:

- Create a public key and associate it with a transfer user, otherwise clients have no way of connecting to the server.  
For instructions on using public key authentication, see [Creating SSH Keys \(Command Line\)](#) on page 216 and [Setting Up a User's Public Key on the Server](#) on page 38.
- Configure at least one non-root, non-transfer user with a public key to use to manage the server. This is because in the following steps, root login is disabled and transfer users are restricted to `aspsell`, which does not allow interactive login. This user and public key is what you use to access and manage the server as an administrator.

Add or uncomment `PubkeyAuthentication yes` and comment out `PasswordAuthentication yes`:

```
PubkeyAuthentication yes
#PasswordAuthentication yes
PasswordAuthentication no
```

**Note:** If you choose to leave password authentication enabled, be sure to advise account creators to use strong passwords and set `PermitEmptyPasswords` to "no".

```
PermitEmptyPasswords no
```

- e) Disable root login.



**CAUTION:** This step disables root access. Make sure that you have at least one user account with sudo privileges before continuing, otherwise you may not have access to administer your server.

Comment out `PermitRootLogin yes` and add `PermitRootLogin No`:

```
#PermitRootLogin yes
PermitRootLogin no
```

- f) Restart the SSH server to apply new settings. Restarting your SSH server does not affect currently connected users.

```
# systemctl restart sshd.service
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service sshd restart
```

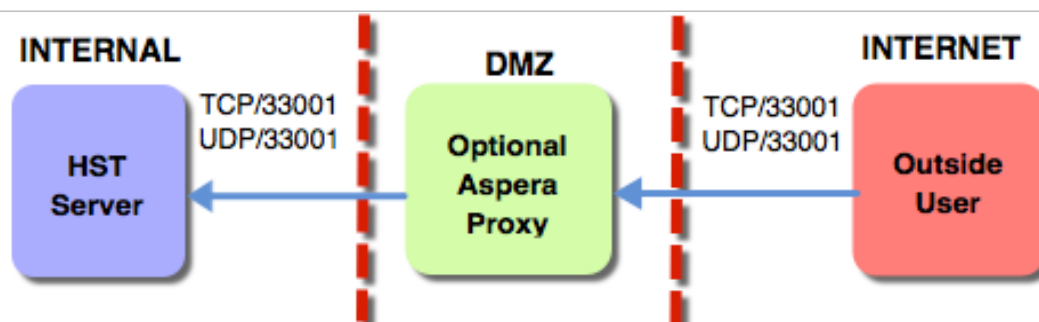
- g) Review your logs periodically for attacks.

For information on identifying attacks, see [IBM Aspera IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server Admin Guide: Securing Your SSH Server](#).

2. Configure your server's firewall to permit inbound access to only Aspera-required ports.

Aspera requires inbound access on the following ports:

- For SSH connections that are used to set up connections, TCP/33001.
- For FASP transfers, UDP/33001.
- If you use HTTP and HTTPS fallback with HST Server, TCP/8080 and TCP/8443. If you only use HTTPS, only open TCP/8443.
- If your clients access the HST Server web UI, TCP/80 (for HTTP) or TCP/443 (for HTTPS).



3. For HST Server, require strong TLS connections to the web server.

TLS 1.0 and TLS 1.1 are vulnerable to attack. Run the following command to require that the client's SSL security protocol be TLS version 1.2 or higher:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;ssl_protocol,tls1.2"
```

4. If `asperanoded` is exposed to internet traffic, run it behind a reverse proxy.

If your Aspera server must expose `asperanoded` to the internet, such as when setting it up as a IBM Aspera on Cloud (AoC) node, Aspera strongly recommends protecting it with a reverse proxy. Normally, `asperanoded` runs on port 9092, but nodes that are added to AoC must have `asperanoded` run on port 443, the standard HTTPS port for secure browser access. Configuring a reverse proxy in front of `asperanoded` provides additional protection (such as against DOS attacks) and resource handling for requests to the node's 443 port.

The following instructions describe how to set up Nginx as a reverse proxy and require that you have valid, CA-signed SSL certificates in `.pem` format for the server. Other reverse proxies might be supported on your server.

- a) Set up a system user with Node API credentials on your server.

- b) Download and install Nginx.
- c) Configure the HTTPS port for asperanoded.

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;https_port,9092"
```

- d) Open the Nginx configuration file in a text editor.

Open `/etc/nginx/nginx.conf` and ensure the following `include` directive is present in the `http` section. If it is not present, add it to the file:

```
http {
...
include /etc/nginx/conf.d/*.conf;
}
```

- e) Create a file named `aspera_node_proxy.conf` and save it in the following location:

```
/etc/nginx/conf.d/aspera_node_proxy.conf
```

- f) Paste the following content into `aspera_node_proxy.conf`:

```
#
# Aspera configuration - reverse proxy for asperanoded
#
server {
    listen 443;
    server_name your.servername.com;
    ssl_certificate /opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_cert.pem;
    ssl_certificate_key /opt/aspera/etc/aspera_server_key.pem;

    ssl on;
    ssl_session_cache builtin:1000 shared:SSL:10m;
    ssl_protocols TLSv1.2;
    ssl_ciphers EECDH+AESGCM:EDH+AESGCM:AES256+EECDH:AES256+EDH;
    ssl_prefer_server_ciphers on;

    access_log /var/log/nginx/node-api.access.log;

    location / {
        proxy_pass https://127.0.0.1:9092;
        proxy_read_timeout 60;
        proxy_redirect https://127.0.0.1:9092 https://your.servername.com;

        proxy_set_header Host $host:$server_port;
        proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Proto $scheme;
    }
}
```

**Note:** Configure SSL ciphers as required. The preceding sample is not configured for backwards compatibility, and the recommended list of secure ciphers might change. Aspera recommends reviewing and staying current with the list provided in <https://cipherli.st/>.

In this configuration, Nginx listens externally on port 443, not 9092. Replace `your.servername.com` with your server's domain name.

- g) Restart asperanoded.

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

- h) Restart Nginx.

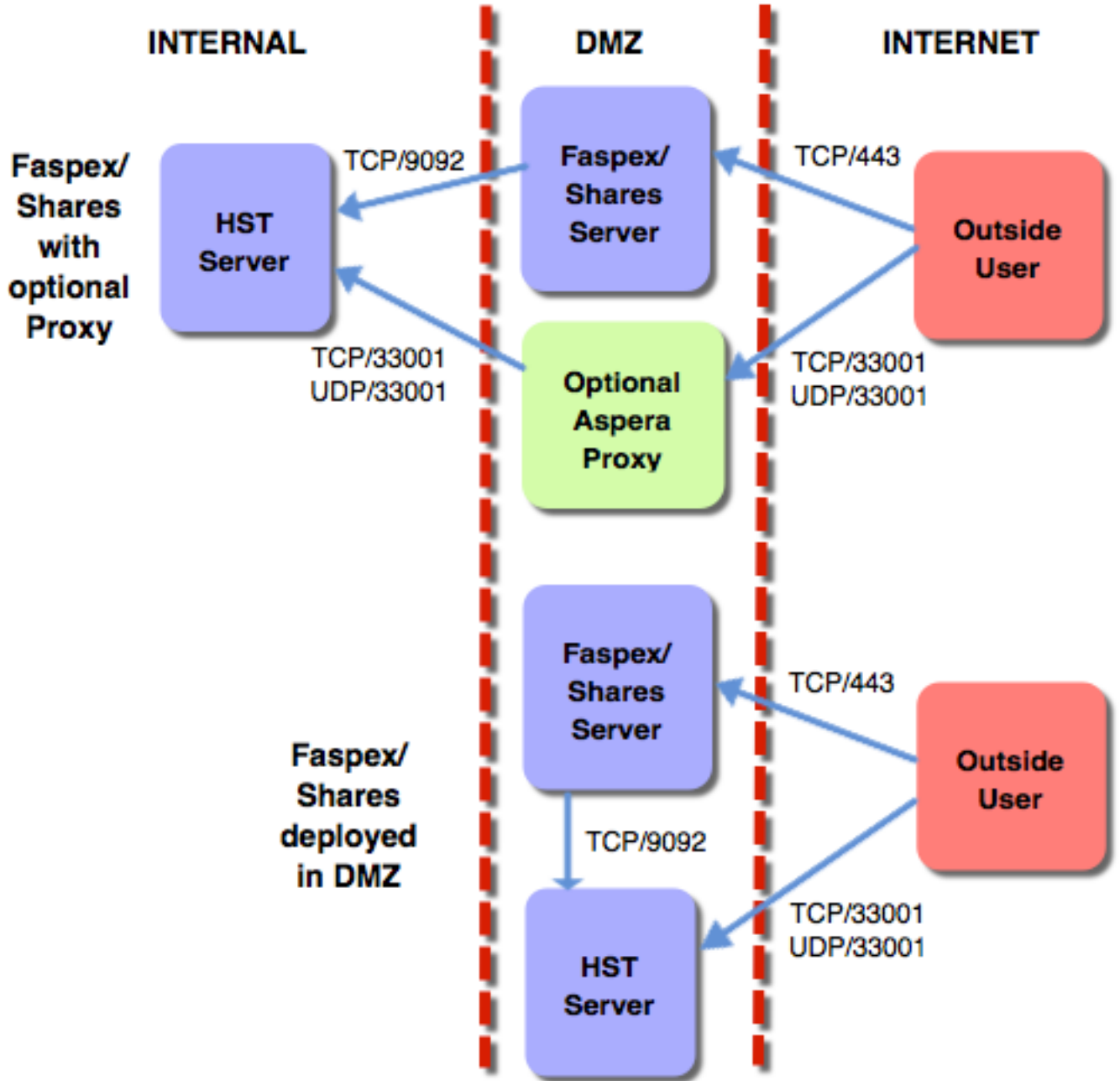
```
# service nginx restart
```

## 5. Install Aspera FASP Proxy in a DMZ to isolate your HST Server from the Internet.

For more information, see [IBM Aspera FASP Proxy Admin Guide](#)

## Faspex and Shares

1. Configure your Faspex or Shares server firewall to allow inbound access to TCP/443, the default HTTPS port.



2. Faspex and Shares transfer nodes should be configured as described for HST Server.

The transfer user that is used by Faspex and Shares (usually `xfer`) must be configured on the node to only allow transfers with a token:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,xfer;authorization_transfer_in_value,token"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,xfer;authorization_transfer_out_value,token"
```

Set the token encryption key to a string of at least 20 characters:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,xfer;token_encryption_key,token_string"
```

Do not use UUIDs for this key because they might not be generated using cryptographically secure methods.

## Console

Configure the firewall of the computer on which Console is installed to only allow Aspera-required connections to the following ports:

- For HTTP or HTTPS access for the web UI, inbound TCP/80 or TCP/443.
- For SSH connections, outbound TCP/33001 to managed nodes.
- For Node API connections, outbound TCP/9092 to managed nodes.
- For connections to legacy nodes (those running HST Server older than 3.4.6), outbound TCP/40001 and inbound TCP/4406. For security and reliability, Aspera strongly recommends upgrading all nodes to the latest version.

## Securing the Aspera Applications

Your Aspera products can be configured to limit the extent to which users can connect and interact with the servers. The instructions for Shares 1.9.x and Shares 2.x are slightly different; see the section for your version.

### HST Server

1. Restrict user permissions with `aspsshell`.

By default, all system users can establish a FASP connection and are only restricted by file permissions. Restrict the user's file operations by assigning them to use `aspsshell`, which permits only the following operations:

- Running Aspera uploads and downloads to or from this computer.
- Establishing connections between Aspera clients and servers.
- Browsing, listing, creating, renaming, or deleting contents.

These instructions explain one way to change a user account or active directory user account so that it uses the `aspsshell`; there may be other ways to do so on your system.

Run the following command to change the user login shell to `aspsshell`:

```
# sudo usermod -s /bin/aspsshell username
```

Confirm that the user's shell updated by running the following command and looking for `/bin/aspsshell` at the end of the output:

```
# grep username /etc/passwd
username:x:501:501:..:/home/username:/bin/aspshell
```

**Note: If you use OpenSSH, sssd, and Active Directory for authentication:** To make `aspsshell` the default shell for all domain users, first set up a local account for server administration because this change affects all domain users. Then open `/etc/sss/sss.conf` and change `default_shell` from `/bin/bash` to `/bin/aspsshell`.

2. Restrict Aspera transfer users to a limited part of the server's file system or bucket in object storage.
  - a) For on-premises servers, set a default `docroot` to an empty folder, then set a `docroot` for each user:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;absolute,docroot"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,docroot"
```

Replace `username` with the username and `docroot` with the directory path to which the user should have access.

- b) For cloud-based servers, set a default restriction to an empty folder, then set a restriction for each user:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;file_restriction,|storage_path"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;file_restriction,|storage_path"
```

Replace *username* with the username and *storage\_path* with the path to which the user has access. Restriction syntax is specific to the storage:

Storage Type	Format Example
local storage	file:///*
S3 and IBM Cloud Object Storage	s3://*
Swift storage	swift://*
Azure storage	azu://*
Azure Files	azure-files://*
Google Cloud Storage	gs://*
Hadoop (HDFS)	hdfs://*

The "|" is a delimiter, and you can add additional restrictions. For example, to restrict the system user `xfer` to `s3://s3.amazonaws.com/bucket_xyz/folder_a/*` and not allow access to key files, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,xfer;file_restriction,|
s3://s3.amazonaws.com/bucket_xyz/folder_a/*|!*.key"
```

### 3. Restrict users' read, write, and browse permissions.

Users are given read, write, and browse permissions to their docroot by default. Change the global default to deny these permissions:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_node_data;read_allowed,false;write_allowed,false;dir_allowed,false"
```

Run the following commands to enable permissions per user, as required:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;read_allowed,false"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;write_allowed,false"
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;dir_allowed,false"
```

### 4. Limit transfer permissions to certain users.

Set the default transfer permissions for all users to deny:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_in_value,deny"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_out_value,deny"
```

Allow transfers for specific users by running the following commands for each user:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;authorization_transfer_in_value,allow"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;authorization_transfer_out_value,allow"
```

**Note:** For a user that is used by Shares or Faspex (usually `xfer`), allow transfers only with a token by setting `authorization_transfer_{in|out}_value` to `token`.

## 5. Encrypt transfer authorization tokens.

When a client requests a transfer from a server through an Aspera web application, an authorization token is generated. Set the encryption key of the token for each user or group on the server:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,username;token_encryption_key,token_string"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_group_data;group_name,groupname;token_encryption_key,token_string"
```

The token string should be at least 20 random characters.

**Note:** This is not used to encrypt transfer data, only the authorization token.

## 6. Require encryption of content in transit.

Your server can be configured to reject transfers that are not encrypted, or that are not encrypted with a strong enough cipher. Aspera recommends setting an encryption cipher of at least AES-128. AES-192 and AES-256 are also supported but result in slower transfers. Run the following command to require encryption:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_node_data;transfer_encryption_allowed_cipher,aes-128"
```

By default, your server is configured to transfer (as a client) using AES-128 encryption. If you require higher encryption, change this value by running the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_client_data;transport_cipher,value"
```

You can also specify the encryption level in the command line by using `-c cipher` with `ascp` and `async` transfers. `ascp4` transfers use AES-128 encryption.

## 7. Configure SSH fingerprinting for HST Server.

For transfers initiated by a web application (such as Faspex, Shares, or Console), the client browser sends the transfer request to the web application server over an HTTPS connection. The web application requests a transfer token from the target server. The transfer is executed over a UDP connection directly between the client and the target server and is authorized by the transfer token. Prior to initiating the transfer, the client can verify the server's authenticity to prevent server impersonation and man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks.

To verify the authenticity of the transfer server, the web application passes the client a trusted SSH host key fingerprint of the transfer server. The client confirms the server's authenticity by comparing the server's fingerprint with the trusted fingerprint. In order to do this, the host key fingerprint or path must be set in the server's `aspera.conf`.

**Note:** Server SSL certificate validation (HTTPS) is enforced if a fingerprint is specified in `aspera.conf` and HTTP fallback is enabled. If the transfer "falls back" to HTTP and the server has a self-signed certificate, validation fails. The client requires a properly signed certificate.

If you set the host key path, the fingerprint is automatically extracted from the key file and you do not extract it manually.

### Retrieving and setting the host key fingerprint:

- a) Retrieve the server's SHA-1 fingerprint.

```
# cat /etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub | awk '{print $2}' | base64 -d |
shasum
```

- b) Set the SSH host key fingerprint in `aspera.conf`. (Go to the next step to set the host key path instead).

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_server_data;ssh_host_key_fingerprint,fingerprint"
```



This command creates a line similar to the following example of the <server> section of `aspera.conf`:

```
<ssh_host_key_fingerprint>7qdOwebGGeDeN7Wv+2dP3HmWfP3
</ssh_host_key_fingerprint>
```

- c) Restart the node service to activate your changes.

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

**Setting the host key path:** To set the SSH host key path instead of the fingerprint, from which the fingerprint will be extracted automatically, run the following command:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_server_data;ssh_host_key_path,ssh_key_filepath"
```

This command creates a line similar to the following in the <server> section of `aspera.conf`:

```
<ssh_host_key_path>/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub
</ssh_host_key_path>
```

Restart the node service to activate your changes, as described for "Retrieving and setting the host key fingerprint".

8. Install properly signed SSL certificates.

Though your Aspera server automatically generates self-signed certificates, Aspera recommends installing valid, signed certificates. These are required for some applications.

## Faspex

Many of the settings for Faspex are the same as for HST Server, including SSH server configuration, firewall settings, and signed SSL certificate installation. The following recommendations augment or are additional to the recommendations described for HST Server.

1. Restrict transfers by all users except "faspex".

If your system is a dedicated Faspex server - the HST Server installed as part of your Faspex installation is used only for Faspex transfers - prohibit transfers by all users except "faspex". If you have not already, deny transfers globally by default:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_in_value,deny"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_out_value,deny"
```

Allow transfers for "faspex" by running the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,faspex;authorization_transfer_in_value,token"
# asconfigurator -x
  "set_user_data;user_name,faspex;authorization_transfer_out_value,token"
```

2. Configure the Nginx server to allow only strong TLS.

The default configuration of Faspex has TLS 1.0, 1.1 and 1.2 enabled. Older browsers require the older and less secure versions (TLS 1.0 and 1.1). You can disable support for older browsers by removing TLS 1.0 and TLS 1.1 from the configuration.

- a) Open the Nginx configuration file on the Shares server for editing:

```
/opt/aspera/common/apache/conf/extra/httpd-ssl.conf
```

- b) Locate the following line:

```
SSLProtocol ALL -SSLv2 -SSLv3
```

- c) Replace the line with the following and save your change:

```
SSLProtocol TLSv1.2
```

- d) Restart Apache to activate your change:

```
# asctl apache:restart
```

### 3. Limit admin logins to those from known IP addresses.

Faspex admins have the ability to execute post-processing scripts on the server. If an admin account is compromised, this capability can be a serious threat to your server's security. You can add additional protection by allowing admin logins from only specific IP addresses.

- In the Faspex UI, go to **Accounts** and select the admin account.
- In the **Permissions** section, locate the **Allowed IP addresses for login** field and enter the IP addresses or IP address range to allow.
- Click **Save** to activate your changes.

### 4. Configure Faspex account security settings.

Go to **Server > Configuration > Security** and set the following global default configurations in the **Faspex accounts** section, then edit configurations for individual users, as needed:

- Set a non-zero session timeout.
- Lock users out after five failed login attempts within five minutes.
- Enable **Prevent concurrent login**.
- Set a password expiration interval of 30 days.
- Prevent reuse of the last three passwords and require strong passwords.
- Set **Keep user directory private** to **Yes**.
- Disable **Allow all users to send to all other Faspex users**.
- Disable **Users can see global distribution lists**.
- Disable **Ignore invalid recipients**.
- Disable **Allow users to change their email address**.

Stay in **Server > Configuration > Security** for the next step.

### 5. Configure Faspex account registration settings.

In **Server > Configuration > Security**, set the following configurations in the **Registrations** section:

- Set **Self-registration** to **None**.  
When self-registration is enabled, it can be used to find out whether a certain account exists on the server. That is, if you attempt to self-register a duplicate account, you receive a prompt stating that the user already exists.
- Select **Require external users to register**.  
By requiring external users to register, you can better track their Faspex activity.

Stay in **Server > Configuration > Security** for the next step.

### 6. Configure outside email address settings.

In **Server > Configuration > Security**, set the following global default configurations in the **Outside email addresses** section, then edit configurations for individual users, as needed:

- Disable **Allow inviting external senders**.
- Enable **Invitation link expires** and set an expiration policy.
- Disable **Allow public submission URLs**.
- Disable **Allow sending to external email addresses**.
- Set a package link expiration.
- Disable **Allow external packages to Faspex users**.

Stay in **Server > Configuration > Security** for the next step.

7. Configure Faspex encryption.

In **Server > Configuration > Security**, set the following configurations in the **Encryption** section:

- a) Enable **Encrypt transfers**.
- b) If possible in your work flow, set **Use encryption-at-rest** to **Always**.  
See the next section, "Securing Content in your Workflow," for information about encryption at rest.
- c) Disable **Allow dropboxes to have their own encryption settings**.

8. Click **Update** when you have completed updating settings on the **Security** page to activate your changes.

9. Hide your server's IP address from email notifications.

If Faspex is configured to identify itself by IP address (rather than by domain name), then the URLs in your notification emails contain your IP address (for example, "https://10.0.0.1/aspera/faspex"). Configure an alternate IP address or domain name for users who are external to your organization.

- a) Go to **Server > Configuration > Web Server**.
- b) Select **Enable alternate address** then click **Add alternate address**.
- c) Enter the address name and description, and select **Show in emails**.
- d) Click **Update** to activate your change.
- e) Customize your email notification templates to use the alternate address.

Go to **Server > Notifications**.

## Shares

The Shares server and its nodes should be secured as described for HST Server, including SSH server configuration, firewall settings, and valid, signed SSL certificate installation. You can also secure the Shares application and its network of nodes by restricting user permissions. Set the following settings globally, then edit the settings for specific users and groups.

1. Configure Shares security settings.

On the **Admin** page, click **User Security** and set the following:

- a) Set a non-zero session timeout.
- b) Require strong passwords.
- c) Set a password expiration interval of 30 days.
- d) Lock users out after five failed login attempts within five minutes.
- e) Do not allow self registration by setting **Self Registration** to **None**.

2. When setting up the email server (**Admin > SMTP**), select **Use TLS if available**.

3. Configure the Nginx server to allow only strong TLS.

The default configuration of Shares has TLS 1.0, 1.1 and 1.2 enabled. Older browsers require the older and less secure versions (TLS 1.0 and 1.1). You can disable support for older browsers by removing TLS 1.0 and TLS 1.1 from the configuration.

- a) Open the Nginx configuration file on the Shares server for editing:

```
/opt/aspera/shares/etc/nginx/nginx.conf
```

- b) Delete TLSv1 and TLSv1.1 from the following line:

```
ssl_protocols TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2;
```

4. Configure secure transfer settings.

Go to **System Settings > Transfers** and set the following:

- a) Require a minimum Connect version of 3.6.1.
- b) For **Encryption**, select **AES-128**.
- c) If possible in your workflow, set **Encryption at Rest** to **Required**.

See the next section, "Securing Content in your Workflow," for information about encryption at rest.

5. Go to **System Settings > Web Server** and select **Enable SSL/TLS**.

This setting requires that the Shares server has a valid, signed SSL certificate.

6. When adding new users to Shares, disable **API Login** if users do not need to use the Shares API.  
The Shares API is used by clients connecting through IBM Aspera Drive and IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface
7. When adding nodes to Shares, select **Use SSL** (required by Shares) and **Verify SSL** (requires that the node has a valid, signed SSL certificate).
8. When authorizing a user or group to a share (*share\_name* > **Authorizations**), set the minimum permissions required based on their Shares use.

## Shares 2.x

The Shares 2.x server and its nodes should be secured as described for HST Server, including configuring the SSH server, firewall settings, and installing valid, signed SSL certificates. You can also secure the Share application and its network of nodes by restricting user permissions. Set the following settings globally and then edit the settings for specific users, groups, and administrators.

1. Configure Shares security settings.  
Go to **System Administration > Configuration > User Security** and set the following:
  - a) Set a non-zero session timeout.
  - b) Set an access token lifetime of 8 hours.
  - c) Enable refreshing of expired access tokens, with a lifetime of 7 days.
 Go to **System Administration > Configuration > Local User Security** and set the following:
  - a) Require strong passwords.
  - b) Set a password expiration interval of 30 days.
  - c) Lock users out after five failed login attempts within five minutes.
  - d) Prevent reuse of the last three passwords and require strong passwords.
2. When setting up the email server (**System Administration > Configuration > SMTP**), select **Use TLS if available**.
3. Configure secure transfer settings.  
Go to **System Administration > Configuration > Transfers** and set the following:
  - a) Require a minimum Connect version of 3.6.1.
  - b) For **Encryption**, select **AES-128** (or higher, if needed).
  - c) If possible in your workflow, set **Encryption at Rest** to **Yes**.  
See the next section, "Securing Content in your Workflow," for information about encryption at rest.
4. Go to **System Administration > Configuration > Web Server** and select **Enable SSL/TLS**.  
This setting requires that the Shares server has a valid, signed SSL certificate.
5. Configure the Nginx server to allow only strong TLS.  
The default configuration of Shares has TLS 1.0, 1.1 and 1.2 enabled. Older browsers require the older and less secure versions (TLS 1.0 and 1.1). You can disable support for older browsers by removing TLS 1.0 and TLS 1.1 from the configuration.
  - a) Open the Nginx configuration file on the Shares server for editing:  
`/opt/aspera/shares/etc/nginx/nginx.conf`
  - b) Delete TLSv1 and TLSv1.1 from the following line:
 

```
ssl_protocols TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2;
```
6. When adding nodes to Shares, select **Use SSL** (required by Shares) and **Verify SSL** (requires that the node has a valid, signed SSL certificate).
7. When authorizing a user or group to a share, set the minimum permissions required based on their Shares use.

## Console

Console nodes should be secured as described for HST Server, including SSH server configuration, firewall settings, and valid, signed SSL certificate installation. If possible for your workflow, limit Console and its nodes to your internal network.

You can also secure the Console application and its network of nodes by restricting user permissions:

1. Configure secure Console defaults.
 

Go to **Configuration > Defaults** and set the following:

  - a) In the drop-down menu for **Default SSH encryption**, select a default SSH encryption algorithm of at least AES-128 for non-Console nodes.
  - b) For **Transport Encryption**, select **AES-128**.
  - c) Disable **Smart Transfer Sharing**.
  - d) Set a non-zero session timeout.
  - e) Lock users out after five failed login attempts within five minutes.
  - f) Enable **Prevent concurrent login**.
  - g) Enable **Suppress logging of transfer tokens** to prevent tokens from being written to the Console database.
  - h) Set a password expiration interval of 30 days.
  - i) Prevent reuse of the last three passwords and require strong passwords.
2. When setting up the email server (**Notifications > Email Server**), select **Use TLS if available**.
3. Restrict Console users' permissions.
  - a) When creating a new user (**Accounts > Users > New User**), disable user login until their permissions are set by clearing **Active (allow user to log in)**. Click **permissions** and enable only the permissions that the user requires. Once permissions are configured, allow the user to login by going to **Accounts > Users**, clicking the user, and selecting **Active (allow user to log in)**.
  - b) Assign users to Console Groups with only the required transfer paths and permissions allowed.
 

Create a group (**Accounts > Groups > New Group**) and restrict the group's transfers by clicking **Add Transfer Path**. Assign specific endpoints to the group's transfer path, rather than **Any**, which grants permission to transfer to all nodes. Limit the direction of the path, if the group's workflow allows.
4. When adding managed and unmanaged nodes, set the SSH port to 33001 and ensure SSH connections are encrypted with AES-128 or higher.
5. When adding a managed cluster, select **Use HTTPS to connect to node** and **Require signed SSL certificate**.
6. When adding SSH endpoints, use SSH public key authentication rather than password authentication.
 

The key file on the node should not be a shared key; it should be a "private" key in the specified user account.

## Securing Content in your Workflow

1. If your workflow allows, enable server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR).

When files are uploaded from an Aspera client to the Aspera server, server-side encryption-at-rest (EAR) saves files on disk in an encrypted state. When downloaded from the server, server-side EAR first decrypts files automatically, and then the transferred files are written to the client's disk in an unencrypted state. Server-side EAR provides the following advantages:

- It protects files against attackers who might gain access to server-side storage. This is important primarily when using NAS storage or cloud storage, where the storage can be accessed directly (and not just through the computer running HST Server).
- It is especially suited for cases where the server is used as a temporary location, such as when one client uploads a file and another client downloads it.
- Server-side EAR can be used together with client-side EAR. When used together, content is doubly encrypted.
- Server-side EAR doesn't create an "envelope" as client-side EAR does. The transferred file stays the same size as the original file. The server stores the metadata necessary for server-side EAR separately in a file of the same name with the file extension `.aspera-meta`. By contrast, client-side EAR creates a envelope file

containing both the encrypted contents of the file and the encryption metadata, and it also changes the name of the file by adding the file extension `.aspera-env`.)

- It works with both regular transfers (FASP) and HTTP fallback transfers.

### Limitations and Other Considerations

- Server-side EAR is not designed for cases where files need to move in an encrypted state between multiple computers. For that purpose, client-side EAR is more suitable: files are encrypted when they first leave the client, then stay encrypted as they move between other computers, and are decrypted when they reach the final destination and the passphrase is available. See Step 4 of this section for more information on client-side encryption.
- Do not mix server-side EAR and non-EAR files in transfers, which can happen if server-side EAR is enabled after the server is in use or if multiple users have access to the same area of the file system but have different EAR configurations. Doing so can cause problems for clients by overwriting files when downloading or uploading and corrupting metadata.
- Server-side EAR does not work with multi-session transfers (using `ascp -C` or `node API multi_session` set to greater than 1) or Watch Folders (versions prior to 3.8.0 that do not support URI docroots).

To enable server-side EAR:

- a) Set users' docroots in URI format (local docroots are prepended with `file:///`).

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_user_data;user_name,username;absolute,file:///path"
```

- b) Set the server-side EAR password.

Set a different EAR password for each user or group:

```
# asconfigurator -x
"set_user_data;user_name,username;transfer_encryption_content_protection_secret,passphrase"
# asconfigurator -x
"set_group_data;group_name,group_name;transfer_encryption_content_protection_secret,passphrase"
```

**Important:** If the EAR password is lost or `aspera.conf` is compromised, you cannot access the data on the server.

- c) Require content protection and strong passwords.

These settings cause server-side EAR to fail if a password is not given or if a password is not strong enough. For example, the following `asconfigurator` command adds both these options for all users (global):

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_encryption_content_protection_required,true"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_encryption_content_protection_strong_pass_required,true"
```

2. Never use "shared" user accounts.

Configure each user as their own Aspera transfer user. Sharing Aspera transfer user account credentials with multiple users limits user accountability (you cannot determine which of the users sharing the account performed an action).

3. Use passphrase-protected private keys.

The `ssh-keygen` tool can protect an existing key or create a new key that is passphrase protected.

If you cannot use private key authentication and use password authentication, use strong passwords and change them periodically.

4. If your workflow allows, require client-side encryption-at-rest (EAR).

Aspera clients can set their transfers to encrypt content in transit and on the server, and the server can be configured to require client-side EAR. You can combine client-side and server-side EAR, in which case files are doubly encrypted on the server. Client-side encryption-at-rest is not supported for `ascp4` or `async` transfers.

### Client configuration

The client specifies a password and the files are uploaded to the server with a `.aspera-env` extension. Anyone downloading these `.aspera-env` files must have the password to decrypt them. Users can enable client-side EAR in the GUI or on the `ascp` command line.

**GUI:** Go to **Connections > connection\_name > Security**. Select **Encrypt uploaded files with a password** and set the password. Select **Decrypt password-protected files downloaded** and enter the password.

**Ascp command line:** Set the encryption and decryption password as the environment variable `ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS`. For uploads (`--mode=send`), use `--file-crypt=encrypt`. For downloads (`--mode=recv`), use `--file-crypt=decrypt`.

**Note:** When a transfer to HST Server falls back to HTTP or HTTPS, client-side EAR is no longer supported. If HTTP fallback occurs while uploading, then the files are NOT encrypted. If HTTP fallback occurs while downloading, then the files remain encrypted.

### Server configuration

To configure the server to require client-side EAR and to require strong content protection passwords, run the following commands:

```
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_encryption_content_protection_required,true"
# asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;transfer_encryption_content_protection_strong_pass_required,true"
```

**Note:** These commands set the global configuration. Depending on your work flow, you might want to require client-side EAR and strong passwords for only specific users or groups.

- For particularly sensitive content, do not store unencrypted content on any computer with network access.

HST Server, HST Endpoint, and Desktop Client include the `asprotect` and `asunprotect` command-line tools that can be used to encrypt and decrypt files. Use an external drive to physically move encrypted files between a network-connected computer and an unconnected computer on which the files can be unencrypted.

- To encrypt a file before moving it to a computer with network access, run the following commands to set the encryption password and encrypt the file:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=password
# /opt/aspera/bin/asprotect -o filename.aspera-env filename
```

- To download client-side-encrypted files without decrypting them immediately, run the transfer without decryption enabled (clear **Decrypt password-protected files downloaded** in the GUI or do not specify `--file-crypt=decrypt` on the `ascp` command line).
- To decrypt encrypted files, run the following commands to set the encryption password and decrypt the file:

```
# export ASPERA_SCP_FILEPASS=password
# /opt/aspera/bin/asprotect -o filename filename.aspera-env
```

## Testing and Optimizing Transfer Performance

To verify that your system's FASP transfer is reaching the target rate and can use the maximum bandwidth capacity, prepare a client to connect to an Aspera server. For these tests, you can transfer an existing file or file set, or you can transfer uninitialized data in place of a source file, which you can destroy at the destination, eliminating the need to read from or write to disk and saving disk space.

### Using `faux:///` as a Test Source or Destination

You can use `faux:///` as the argument for the source or destination of an `Ascp` session to test data transfer without reading from disk on the source and writing to disk on the target. The argument takes different syntax depending on if you are using it as a mock source file or mock source directory.

**Note:** If you set very large file sizes (> PB) in a `faux:///` source, Aspera recommends that you use `faux://` as a target on the destination because most computers do not have enough system memory available to handle files of this size and your transfer might fail.

### Faux Source File

To send random data in place of a source file (do not read from the source), you can specify the file as `faux:///fname?fsize.fname`. `fname` is the name assigned to the file on the destination and `fsize` is the number of bytes to send. `fsize` can be set with modifiers (k/K, m/M, g/G, t/T, p/P, or e/E) to a maximum of  $7 \times 2^{60}$  bytes (7 EiB).

For example:

```
# ascp --mode=send --user=username --host=host_ip_address faux:///fname?fsize target_path
```

### Faux Source Directory

In some cases, you might want to test the transfer of an entire directory, rather than a single file. Specify the faux source directory with the following syntax:

```
faux:///dirname?
file=file&count=count&size=size&inc=increment&seq=sequence&buf_init=buf_option
```

Where:

- `dirname` is a name for the directory (required)
- `file` is the root for file names, default is "file" (optional)
- `count` is the number of files in the directory (required)
- `size` is the size of the first file in the directory, default 0 (optional). `size` can be set with modifiers (k/K, m/M, g/G, t/T, p/P, or e/E) to a maximum of  $7 \times 2^{60}$  bytes (7 EiB).
- `increment` is the increment of bytes to use to determine the file size of the next file, default 0 (optional)
- `sequence` is how to determine the size of the next file: "sequential" or "random". Default is "sequential" (optional). When set to "sequential", file size is calculated as:

$$size + ((N - 1) * increment)$$

Where  $N$  is the file index; for the first file,  $N$  is one.

When set to "random", file size is calculated as:

$$size +/- (rand * increment)$$

Where `rand` is a random number between zero and one. If necessary, `increment` is automatically adjusted to prevent the file size from being negative.

For both options, `increment` is adjusted to prevent the file size from exceeding  $7 \times 2^{60}$  bytes.

- `buf_option` is how faux source data are initialized: "none", "zero", or "random". Default is "zero". "none" is not allowed for downloads (Ascp run with `--mode=recv`).

When the defaults are used, Ascp sends a directory that is named `dirname` and that contains `count` number of zero-byte files that are named `file_count`.

For example, to transfer a faux directory ("mydir") that contains 1 million files to `/tmp` on 10.0.0.2, and the files in `mydir` are named "testfile" and file size increases sequentially from 0 to 2 MB by an increment of 2 bytes:

```
# ascp --mode=send --user=username --host=10.0.0.2 faux:///mydir?
file=testfile&count=1m&size=0&inc=2&seq=sequential /tmp
```

### Faux Target

To send data but not save the results to disk at the destination (do not write to the target), specify the target as `faux://`.

For example, to send a real file to a faux target, run the following command:

```
# ascp --mode=send --user=username --host=host_ip_address source_file1 faux://
```



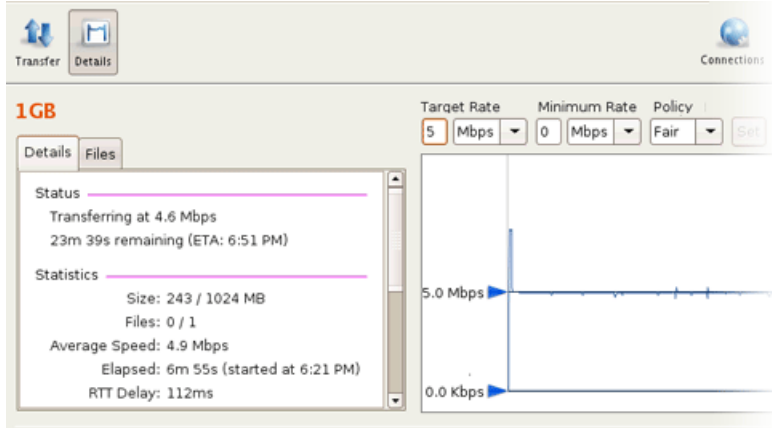
To send random data to a faux target, run the following command:

```
# ascp --mode=send --user=username --host=host_ip_address faux:///fname?fsize faux://
```

**Testing Transfer Performance**

1. Start a transfer with fair transfer policy and compare the transfer rate to the target rate.

On the client computer, open the user interface and start a transfer (either from the GUI or command line). Click **Details** to open the Transfer Monitor.



To leave more network resources for other high-priority traffic, use the **Fair** policy and adjust the target rate and minimum rate by sliding the arrows or entering values.

2. Test the maximum bandwidth.

**Note:** This test will typically occupy a majority of the network's bandwidth. Aspera recommends performing it on a dedicated file transfer line or during a time of very low network activity.

Use **Fixed** policy for the maximum transfer speed. Start with a lower transfer rate and increase gradually toward the network bandwidth.



**Hardware Upgrades for Better Performance**

To improve the transfer speed, you can also upgrade the related hardware components:

Component	Description
Hard disk	The I/O throughput, the disk bus architecture (such as RAID, IDE, SCSI, ATA, and Fiber Channel).
Network I/O	The interface card, the internal bus of the computer.

Component	Description
CPU	Overall CPU performance affects the transfer, especially when encryption is enabled.

## aclean Reference

The Aspera `aclean` command-line tool is a fast method of deleting directories and files from local and object storage. Directories and files can be filtered based on their last modified times. For Windows operating systems, the created time (*CTIME*) and modified time (*MTIME*) are used as the matching criteria. You can do a dry run of an `aclean` command to test what content will be deleted. `aclean` can be run on any platform on which Ascp 4 is supported.

**Note:** The directory specified in an `aclean` command is not deleted. Only the content in the directory that matches the options is deleted.

### Syntax

```
aclean [options] directory
```

### Directory path format

- **Local paths:** Paths to local storage can be full or relative paths, and use "/" separators for all operating systems, including Windows. Full Windows paths must use the format `/c:/path/to/delete`.
- **Object storage:** Specify a path to object storage with its URI. For example, Azure storage has the syntax `azu://storage_account:storage_access_key@blob.core.windows.net/path_to_blob` and a URL to AWS S3 has the syntax `s3://access_id:secret_key@s3.amazonaws.com/my_bucket/path`. For more information on URL syntax for other object storage types, see [Ascp Transfers with Object Storage and HDFS](#) on page 200. The variable components of the URI must be URL encoded.

### Options

Option (short version, long version)	Description
<code>-h, --help</code>	Display help.
<code>-A, --version</code>	Display version.
<code>-L, --logdir</code>	Set the filepath for the log directory.
<code>-n, --dry-run</code>	Run the command as a trial to show what content would be deleted.
<code>-t, --threads</code>	Set the number of threads to use to scan the directory. (Default: 8)
<code>--remove-empty-dirs</code>	Delete empty subdirectories from the specified directory.
<code>--remove-newer-than=MTIME</code>	Delete files that are newer than <i>MTIME</i> . <i>MTIME</i> is a date and time string with the format <code>YYYY-mm-dd HH:MM</code> . The timestamp is based on the local time of the machine.
<code>--remove-older-than=MTIME</code>	Delete files that are older than <i>MTIME</i> . <i>MTIME</i> is a date and time string with the format <code>YYYY-mm-dd HH:MM</code> . The timestamp is based on the local time of the machine.

### Examples

Delete the contents of the local directory `/temp/logs-test/`:

```
$ aclean /temp/logs-test/
```

View what files would be deleted if `/temp/logs-test/` is deleted:

```
$ aclean --dry-run /temp/logs-test/
```

Delete subdirectories in `/temp/logs-test/` if they are empty:

```
$ aclean --remove-empty-dirs /temp/logs-test/
```

Delete files that have a last-modified time older than March 27, 2017 13:34 from Azure object storage:

```
$ aclean --remove-older-than=2017-03-27 13:34
azu://user:key@blob.microsoft.com
```

## Create an SSL Certificate (Apache)

You can generate an RSA Private Key, Certificate Signing Request (CSR), and optional self-signed certificate by using OpenSSL. For your organization's internal or testing purposes, Aspera provides the PEM files `aspera_server_cert.pem` and `aspera_server_key.pem`, which are in the following directory:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/
```

### About PEM Files:

PEM certificates have extensions that include `.pem`, `.crt`, `.cer`, and `.key`, and are Base-64 encoded ASCII files containing "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----" and "-----END CERTIFICATE-----" statements. Server certificates, intermediate certificates, and private keys can all be put into PEM format. Apache and other similar servers use PEM format certificates.

#### 1. Install OpenSSL.

OpenSSL is used to generate an RSA Private Key and a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and to generate self-signed certificates for testing purposes or internal usage.

Your operating system might already have OpenSSL installed or might come with pre-compiled OpenSSL packages. If you do not have OpenSSL, you can install it from the Aspera-provided binary in the following location:

```
aspera_install_dir/bin/
```

You can also visit <http://www.openssl.org/source> for a repository of all OpenSSL distribution tarballs. Aspera recommends that you review your specific operating system's documentation for information on installing or upgrading OpenSSL packages.

#### 2. Generate your Private Key and Certificate Signing Request using OpenSSL by running the following command:

```
$ openssl req -new -nodes -newkey rsa:2048 -keyout my_key_name.key -
out my_csr_name.csr
```

Where `my_key_name.key` is the name of the unique key you are creating and `my_csr_name.csr` is the name of your CSR.

#### 3. Enter your X.509 certificate attributes.

The command in the previous step runs and prompts you to input the certificate's X.509 attributes.

**Important:** The *common name* is the fully qualified domain name of the server to be protected by SSL. If you are generating a certificate for an organization outside of the U.S., see [http://www.iso.org/iso/english\\_country\\_names\\_and\\_code\\_elements](http://www.iso.org/iso/english_country_names_and_code_elements) for a list of 2-letter, ISO country codes.

```
Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
.....+++++
```

```

.....+++++
writing new private key to 'my_key_name.key'
-----
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a
DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
-----
Country Name (2 letter code) [US]:Your_2_letter_ISO_country_code
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-
State]:Your_State_Province_or_County
Locality Name (eg, city) []:Your_City
Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:Your_Company
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Your_Department
Common Name (i.e., your server's hostname) []:secure.yourwebsite.com
Email Address []:johndoe@yourwebsite.com

```

You are also prompted to enter "extra" attributes, including an optional *challenge password*. Note that manually entering a challenge password when starting the server can be problematic in some situations (for example, when starting the server from the system boot scripts). You can skip entering a challenge password by pressing ENTER.

```

...
Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
to be sent with your certificate request
A challenge password []:
An optional company name []:

```

After finalizing the attributes, the private key and CSR are saved to your root directory.

**Important:** If you make a mistake when running the OpenSSL command, you can discard the generated files and run the command again. After successfully generating your key and Certificate Signing Request, be sure to guard your private key, as it cannot be regenerated.

#### 4. Send the CSR to your signing authority.

Send your unsigned CSR to a Certificate Authority (CA). Once the CSR is signed, you have a real certificate that can be used by Apache.

**Important:** Some Certificate Authorities provide a Certificate Signing Request generation tool on their Website. Please check with your CA for additional information.

#### 5. Generate a Self-Signed Certificate (Optional).

At this point, you might need to generate a self-signed certificate for either of the following reasons:

- You don't plan on having your certificate signed by a CA (Some Aspera applications do not allow self-signed certificates)
- You wish to test your new SSL implementation while the CA is signing your certificate

When you use a self-signed certificate, it will generate an error in the client's browser to the effect that the signing certificate authority is unknown and not trusted.

To generate a temporary certificate that is valid for 365 days, run the following command:

```

openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in my_csr_name.csr -signkey my_key_name.key -
out my_cert_name.crt

```

#### 6. Copy the key and signed certificate into the Apache /conf directory.

Edit your `httpd-ssl.conf` (or `ssl.conf` on some Linux systems) file to point to the new key and certificate files. You can store the certificate and key in any directory, as long as the paths are updated in your configuration file. For additional information, see [Enable SSL \(Apache\)](#).

## Enable SSL (Apache)

Install and enable an SSL certificate for your HST Server Web UI.

These instructions assume that you have already purchased your key and have created your certificate and key files.

1. Locate your Apache configuration file and open with a text editor.

The name of your Apache configuration file depends on your system platform. Typically, your Apache configuration file is named `httpd.conf` or `apache2.conf`.

Version	Path
RedHat, CentOS, Fedora	<code>/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf</code>
Ubuntu, Debian	<code>/etc/apache2/apache2.conf</code>
SLES	<code>/etc/apache2/httpd.conf</code>

If you cannot locate the configuration file for your system's version of Apache, see the documentation for your platform.

2. Verify or update Apache's SSL configuration file and save.
  - a) Open your Apache SSL configuration file, `httpd-ssl.conf` (or `ssl.conf`). If you cannot locate the configuration file, see the Apache documentation for your operating system.
  - b) Verify that the following line is uncommented:

```
Include conf/extra/[httpd-]ssl.conf
```

**Note:** On CentOS 7, the file is called `ssl.conf` rather than `httpd-ssl.conf`.

- c) Add the following section to your configuration file (`httpd.conf`):

For Debian, Fedora, SUSE, and Ubuntu Linux distributions:

```
<IfModule ssl_module>
  Listen 443
</IfModule>
```

For CentOS and RedHat Linux distributions:

```
<IfDefine SSL>
  Listen 443
</IfDefine>
```

- d) Update the `SSLCertificateFile` and `SSLCertificateKeyFile` values to the correct certificate paths and file names.

For example:

```
...
SSLCertificateFile    /path/to/my_cert_name.crt
SSLCertificateKeyFile /path/to/my_key_name.key
...
```

- e) Save your changes and close the file.

### 3. Restart the Apache Web Server.

Linux OS	Restart Command
Debian 8 or newer Ubuntu 15.04 or newer	<code>\$ systemctl restart apache2.service</code>
CentOS 7 or newer RHEL 7 or newer	<code>\$ systemctl restart httpd.service</code>
Debian 7 or older Ubuntu 14.10 or older	<code>\$ sudo service apache2 restart</code>
CentOS 6 RHEL 6	<code>\$ sudo service httpd restart</code>

### 4. Test your SSL connection.

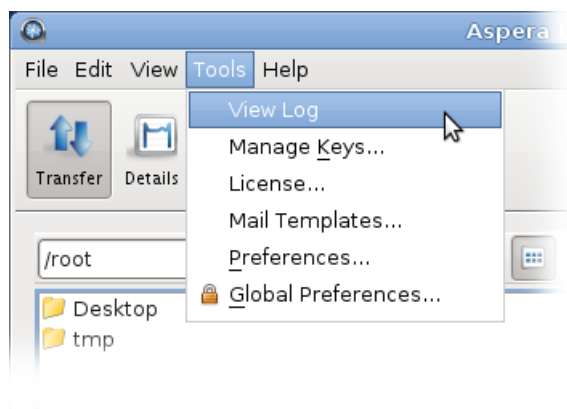
Go to `https://your-server-ip-or-name` to test your SSL setup. **This must be the same hostname that you entered into the *common name* field when creating your certificate.** For details, please refer to [Create an SSL Certificate \(Apache\)](#).

## Log Files

The application log file includes detailed transfer information and can be useful for review and support requests. You can configure log rotation and redirect Aspera logging so that it is not recorded in the system log file.

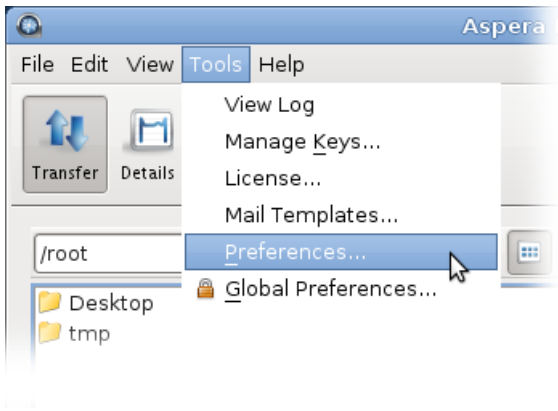
### Viewing Logs and Setting Log Preferences

To view the log, from the GUI, click **Tools > View Log**.

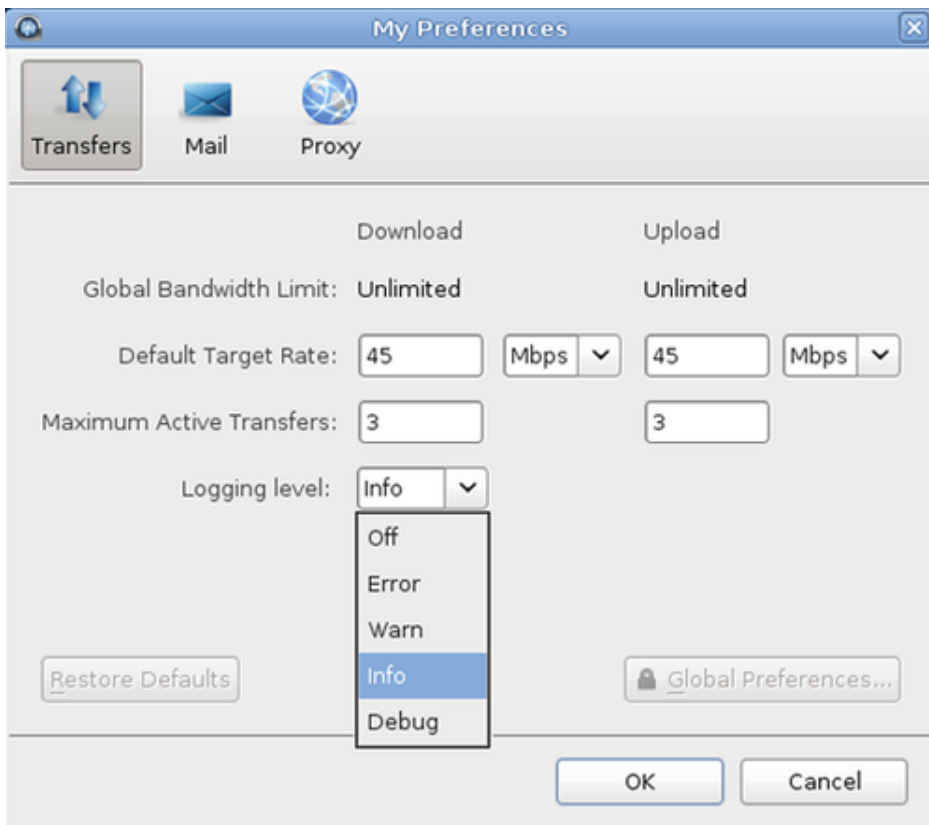


**Note:** To view logs from the command line in Linux, you must have a functional web-browser or other default application for opening HTML files.

To set the logging level for transfers, open the **My Preferences** dialog by clicking **Tools > Preferences** or by clicking **Preferences** in the upper-right corner of the application window.



The five logging levels to select from are: **Off**, **Error**, **Warn**, **Info**, and **Debug**. The system default is **Info**.



### Redirecting Aspera Logging to a Different Location

On Linux systems, the application transfer logs are recorded in the system log file. Instead of mixing Aspera logging with system logging, you may want to redirect Aspera logging to a separate log file of your choice.

#### RedHat, CentOS, and Debian

On RedHat, CentOS, and Debian, the transfer logs are recorded in the following log file: `/var/log/messages`

To redirect Aspera logging, modify `/etc/syslog.conf` (`/etc/rsyslog.conf` in the case of Red Hat or CentOS 6.XA) and add `local2.none` to the `/var/log/messages` line. For example, if you have the following line:

```
*.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none /var/log/messages
```

Change it to:

```
*.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none;local2.none /var/log/messages
```

Next, forward `local2.info` log messages to your new file. For example, to write to `/var/log/aspera.log`, add the following line just below the line you modified above:

```
local2.info -/var/log/aspera.log
```

The log file name should be separated from the log facility (`local2.info`) by tab characters, not spaces and be preceded by a hyphen. The hyphen before the log file name allows for asynchronous logging.

Next, restart the syslog daemon to have it load the new configuration:

```
# service syslog restart
```

In the case of Red Hat or CentOS 6.X:

```
# service rsyslog restart
```

Your Aspera log messages now appear in `/var/log/aspera.log` instead of `/var/log/messages`.

### SLES (Suse) systems

On SLES (Suse) systems, the transfer logs are recorded in the following system log file: `/var/log/localmessages`

To redirect Aspera logging, locate the following section in `/etc/syslog-ng/syslog-ng.conf`:

```
filter f_local { facility(local0, local1, local2, local3, local4, local5,
    local6, local7); };

destination localmessages { file("/var/log/localmessages"); };
log { source(src); filter(f_local); destination(localmessages); };
```

Modify the section as follows:

```
filter f_local { facility(local0, local1, local3, local4, local5, local6,
    local7); };
filter f_aspera { facility(local2); };

destination localmessages { file("/var/log/localmessages"); };
log { source(src); filter(f_local); destination(localmessages); };

destination asperalog { file("/var/log/aspera.log"); };
log { source(src); filter(f_aspera); destination(asperalog); };
```

Then run the following command:

```
# rcsyslog restart
```

Your Aspera log messages now appear in `/var/log/aspera.log` instead of `/var/log/localmessages`.

To test this, run the following commands:

```
# logger -p local2.info aspera test
# cat /var/log/aspera.log
```

The `cat` command should display something similar to the following:

```
Jun 13 10:30:33 linux-kua5 root: aspera test
```



## Rotating Your Aspera Log File

There are several ways to rotate Aspera logs in Linux:

1. Add `/var/log/aspera.log` to `/etc/logrotate.d/syslog`.
2. Create an entry for `aspera.log` in `/etc/logrotate.conf`.
3. Create a separate configuration file for `aspera.log` in `/etc/logrotate.d/`.

The first option rotates your logs with the system logs (usually once a week, compressed, and saving the last 10 logs). On some servers, there is so much traffic that the logs need to be rotated more often than once a week, in which case option 2 or 3 should be used.

1. Add `/var/log/aspera.log` to the entries in `/etc/logrotate.d/syslog`, as follows:

```
/var/log/messages /var/log/secure /var/log/maillog /var/log/spooler /var/
log/boot.log /var/log/cron /var/log/aspera.log
{
    sharedscripts
    postrotate
        /bin/kill -HUP `cat /var/run/syslogd.pid 2> /dev/null` 2> /dev/null ||
true
        /bin/kill -HUP `cat /var/run/rsyslogd.pid 2> /dev/null` 2> /dev/null ||
true
    endscript
}
```

2. Edit `/etc/logrotate.conf` by adding the configuration after the line "`# system-specific logs may also be configured here.`" The following example compresses and rotates 10 logs whenever `/var/log/aspera.log` reaches 100MB. After log rotation is complete, it runs whatever scripts are specified by `postrotate ... endscript`.

```
/var/log/aspera.log {
    rotate 10
    size 100M
    create 664 root
    postrotate
        /usr/bin/killall -HUP syslogd
    endscript
    compress
}
```

The following example compresses and rotates 10 logs once daily. Instead of moving the original log file and creating a new one, the `copytruncate` option tells `logrotate` to first copy the original log file, then truncate it to zero bytes.

```
/var/log/aspera.log {
    daily
    rotate 10
    copytruncate
    compress
}
```

3. Create a separate `/etc/logrotate.d/aspera` configuration file containing the same information as option 2.

If you find that logs are being overwritten before long transfers of many files are complete, increase the log size. For more information, see [Logs Overwritten Before Transfer Completes](#) on page 477.

## Preserving IBM Spectrum Scale ACLs of Transferred Files

---

Ascp and Aspera Sync can preserve NFSv4 and POSIX ACLs and immutability attributes when transferring files from an IBM Spectrum Scale (formerly GPFS) cluster to another cluster.

### Preserving Spectrum Scale ACLs

To preserve file attributes and permissions when transferring from one Spectrum Scale cluster to another, run `ascp` or `async` with the `--preserve-xattrs=native` option.

### Preserving Expiration Attributes of Immutable Filesets

To preserve expiration attributes, use timestamp preservation options:

- **Ascp:** Use `--preserve-access-time` to preserve only the expiration attributes or `-p` to preserve all timestamps.
- **Aspera Sync:** Use `--preserve-access-time`.

### Important Behavior Notes

Attribute preservation:

- Pools, replication, and cloning attributes are not preserved from source to destination.
- In Aspera Sync transfers, security attributes are preserved only when the user on both endpoints is root.

Immutable files and directories:

- Immutable directories on the source are not set as immutable on the destination. This ensures that the contents of the directory can be transferred.
- When the destination file already exists and the source file is changed to immutable (`immutable: yes`), Ascp and Aspera Sync update the destination file from mutable to immutable. However, if the source file is changed back to mutable (`immutable: no`), the change cannot be applied to the destination file because it is still immutable. Manually change the destination file, after which Ascp and Aspera Sync can write content and permissions changes.
- When the destination file already exists and is immutable, Ascp and Aspera Sync return an error for the immutable file (`Destination: Read-only file system`) and then transfers any other files in the transfer.

Append-only files:

- When the source file is an append-only file (`appendOnly: yes`), it can be transferred once to the destination. After the initial transfer, it cannot be updated by Ascp or Aspera Sync because FASP must overwrite the file.
- When the destination file already exists and is an append-only file, Ascp and Aspera Sync either stop the rest of the transfer (for Spectrum Scale 5.0.1) or return an error for the file (`Destination: Read-only file system`) and then transfers any other files (for Spectrum Scale 5.0.0). To avoid transfer failures, Aspera recommends excluding append-only files that exist on the destination from consideration on the source.

## Connecting to IBM Aspera Shares from the GUI

---

As of IBM Aspera Shares version 1.9.3, the client must have version 3.6.0 or later of HST Server, HST Endpoint, or Desktop Client installed in order to access Shares on a server with version 3.6.0 or later of HST Server, HST Endpoint, or Desktop Client installed.

**Note:** As of version 3.6.0, you can connect to Shares through the GUI, but command-line connection to Shares is not supported. To connect to Shares through the command line, you must download IBM Aspera Command-Line Interface from the following location:

<https://downloads.asperasoft.com/en/downloads/62>

1. To connect to Shares in the HST Server GUI, go to **Connections** and click the **+** button.  
Enter the following information:

Field	Value	Example
Host	https:// <i>host_FQDN</i>	https://shares.asperasoft.com/
User	Shares username (of user with API Login enabled)	shares_user
Authentication	Shares user password	X45ape34_1

2. Click **Test Connection** to confirm your client application has successfully connected to Shares.
3. Click **Browse** to specify the target directory.
4. Click **OK** to save the connection.

## HST Server Web UI (Deprecated)

The HST Server web UI offers a simple, web-based interface that clients can use to browse the area of the HST Server file system to which they are permitted access, as well as upload and download content. Configure your system to make the web UI accessible to clients.



### CAUTION:

The HST Server web UI is deprecated and will be removed from the product in a future release.

## Configuring the Apache Server to Host the HST Server Web UI

The HST Server web UI is a web-based file server that enables clients to access the server file system through a web browser, and transfers files using IBM Aspera Connect. You can set up HTTP fallback to establish HTTP- or HTTPS-based file transfers with clients that don't have FASP connectivity.

These instructions describe how to configure your system's Apache server to host HST Server's web UI. The Apache files might be located in different paths or your Apache server could require additional settings, depending on your operating system's distribution and configuration. For additional information, see your operating system documentation or contact Aspera [Technical Support](#) on page 521.

**Note:** If HST Server and IBM Aspera Faspex versions 4.1.0 or newer are installed on the same computer, they cannot use the same Apache.

1. Locate and open your Apache configuration file.

With administrative account access, open your Apache configuration file in a text editor from the following location, depending on your operating system:

Version	Path
RedHat, CentOS, Fedora	/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf
Ubuntu, Debian	/etc/apache2/apache2.conf
SLES	/etc/apache2/httpd.conf

2. Review the `ServerName` setting.

Locate the `ServerName` section in `httpd.conf` and verify that the server name is correct. The following example shows how to set the HST Server domain name or IP address. Set only one.

```
ServerName www.ConnectServerName.com
ServerName 10.0.0.1
```

3. Locate the line for `UseCanonicalName` and verify that it is set to `off` (default value).

```
UseCanonicalName off
```

#### 4. Review or modify your web UI settings.

Add the following section at the end of the configuration file if it is not already there:

```
#BEGIN_ASPERA
<Directory /opt/aspera/var/webtools>
    AllowOverride All
    Require all granted
</Directory>
<Directory /opt/aspera/var/webtools/scripts>
    AddHandler cgi-script .pl
    SetHandler cgi-script
    Options +ExecCGI
    AllowOverride All
</Directory>
ScriptAlias /aspera/scripts/ "/opt/aspera/var/webtools/scripts/"
Alias /aspera/ "/opt/aspera/var/webtools/"
#END_ASPERA
```

#### 5. Enable the `cgi` and the `dir` modules.

For Debian, SLSE, and Ubuntu Linux distributions, run the following commands:

```
$ sudo a2enmod dir
$ sudo a2enmod cgi
$ sudo a2enmod cgid
```

For CentOS, Fedora, and RedHat Linux distributions, open `httpd.conf` and add or uncomment the following lines:

```
LoadModule dir_module modules/mod_dir.so
LoadModule cgi_module modules/mod_cgi.so
LoadModule cgid_module modules/mod_cgid.so
```

After modifying the Apache configuration file, save and close it.

#### 6. Configure Apache authentication for the system user on the HST Server.

In addition to SSH authentication, HST Server uses Apache's authentication to authorize web UI access. To set up a system user (`asp1` in this example) for Apache authentication, run the `htpasswd` command below.

**Note:** On the first run of `htpasswd`, you must use the `-c` option to create the file for credential storage, `webpasswd`. Do not use the `-c` option otherwise.

```
# htpasswd [-c ]/opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd asp1
```

**Note:** If you have Apache 2.4.4, you may get authentication errors when trying to provide a password to view the site. As a workaround, run `htpasswd` with the `-b` option and enter the password on the command line as follows:

```
# htpasswd -b /opt/aspera/etc/webpasswd asp1 password
```

#### 7. Configure SSL. (Optional)

For instructions on generating an RSA Private Key, a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), and an optional self-signed certificate by using OpenSSL, see [Create an SSL Certificate \(Apache\)](#) on page 499.

Once you create your private key and Certificate (or you are using the unsigned Certificate provided by Aspera), see [Enable SSL \(Apache\)](#) on page 501.

#### 8. Disable SELinux (RedHat, CentOS, and Fedora only).

SELinux (Security-Enhanced Linux), an access control implementation, can affect web UI access. To disable SELinux, see [Disabling SELinux](#) on page 478.

## 9. Restart your Apache web server.

Linux OS	Restart Command
Debian 8 or newer Ubuntu 15.04 or newer	<code>\$ systemctl restart apache2.service</code>
CentOS 7 or newer RHEL 7 or newer	<code>\$ systemctl restart httpd.service</code>
Debian 7 or older Ubuntu 14.10 or older	<code>\$ sudo service apache2 restart</code>
CentOS 6 RHEL 6	<code>\$ sudo service httpd restart</code>

## 10. Enable system-level security.

Enabling system-level security allows the web UI to accurately display users' files and show or hide controls depending on users' permissions (this includes the **delete** and **make directory** functions). To enable system-level security, run the following command (as `root`) in a Terminal window:

```
$ sudo /opt/aspera/sbin/enablesecure enable
```

Once the script is executed, you are prompted to input the name of the Apache user.

```
User running apache (default apache):
```

Based on your input, the script generates text similar to the following. Use `visudoers` to copy-and-paste the generated text into your `/etc/sudoers` file. In the following example output, `apache` is the account that is running Apache and `/opt/aspera` is the Aspera installation directory.

**Important:** Do not paste the example output shown below into your `sudoers` file. Paste the output generated when you ran the `enablesecure` script as described above.

```
# BEGIN IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server
# The user account that runs the web server will impersonate
# the logged-in user to present that user's files and folders.
Defaults env_keep += "SERVER_NAME REQUEST_URI REQUEST_METHOD REMOTE_USER
QUERY_STRING CONTENT_LENGTH SESSION_ID CSRF_TOKEN"
Defaults:apache !requiretty
apache ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /opt/aspera/var/webtools/scripts/aspera-
dirlist.pl,
SETENV: /opt/aspera/var/webtools/scripts/aspera-dirlist.pl
# END IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server
```

**Note:** Once secure permissions are enabled, users see the **Delete** and **Create Folder** buttons, allowing them to remove files and create directories on the server (within their `docroot`). To hide the **Delete** and **Create Folder** buttons, update the web UI configuration parameters `EnableDelete` and `EnableCreateFolder`, respectively. See [Configuring your Web UI Settings](#) on page 510 for details.

To disable the secure permissions, run the `enablesecure` script again with the argument `disable`.

```
# /opt/aspera/sbin/enablesecure disable
```

## 11. Verify that cookies are enabled in the client Web browsers.

**Note:** Cookies must be enabled in client browsers. Otherwise, they might get an error message when they attempt to access the HST Server web UI.

## Configuring your Web UI Settings

Configure transfer settings for the HST Server web UI by manually editing `aspera.conf`.

1. Open `aspera.conf` in a text editor with admin or root privileges.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

2. Open Aspera's sample web UI configuration file in a text editor.

```
/opt/aspera/etc/samples/aspera-web-sample.conf
```

3. Copy the `<WEB>` section from the sample web UI configuration file and paste it into `aspera.conf`.

```
<CONF version="2">

<WEB
  SshPort = "22"
  UdpPort = "33001"
  PathMTU = "0"
  HttpFallback = "yes"
  HttpFallbackPort = "8080"
  HttpsFallbackPort = "8443"
  EnableDelete = "yes"
  EnableCreateFolder = "yes"
  EnableUserSwitching = "no"
/>
...
</CONF>
```

4. Edit the `<WEB>` section to fit your requirements.

The sample is prepopulated with the default values.

**Important:** Although the industry-standard SSH port is TCP/22, Aspera recommends changing it to TCP/33001 (as described in [Securing your SSH Server](#)). The default configuration example, above, assumes your SSH port is set to TCP/33001.

The table below provides descriptions of all web UI configuration options, including some that are not in the sample.

Field	Description	Values	Default
SshPort	The TCP port for SSH transfer communication.	integer between 1 and 65535	22
UdpPort	The UDP port for FASP file transfer.	integer between 1 and 65535	33001
PathMTU	Set the maximum packet size for file transmission. When set to "0", FASP automatically sets an appropriate value for the network.	integer between 296 and 10000	0
HttpFallback	Enable HTTP Fallback transfer when UDP transfer fails.	yes / no	no
HttpFallbackPort	The TCP port for HTTP Fallback transfer.	integer between 1 and 65535	8080
HttpsFallbackPort	The TCP port for HTTPS Fallback transfer.	integer between 1 and 65535	8443
EnableDelete	Set to <code>yes</code> (default) to allow users with the appropriate permissions to delete files and folders within the web UI.	yes / no	yes

Field	Description	Values	Default
EnableCreateFolder	Set to <code>yes</code> (default) to allow users with the appropriate permissions to create new folders using the <b>New Folder</b> button within the web UI.  <b>Note:</b> The user can still upload a new folder even if <code>EnableCreateFolder</code> is set to <code>no</code> .	<code>yes / no</code>	<code>yes</code>
AsperaServer	To use this computer solely for the HST Server web UI (and not for file transfers), enter the IP address or host name of the transfer server machine in this field. In the case of a high-availability or clustered setup, this value should be the IP address or host name of the VIP (from where the VIP/cluster service/load balancer will manage the transfer servers). Once added, HST Server allows the user to transfer to and from the file system on the indicated transfer server machine.	The IP address or host name of the transfer server machine	unspecified (transfer using local machine)
MinimumConnectVersion	Set the minimum version of IBM Aspera Connect that must be installed in order for users to be able to use HST Server. If the minimum version is not installed, a message is displayed that indicates the minimum version required and provides a download link. This option takes the value in the format of the Connect version, for example, <code>3.0.0.12345</code> .  <b>Note:</b> The default value for this setting is also the lowest allowable value. If the value specified is below the default value, the web UI enforces the default value.	Version number	2.8.0.0
EnableUserSwitching	Allow a user to switch to a different user account. When set to <code>yes</code> , a <b>Change User</b> button is added to the web page in the upper-right corner. Note that the feature only allows users to log in to a different account than the one they are exiting.  This is currently an experimental feature.	<code>yes / no</code>	<code>no</code>
FollowSymbolicLinks	Support symbolic links in the HST Server. The secure permission feature should be configured to enable this option.	<code>yes / no</code>	<code>yes</code>
EnableSortByName	When set to <code>true</code> , files are sorted into a given order to be displayed in before being listed on the HST Server web UI.  <b>Important:</b> Aspera recommends using the default setting of <code>false</code> . If you browse a directory that contains numerous files, then browsing performance may be impacted by the sorting process.	<code>true / false</code>	<code>false</code>
EnableConnectUpdates	When set to <code>yes</code> , the HST Server web UI displays a prompt to upgrade Connect when an upgrade is available. When set to <code>no</code> , this prompt no longer appears, except for mandatory upgrades when the minimum version requirement for Connect is not	<code>yes / no</code>	<code>yes</code>

Field	Description	Values	Default
	met. This setting does not affect the installation message that appears when Connect is not installed.		

## 5. Secure your web server.

Aspera recommends the following security settings:

- Require HTTPS and disable HTTP connections. For instructions, see the documentation for your OS and web server.
- Require strong SSL. Run the following command to require that the SSL security protocol be TLS version 1.2 or higher:

```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asconfigurator -x
"set_server_data;ssl_protocol,tlsv1.2"
```

This setting applies to HTTP(S) fallback transfers as well.

## 6. Restart asperahttpd and asperanoded.

Run the following commands to restart asperahttpd:

```
# systemctl restart asperahttpd
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperahttpd restart
```

Run the following commands to restart asperanoded:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

## Customize the Appearance of the Web UI

Customize the header and footer of the HST Server web UI by modifying the configuration files.

### 1. Open the header and footer files from the following locations:

- **Header** - `/opt/aspera/var/webtools/aspsdir-header.html`
- **Footer** - `/opt/aspera/var/webtools/aspsdir-footer.html`

### 2. Modify the header and footer then save your changes.

## Testing the Web UI

Once your HST Server web UI is set up and your server is running, test web UI-initiated transfers. Users must be configured with a docroot and a token encryption key before they can access the web UI.

**Note:** These instructions require steps to be taken on both the HST Server and a client computer. Make sure that you are performing the steps on the correct computer.

### 1. Configure an Aspera transfer user in HST Server.

Linux users can configure the transfer user in the GUI or from the command line.

#### GUI:

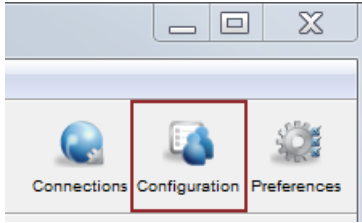
- a) Create a system user (such as `aspera_user_1`).



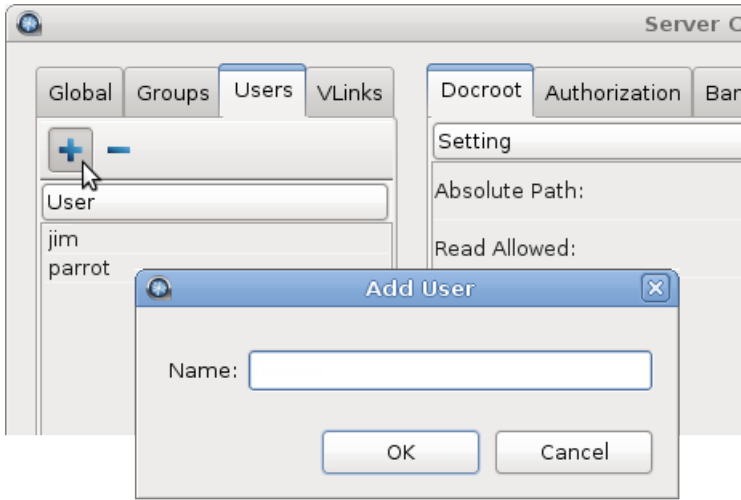
b) Launch the application.

```
# asperascp
```

c) Click **Configuration**.



d) In **Server Configuration**, click the **Users** tab, and click **+** to add a user.

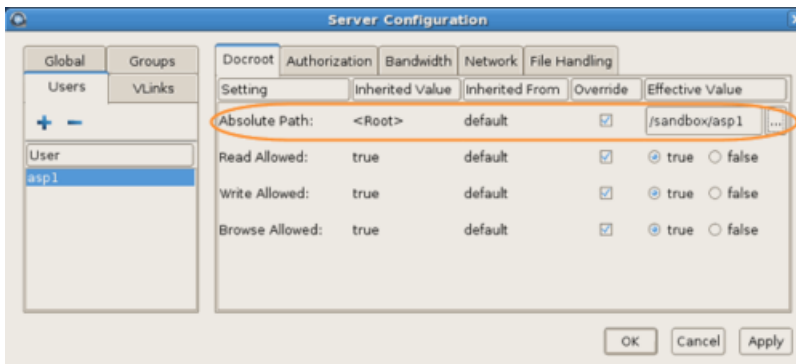


e) Enter the system user's name (`aspera_user_1`) and click **OK**.

f) Click the user's **Docroot** tab and in the **Effective Value** field for **Absolute Path**, enter or select an existing path as the user's docroot.

For example, `/sandbox/aspera_user_1`.

**Note:** The system user must have read and write permissions to the assigned docroot.



g) Set read, write, and browse permissions to true.

h) Go to the **Authorization** tab and set a value for **Token Encryption Key**, globally or for the user. The key string should be a random string of letters and numbers that is at least 20 characters long. Do not use UUIDs for this key because they might be generated using cryptographically insecure methods.

i) Click **OK**.

**Command Line:**

Set default values to authorize transfers in and out, set the encryption key, and set the default docroot by running the following commands:

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_in_value,allow"
$ asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;authorization_transfer_out_value,allow"
$ asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;token_encryption_key,token_key"
$ asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;absolute,docroot"
```

These commands create the following lines in `aspera.conf`. In the example, the docroot is `/sandbox/(name)`. By using the substitutable string `$(name)` in the docroot, the application automatically replaces it with the login user name.

```
<CONF version="2">
...
<default>
  <authorization>
    <transfer>
      <in>
        <value>allow</value>
      </in>
      <out>
        <value>allow</value>
      </out>
    </transfer>
    <token>
      <encryption_key>fwierj283ru23jrszellr73rj2fnsk38ru28h3r3ashre</
encryption_key>
    </token>
  </authorization>
  <file_system>
    <access>
      <paths>
        <path>
          <absolute>/sandbox/$(name)</absolute>
        </path>
      </paths>
    </access>
  </file_system>
  ...
</default>
</CONF>
```

To add the settings to `aspera.conf` manually, open it from the following directory:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

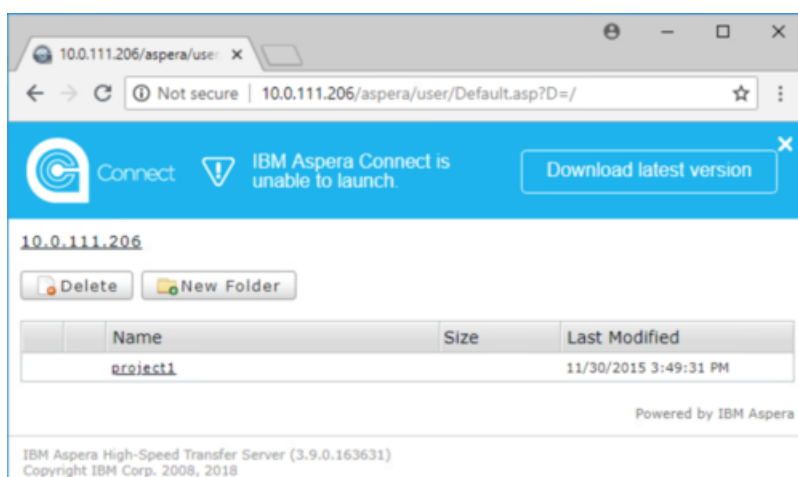
## 2. Test the web UI with the client computer.

The client computer must be running a supported operating system and browser, as described in , and cookies must be enabled in the client's browser.

a) Go to the following address in the browser:

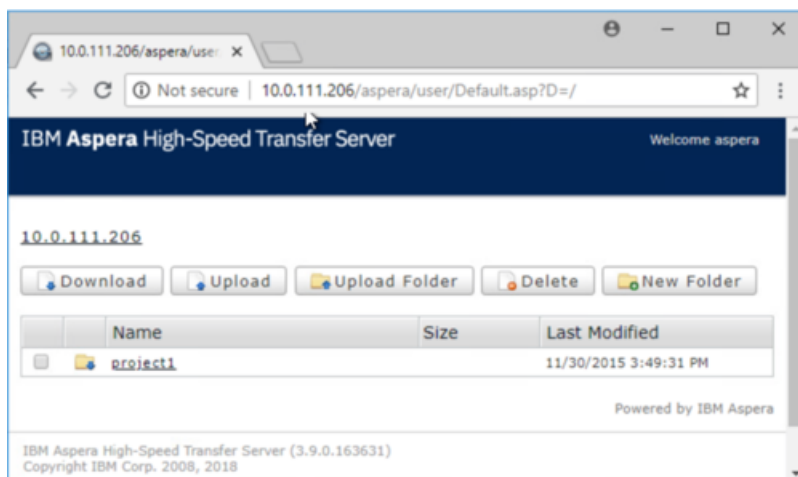
HTTP	<code>http://server_ip_or_name/aspera/user</code>
HTTPS	<code>https://server_ip_or_name/aspera/user</code>

b) The IBM Aspera Connect banner appears with a link to download and install the latest version of Connect:



Click **Download latest version**.

- c) Once the installation is complete, refresh the page and the web UI for appears:



- d) In the web UI, click **Upload** and select one or more files to upload to HST Server.

**Note:** When you add files to the web UI, do not use the following characters in the filenames:

/ \ " : ' ? > < & \* |

- e) When the transfer is finished, select the uploaded files in the web UI, and click **Download**.

If you cannot run FASP transfers by using the web UI, see [Clients Can't Establish Connection](#) on page 475.

## Configuring HTTP and HTTPS Fallback

HTTP fallback serves as a secondary transfer method when the Internet connectivity required for Aspera FASP transfers (UDP port 33001, by default) is unavailable. When HTTP fallback is enabled and UDP connectivity is lost or cannot be established, the transfer will continue over the HTTP (or HTTPS) protocol. These instructions describe how to enable and configure HTTP/HTTPS fallback.

### Prerequisites:

- Configure your HST Server web UI, as described in [Configuring Your Web UI Settings](#). For additional information on configuring different modes and testing, see the Aspera KB Article "[HTTP fallback configuration, testing and troubleshooting](#)."
- Your Aspera HTTP daemon (asperahtpd) is running with sufficient privileges so that it can modify file ownership.

### Limitations:

- Folders that are symbolic links cannot be downloaded directly by using HTTP fallback. Folders that are symbolic links are processed correctly when their parent folder is the source.
- HTTP fallback can only follow symbolic links. Settings in `aspera.conf` or in the command line are ignored.
- HTTP fallback attempts to transfer at the target rate but is limited by TCP.
- HTTP fallback does not support pre-post processing or inline validation.

**Process:****1.** Enable HTTP/HTTPS fallback for your web server.

- a) Open `aspera.conf` from the following location:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

- b) Edit the `<WEB/>` section.

Confirm the following entries are correct:

```
<WEB
...
HttpFallback = "yes"
HttpFallbackPort = "8080"
HttpsFallbackPort = "8443"
/>
```

- c) Save and close the file.  
d) Confirm that `aspera.conf` is formed correctly.

Validate the `aspera.conf` file using the `asuserdata` utility:

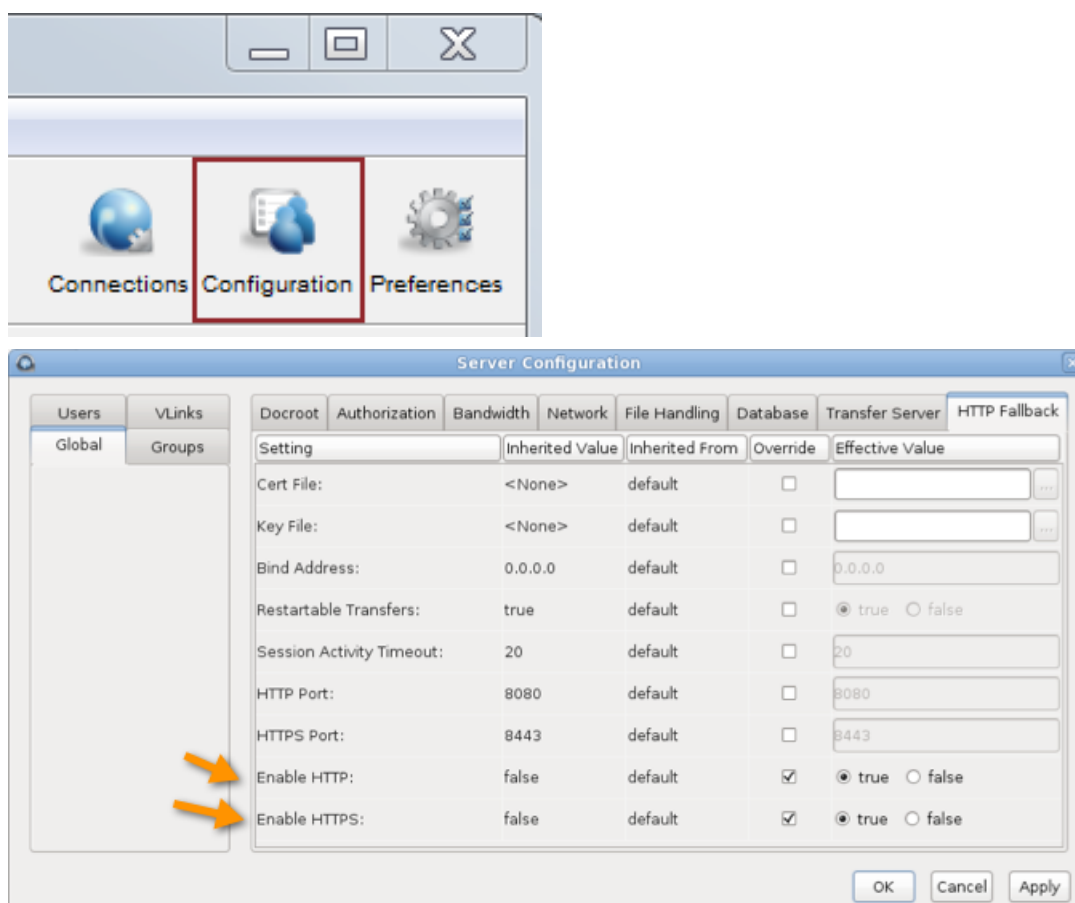
```
# /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

**2.** Configure HTTP/HTTPS fallback settings.

You can configure HTTP/HTTPS fallback from the HST Server GUI or by editing `aspera.conf`.

**Configuring HTTP/HTTPS fallback from the GUI:**

Launch the transfer server and go to **Configuration > Global > HTTP Fallback**.



### Configuring HTTP/HTTPS fallback by editing `aspera.conf`:

Run the following commands:

- To view the current HTTP settings in `aspera.conf`:

```
$ /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -b -t
```

- To enable HTTP fallback:

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;enable_http,true"
```

- To enable HTTPS fallback, if using:

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;enable_https,true"
```

- To set the HTTP port (default 8080, must match the value in the `<WEB>` section of `aspera.conf`):

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;http_port,8080"
```

- To set the HTTPS port (default 8443, must match the value in the `<WEB>` section of `aspera.conf`):

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_http_server_data;https_port,8443"
```

These commands edit or create the following lines in `aspera.conf`:

```
<CONF version="2">
...
<http_server>
...
```

```

<enable_http>true</enable_http>           <!-- Enable HTTP -->
<enable_https>true</enable_https>         <!-- Enable HTTPS -->
<http_port>8080</http_port>               <!-- HTTP port -->
<https_port>8443</https_port>            <!-- HTTPS port -->
...
</http_server>
</CONF>

```

To manually inspect and edit `aspera.conf`, open it from the following directory:

```
/opt/aspera/etc/aspera.conf
```

### 3. Review additional HTTP fallback settings.

Additional HTTP fallback settings can be set in the **HTTP Fallback** tab in the HST Server GUI or set in `aspera.conf`:

Field	Description	Values	Default
Cert File	The absolute path to an SSL certificate file. If left blank, the default certificate file that came with HST Server is used.	file path	blank
Key File	The absolute path to an SSL key file. If left blank, the default certificate file that came with your HST Server is used.	file path	blank
Bind Address	The network interface address on which the HTTP fallback server listens. The default value 0.0.0.0 allows the HTTP fallback server to accept transfer requests on all network interfaces for this node. Alternatively, a specific network interface address may be specified.	valid IPv4 address	0.0.0.0
Restartable Transfers	Set to <code>true</code> to allow interrupted transfers to resume from the point of interruption.	true or false	true
Session Activity Timeout	Any value greater than 0 sets the amount of time, in seconds, that the HTTP fallback server will wait without any transfer activity before canceling the transfer. This option cannot be set to 0, otherwise interrupted HTTP fallback sessions will get stuck until server or <code>asperacentral</code> is restarted.	positive integer	20
HTTP Port	The port on which the HTTP server listens. Valid port numbers range between 1 and 65535.	positive integer	8080
HTTPS Port	The port on which the HTTPS server listens. Valid port numbers range between 1 and 65535.	positive integer	8443
Enable HTTP	Enables the HTTP fallback server that allows failed UDP transfers to continue over HTTP.	true or false	false
Enable HTTPS	Enables the HTTPS fallback server that allows failed UDP transfers to continue over HTTPS.	true or false	false

```

<CONF version="2">
...
<http_server>
  <cert_file> </cert_file>
  <key_file> </key_file>
  <bind_address>0.0.0.0</bind_address>
  <restartable_transfers>true</restartable_transfers>
  <session_activity_timeout>1</session_activity_timeout>

```

```

<enable_http>>true</enable_http>
<enable_https>>true</enable_https>
<http_port>8080</http_port>
<https_port>8443</https_port>
</http_server>
</CONF>

```

#### 4. Set a token encryption key.

If HTTP/HTTPS fallback is enabled, a token encryption key is required. If HTTP/HTTPS is configured without the encryption key, initiating a transfer with the download button generates the following error:

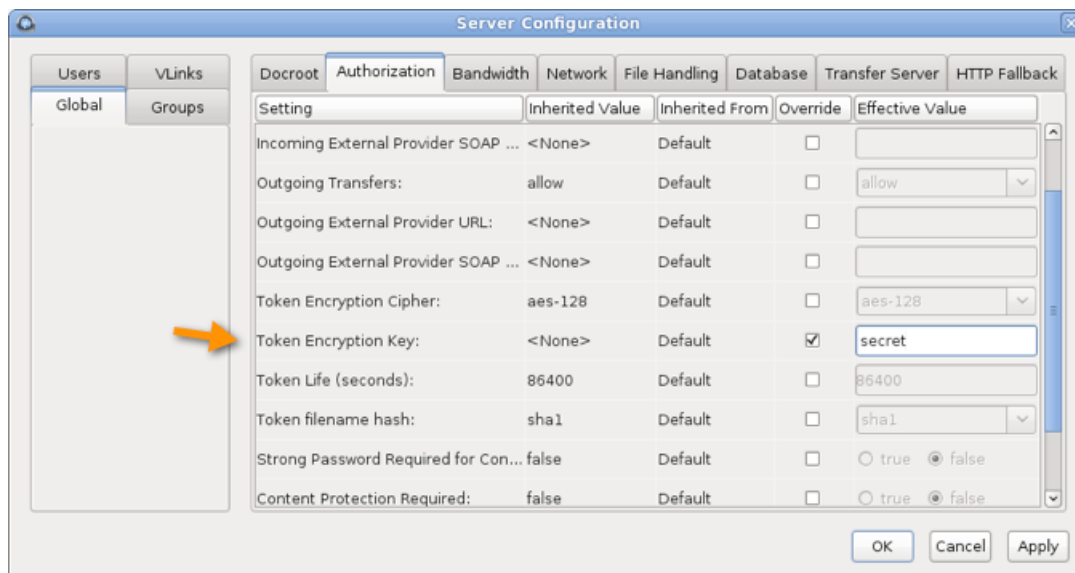
```
Error: internal error - unable to start token generation
```

The token encryption key is the secret text string used for authorizing transfers configured to require a token. Aspera recommends setting a key string at least 20 random characters long.

You can specify a token encryption key from the Connect Server GUI or by editing `aspera.conf`.

#### Set a token key from the GUI:

Launch Connect Server and click **Configuration**. Click **Global > Authorization**, select the option **Token Encryption Key** and enter a key string of random characters (at least 20 recommended).



#### Set a token key in aspera.conf:

To set the token encryption key in `aspera.conf`, run the following command:

```
$ asconfigurator -x "set_node_data;token_encryption_key,secret_string"
```

The key should be a string of random characters, at least 20 recommended. This adds or updates the `<encryption_key>` value in the `<authorization>` section:

```

<CONF version="2">
...
<default>
  <authorization>
    ...
    <token>
      <encryption_key>secret_string</encryption_key>
    </token>
  </authorization>
</default>

```

```
...
</CONF>
```

**Important:** After changing your Aspera token settings—either in `aspera.conf` or the GUI—you must restart `asperahttpd`. For instructions, see the last step in these instructions.

5. If you manually edited `aspera.conf`, validate your updated configuration file:

```
$ /opt/aspera/bin/asuserdata -v
```

6. For Linux distributions that support `systemd`, enable automatic restart of `asperahttpd`.

- a) Locate `asperahttpd.service` by running the following command:

```
# systemctl status asperahttpd
```

**Note:** If the `systemctl` command is not recognized, your system does not support `systemd`.

The output includes a line that specifies the path to `asperahttpd.service`, similar to the following:

```
LOADED: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/asperahttpd.service; enabled vendor
preset: enabled)
```

- b) As root, open the file for editing.
- c) Locate and edit the following line:

```
#Restart=on-failure
```

Uncomment the line (remove the leading '#') so it looks like the following:

```
Restart=on-failure
```

- d) Save and close the file.
- e) Activate your changes by running the following command:

```
# systemctl daemon-reload
```

The change is activated for `asperahttpd` when you restart the service in the next step.

7. After enabling HTTP fallback and setting a token encryption key, restart `asperacentral`, `asperanoded`, and `asperahttpd`.

Run the following command in a Terminal window to restart `asperacentral`:

```
# systemctl restart asperacentral
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperacentral restart
```

Run the following commands to restart `asperanoded`:

```
# systemctl restart asperanoded
```

or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperanoded restart
```

Run the following commands to restart `asperahttpd`:

```
# systemctl restart asperahttpd
```



or for Linux systems that use `init.d`:

```
# service asperahttpd restart
```

## Product Limitations

---

Describes any limitations that currently exist for Aspera transfer server and client products.

- **Path Limit:** The maximum number of characters that can be included in *any* pathname is 512 on Windows and 4096 on Unix-based platforms.
- **Illegal Characters:** Avoid the following characters in filenames: / \ " : ' ? > < & \* |.
- **Environment Variables:** The total size for environment variables depends on your operating system and transfer session. Aspera recommends that each environment variable value should not exceed 4096 characters.

## Technical Support

---

### Support Websites

For an overview of IBM Aspera Support services, visit <https://www.ibm.com/products/aspera/support>.

To view product announcements, webinars, and knowledgebase articles, as well as access the Aspera Support Community Forum, sign into the IBM Aspera Support site at <https://www.ibm.com/mysupport/> using your IBMid (not your company Aspera credentials), or set up a new account. Search for Aspera and select the product. Click **Follow** to receive notifications when new knowledgebase articles are available.

### Personalized Support

You may contact an Aspera support technician 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, through the following methods, with a guaranteed 4-hour response time.

Phone (North America)	+1 (510) 849-2386, option 2
Phone (Europe)	+44 (0) 207-993-6653 option 2
Phone (Singapore)	+81 (0) 3-4578-9357 option 2

## Legal Notice

---

© 2010- 2018- 2019 Aspera, Inc., an IBM Company. All rights reserved.

Licensed Materials - Property of IBM  
5725-S58

© Copyright IBM Corp., 2007, 2019. Used under license.

US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Aspera, the Aspera logo, and FASP transfer technology are trademarks of Aspera, Inc., registered in the United States. Aspera Drive, IBM Aspera High-Speed Transfer Server (a merger of IBM products formerly named Aspera Connect Server and Aspera Enterprise Server, 2008 and 2007), IBM Aspera High-Speed Endpoint (formerly Aspera Point-to-Point, 2006), IBM Aspera Desktop Client (formerly Aspera Client, 2005), Aspera Connect, Aspera Cargo, Aspera Console, Aspera Orchestrator, Aspera Crypt, Aspera Shares, the Aspera Add-in for Microsoft Outlook, Aspera FASPStream, and Aspera Faspex are trademarks of Aspera, Inc. All other trademarks mentioned in this document are the property of their respective owners. Mention of third-party products in this document is for informational

purposes only. All understandings, agreements, or warranties, if any, take place directly between the vendors and the prospective users.